



# PlantPAx Distributed Control System Configuration and Implementation

System Release 5.40



***Allen-Bradley***

by ROCKWELL AUTOMATION

**User Manual**

Original Instructions

# Important User Information

Read this document and the documents listed in the additional resources section about installation, configuration, and operation of this equipment before you install, configure, operate, or maintain this product. Users are required to familiarize themselves with installation and wiring instructions in addition to requirements of all applicable codes, laws, and standards.

Activities including installation, adjustments, putting into service, use, assembly, disassembly, and maintenance are required to be carried out by suitably trained personnel in accordance with applicable code of practice.

If this equipment is used in a manner not specified by the manufacturer, the protection provided by the equipment may be impaired.

In no event will Rockwell Automation, Inc. be responsible or liable for indirect or consequential damages resulting from the use or application of this equipment.


The examples and diagrams in this manual are included solely for illustrative purposes. Because of the many variables and requirements associated with any particular installation, Rockwell Automation, Inc. cannot assume responsibility or liability for actual use based on the examples and diagrams.

No patent liability is assumed by Rockwell Automation, Inc. with respect to use of information, circuits, equipment, or software described in this manual.

Reproduction of the contents of this manual, in whole or in part, without written permission of Rockwell Automation, Inc., is prohibited.

Throughout this manual, when necessary, we use notes to make you aware of safety considerations.


---



**WARNING:** Identifies information about practices or circumstances that can cause an explosion in a hazardous environment, which may lead to personal injury or death, property damage, or economic loss.

---

---



**ATTENTION:** Identifies information about practices or circumstances that can lead to personal injury or death, property damage, or economic loss. Attentions help you identify a hazard, avoid a hazard, and recognize the consequence.

---


---

**IMPORTANT**      Identifies information that is critical for successful application and understanding of the product.

---

These labels may also be on or inside the equipment to provide specific precautions.

---



**SHOCK HAZARD:** Labels may be on or inside the equipment, for example, a drive or motor, to alert people that dangerous voltage may be present.

---


---



**BURN HAZARD:** Labels may be on or inside the equipment, for example, a drive or motor, to alert people that surfaces may reach dangerous temperatures.

---


---



**ARC FLASH HAZARD:** Labels may be on or inside the equipment, for example, a motor control center, to alert people to potential Arc Flash. Arc Flash will cause severe injury or death. Wear proper Personal Protective Equipment (PPE). Follow ALL Regulatory requirements for safe work practices and for Personal Protective Equipment (PPE).

---

The following icon may appear in the text of this document.



Identifies information that is useful and can help to make a process easier to do or easier to understand.

## Preface

About This Publication .....	13
Download Firmware, AOP, EDS, and Other Files .....	13
Summary of Changes .....	13
Additional Resources .....	13
Software and Firmware Updates .....	14
Rockwell Automation Services and Support .....	14

## Chapter 1

### System Workflow

Size Your System .....	17
Select the Process Automation System Server .....	17
Consolidated Process Automation System Server (PASS-C) .....	18
Process Automation System Server (PASS) .....	18
Next Steps .....	19
Guidelines for Servers and Workstations .....	20
Antivirus .....	21
PlantPax System ID .....	21
System Verification .....	22

## Chapter 2

### Domain or Workgroup

Prerequisites .....	23
Primary Domain Controller .....	24
Create the Primary Domain Controller .....	24
Install Active Directory Services, DHCP, and DNS Roles .....	25
Promote the Primary Domain Controller .....	25
Additional Domain Controller .....	27
Create an Additional Domain Controller .....	27
Install Active Directory Services, DHCP, and DNS Roles .....	27
Promote the Additional Domain Controller .....	27
Configure Domain Controllers .....	28
Server Manager Tools Menu .....	28
Create a Reverse DNS Lookup Zone .....	28
Map the Host Name to the IP Address .....	29
Add DHCP Features .....	30
Configure Failover .....	31
Create Roles, Areas, and Users .....	31
Add Groups for Role-Based Security .....	32
Add Groups for Area Based Security .....	32
Assign Users .....	33
Configure Group Policy Management .....	34
Configure the Windows NTP Client .....	34
Configure Windows Time Service .....	36
Enforcing the Domain Controller Policy .....	36
Configure Group Policies .....	37
Configure the Password Strength Policy .....	37
Configure the Account Lockout Policy .....	38

Configure the Kerberos Policy .....	38
Configure the Interactive Logon Policy .....	39
PlantPAx Users Policy Object .....	39
Create the PlantPAx Users Policy Object .....	40
Configure the USB Drive Policy .....	40
Configure the Portable Device Enumeration Policy .....	41
Configure the Software Access Policy .....	41
Windows Workgroup .....	42
Assign Static IP Addresses .....	43
Map Computer IP Addresses .....	43
Test Communication by Host Name .....	44
Create Local Users .....	44
Create Local Security Policies .....	45
FactoryTalk DeskLock Utility (Optional) .....	46

## Process Automation System Server

### Chapter 3

Prerequisites .....	47
FactoryTalk Components .....	47
System SQL Server Deployment .....	48
Configure the PASS .....	49
Specify FactoryTalk Directory Location .....	49
Configure the FactoryTalk Directory .....	49
Run Firewall Configuration Utility .....	49
Configure FactoryTalk Activation Servers .....	50
Configure Servers on the PASS .....	52
Create a New HMI Project .....	52
Define Areas .....	53
Add an HMI Server .....	54
Add a FactoryTalk ViewPoint Server .....	55
Add the Alarms and Events Database .....	55
Add a Data Server (FactoryTalk Linx) .....	57
Add a Data Server (OPC UA) .....	58
Add an Alarm and Events Server .....	61
Add a Resource and Status Server .....	61
Configure DataLogPro .....	63
Redundant Server Considerations .....	65
Configure Runtime Security .....	66
Role-Based Security .....	66
Area-Based Security .....	71
Adding Users to Groups .....	76
Line of Sight Based Security .....	78
Remote Desktop Services .....	82
Use Default Terminal Client .....	82
Audit Security Actions .....	82

### Chapter 4

## Network Infrastructure

Network Configuration Preparation .....	83
Recommended VLANs .....	84
Command-line Interface (CLI) .....	85



Redundant PRP Topology .....	85
Additional Resources for PRP Topology .....	86
Switch Configuration in a Redundant PRP Topology .....	87
Resilient DLR Topology .....	89
Additional Resources for DLR Topology .....	89
Switch Configuration in a Resilient DLR Topology .....	90
Simplex - Star Topology .....	91
Additional Resources for Simplex Star Topology .....	92
Switch Configuration in a Simplex Topology .....	93
Perimeter Network Considerations .....	93
Time Synchronization .....	93
Considerations .....	94
Configure UTC Time Source .....	94
Configure Internet Time Synchronization .....	95
NTP to PTP Clock Conversion .....	96
Configure PTP Time Synchronization for Ethernet Bridges .....	96
Configure PTP Time Synchronization for Controllers .....	97
Network Device Library .....	99

## Chapter 5

### Process Controller Features

Prerequisites .....	101
PlantPax Process Objects .....	102
Import Add-On Instructions .....	103
Configure Controller Properties .....	103
PlantPax Task Model .....	104
Create the Logical Organizer .....	104
Add Modules and Devices to the Controller Organizer .....	105
Controller-to-Controller Communication .....	107
Configure Produced and Consumed Tags .....	108
PlantPax Guidelines for Produced and Consumed Tags .....	109
PlantPax Guidelines for Message Instructions .....	110
OPC UA .....	110
Integrate Field Devices .....	110
HART Integration .....	111
PROFIBUS PA Integration .....	111
FOUNDATION Fieldbus Integration .....	111
Electrical Protection Devices Integration (IEC 61850) .....	111
Alarm Types .....	111
Guidelines for Logix Tag-based Alarms .....	112
Embedded Tag-based Alarms in PlantPax Instructions .....	112
Guidelines for Server Tag-based Alarms (FactoryTalk Alarms and Events) .....	113
Guidelines for Logix Instruction-based Alarms .....	114
Monitor Alarms .....	114
Use the Process System Estimator to Plan Alarms .....	115
Security Considerations .....	118
Create HMI Displays .....	118
Graphic Framework Displays .....	119
Optimize Runtime Performance .....	119
Optimize HMI Redundancy .....	120

## Use ACM to Create an Application

### Chapter 6

Prerequisites.....	123
Develop a Project Plan.....	124
Determine Which Libraries to Use .....	124
Develop an Example Application.....	125
Create the Example Project.....	125
Create a New Project .....	125
Add System References .....	126
Add a Controller.....	129
Configure the Controller Object.....	130
Add Devices .....	130
Add Hardware Bus Object.....	134
Add Control Strategies .....	139
Add Alarm Groups .....	149
Generate Controller and Graphics Files .....	151
Download ACD File to the Controller .....	153
Add Graphics to HMI .....	154
Bulk Configuration .....	154

## Modifying an Existing PlantPax System

### Chapter 7

Prerequisites.....	157
Studio 5000 Logix Designer and FactoryTalk View SE Software .....	157
Logix Designer Application Templates.....	158
FactoryTalk View SE templates.....	158
Edit a Project via the PlantPax Configuration Tool for Tags, Alarms, and Historian ..	159
Edit Tag Data.....	160
Edit Alarms .....	160
Launch AE Alarm Configuration Tools .....	162
Edit Historian Points.....	162
Edit HMI Displays.....	168

## Asset Management

### Chapter 8

Prerequisites.....	170
FactoryTalk AssetCentre .....	170
Inventory Plant Assets .....	170
Scan the System for Assets.....	170
Manually Add Individual Assets .....	173
Configure Audit Logs .....	174
Security Audit Logs.....	174
Schedule System Backups.....	174
Create a Backup Schedule .....	176
Configure Disaster Recovery.....	176
Maintenance Strategy Recommendations.....	177
Controller Project File.....	177
FactoryTalk Directory.....	178
PASS Servers .....	178
Network Switches.....	178
Server Back up and System Restore .....	179

Historian Configuration and Data .....	179
Batch Configuration and Data .....	179
FactoryTalk AssetCentre Data .....	180
SQL Server Data .....	180
Backup Verification .....	180
System Restore .....	180
Retention Policy Considerations .....	180
System Storage Rates .....	181

## Chapter 9

### Historical Data

Prerequisites .....	183
Required PlantPAx Elements .....	184
Historical Data .....	184
Configure Servers for a Collective .....	184
Create Firewall Rule for Historian Servers .....	184
Set Initial Security Settings .....	185
Create Connections Between Historian Servers .....	185
Create the Historian Collective .....	187
Client to Server Connections .....	187
Connect another Computer to Historian Server .....	187
Historian to FactoryTalk Directory Connection .....	188
Create a Data Collection Interface .....	189
Create a Synchronization Path for Redundant Node Interfaces .....	190
Configure Redundant Node Interfaces .....	191
Configure a FactoryTalk Live Data Primary Interface .....	192
Configure a FactoryTalk Live Data Secondary Interface .....	193
Confirm Unit Failover Diagnostics .....	195
Configure PI Performance Monitor .....	196
Create Domain User for PIPerfMon Service .....	196
Configure the PIPerfMon Interface .....	197
Create PIPerfMon Diagnostic Health Points .....	199
Test the PIPerfMon Interface .....	200
Enable the PIPerfMon Interface on other Computers .....	201
Configure PI Buffering .....	202
Create Domain User for PI Buffer Service .....	202
Create Security Mappings .....	204
Configure the Buffering Interface .....	205
Configure the PI Buffer Service Logon .....	207
Configure Historian Data Collection .....	207
Create Digital States .....	207
Import Digital Sets and States .....	208
Create Individual Historian Points .....	209
Monitor Historical Data .....	212
Define Digital Historical Points .....	213
Historian Asset Framework .....	213
Configure the Connections to the Servers .....	213
Import Asset Framework Templates .....	214
Configure Asset Framework Elements .....	216
Search Event Frames .....	217

	Finding Faults for Analysis.....	218
	Tools for Creating Historian Tags.....	219
	Application Code Manager .....	219
	PI Builder Add-in for Microsoft Excel .....	219
	Configure Asset Framework Databases with the PlantPAx Configuration Tool..	220
	Verify Asset Framework Library and Elements.....	222
<b>Batch Management</b>	<b>Chapter 10</b>	
	Select the Batch Solution.....	225
	Logix Batch and SequenceManager Requirements.....	225
	SequenceManager Requirements.....	226
	FactoryTalk Batch Requirements .....	226
	Logix Batch and Sequence Manager .....	227
	LBSM Details .....	227
	SequenceManager Controls.....	228
	SequenceManager Details .....	228
	Factory Talk Batch Application .....	228
	FactoryTalk Batch Details .....	229
	FactoryTalk Batch Server with Redundant Controllers .....	230
	Hold Propagation.....	230
	State Composite Evaluation.....	231
	Types of Failures.....	232
<b>Automatic Diagnostics</b>	<b>Chapter 11</b>	
	Configure Automatic Diagnostics.....	235
	Automatic Diagnostics on PanelView 5000 Display .....	235
	Automatic Diagnostics on FactoryTalk View SE .....	237
	Subscribe To .....	237
	View Automatic Diagnostic Messages .....	237
	Automatic Diagnostics History .....	238
	Online Updates of Device Additional Diagnostics .....	238
<b>PlantPAx Security Certification</b>	<b>Appendix A</b>	
	PlantPAx Security Architecture .....	239
	Trusted Zones .....	241
	Certificate Authority .....	241
	System Security Feature Checklists.....	242
	Virtualization.....	247
	VLAN Recommendations .....	247
	Remote Access .....	248
	CIP Security.....	248
<b>Firewall Configurations</b>	<b>Appendix B</b>	
	Common Ports.....	251
	Rockwell Automation TCP/UDP Ports.....	251

## PlantPAx Deployment Recommendations and Verification Tool

### Appendix C

Design Recommendations Tab .....	255
System ID .....	255
Controller Considerations .....	256
Library Considerations .....	256
Alarm Considerations .....	256
I/O Considerations .....	256
HMI Considerations .....	257
User Security Considerations .....	257
System Infrastructure Tab .....	257
Network .....	259
Servers and Workstations .....	259
Server or Workstation Tab .....	259
Operating System .....	259
Performance .....	263
Basic System Checks .....	263
Resource Overview .....	264
System Architecture Tab .....	264
FactoryTalk View Application Design .....	264
FactoryTalk View HMI Servers .....	266
FactoryTalk Alarm and Event Servers .....	267
FactoryTalk View Data Servers .....	268
FactoryTalk AssetCentre Configuration .....	269
FactoryTalk Historian SE Configuration .....	270
PASS Tab .....	272
FactoryTalk View SE System .....	274
FactoryTalk Alarms and Events Server .....	274
Generate the FactoryTalk View Report .....	276
FactoryTalk Linx Data Server .....	279
FactoryTalk Linx OPC UA Connector .....	280
Controller 5x80 Tab .....	281
Controller Properties .....	282
CPU Use .....	282
Faults .....	282
Capacity .....	282
Connections .....	283
Time Synchronization .....	283
Task Structure .....	283
Controller Alarms .....	283
Controller 5x70 Tab .....	284
Controller Properties .....	284
CPU Use .....	284
Faults .....	285
Memory Use .....	285
Connections .....	286
Time Synchronization .....	286
Task Structure .....	286



## PlantPax Troubleshooting Scenarios

### Appendix D

HMI Communication Lost .....	287
Server and Controller Communication Evaluation .....	287
Client and Server Communication Evaluation .....	292
Troubleshooting Scenario: HMI Display Access is Slow .....	296

## FactoryTalk Optix Considerations

### Appendix E

raP_5_20_Libraries User Guide .....	299
NetLogic Security Warning in FactoryTalk Optix .....	299
Library Composition and Structure .....	300
Configuring Your Project with the Library .....	302
Create a New Project .....	302
Organize the Project Structure .....	303
Configure E-Signature .....	308
Configure E-Signature Logging .....	309
Configure FactoryTalk Optix Audit Logging .....	310
FactoryTalk Optix Security Groups .....	311
Add Login Options and Graphic Symbols .....	315
Modify an Existing Project .....	317
Update 'NetLogic' folder .....	317
Update Translations .....	318
No Custom Translations .....	320
Update 'Stylesheets' Folder .....	322
Update Security Folder .....	322
UI Session Binding .....	323
Update Process Library HMI Objects .....	324
Update 'Audit' Folder .....	326
Configure E-Signature .....	326
Configure AuditLogging .....	329

## FactoryTalk Optix E-Signature User Guide

### Appendix F

FactoryTalk Optix	
E-Signature .....	331
Features .....	331
Components .....	331
Environment Setup .....	336
Prerequisites .....	336
Import Tags into FactoryTalk Optix .....	336
Copy .csproj and DLL Files to Designated Directory .....	336
E-Signature Configuration .....	338
Confirmation Configuration .....	338
E-Signature Configuration .....	339
Import E-Signature Configuration File .....	341
Trouble Shooting .....	342
E-Signature Workflow Pop-up Dialog .....	344
Confirm Workflow .....	344
Sign Workflow .....	345
Double-Sign Workflow .....	350

Exception Messages .....	351
E-Signature Event Logging Configuration .....	351
Additional Information .....	353
Template Pre-Defined DataType .....	353
Pre-defined TagMembers with Confirmation Workflow .....	354
Extended Properties Dictionary .....	356
Tag Format for Alarms .....	357
How to Customize Caption/Statement/ValueMappingContent by Template ....	358

## **Appendix G**

### **Security Policies**

System Policies .....	361
Product Policies .....	361
Computers and Groups .....	365
Network and Devices .....	365
Users and Groups .....	368
Connections .....	368

**Notes:**

## About This Publication

This manual helps you implement process control where controllers, HMI, and I/O are located in different areas of the plant. The PlantPAX<sup>®</sup> system offers flexibility, using the latest technology and scalability to build only what you need to help reduce development time, downtime, and operational cost.

## Download Firmware, AOP, EDS, and Other Files

Download firmware, associated files (such as AOP, EDS, and DTM), and access product release notes from the Product Compatibility and Download Center at [rok.auto/pcdc](http://rok.auto/pcdc).

## Summary of Changes

This publication contains the following new or updated information. This list includes substantive updates only and is not intended to reflect all changes.

Topic	Page
Added Appendix E - FactoryTalk Optix Considerations	<a href="#">299</a>
Added Appendix F - FactoryTalk Optix E-Signature User guide	<a href="#">331</a>

## Additional Resources

These documents contain additional information concerning related products from Rockwell Automation. You can view or download publications at [rok.auto/literature](http://rok.auto/literature).

Resource	Description
Selection Guide, publication <a href="#">PROCES-SG001</a>	Helps you understand the elements of the PlantPAX system to make sure that you buy the proper components.
Template User Manual, publication <a href="#">9528-UM001</a>	Provides direction on how to install and deploy PlantPAX virtual templates.
Configuration and Implementation User Manual, publication <a href="#">PROCES-UM100</a>	Provides system guidelines and instructions to assist with the development of your PlantPAX system.
PlantPAX Display and Library Guidelines, publication <a href="#">PROCES-RM200</a>	Describes the PlantPAX graphic framework, Add-On Instructions, and associated faceplates that are available to develop applications.
Rockwell Automation Sequencer Object, Publication <a href="#">PROCES-RM202</a>	Provides an overview of how to use the Rockwell Automation Sequencer Object. The manual includes a Sequencer programming demonstration, example, and configuration instructions.
PlantPAX Faceplates for Process Controller Instructions, publication <a href="#">PROCES-RM203</a>	Describes the PlantPAX Process instructions, and associated faceplates that are available to develop applications.
PlantPAX Process Control Instructions, publication <a href="#">PROCES-RM215</a>	This manual provides a programmer with details about the available Process instruction set for a Logix-based Process controller.
Process Object parameters Spreadsheet, publication, <a href="#">PROCES-RD200</a>	Describes the PlantPAX Process object parameters.
PlantPAX Visualization Files, publication, <a href="#">PROCES-RD201</a>	Describes the visualization files that are required for the Library of Process Objects.
FactoryTalk Optix Solutions, publication <a href="#">OPTIX-AT001</a>	Provides an overview of the system, application examples, and ordering guidelines to help you choose exactly what you need. It also guides you through the basics of creating and deploying your own application.
FactoryTalk Security Application Technique, publication <a href="#">SECURE-AT002</a>	Provides essential concepts and practical steps for safeguarding your FactoryTalk <sup>®</sup> system.
EtherNet/IP Network Devices User Manual, publication <a href="#">ENET-UM006</a>	Describes how to configure and use EtherNet/IP <sup>™</sup> devices to communicate on the EtherNet/IP network.
Ethernet Reference Manual, publication <a href="#">ENET-RM002</a>	Describes basic Ethernet concepts, infrastructure components, and infrastructure features.
System Security Design Guidelines Reference Manual, publication <a href="#">SECURE-RM001</a>	Provides guidance on how to conduct security assessments, implement Rockwell Automation products in a secure system, harden the control system, manage user access, and dispose of equipment.
UL Standards Listing for Industrial Control Products, publication <a href="#">CMPNTS-SR002</a>	Assists original equipment manufacturers (OEMs) with construction of panels, to help ensure that they conform to the requirements of Underwriters Laboratories.
American Standards, Configurations, and Ratings: Introduction to Motor Circuit Design, publication <a href="#">IC-AT001</a>	Provides an overview of American motor circuit design based on methods that are outlined in the NEC.
Industrial Components Preventive Maintenance, Enclosures, and Contact Ratings Specifications, publication <a href="#">IC-TD002</a>	Provides a quick reference tool for Allen-Bradley <sup>®</sup> industrial automation controls and assemblies.
Safety Guidelines for the Application, Installation, and Maintenance of Solid-state Control, publication <a href="#">SGI-1.1</a>	Designed to harmonize with NEMA Standards Publication No. ICS 1.1-1987 and provides general guidelines for the application, installation, and maintenance of solid-state control in the form of individual devices or packaged assemblies incorporating solid-state components.
Industrial Automation Wiring and Grounding Guidelines, publication <a href="#">1770-4.1</a>	Provides general guidelines for installing a Rockwell Automation industrial system.

Resource	Description
ProposalWorks™ configuration software, <a href="http://rok.auto/systemtools">rok.auto/systemtools</a>	Helps configure complete, valid catalog numbers and build complete quotes based on detailed product information.
Rockwell Automation Global SCCR tool, <a href="http://rok.auto/sccr">rok.auto/sccr</a>	Provides coordinated high-fault branch circuit solutions for motor starters, soft starters, and component drives.
Product Certifications website, <a href="http://rok.auto/certifications">rok.auto/certifications</a>	Provides declarations of conformity, certificates, and other certification details.

You can view or download publications at [rok.auto/literature](http://rok.auto/literature).

## Software and Firmware Updates

When you update software or firmware revisions, we recommend that you verify the impact on performance and memory utilization before implementing the upgrade on the production system. For FactoryTalk® View or ControlLogix® platforms, we recommend that you review the release notes and verify the impact of the upgrade on performance and memory utilization.

You can also verify the compatibility of an upgrade with the other software and operating systems in use in your PlantPAx system. See the [Product Compatibility and Download Center](#).

## Rockwell Automation Services and Support

System Support offers technical assistance that is tailored for control systems. Some of the features include the following:

- Highly experienced team of engineers with training and systems experience
- Process support at a systems-level that is provided by process engineers
- Use of online remote diagnostic tools
- Access to otherwise restricted TechConnect<sup>SM</sup> Knowledgebase content
- 24-hour, 7 days per week, 365 days per year of phone-support coverage upgrade option

For more information, contact your local distributor or Rockwell Automation representative or see <http://www.rockwellautomation.com/support>.



## System Workflow

The PlantPAx® distributed control system is an integrated control and information solution that helps manufacturers achieve Plant-wide Optimization in a wide range of industries. This single platform can run your entire plant and integrates all HMI, controls, optimization, engineering, information, and inputs/outputs into one common system architecture.

The following workflow shows the steps for how to size, design, and implement a scalable PlantPAx system. Click the links for the information that is related to each step.

1. Use the PlantPAx System Estimator (part of the Integrated Architecture® Builder tool) to size your application.

2. Manage servers and security policies.

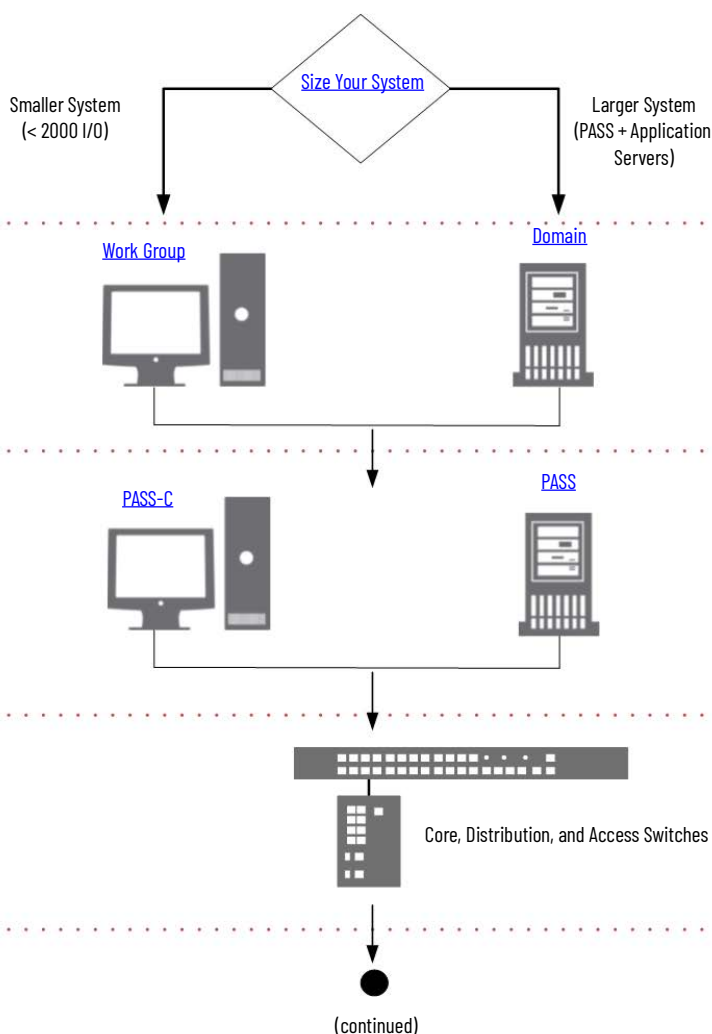
- Smaller systems = Work Group
- Larger systems = Domain Controllers

See [Process Controller Features on page 101](#) Chapter for security configurations

3. Configure the Process Automation System Server (PASS).

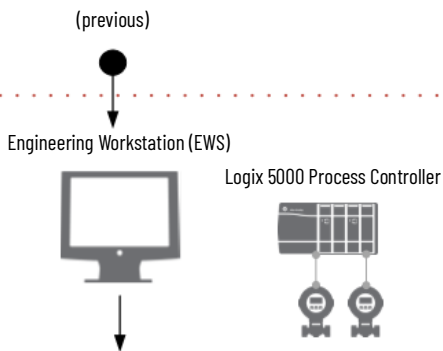
4. Design the [Network Infrastructure](#)

- Select network topologies
- Configure switches



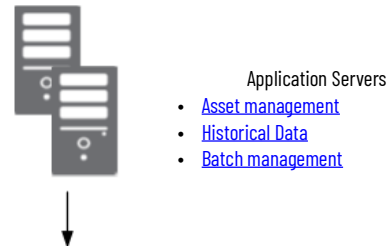
5. Develop the **Process Applications**. See [Chapter 5](#), [Chapter 6](#), and [Chapter 7](#).

- HMI displays (based on the PlantPAx graphic framework guidelines)
- Controller logic (control strategies using the embedded PlantPAx instructions and Add-On Instruction)
- Alarms



6. Add additional servers for application-specific needs.

- Smaller systems = application servers co-located on a PASS-C
- Larger systems = each application server is separate

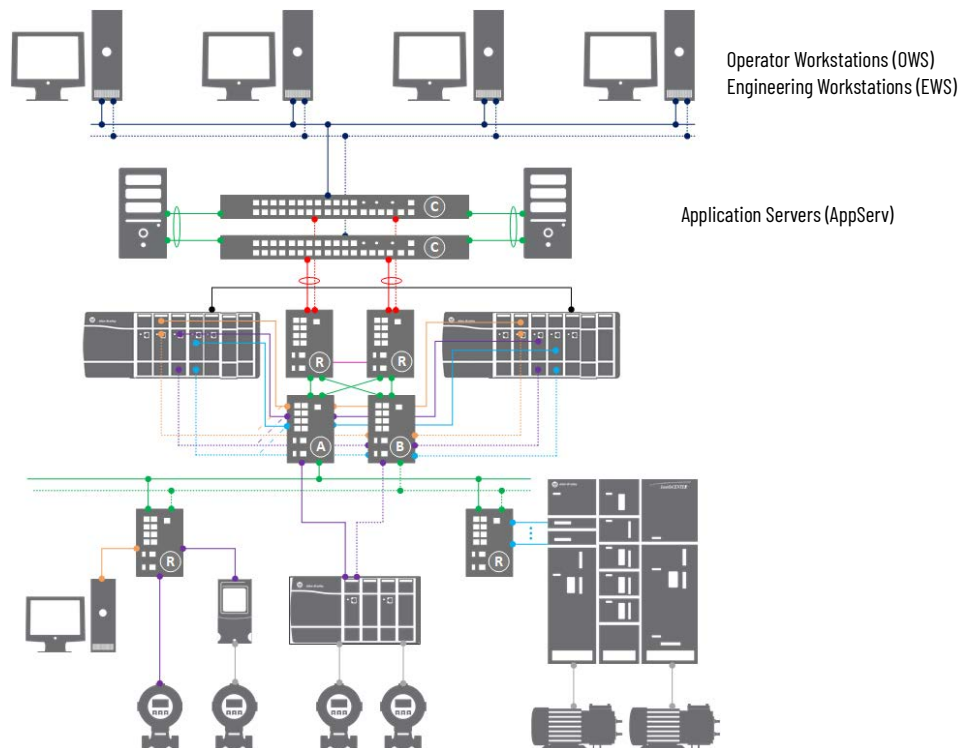


7. Deploy your application to clients.

For more information, see Rockwell Automation Library of Process Objects Reference Manual, [PROCES-RM200](#)



Example PlantPAx System



## Size Your System

Rockwell Automation includes the PlantPAx System Estimator (PSE) tool as part of the Integrated Architecture® Builder software. The PSE Estimator tool helps define your PlantPAx system and verifies that your architecture and system elements are sized properly. The PSE includes online help that can assist you as you use the tool.

The PSE employs sizing guidelines that are based on the rules and recommendations from PlantPAx system characterization to achieve known performance and reliability. The PSE focuses on the critical system attributes of a PlantPAx system so you can verify that your system does not exceed system recommendations.

Before you run the PSE, you must plan the scope of your project so that you know the I/O requirements. This could be an equipment list or project database of devices. For more information, see Chapter 5, Process Applications.

Make sure that your PSE project has no errors. As much as possible, the project should accurately represent the physical layout of the system, such as the controllers, I/O, HMI, and data servers. The I/O locations and control rooms must align with your system architecture drawings.

- If you size based on I/O counts, the PSE makes assumptions as to the devices that I/O is connected to and assigns the I/O to control strategies.
- If you know the devices, the PSE results are more accurate if you size based on control strategies.
- Make sure that the logic execution rates accurately represent the requirements of the process.
- Reserve memory and CPU utilization in the controller for auxiliary logic (such as logic for batch applications).
- Accurately account for the process and device networks that are defined in the PSE. Also account for any networks not defined in the PSE.
- Select the execution periods in the PSE appropriate for your control strategies to verify the controller sizing meets the needs of the system.

The final PSE project only accounts for devices, not the programming that automates the devices. Extra programming can include batch, recipe control, or sequencing of any other logic used in the system. Make sure to consider any extra programming so that the system does not overload the controller.

---

<b>IMPORTANT</b>	The PSE, along with the IAB, gives you a high-level Bill of Materials. You must complete a panel design to house, mount, and power the equipment for your environmental needs.
------------------	--

---

## Select the Process Automation System Server

Use the sizing results from the PSE, the number of I/O points, and the overall size of the process to determine the Process Automation System Server (PASS) that best suits your PlantPAx system.

The PASS is the main component for PlantPAx computing. A PASS supports an HMI server, displays, alarms, and data connections to controllers. A PASS contains the following:

- FactoryTalk® Directory and Activation server
- FactoryTalk® View SE HMI server
- FactoryTalk® Alarms and Events server
- FactoryTalk® Linx Data server
- FactoryTalk® Historian node interface

A PASS is scalable from a single standalone server to multiple distributed servers. You can deploy a PASS directly to a host computer or run as a virtual guest on a host server.

The sizing recommendations help determine how to best deploy the software for your PlantPAx system:

- Smaller systems (typically less than 2000 I/O points) place all system software on a consolidated Process Automation System Server (PASS-C) with multiple operator workstations

Examples include skid, station, and distributed architectures where a single PASS-C supports the system.

- Larger systems use a Process Automation System Server (PASS), in addition to individual application servers (AppServ), engineering workstations (EWS), and operator workstations (OWS).

Larger systems are typically distributed architectures with multiple PASS servers.

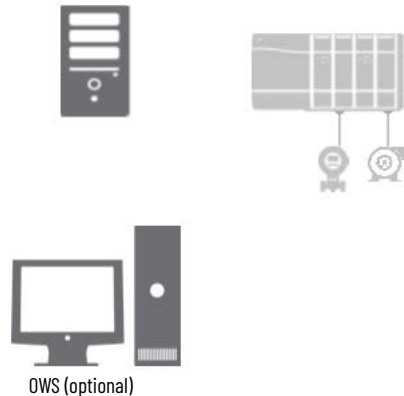
## Consolidated Process Automation System Server (PASS-C)

The consolidated Process Automation System Server (PASS-C) supports smaller systems, such as skids or stations, where the system software runs on only a few computers. The PASS-C offers reduced complexity and cost.

Figure 1 illustrates a small PlantPAx system with a PASS-C that runs all FactoryTalk software and an OWS that provides a client interface.

**Figure 1 - Smaller PlantPAx Systems with Single PASS-C Server**

- PASS-C
- FactoryTalk Directory
  - FactoryTalk Activation server
  - FactoryTalk Security
  - HMI server
  - Data server
  - Alarm and Event server
  - SQL server
  - FactoryTalk Historian server
  - FactoryTalk AssetCentre server



## Process Automation System Server (PASS)

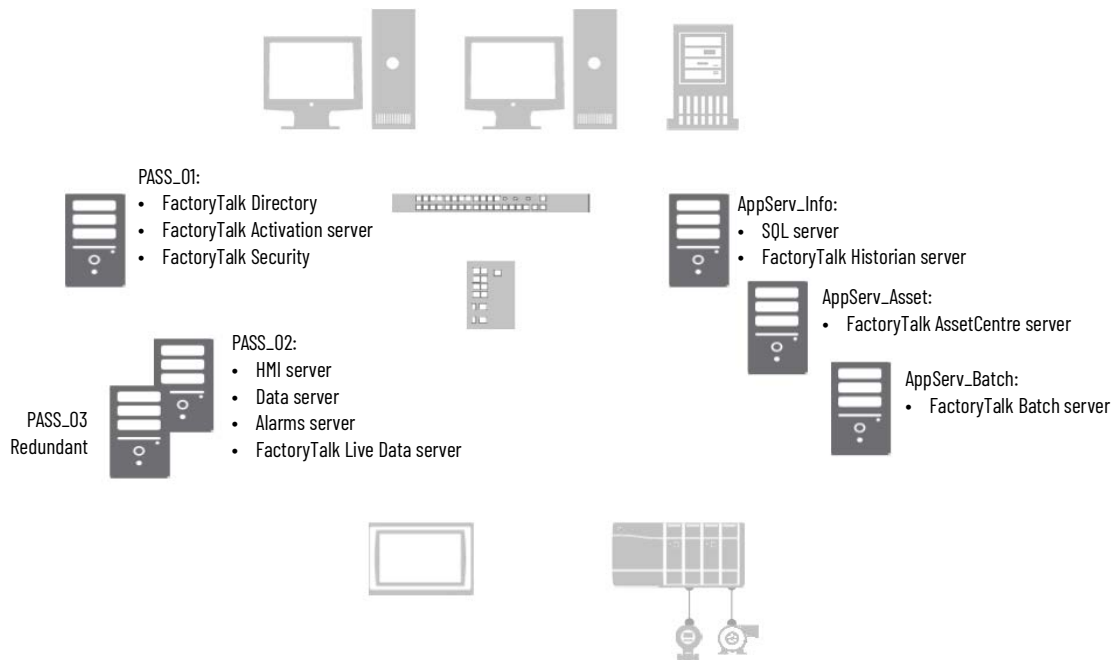
The Process Automation System Server (PASS) supports larger, distributed systems or customer-defined, critical processes. Whenever possible, use virtualization to provide greater computing efficiency, enhanced backup and recovery capability, and to offer high availability with server redundancy.

Figure 2 illustrates a larger PlantPAx system, with two PASS computers and supporting application servers, in a network distributed architecture.

- **PASS\_01** server contains the FactoryTalk Network Directory, Security configuration and often hosts FactoryTalk® Activation licenses.
- **PASS\_02** server contains FactoryTalk® View SE (HMI server, data server, and alarms server).
- An optional **PASS\_03** server could be a secondary (HMI, data, and alarms server) that would switch over if PASS\_02 was unreachable.
- **AppServ\_Info** server contains a Factory Historian SE server and a local Historian database.
- An optional **AppServ\_Info2** server could be a redundant FactoryTalk® Historian SE server, as part of a collective. In this configuration, the Historian database would be hosted on a separate computer that both could access.
- **AppServ\_Asset** server contains FactoryTalk® AssetCentre for system tracking and verification.

- **AppServ\_Batch** server contains FactoryTalk® Batch software to handle large batching processes.

**Figure 2 - Large PlantPax Systems with Multiple Servers**



## Next Steps

Once you have sized your system and decided on whether to use a PASS-C or PASS, you are now ready to install and configure the system.

---

**IMPORTANT** Please see KnowledgeBase article, [PlantPax System v5.40 Installation Notes](#) for installation steps that follow PlantPax System Guidelines.

---

Complete the following:

1. Manage Servers and Security Policies

A Domain Controller is recommended for most PlantPax systems, however, in smaller systems a Workgroup can be sufficient.

For more information, see [Chapter 2, Domain or Workgroup](#)

2. Configure the Process Automation System Server

For more information, [Chapter 3, Process Automation System Server](#)

3. Design Network Topologies and Configure Switches

The PlantPax system supports several network topologies to meet various system requirements. Each topology is based on system characterization tests to help deliver system performance.

For more information, see [Chapter 4, Network Infrastructure](#)

4. Develop Process Applications

Process applications implement control strategies that encompass control logic and HMI displays.

Execute control logic on Logix 5000® process controllers. The process controller comes with a default task model and embedded PlantPax instructions that improve design and deployment efforts. The process controller is also conformal-coated for protection



from dust and corrosive pollutants.

Deploy HMI displays for operators and maintenance personnel so they can monitor and maintain the system.

For more information, see [Chapter 5 - Process Controller Features](#), [Chapter 6 - Use ACM to Create an Application](#), and [Chapter 7 - Modifying an Existing PlantPAx System](#).

## 5. [Add Application Servers](#)

[PlantPAx application servers \(AppServ\) manage system software that is required for your application. There can be multiple servers depending on the size and structure of your application.](#)

**Table 1 - System Server Descriptions**

AppServ Elements	Description
AppServ-Asset	The asset management server acts as a centralized tool for managing automation-related asset information (both Rockwell Automation and third-party assets). The asset management application server includes capabilities for source control, audits, change notifications, reporting, security, and backup/restore. For more information, see <a href="#">Chapter 8, Asset Management</a> .
AppServ-Info (Historian, SQL)	Data management storage can include a Historian or SQL server. These two servers depend on the function that is being provided: FactoryTalk Historian software or a SQL server. For more information, see <a href="#">Chapter 9, Historical Data</a> .
AppServ-Batch	The batch application server provides comprehensive batch management, including unit supervision, recipe management, process management, and material management. The batch application server can be linked with visualization elements on the OWS and configuration clients on the EWS. For more information, see <a href="#">Chapter 10, Batch Management</a> .

## Guidelines for Servers and Workstations

Follow these guidelines to align with PlantPAx configurations.

- Install the latest software patches for all Rockwell Automation software.

The Patch File Validator utility verifies software versions on your system and installs a patch roll-up. To download, see the Knowledgebase Technote [Patch File Validator Utility](#).

- Disable power-saving for the Network Interface Card (NIC).

The NIC card connects a workstation to other devices on the network. The power-saving feature turns off the network card when not in use, which can interfere with network throughput.

- Disable power-saving for the Windows operating system.

The power-saving feature turns off Windows features when not in use, which can interfere with network throughput.

- Enable Remote Desktop Server (RDS) functionality on application servers that need remote access, such as the AppServ-EWS or AppServ-OWS.

RDS enables multiple instances of the OWS and EWS as thin clients from one server. Thin clients can run applications and process data on a remote computer to minimize the amount of information on a network.

Enable Adjust for Best Performance so that Windows features that are not in use are turned off, which yields more memory and performance for the system.

- Make sure that the user is never notified by the User Account Control.
- Disable automatic Windows updates. This helps prevent updates that haven't been qualified by Rockwell Automation from being installed on the workstation or server.

The only exception is if your organization has a controlled patching process to verify updates on a non-production system, or when a facility is non-active, to reduce the chance of any unexpected results or side effects.

## Antivirus

PlantPax recommends the installation of antivirus software on servers and workstations running industrial automation software. Although all FactoryTalk software is expected to be compatible with the antivirus protections on the market, PlantPax has tested Windows Defender and CrowdStrike antivirus packages. These antivirus packages had no adverse effect on the performance of the PlantPax Distributed Control System when used with the default configurations.

- Proper configuration, management, and updating of antivirus software is required. Any antivirus protection can impact operation if the configuration of firewalls, network threat protections, and access controls is too restrictive.

## PlantPax System ID

The PlantPax system ID is a unique identifier that helps simplify the management of your system over its lifecycle. The System ID creates a record of the installed products in your system and provides a dashboard that shows the hardware lifecycle status, notifications of updates and patches, and compatibility information. Use this information to:

- Plan spare and replacement parts to better size inventory
- Define the boundaries of the system
- Plan when and where to implement system upgrades

The system ID is **only** available if you purchase a PlantPax catalog number for the software for the first PASS in your system. The catalog number determines an activation string for the software products on the bundle. This activation string (serial number) is the system ID.

The system integrator uses an Asset Inventory Agent in a FactoryTalk AssetCentre project to generate an inventory file (.raai file). The System ID is gathered via the license number of FactoryTalk AssetCentre via FactoryTalk Activation Manager. The System Integrator registers your System ID with Rockwell Automation and provides you directions on how to access your MyEquipment portal.

## System Verification

A critical system attribute is a visible performance indicator of a system-wide characteristic. Critical system attributes do the following:

- Determine system limits
- Establish system rules
- Establish system recommendations
- Measure system element and system infrastructure performance

The following Critical System Attributes (CSA) are used to verify PlantPAx system characterization.

Systems deployed according to the Appendix C guidelines and pass the verification tool typically achieve performance characteristics matching those demonstrated in the Characterization lab.

**Table 2 - CSA Performance Indicators**

Critical System Attribute <sup>(1)</sup>	Performance
Display callup (paint time)	A noncached operating display <sup>(2)</sup> is called up by the operator and ready for operator use within 2 seconds.
Display update	The display updates control information within 1 second.
Steady state alarm time	Steady state alarms occurring at 20 per second are timestamped within 1 second.
Alarm burst time	All alarms in a burst of 2000 alarms are timestamped within 3 seconds.
Recovery	A system element returns to full operation within 5 minutes of the restoration after a failure or loss.
Operator-initiated control	Operator-initiated actions are loaded into the controller and the feedback for the operator action is within 2 seconds.
Batch server: operator action time	An operator batch command has been acted on by the controller in 1 second.
Batch server: server action time	A server batch command has been acted on by the controller in 1 second.
Batch server: controller action time	Batch status events display on the operator workstation within 1 second.

(1) CSA performance indicators are a nominal performance number. The actual system performance can intermittently deviate from the documented CSA due to system disturbances that can introduce variability in the network or operating system performance.

(2) Operating displays are defined as those intended for use by the operator to control the process. Displays intended for use by technical staff, such as those used for troubleshooting, configuration, or maintenance, including aspects of the Library of Process Objects, are excluded (as they are not required for routine operation, are used less frequently, and often contain a high volume of tags or detailed engineering content that is not relevant to day-to-day operator tasks).

For a complete system verification, use the guidelines in [Appendix C, PlantPAx Deployment Recommendations and Verification Tool](#).

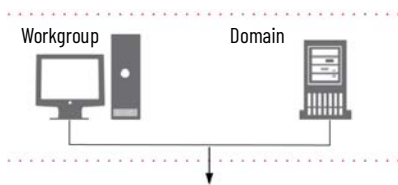
## Domain or Workgroup

PlantPAx® systems require computer management, from either a domain controller or workgroup configuration, for secure interaction.

- A Windows® domain is a collection of computers that share rules and procedures. These computers comprise a central directory database, which is the Active Directory. The sharing of network objects creates a unified base to manage users, groups, and security settings
- A Windows workgroup computer is independently configured. Workgroups are only suitable in smaller systems with 10 or fewer computers.

### Prerequisites

Following the [System Workflow](#), configure a domain controller or a workgroup, depending on the size of your system.



The PlantPAx architecture assumes that there's a Microsoft Windows forest in place to host a supervisory and/or control domain network.

- You need at least one domain controller per each parent/root/child domain.
- The domain controllers are separate computers.
- You need at least two domain controllers for fault tolerance.
- Do not load any application software on a domain controller.
- The domain controllers must be local (within the firewall) to the PlantPAx system.

We recommend that PlantPAx servers and workstations be members of a Windows domain. However, workgroups are supported for systems with 10 or fewer workstations and servers.

Configuration	Details
<b>Workgroup</b> - decentralized administration (allowed if 10 or fewer computers)	Workgroup advantages: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No domain controller (Windows Server OS) to purchase or maintain.</li> <li>• Recommended for small PlantPAx applications only where user accounts do not change often</li> </ul> Workgroup rules: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All workstation and server system elements in a single PlantPAx system must be members of the same workgroup</li> <li>• All users participating in the workgroup must be members of the Administrators group</li> <li>• Create the same set of user accounts and passwords on every computer in a FactoryTalk® View application</li> </ul>
<b>Domain</b> - centralized administration (recommended)	Domain advantages: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Centralized administration of users, policies, and security</li> <li>• High availability, when both primary and secondary domain controllers are used.</li> <li>• Recommended for larger systems to provide the best system performance.</li> </ul> Domain rules: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All workstation and server system elements in a single PlantPAx system must be members of the same domain</li> <li>• PlantPAx server system elements must not be used as domain controllers.</li> <li>• Required for systems with more than 10 computers</li> <li>• The domain controller must be its own independent computer with no other application software.</li> </ul>

For more information, see this additional resource.

Resource	Description
Windows Operating System and domain references	Microsoft® online libraries, for example Microsoft Learn, provide detailed guidelines for all aspects of the Windows and Windows domains. Examples of detailed guidelines are design, deployment, maintenance, security, disaster recovery, and so on. PlantPAx documentation provides best practice critique to certain Windows roles, features, and such where a typical PlantPAx DCS is hosted.

## Primary Domain Controller

The domain controller manages:

- IP address scheme for the computer network
- DNS and reverse lookup zone
- DHCP server
- Assigned roles, areas, and users
- Group policies

In larger systems, create a dedicated domain controller for the PlantPAx system. If your control system contains an existing domain controller, add the configuration that is recommended for a PlantPAx system.

If your company has an existing domain infrastructure, in which the PlantPAx system interacts with, please consult with your local IT resources before continuing.

Domain controller components include:

- Microsoft Windows Server operation system
- Active Directory Domain Services, DHCP, and DNS Server Roles
- Parent and child domains
- Reverse DNS Lookup Zone
- Configure DHCP server options and authorize server

Windows Workgroups are available for small systems that do not require complex security controls. Considerations when using a workgroup include:

- There are typically no more than 10 computers.
- All computers must be on the same local network or subnet.
- All computers are peers; no computer has control over another computer.
- Each computer has a set of user accounts. To sign in to any computer in the workgroup, you must have an account on that computer.
- A workgroup isn't protected by a centrally managed password.

For more information, see [Windows Workgroup](#).

## Create the Primary Domain Controller

Starting with a new installation of Windows Server 2022 operating system, sign in as local administrator. The computer is initially assigned a random 15-character computer name, which looks something like this: WIN-VPLC4SD9KWG.

1. Change the computer name to comply with your company naming guidelines. Or, in this example, to reflect it as being a process automation domain controller (PADCA, PADCB, and so forth).
2. Next assign the Windows server a fixed IP address (TCP/IPv4), within the subnet designated for the given network architecture.

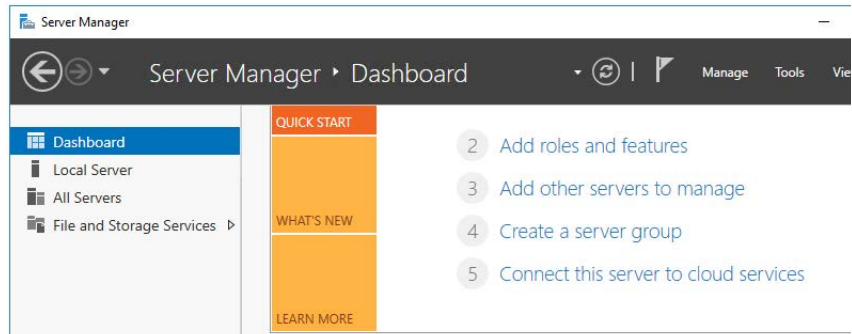
For example: 172.18.1.10



## Install Active Directory Services, DHCP, and DNS Roles

Before a Windows server can function as a domain controller, additional roles and features must be installed.

1. Launch the Server Manager.



2. From the Dashboard, click the second option to 'Add roles and features'. Use the following table to complete the configuration.

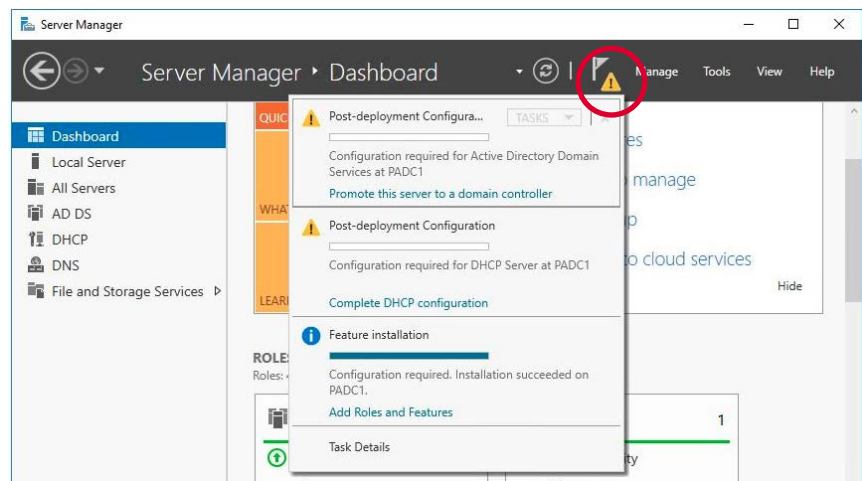
**Table 3 -**

Roles and Features Wizard	Configure
Before You Begin	Read and click next
Installation Type	Check 'Role-based or feature-based installation.'
Server Selection	Select a server from the server pool. Select the local computer PADCA in the Server Pool list
Server Roles	In the Roles dialog, select the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active Directory Domain Services</li> <li>• DHCP Server</li> <li>• DNS Server</li> </ul>
Pop up dialog. Add features that are required for Active Directory Domain Services.	Check the option to Include management tools (if applicable) and then select Add Features.
Features	Select the available .NET Framework features to be installed on the domain controller. Check 'Group Policy Management.'
AD DS	Active Directory Domain Services requires a DNS server. If selected for the Server Role, click Next.
Confirmation	Check 'Restart the destination server automatically if necessary', and select Install.
Results	Once the installation process completes, close the wizard and restart the server if necessary.

## Promote the Primary Domain Controller

On the Server Manager management console, complete these steps for the active domain computer.

1. Select the Alert flag on the header.



2. Select 'Promote this server to a domain controller'.
3. Using the Active Directory Domain Services Configuration Wizard, use the following for guidance on your deployment.

**IMPORTANT**

Take careful consideration when specifying a new root domain name.

- Understand domain naming conventions so they make sense given your system, owner, or location.
- Do not use any reserved words or characters, and use caution if adding a period, which must not be used in later versions of Windows.
- See Microsoft Support for more information on naming conventions in Active Directory for computers, domains, sites, and organizational units.

Topic	Configure
Deployment Configuration	Select to 'Add a new forest'. Specify the domain information for this operation. Enter a Root Domain Name.  Examples: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• PlantPax.Company.Local</li><li>• DCS.PlantPaxMfg.com</li><li>• PlantPax.RockwellAutomation.com</li></ul>
Domain Controller Options	Select Windows Server 2022 as the Forest functional level. Select Windows Server 2022 as the Domain functional level. Check 'Domain Name System (DNS).' Check 'Global Catalog (GC).' Enter a Directory Services Restore Mode password  <b>IMPORTANT:</b> You use this password when you configure a redundant domain controller and for any subsequent DC recovery efforts. Record this password in a safe/secure place.
DNS Options	Do not specify 'DNS Delegation options.'
Additional Options	Make sure that the domain name is used for the NetBIOS Domain Name. Accept defaults for the remaining options.
Paths	Use the default folder locations.
Review Options	Review your selection options.
Prerequisites Check	Validate all prerequisites and Install if no errors. The server restarts.

## Additional Domain Controller

If needed, create a redundant domain controller for high availability. Considerations for the redundant domain controller include:

- The redundant domain controller has a unique name and IPv4 address.
- Install the Active Directory Domain Services role and promote to domain controller.
- Add the Directory Services Restore Mode (DSRM) password.

---

**IMPORTANT** For each additional domain controller, you must have a fresh installation of Windows Server 2022 operating system before repeating the ['Create the Primary Domain Controller'](#) procedure.

---

### Create an Additional Domain Controller

To reduce disruptions during unplanned and planned downtime, add another Domain controller for backup and scalability later.

1. Change the computer name to comply with your company naming guidelines. Or, in this example, to reflect it as being a process automation domain controller (PADCB, and so forth).
2. Next assign the Windows Server a fixed IP address (TCP/IPv4), within the subnet designated for the given network architecture. For example, 172.20.1.11, and supply the DNS address from the initial domain controller: 172.20.1.10
3. Repeat [Create the Primary Domain Controller](#) steps. Name, address, and install Active Directory roles for the additional domain controller.
4. Install the 'Active Directory Domain Services' role.

### Install Active Directory Services, DHCP, and DNS Roles

Just like creating the primary domain controller, repeat these steps.

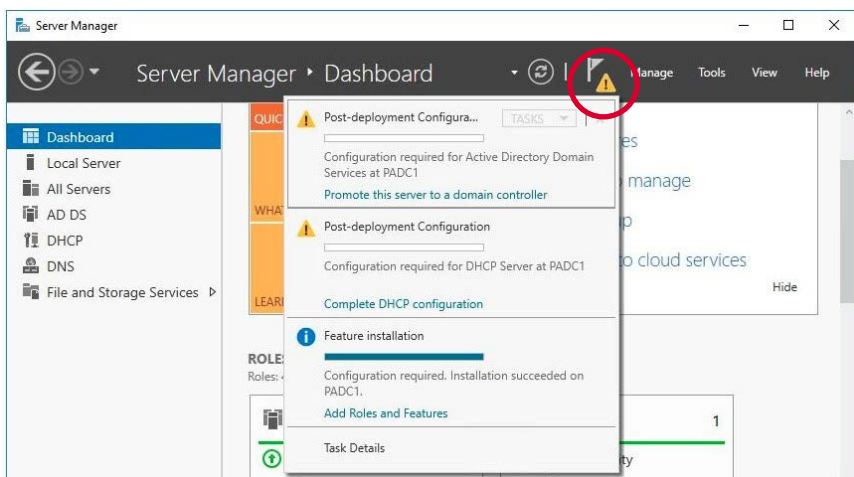
1. Install Active Directory, DHCP, and DNS roles used on creating the primary domain controller.
2. Install the 'Active Directory Domain Services' role.

See the primary domain controller instructions if you need help with using the roles wizard.

### Promote the Additional Domain Controller

On the Server Manager management console, complete these steps for the standby domain computer.

1. Select the Alert flag on the header.



2. Select 'Promote this server to a domain controller'.

3. Using the Active Directory Domain Services Configuration Wizard, use the following for guidance on your deployment.

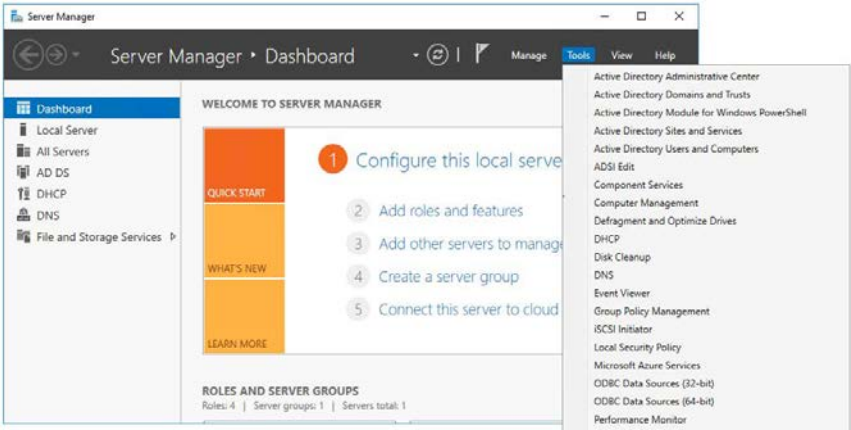
AD DS Configuration Wizard	Configure
Deployment Configuration	Select to 'Add a domain controller to an existing domain.' Select the Domain: Select the forest:
Domain Controller Options	Select Windows Server 2022 as the Forest functional level. Select Windows Server 2022 as the Domain functional level. Check 'Domain Name System (DNS).' Check 'Global Catalog (GC).' Enter a Directory Services Restore Mode password.  <b>IMPORTANT:</b> You use this password when you configure a redundant domain controller and for any subsequent DC recovery efforts. Record this password in a safe/secure place.
DNS Options	Do not specify 'DNS Delegation options.'
Additional Options	Replicate from: 'your domain name'
Paths	Use the default folder locations.
Review Options	Review your selection options.
Prerequisites Check	Validate all prerequisites and Install if no errors. The server restarts.

Configure Domain  
Controllers

On the primary and additional domain controller, now you can implement and configure the new features and roles that were added, such as: Active Directory, DHCP, and DNS.

Server Manager Tools Menu

The Windows 'Server Manager' contains a Tools menu that provides quick access to many of the management consoles required for the following configurations.

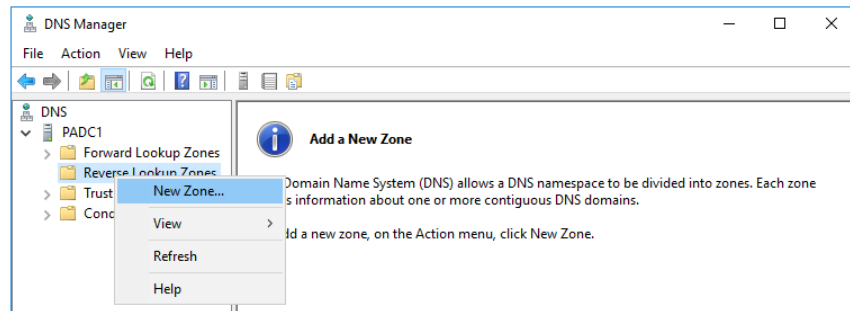


Create a Reverse DNS Lookup Zone

Reverse lookup zones are used to resolve IP addresses to host names, rather than host names to IP addresses, as is the case with forward lookup zones. You must program a special domain namespace (in-addr.arpa) as a reverse lookup zone.

On your initial domain controller, use the Server Manager to access the DNS Manager console window.

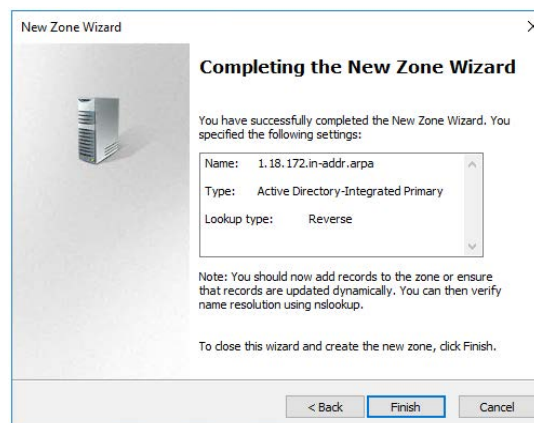
1. To access the DNS Manager, right-click Reverse Lookup Zone New Zone.



2. Configure the New Zone wizard as shown in the following table.

Basic Step	Configure
Zone Type	Select 'Primary zone.'
Active Directory Zone Replication Scope	Check 'To all DNS servers running on domain controllers in this domain <your target domain>'. For example: PlantPax.MyCompany.Local.
Reverse Lookup Zone Name	Check 'IPv4 Reverse Lookup Zone.'
Network ID	Enter the network ID portion of the IP address of the domain controller (omit the last number). For example, enter 172.20.1.
Dynamic Update	Check 'Allow only secure dynamic updates (recommended for Active Directory).'

A successful configuration displays details of the lookup zone.

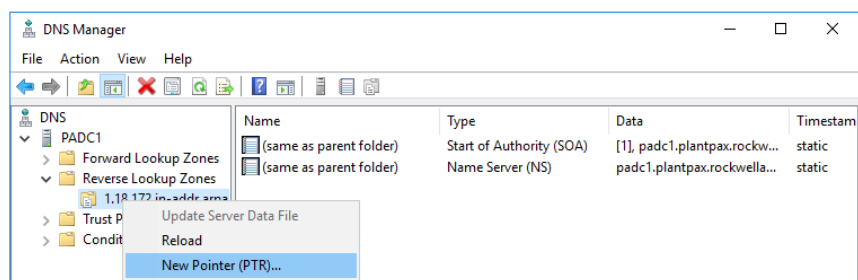


## Map the Host Name to the IP Address

Create a pointer (PTR) record that associates the DNS name to the IP address. During a search, the IP address is reversed to find the associated DNS name.

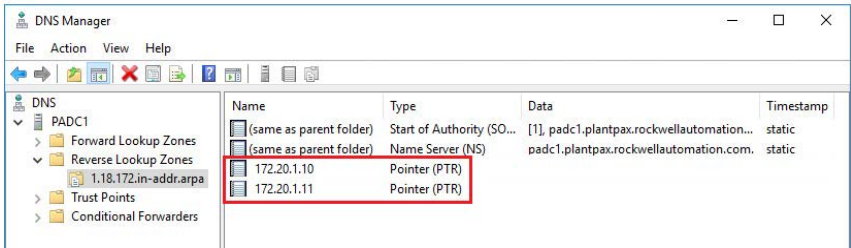
From the Server Manager, use the DNS Manager to create the New Pointer (PTR).

1. Go to Tools > DNS > Reverse Lookup Zone > Zone > New Pointer



- 2. Enter the IP address of the domain controller and browse for the host name.

Successful configuration shows pointers for both a primary and secondary domain controller.

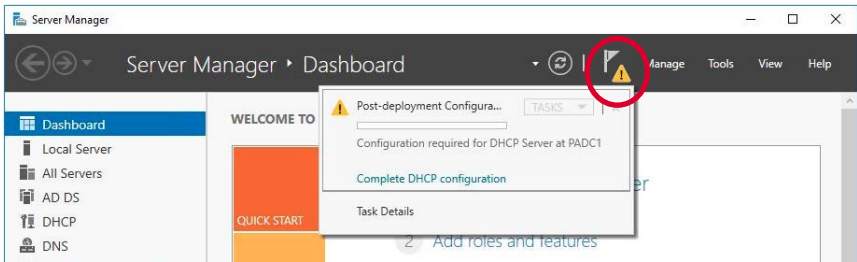


Add DHCP Features

A DHCP server is a network server that automatically provides and assigns IP addresses, default gateways, and other network parameters to client devices that request the information.

On the Server Manager management console, complete these steps to add a DHCP server.

- 1. Select the Alert flag on the header.



- 2. Click to 'Complete DHCP configuration'
- 3. Open the DHCP management console and right click IPv4 > New Scope and configure the following for the control network.

Basic Step	Configure
Scope Name	Enter a name (such as Control Network) and a description (such as PlantPax Control Network).
IP Address Range	Enter the start and end of the IP address range. Example: Start IP Address: 172.20.1.128 End IP Address: 172.20.1.254 Length: 24 Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0
Add Exclusions and Delay	Optional: Exclusions are addresses or a range of addresses that aren't distributed by the server. A delay is the time duration by which the server delays the transmission of a DHCP OFFER message.
Lease Duration	The lease specifies how long a client can use and IP address from this scope. Default values: Days: 8 Hours: 0 Minutes: 0
Configure DHCP Options	You have to configure the most common DHCP options before clients can use the scope. Select: 'Yes, I want to configure these options now'.
Router (Default Gateway)	Enter the gateway IP address. Example: 172.20.1.1
Domain name and DNS servers	Parent Domain: 'your domain name' Server IP addresses. Example: 172.20.1.10 and 172.20.1.11
WINS	Optional: Computers running Windows can use WINS servers to convert NetBIOS computer names to IP addresses.
Activate Scope	Select 'Yes, I want to activate this scope now'.

## Configure Failover

This DHCP option provides high availability by synchronizing IP address information between two DHCP servers.

1. Go to Tools > DHCP > primary domain > IPv4 > Configure Failover and configure the following.

Basic Step	Configure
Configure Failover	Click Add Server and locate the secondary domain controller. Example: PADCB
Create New Failover Relationship	<p>Select 'Hot standby' for mode.</p> <p>You can also choose to require authentication (a shared secret password) to secure communications between failover partners.</p> <p>Enter a 'Shared Secret', which can be passwords, pass phrases, or random numbers.</p>

2. Repeat [step 1](#) to configure a second DHCP server.

A successful configuration displays details of the failover configuration.

## Create Roles, Areas, and Users

There are required roles for a PlantPax system. Areas and users depend on your application. Assign users to Roles and Areas.



See FactoryTalk Security Application Technique, publication [SECURE-AT002](#), for more information.

Name areas based on access, for example:

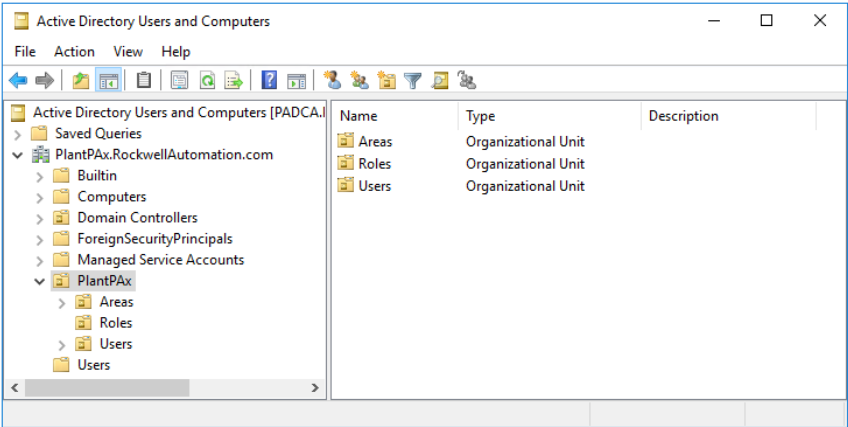
- Area01\_Advanced (engineering access)
- Area01\_Basic (non-engineering access)

Replace 'Area01' with the name of your process area.

From operators and maintenance personnel to engineers, the domain controller manages groups in the Active Directory. Use the Server Manager to configure the roles, areas, and users.

1. Use the Windows Server Manager Tools menu to launch the 'Active Directory Users and Computers' console.
2. From your domain, right-click, select New> Organizational Unit and type the name PlantPax.

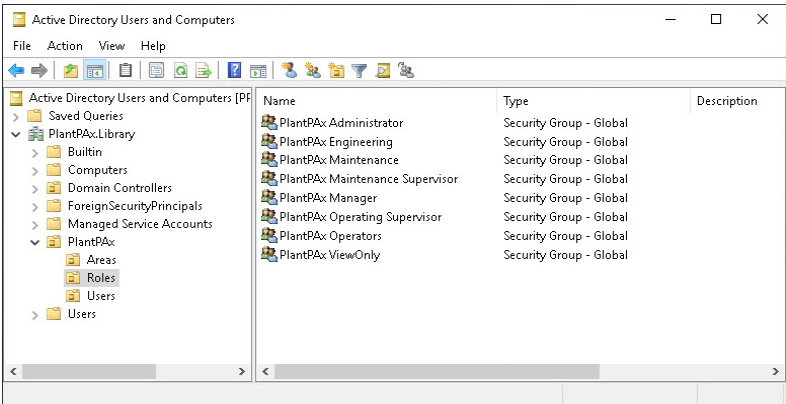
3. Under the PlantPax group, right-click and select New > Organization Unit to create folders for Users, Areas, and Roles.



Add Groups for Role-Based Security

Roles define different security access for areas of a plant. We recommend the following roles:

- PlantPax Operators
- PlantPax Operating Supervisor
- PlantPax Maintenance
- PlantPax Maintenance Supervisor
- PlantPax Manager
- PlantPax Engineering
- PlantPax Administrator
- PlantPax View Only
- HMI Approver



Add Groups for Area Based Security

We recommend the following areas that are based on a group:

- **Basic** – Allows access to non-engineer functions, such as Maintenance, Operator, on process library faceplates.
- **Advanced** – Allows access to engineering modifications on process library faceplates.

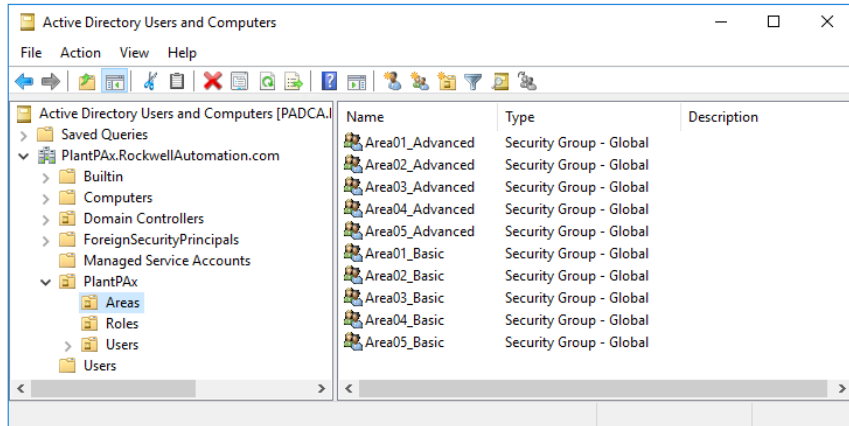
**IMPORTANT** Even though the examples show generic area names, such as Area01, we recommend that you use more specific names, such as Packaging, or Molding. And create two types for each area – Basic and Advanced—for each area.



Name areas based on access, for example:

- Area01\_Advanced (engineering access)
- Area01\_Basic (non-engineering access)

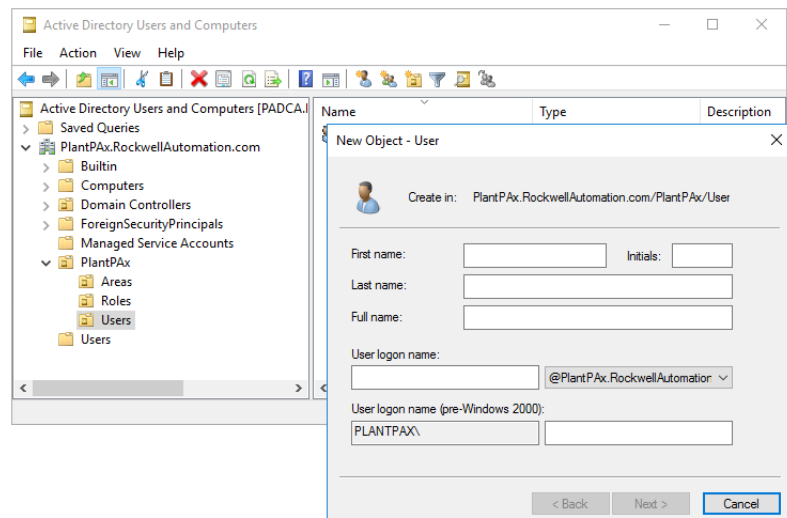
Create as many areas as needed for the system.



## Assign Users

Users are unique to each system.

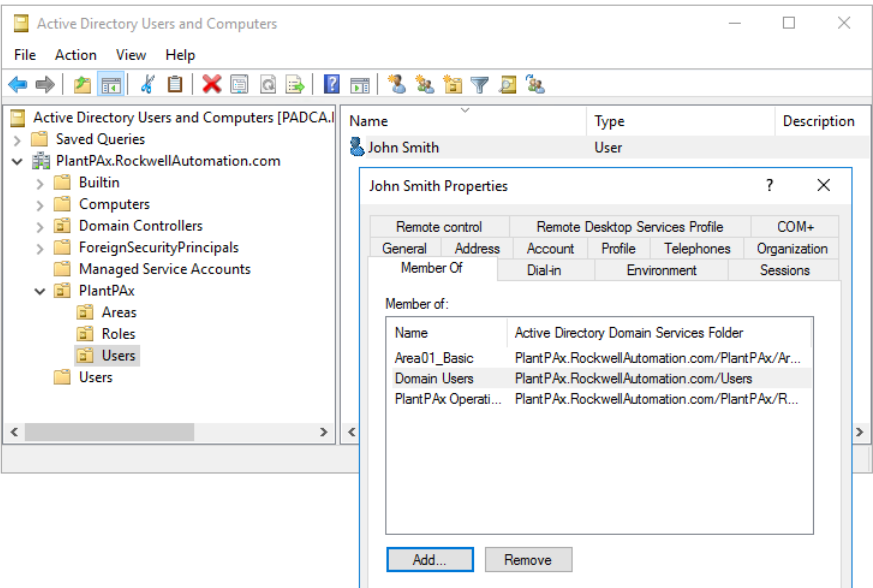
1. Create users and assign them to the Member tab on the Properties for the associated Role.



2. Once the user name and password are created, configure the following properties as shown in the table for each user.

On This Page	Configure
Properties	Select the domain on the 'Member of' tab
Select Groups	Type Area as the object name and select the appropriate Area

The successful configuration of a user shows both their domain and area.



**Configure Group Policy Management**

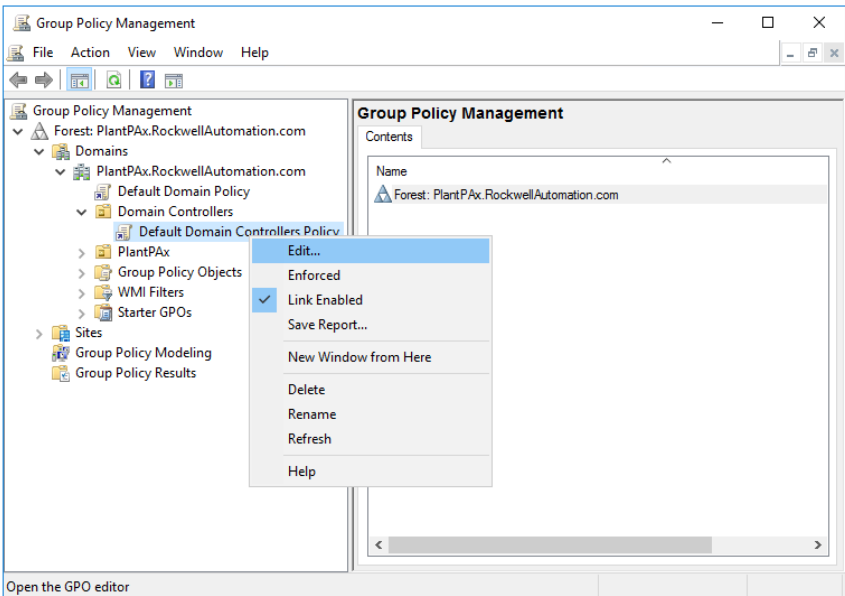
Group policies help reduce the maintenance and complexity when you add new users and computers into the PlantPax system. The group policies determine what users can and can't do, such as password maintenance or to restrict folder access. The same approach applies for how to define server maintenance.

The settings that are outlined are baseline recommendations. Individual business, IT, and security requirements could require additional policies.

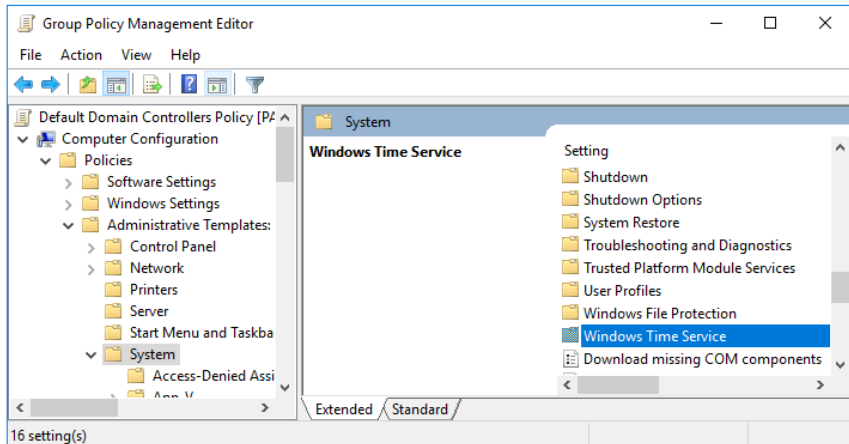
**Configure the Windows NTP Client**

The domain is responsible to propagate and enforce the clock time to the domain computers. Use the Server Manager to configure the Windows NTP client so that the domain controller is in sync with the Windows NTP server.

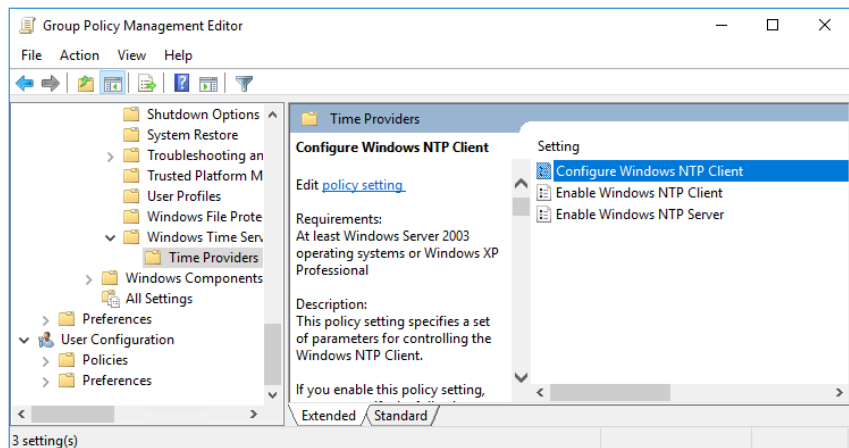
- 1. Go to Tools > Group Policy Management.
- 2. Select the Default Domain Controllers Policy to edit.



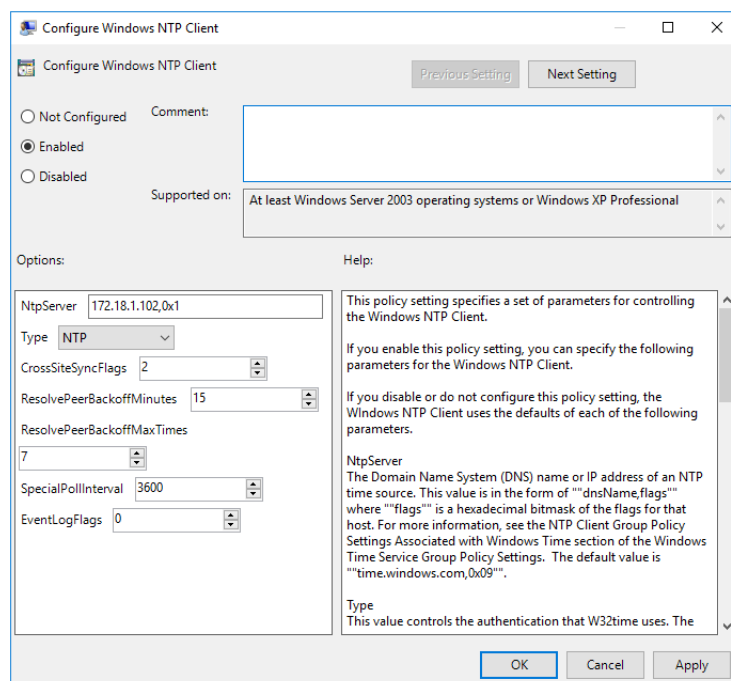
3. In the Group Policy Management Editor, select Policies > System > Windows Time Service.



4. Go to Time Providers > Configure Windows NTP Client.



5. Select 'Enable' and configure the 'Options' with your NtpServer: IP address and use Type: NTP.

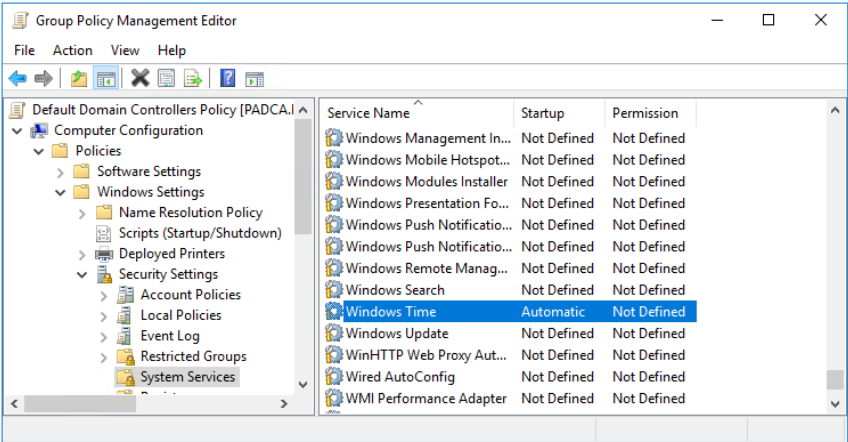


- 6. Go to Time Providers > Enable Windows NTP Client and check 'Enabled.'

Configure Windows Time Service

Enable the NTP server to initiate automatically upon startup.

- 1. In the Group Policy Management Editor, go to Policies > Windows Settings > Name Resolution Policy > System Services > Windows Time.

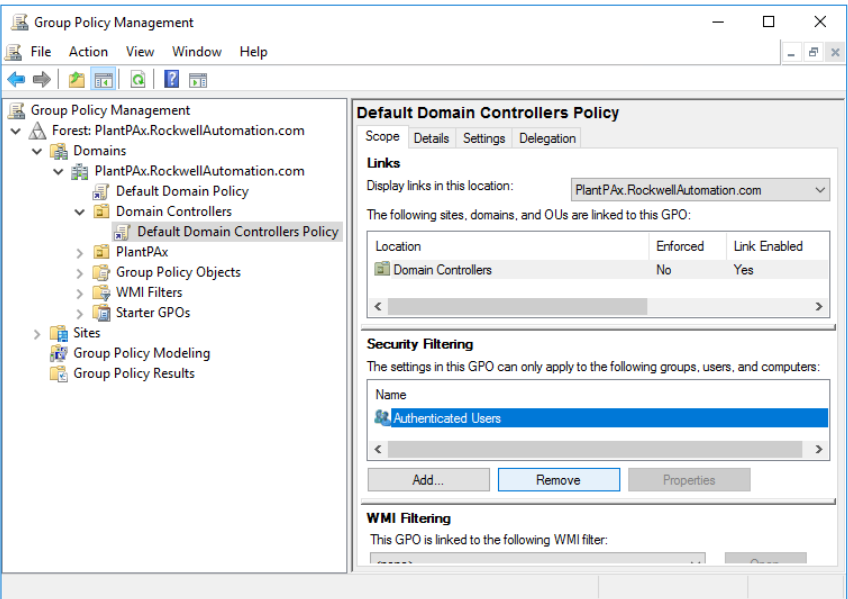


- 2. In the Windows Time Properties, select the following:
  - Check 'Define this policy setting.'
  - Check 'Automatic' for service startup mode.

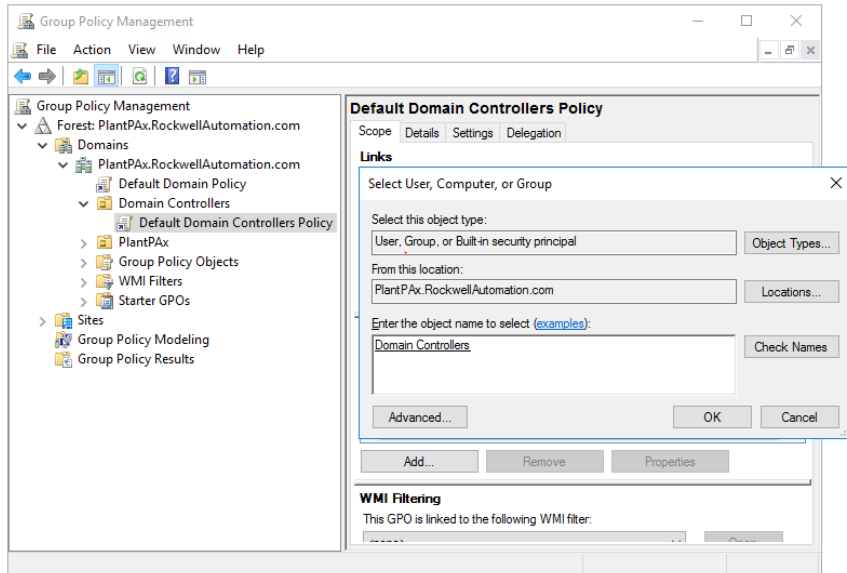
Enforcing the Domain Controller Policy

Policy enforces the domain controllers to use the NTP server settings.

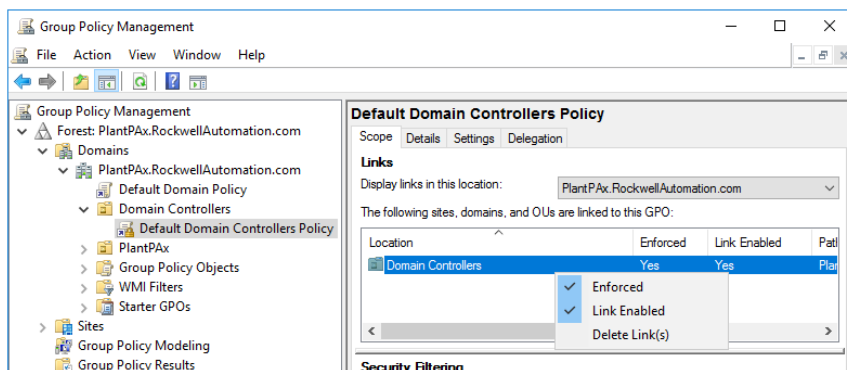
- 1. In the Group Policy Management Editor, select the Default Domain Controllers Policy and remove 'Authenticated Users' from Security Filtering.



2. Add Domain Controllers from the PlantPax domain to Security Filtering.



3. Right-click Domain Controllers and select Enforced.



## Configure Group Policies

These group policies are recommended:

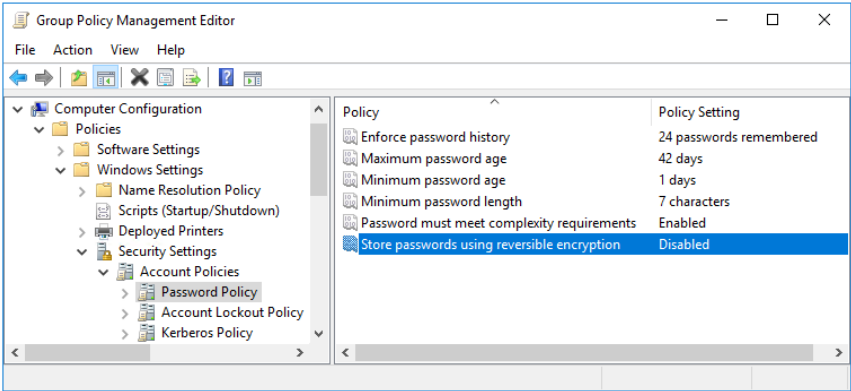
- Password strength
- Account lockout
- Kerberos
- Interactive login

Use the specifications for your PlantPax system to set the values for these policies. If you configure any of these policies, you **must** enforce the policies on the domain controller for them to take effect.

## Configure the Password Strength Policy

This policy makes sure that security settings are enforced to help protect the system from unauthorized users upon entering the system.

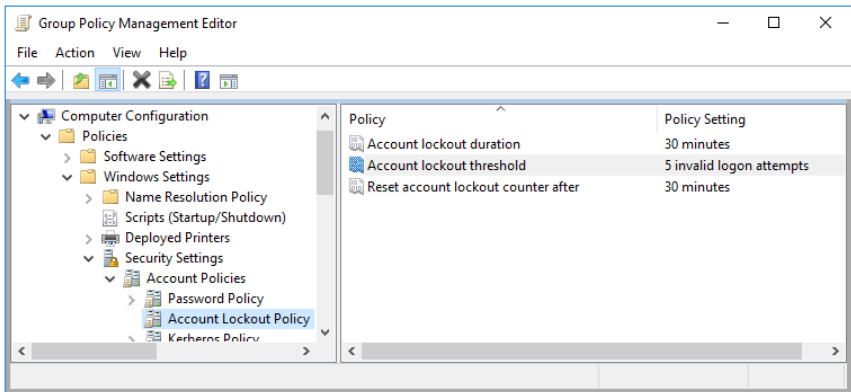
1. In the Group Policy Management Editor, select the Default Domain Policy to edit and select Password Policy.



**Configure the Account Lockout Policy**

This policy configures the number of password attempts and how an administrator resolves a user lockout situation.

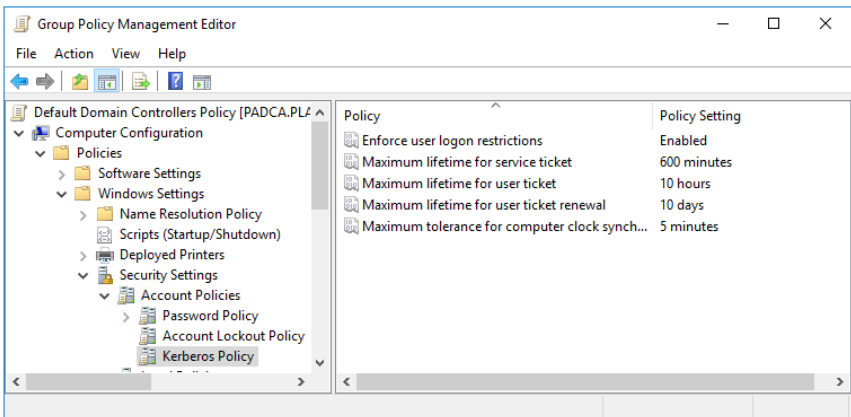
1. In the Group Policy Management Editor, select the Default Domain Policy to edit and select Account Lockout Policy.



**Configure the Kerberos Policy**

This policy helps administer network authentication.

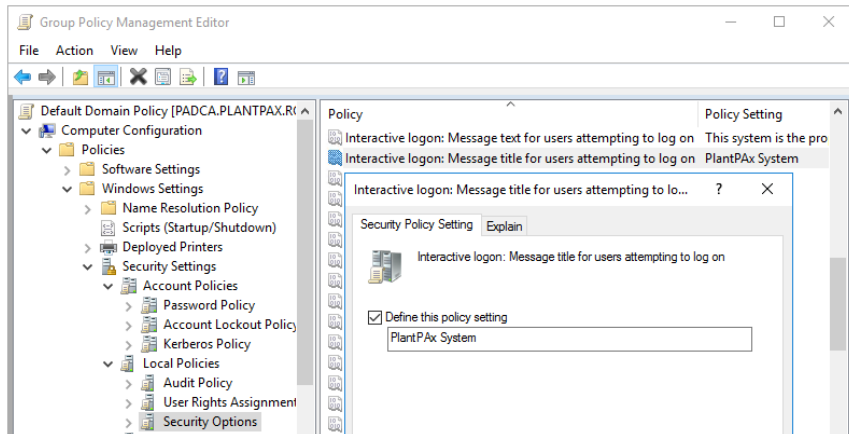
1. In the Group Policy Management Editor, select the Default Domain Policy to edit and select Kerberos Policy.
2. Enable the default options or modify if desired.



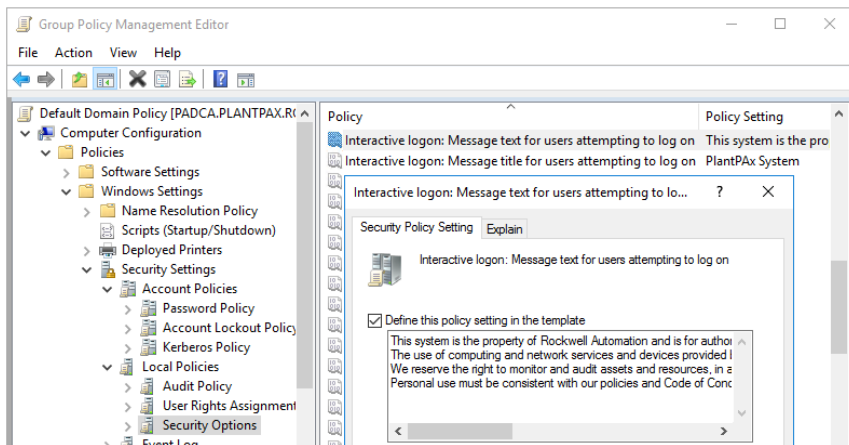
## Configure the Interactive Logon Policy

This policy configures a warning message to users of the consequences for misusing company information.

1. In the Group Policy Management Editor, select the Default Domain Policy to edit and select Interactive Logon Policy.
2. In the tree configuration of the Group Policy Management Editor dialog box, Go to Computer Configuration > Policies > Windows Settings > Security Settings > Local Policies.
3. Select the Security Options folder and select the Interactive login: Message Title option. Enter the name of the group that receives the interactive message.



4. Select the Interactive Logon: Message text option. Enter the message that appears to users during login.



## PlantPax Users Policy Object

You can create a PlantPax Users Policy to restrict privileges and site access. Recommended policies include access for the following:

- USB drive
- Portable device
- Software

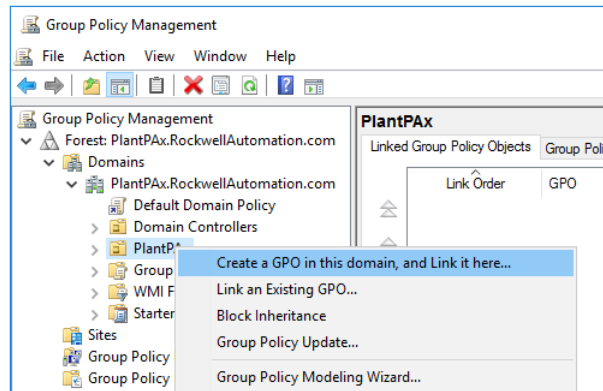
Use the specifications for your PlantPax system to set the values for these policies. If you configure any of these policies, you must enforce the policies on the domain controller for them to take effect.

For how to configure the recommended FactoryTalk® Security settings, see Configure System Security Features User Manual, publication [SECURE-UM001](#) and [Appendix G - Security Policies](#).

## Create the PlantPAX Users Policy Object

You can select a group and set restrictions. For example, a group of users can't use USB drives as a layer of system security.

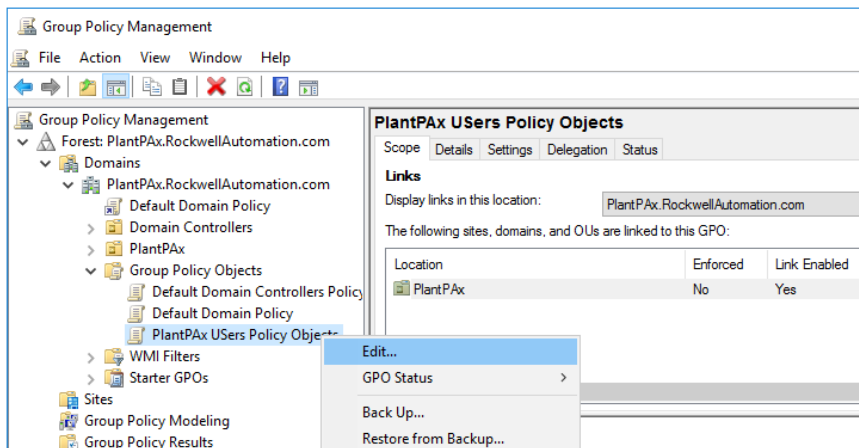
1. In the Group Policy Management Editor, select the PlantPAX Domain and select 'Create a GPO in this domain and link it here...'



## Configure the USB Drive Policy

A group of users can be restricted from using a USB drive.

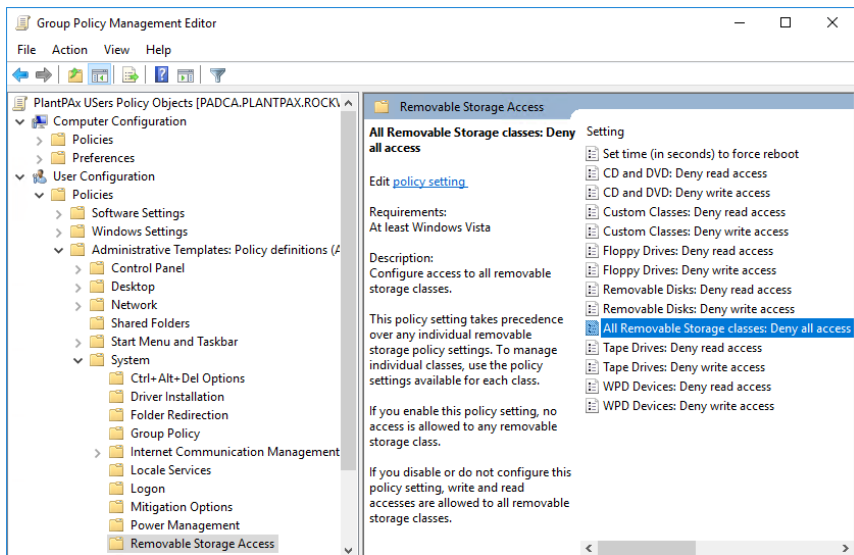
1. In the Group Policy Management Editor, select the PlantPAX Users Policy Object to edit and select Removable Storage Access.



2. Go to Computer Configuration > User Configuration > Policies > Administrative Templates > System.
3. Select Removable Storage Access and choose All Removable Storage classes: Deny all access.



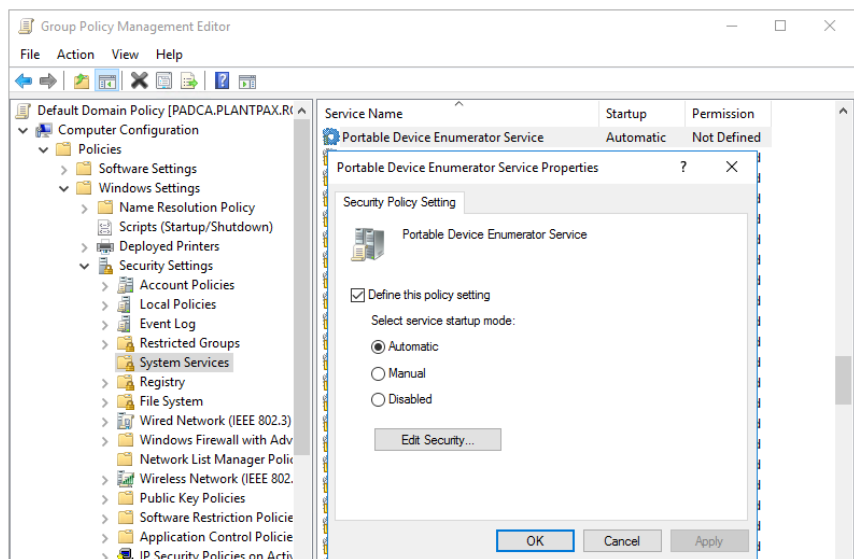
## 4. Select Enabled.



## Configure the Portable Device Enumeration Policy

This policy enforces Group Policy Objects for connected mass storage devices.

1. In the Group Policy Management Editor, select the PlantPax Users Policy Object to edit and select Portable Device Enumeration Policy.

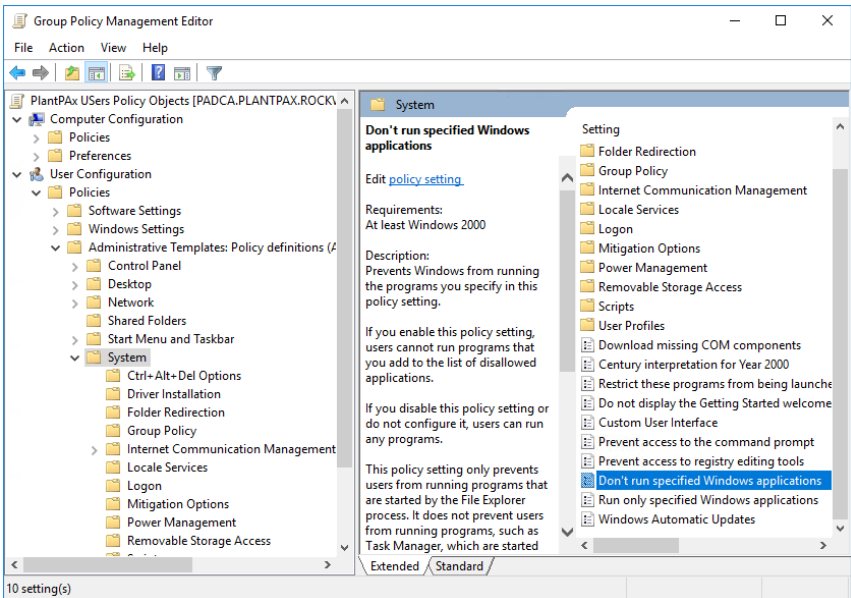


## Configure the Software Access Policy

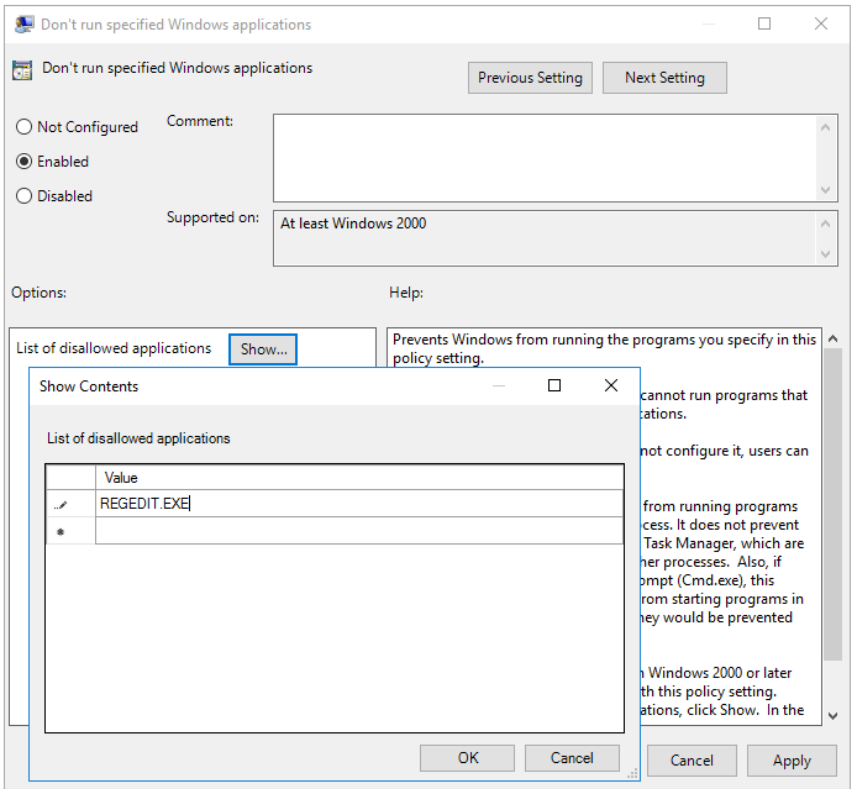
This policy helps protect against the use of non-approved system software.

1. In the Group Policy Management Editor, select the PlantPax Users Policy Object to edit and select Software Access Policy.
2. Go to Computer Configuration > User Configuration > Policies > Administrative Templates.

3. In the System folder, select 'Don't run specified Windows applications.'



4. Select Enabled, Show, and then type any application software to create an access restriction. Example: Regedit.exe



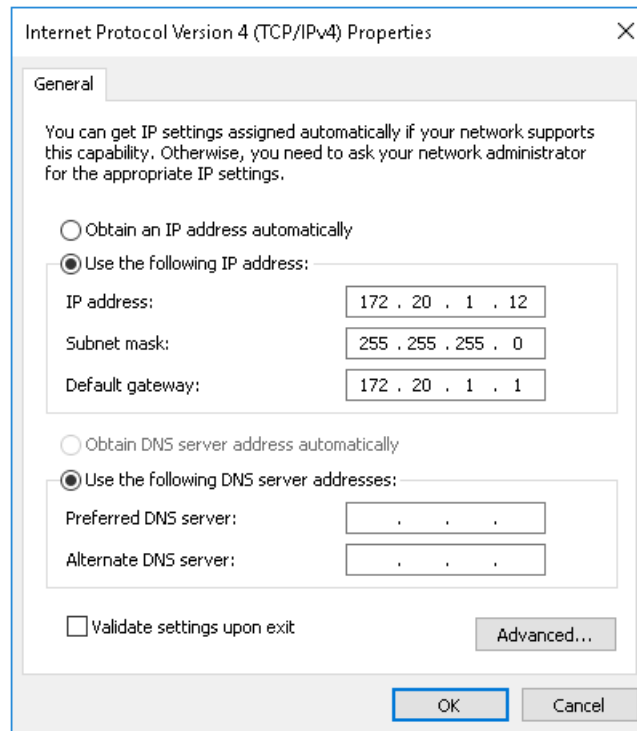
Windows Workgroup

For small PlantPax systems, you can use a Windows Workgroup where complexity and security controls are kept to a minimum. An example might be a PASS-C server for a self-contained process unit or packaged equipment that is built by an Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM); commonly called a process skid.

## Assign Static IP Addresses

Without a domain controller, there's no DHCP server to assign IP addresses. The workgroup requires all workstations and servers to contain manually set (static) IP address assignments.

1. On each workstation, access the Network Adapter TCP/IPv4 properties and assign a unique IP address.




---

**IMPORTANT** Stratix® managed switches can be set to operate as a DHCP server and provide DHCP persistence. See the switch user manual if using DHCP for workgroup computers.

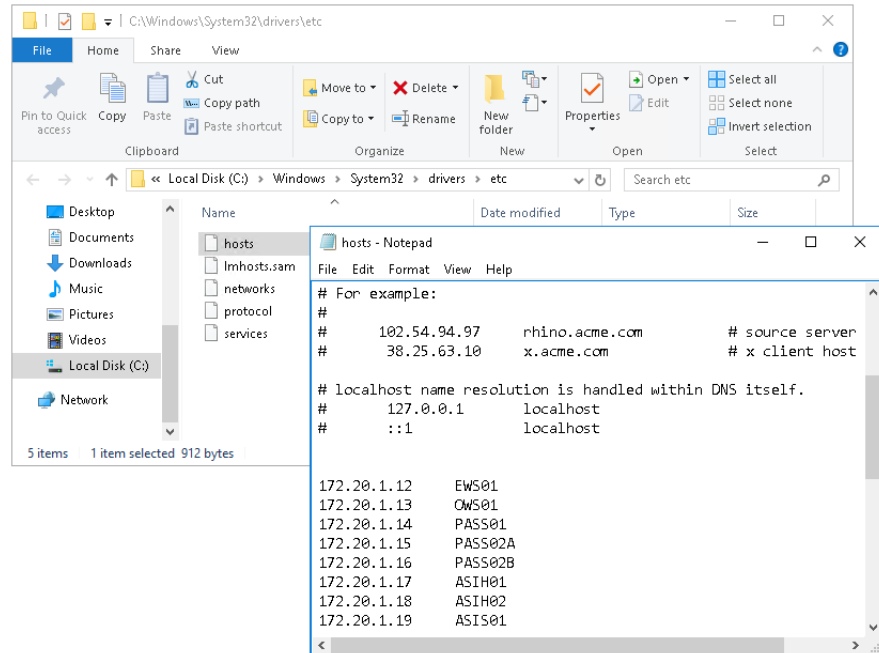
---

## Map Computer IP Addresses

Without a domain controller, there's no DNS server to provide name resolution, meaning the computers can only communicate by IP address. To communicate by using a computer host name, mapping is required. All Windows computers contain a HOSTS plaintext file that maps IP addresses to host names.

1. Locate the HOSTS file in C:\Windows\System32\Drivers\etc directory and specify to open with Notepad.

2. Create a list of your workgroup computers, starting with each IP address followed by the corresponding computer name. Use a tab to delimit space between each mapping.



3. Copy the HOSTS file to all other computers in the workgroup.

---

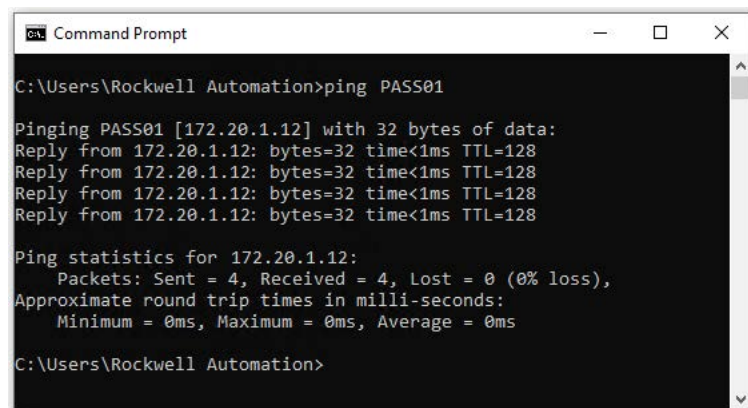
**IMPORTANT** Anytime a change or new computer is added, all workgroup computers must receive the updated HOSTS file.

---

## Test Communication by Host Name

You can verify that each workgroup computer responds to a PING command from another workgroup computer, referencing the remote computers host name.

1. Open a Command Prompt and type PING followed by a host name.  
For example: CMD: PING PASS01
2. Verify that a reply from the remote computer is returned with the correct IP address.



## Create Local Users

While not required, increased security is achieved when using local user accounts of varying privilege.

Use the most restrictive account to help protect from security threats that could otherwise use elevated privileges to exploit the operating system. Only sign in an administrative account as needed.

1. Open Computer Management. (Run > compmgmt.msc)
2. Select Local Users and Groups in the left window pane.
3. Right-click the Users folder and select New User.
4. Enter a user name, password, and select 'password never expires'.
5. After the user is created, right-click user and select Properties.
6. Go to the Member Of tab and Add the local group as desired.

### Local Users and Groups Example

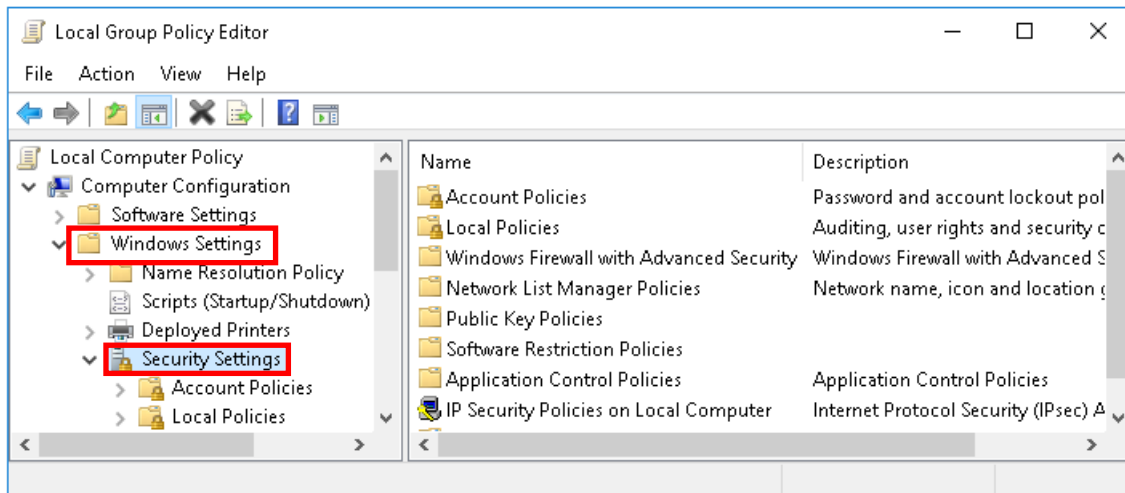
User Name	Local Group
PlantPax Engineering	Administrators
PlantPax Operators	Power users

**IMPORTANT** Local user accounts must be duplicated on all workstations with shared credentials for seamless access.

### Create Local Security Policies

While not required, if you have various levels of local users you can set local security policies that the more restricted accounts will not be able to modify.

1. Login to the highest privilege local account with administrator access.
2. Open the Local Group Policy Editor (Run > gpedit.msc).
3. Expand Computer Configuration and go to Windows Settings > Security Settings.



4. Expand Computer Configuration and go to Windows Settings > Security Settings > Account Policies.

You can configure a lockout policy for several failed login attempts of unauthorized users.

5. Expand Computer Configuration and go to Windows Settings > Security Settings > Local Policies.

You can configure User Rights Assignment and Security Options. You can limit actions such as who can shut down the computer, change the system time, access the computer from a network, and so on.

**IMPORTANT** Local Policies must be duplicated on all workstations for seamless operation. This can be tedious and is why a domain controller with the ability to push domain policies is recommended over a workgroup.

## FactoryTalk DeskLock Utility (Optional)

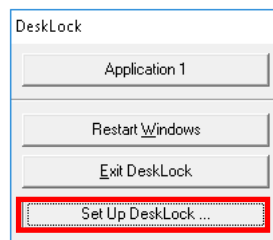
DeskLock is a FactoryTalk® View tool for the Windows operating system. DeskLock provides control options for smaller systems that do not use policy or domain management.

Use the DeskLock tool to:

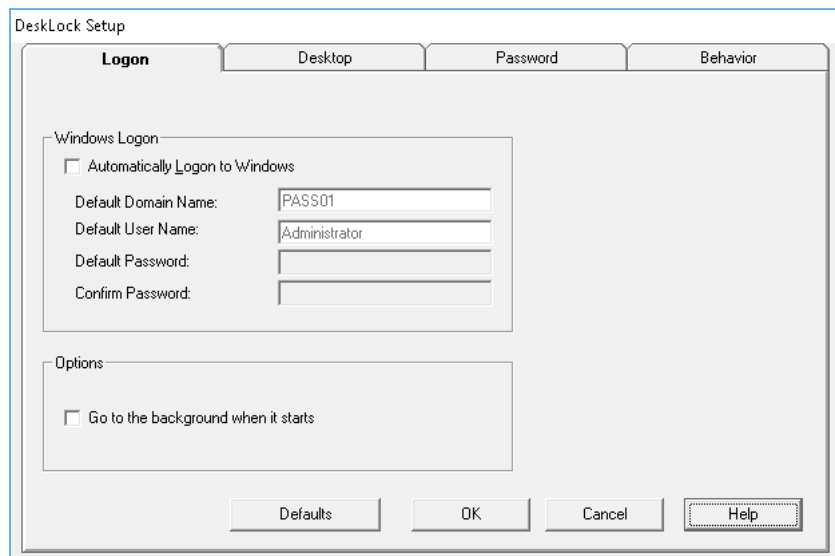
- Choose setting so that an operator using FactoryTalk View can't gain access to functionality not expressly configured by the system administrator.
- Hide items on the Windows Explorer desktop, including the Taskbar and Start menu.
- Disable key combinations that are used to perform specific Windows actions, such as accessing the Task Manager.

Launch the DeskLock tool on computers with FactoryTalk View SE, FactoryTalk® Studio, server, or client components.

1. Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk View > Tools > DeskLock
2. Select Set Up DeskLock.



3. Explore each of the four tabs (Logon, Desktop, Password, Behavior).



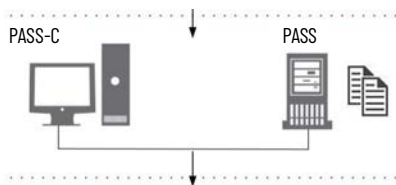
4. Use the Help button for information on how to configure and use the DeskLock utility.

## Process Automation System Server

The Process Automation System Server (PASS) can be configured after joining an active domain or workgroup. The configuration steps described here cover larger system implementations.

This is the recommended workflow to configure a Process Automation System Server. For experienced users, each step outlines requirements. For more detailed information, follow the referenced links.

### Prerequisites



Following the [System Workflow](#), configure a PASS or PASS-C, depending on the size of your system. Your results from the PSE determine the size of the system.

- The PASS server or servers must be deployed before doing the procedures in this section.
- PASS servers can be configured as redundant for HMI servers, data servers, and/or alarm servers.

### FactoryTalk Components

The PASS hosts the FactoryTalk® Services Platform that provides a set of common services (such as diagnostic messages, health monitoring services, and access to real-time data). FactoryTalk software products and applications depend on these services in a PlantPAX® system.

FactoryTalk Service Platform components for the PASS include:

Component	Description
FactoryTalk Administration Console	<p>FactoryTalk Administration Console is a standalone tool for developing, managing, and securing multiple FactoryTalk View applications. On the Administration Console, delete old computer names from the FactoryTalk Directory. By deleting old computer names, the FactoryTalk Directory contains current computer names only. Deletions also make sure that applications do not attempt to communicate with computers that are no longer in the FactoryTalk Directory.</p> <p><b>Required:</b> Yes; a prerequisite on every PlantPAX® computer containing FactoryTalk software.</p>
FactoryTalk Directory	<p>FactoryTalk Directory provides a central lookup service for a PlantPAX system so all definitions do not have to exist in a single physical project file. References that are saved by FactoryTalk Directory are used by FactoryTalk-enabled products and FactoryTalk services to locate definitions when they're needed. It allows clients to locate key configuration information such as system organization, server locations, and policy information. FactoryTalk Directory provides a common address or phone book of factory resources that are shared among FactoryTalk-enabled applications in a distributed system.</p> <p><b>Required:</b> Yes</p>
FactoryTalk Activation	<p>FactoryTalk Activation services provide a secure, software-based system for activating Rockwell Software® products and managing software activation files.</p> <p><b>Required:</b> Yes; a prerequisite on every PlantPAX computer containing FactoryTalk software. Activation file access is required for continuous use of FactoryTalk software otherwise a 7-day grace period is started.</p> <p><b>Placement:</b> A PASS is recommended location to bind and place the license files. Other servers and workstations can refer to the PASS location for floating or time borrowed activations. For more robust applications, activate each server locally to remove the dependency of remote license access.</p>

Component	Description
FactoryTalk® Security	<p>FactoryTalk Security centralizes user authentication and authorization at the FactoryTalk Directory. The users and groups are similar in their management to Active Directory and can be linked to the Active Directory. This centralized authentication and access control allows for a 'single user sign in' experience when using FactoryTalk enabled products.</p> <p><b>Required:</b> Yes</p> <p><b>Placement:</b> Same server that is hosting the FactoryTalk Directory.</p>
FactoryTalk® Diagnostics	<p>FactoryTalk Diagnostics collects and provides access to activity, status, warning, and error messages generated throughout a FactoryTalk system.</p> <p><b>Required:</b> Yes</p> <p><b>Placement:</b> Yes; a prerequisite on every PlantPAx computer containing FactoryTalk software.</p>
FactoryTalk Alarms and Events	<p>FactoryTalk Alarms and Events provides system-wide alarm monitoring and control centralized at the FactoryTalk Directory.</p> <p><b>Required:</b> Yes</p> <p><b>Placement:</b> Alarm and Events Server on the PASS</p>

## System SQL Server Deployment

Before configuring the PASS server, confirm that the SQL Server deployment has been completed and is accessible via the PASS server. This is required to ensure that Alarms and Events can be recorded in the SQL Database. Additionally, Batch server and Asset Management server will also create a DB in the SQL Server. PlantPAx requires the following SQL features to be enabled to ensure that data recording is possible.

### Instance Features

- Database Engine Services
- SQL Server Replication
- Full Text and Semantic Extractions for Search
- Data Quality Service
- Analysis Services

### Shared Features

- Data Quality Client
- Client Tools Connectivity
- Integration Services
- Client Tools Backwards Compatibility
- Client Tools SDK
- Documentation Components
- SQL Client Connectivity SDK



## Configure the PASS

Configure the PASS for standalone or distributed connectivity.

- Specify the location of the FactoryTalk Directory
- Configure the FactoryTalk Directory
- Run the Windows® Firewall Configuration Utility
- Configure FactoryTalk Activation servers

### Specify FactoryTalk Directory Location

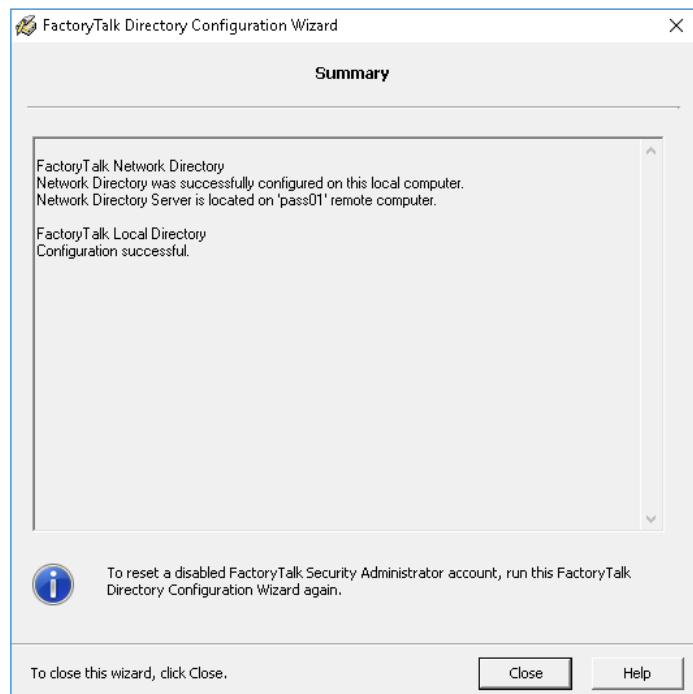
Every computer must know whether to use its own local directory or to use a network directory on a remote computer. Do the following for each computer in the system.

1. Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Tools > FactoryTalk Directory Server Location Utility and specify the location.
  - For a PASS-C, specify the LOCAL directory and for each OWS client specify the PASS-C directory.
  - For a distributed system, specify the server that will host the directory. Repeat for all other servers and workstations in the distributed system.
2. Restart each computer after specifying its directory location.

### Configure the FactoryTalk Directory

Once you specify the FactoryTalk Directory location and restart the computer, configure the FactoryTalk Network Directory or Local Directory on each computer.

1. Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Tools > FactoryTalk Directory Configuration and select Network or Local or both, depending upon the perspective of the computer being configured.
2. Enter the Windows Administrative account user name and password.
3. In the Summary, verify that the configuration was successful.



### Run Firewall Configuration Utility

The FactoryTalk Services Platform includes a Windows Firewall Configuration Utility (WFCU) to provide firewall port exceptions to incoming and outgoing processes that require remote access. Run this utility on every computer that has installed FactoryTalk software.

1. Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Tools > Windows Firewall Configuration Utility. And process-related exceptions are displayed at the bottom.
2. If needed, save a list of exceptions for future reference and the WFCU activity is logged to C:\ProgramData\WFCU\WFCULog.txt
3. If no exceptions are needed, click Exit.



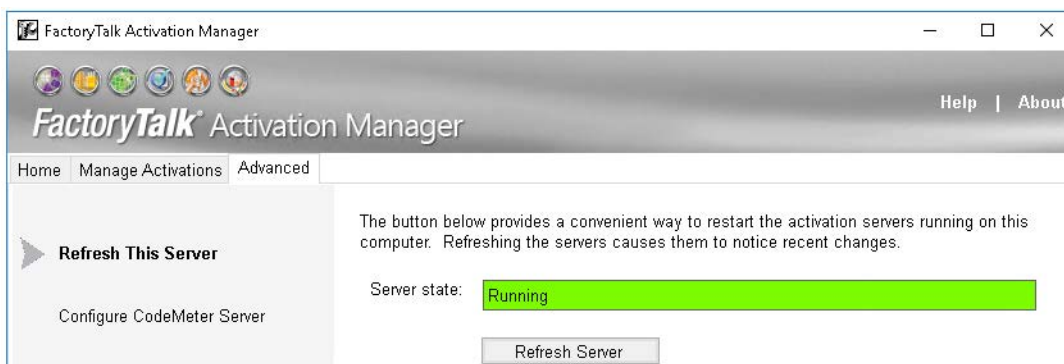
It's recommended to enable Windows Defender Firewall notifications to inform you of any additional applications that would be blocked.

## Configure FactoryTalk Activation Servers

The FactoryTalk Activation Manager (FTAM) software is a prerequisite that is automatically installed on every PlantPAx computer that contains FactoryTalk software.

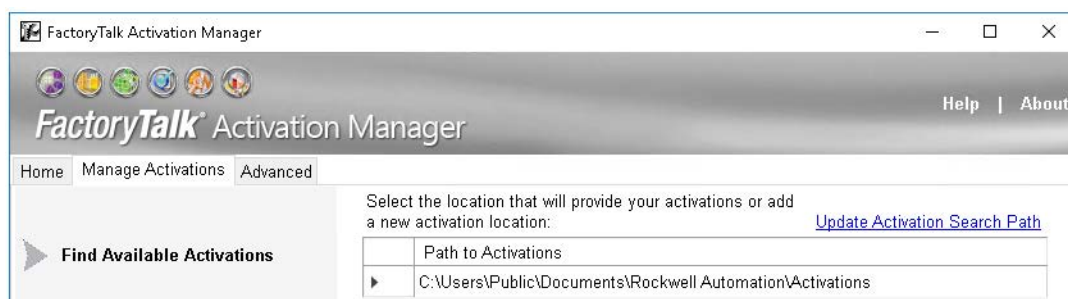
For a PlantPAx system, the computer that hosts the FactoryTalk Directory, such as the PASS, hosts the license files.

1. Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Activation > FactoryTalk Activation Manager and select new activations, as needed.
2. After all new activations are generated, go to the Advanced Tab and click 'Refresh Server'.



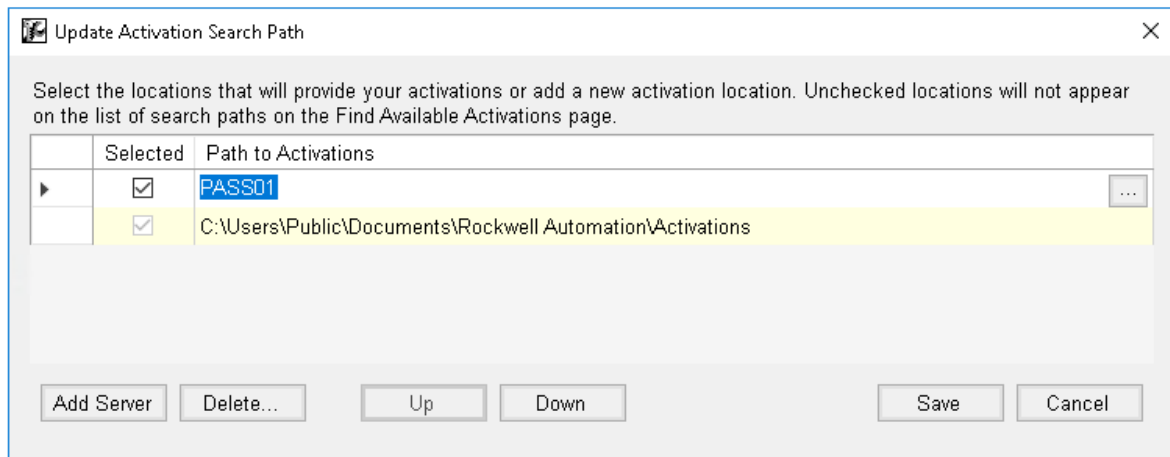
Configure all other computers to reference the PASS location.

1. Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Activation > FactoryTalk Activation Manager and select Update Activation Search Path.



2. Select Add a server and enter the name or IP address of the license server (PASS01).

3. If there are no local activations, move PASS01 to the top as the first location to search for activations.



4. Update the search path on all computers that require an activation.

## Configure Servers on the PASS

A FactoryTalk View SE application is required to create the three major server components that run on the PASS.

- HMI server – Stores HMI project components, such as graphic displays, and provides these components to Operator Workstations (OWS) upon request.
- Data server – Accesses information from the process controllers and provides information to servers and workstations in the PlantPAx system.
- Tag Alarm and Event server – Provides alarm information from the controllers and servers to each OWS upon request.

The number of servers and how they're configured can impact the speed of system communication. Servers can be simplex or redundant.

- A single HMI server is sufficient for most PlantPAx systems.
- Multiple data servers are common. By locating each in separate areas, tag lookup performance is improved as an HMI server knows specifically which data server to browse and can ignore others.

The following steps provide basic server creation on a single PASS. Large distributed systems can require multiple servers running remotely in a more elaborate architecture.

### Create a New HMI Project

This section provides a method to create your own project and then import the components from the PlantPAx Graphic Framework.

1. Go to FactoryTalk® View Studio software > New and select an application type of View Site Edition.

The application types are Local Station, Network Station, or Network Distributed.



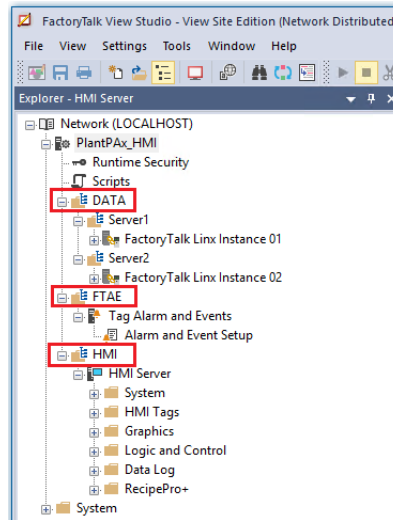
PlantPAx systems are Network Distributed applications, even when server components are consolidated on a standalone computer (PASS-C). The exception is a process skid, where a Local Station application provides sufficient functionality.

You now have a default application.

## Define Areas

Areas organize and subdivide applications in a network directory into logical and physical divisions. Areas can be created for different processes within a manufacturing facility or to group each server type. This name hierarchy can be visible externally, such as in the historian or alarm database.

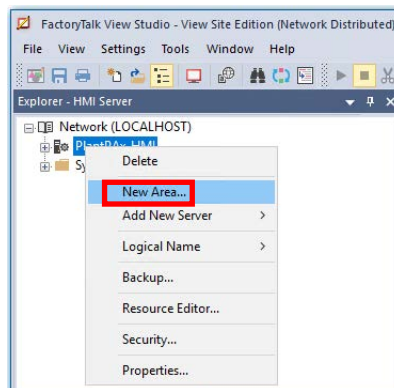
Server assignment helps optimize performance. To help prevent unpredictable search results, do **not** insert a server into the application root path. Each server must be in its own area.



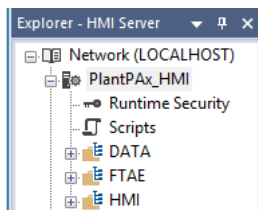
- Alarm area folder stores the Alarm and Event server.
- Data area folder contains the data server.
- HMI area folder stores FactoryTalk® View tags and displays.

Use the Explorer window in FactoryTalk View Studio to add areas.

1. Go to the application and select New Area.



2. Create three Areas, one for each of the three main server types (DATA, FTAE, and HMI).



### IMPORTANT

Once you create an area, you can't change the name. You must delete and recreate if you need to modify the name.

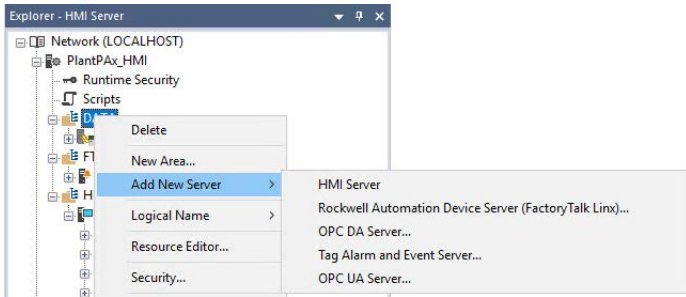
Do not use spaces in the Area name to achieve proper HMI functionality.

Do not put multiple servers in the root location of an area.

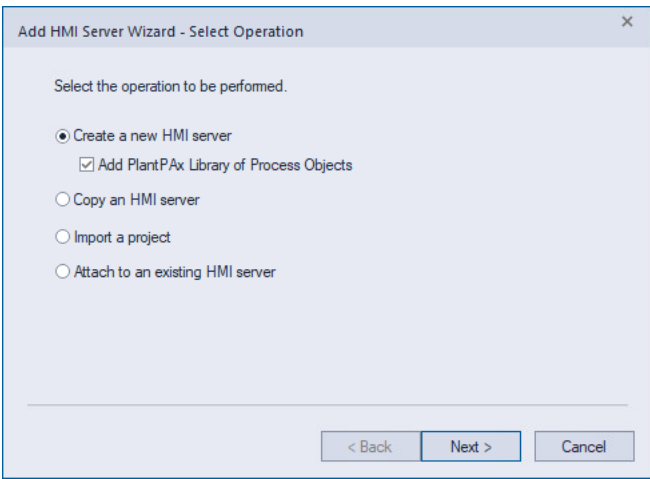
## Add an HMI Server

All PlantPax systems require an HMI server.

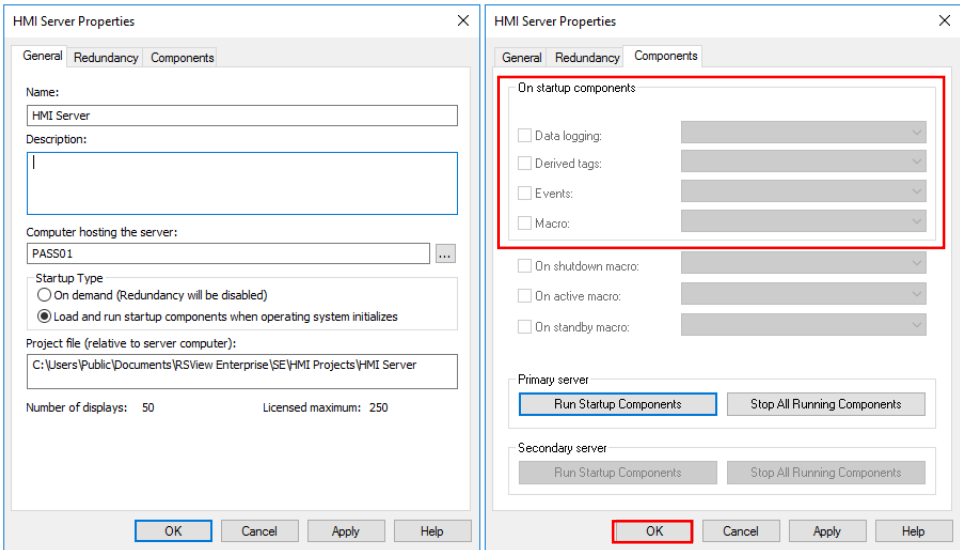
1. Go to the HMI area and select Add New Server> HMI Server. Each area can only contain one HMI server.



Starting with FactoryTalk View SE 13.0, developers have the ability to add all process library components to a new or existing HMI server.



2. Enter a name, startup type, and specify the computer that hosts the service (for example, PASS01).
3. (optional) Click the Redundancy tab to specify a secondary PASS.
4. Select startup items on the Components tab, such as data logging, derived tags, events, and macros.



5. Click OK.

## Add a FactoryTalk ViewPoint Server

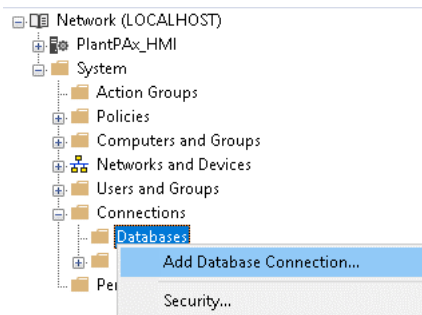
PlantPAx supports FactoryTalk Viewpoint for ISA-101 Level 1 through 3 displays. Level 4 displays represent the Library of Process Objects faceplates which are not supported in FactoryTalk ViewPoint. PlantPAx recommends that any FactoryTalk ViewPoint applications be designed as Read-Only for displays that are Level 1 through 3 per the ISA-101 standard. If there are more than 10 ViewPoint clients in a PlantPAx system, then a dedicated FactoryTalk ViewPoint server is recommended. An Operator Workstation Application Server can support up to 10 ViewPoint clients. The total number of visualization clients on a single Operator Workstation Application Server should not exceed 10. For example, a single server could include 5 Viewpoint clients and 5 FactoryTalk View SE clients for a total of 10 visualization clients.

FactoryTalk ViewPoint is included as part of the installation of FactoryTalk View. Review the FactoryTalk ViewPoint Quick Start Guide [FTVP-QS002](#) for more information.

## Add the Alarms and Events Database

The data servers and the alarms and events servers can log alarm and event history to a SQL database. You must create this database before you can enable logging to the servers.

1. Use either FactoryTalk View SE Studio or the FactoryTalk Administrative Console to add a database connection.



2. Configure the database connection properties.
  - Type: FactoryTalk Alarm & Events History Database
  - Definition name: (new or existing)
  - Server that hosts your SQL database: (local or remote)
  - SQL database authentication

- Database name (new or existing)

Database Connection Properties

Database type: FactoryTalk Alarm & Events History Database

Definition name: FTAE

Server name\instance: AppServ-SQLMSSQLSERVER

Log in to database

Authentication: SQL Authentication

User name: sa

Password: .....

Database name: PlantPAX\_FTAE

Test Connection Succeeded

OK Cancel Apply Help

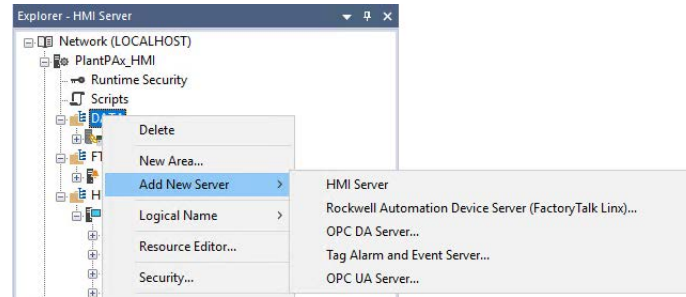
If the database does not exist, you get a prompt when you click OK. Click YES to create the database.



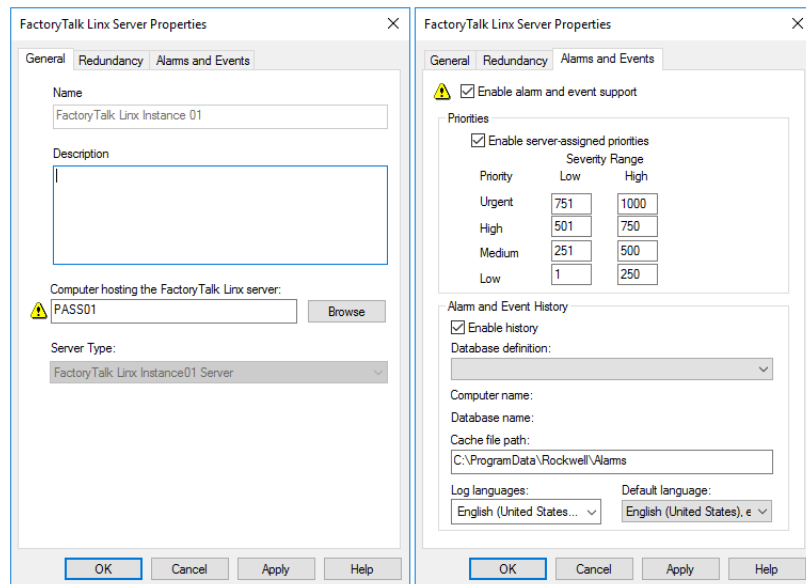
## Add a Data Server (FactoryTalk Linx)

A FactoryTalk Linx data server is required to communicate to controllers.

1. Go to the Data area and select Add New Server > Rockwell Automation Device server (FactoryTalk® Linx).



2. Enter a name, startup type, and specify the computer that hosts the service (for example, PASS01).
3. Create a first or second instance Data server (FactoryTalk Linx), each in its own area.
4. Enter a name, startup type, and specify the computer that hosts the service (for example, PASS01).
5. (optional) Click the Redundancy tab to specify a secondary PASS.
6. On the Alarm and Events tab, enable alarm and event support and enable history.
7. Enable server-assigned priorities and configure as required.
8. Enable history to configure alarm and event logging.

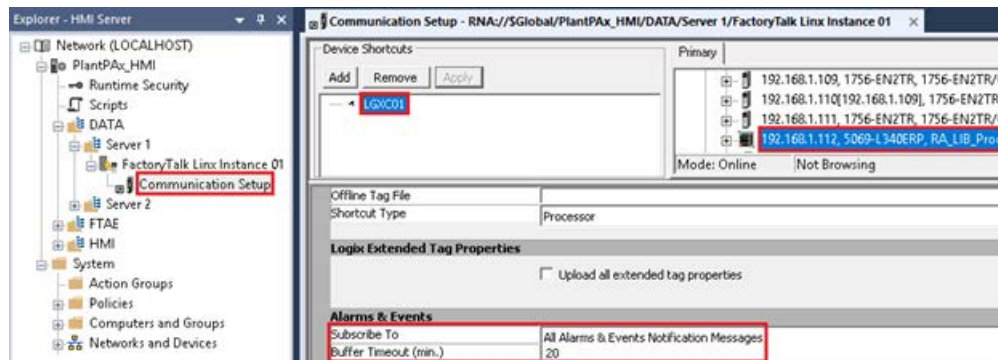


### IMPORTANT

FactoryTalk Linx Instance02 is an independent service on the Windows operating system that is designed to allow applications to increase tag, data, and client capacities without impacting the performance of the first instance (also an independent service). Instance02 is not supported on FactoryTalk View SE local station and is limited to an Ethernet driver.

For information on verifying the data server, see [Appendix C, PlantPAx Deployment Recommendations and Verification Tool](#).

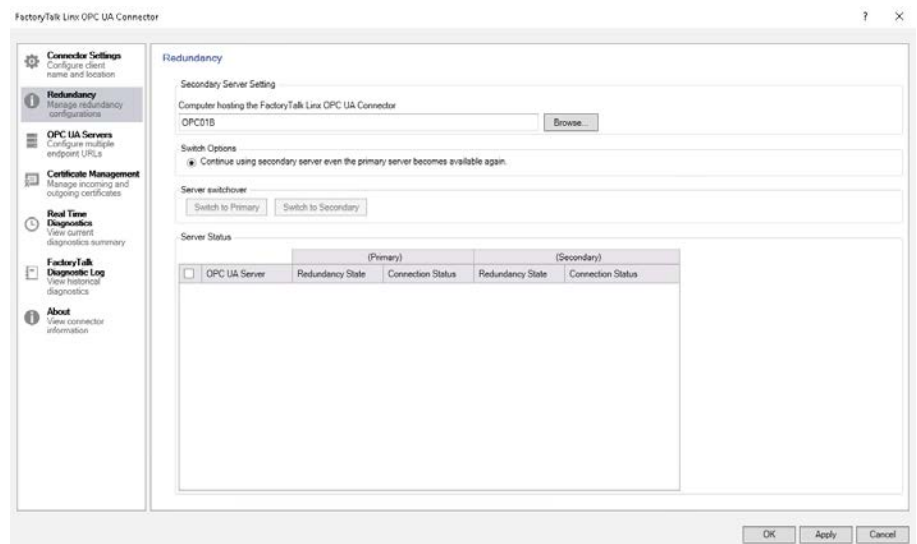
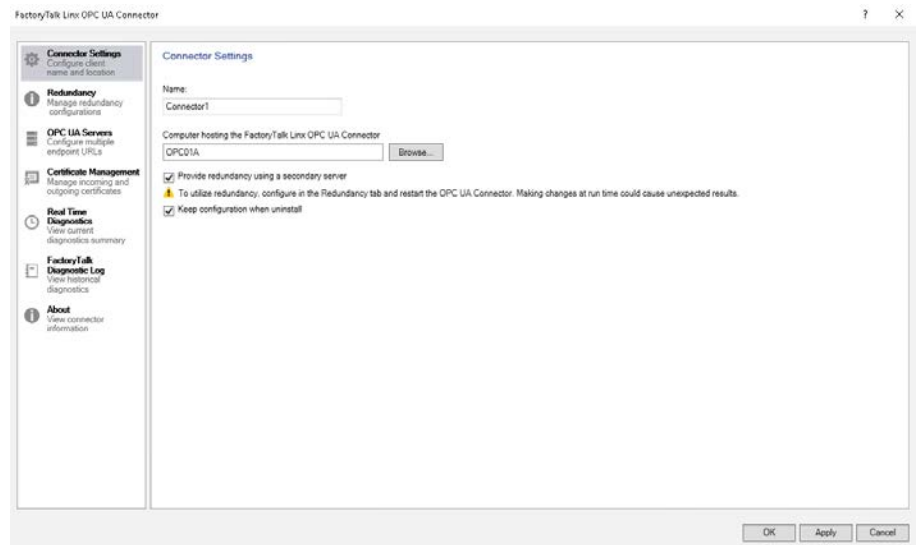
Once the data server is created, configure device shortcuts to controllers and subscribe to the data server. Select All Alarms & Events Notification Messages to support Logix tag-based alarms and automatic diagnostic messages.

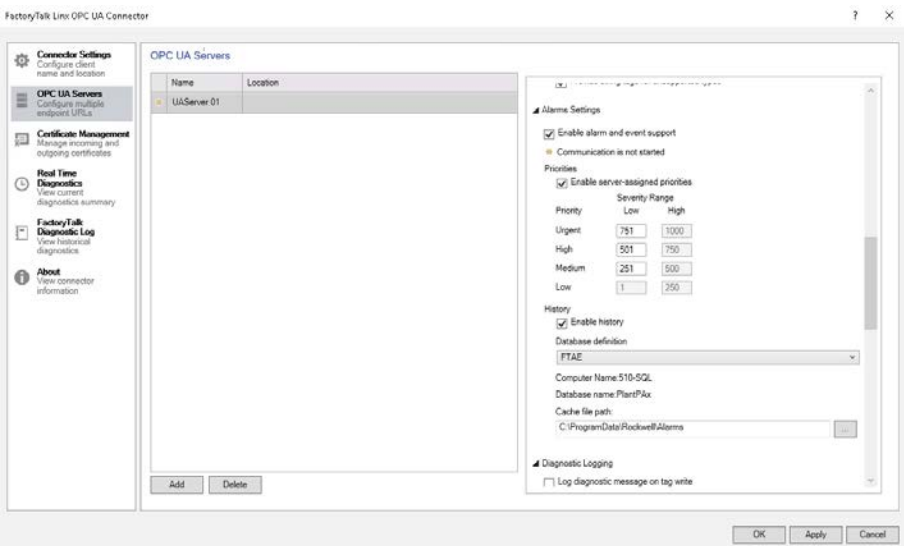
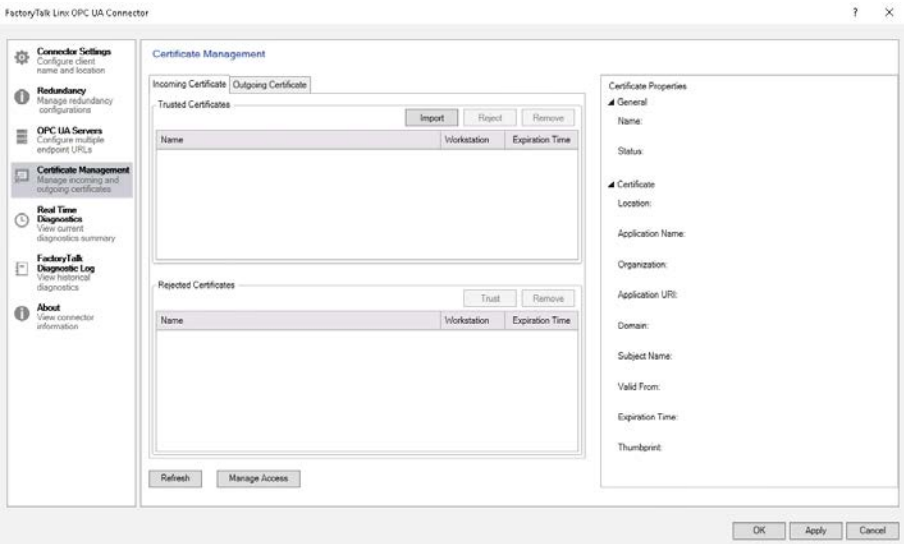
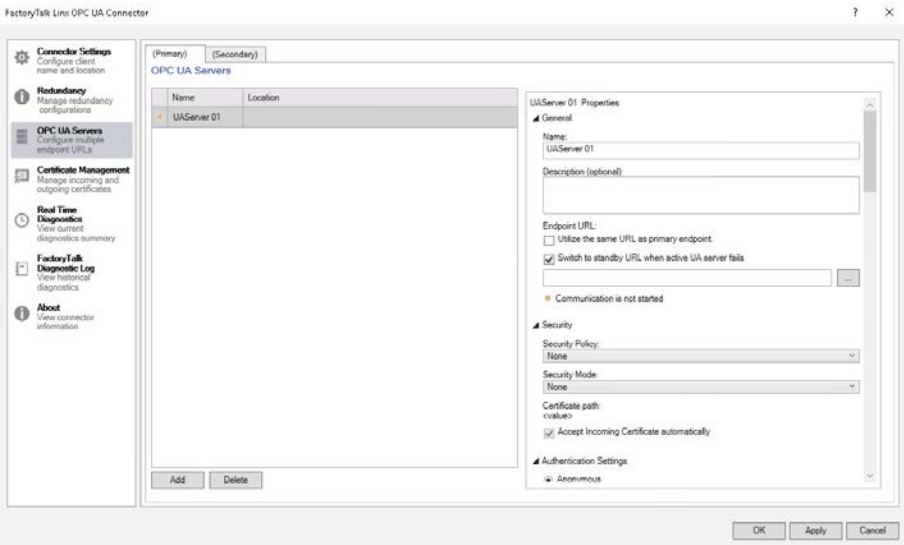


## Add a Data Server (OPC UA)

An OPC UA data server is required to communicate with OPC UA devices. This server type supports OPC UA data and OPC UA Alarms and Conditions.

1. Use the Explorer window in FactoryTalk View Studio to add a new area for the OPC UA server.
2. Go to the new area and select Add New Server > OPC UA Server.
3. (optional) Click the Help button for more information about configuring the OPC UA server.
4. Enter a name and specify the computer that hosts the service. It's a best practice to host the OPC UA server on a dedicated computer with no other FactoryTalk servers.
5. (optional) Enable option to keep configuration when service is uninstalled.
6. (optional) Enable redundancy option if using a secondary server. Click the Redundancy tab and specify a secondary server.
7. Click the OPC UA Servers tab.
8. Enter a name for the OPC UA server. Specify an Endpoint URL for the server.
9. (optional) If Redundancy is enabled and using a different standby URL, click the (Secondary) tab and specify a standby URL. Otherwise, enable the option to utilize the same URL as primary.
10. Specify Security settings for the OPC UA server.
11. Specify Authentication Settings for the OPC UA server.
12. Specify Data Access settings for the OPC UA server.
13. (optional) Enable alarm support and History in the Alarms Settings.
14. Specify Diagnostic Logging settings for the OPC UA server.
15. (optional) Click Add and repeat previous steps for any additional OPC UA servers.
16. (optional) Click the Certificate Management tab to manage access and certificates for the OPC UA servers.



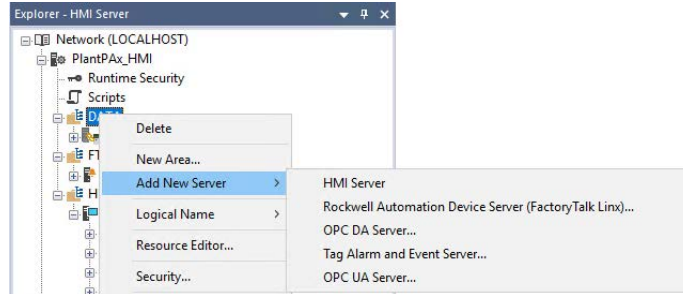


For information on verifying the data server (OPC UA), see [Appendix C](#).

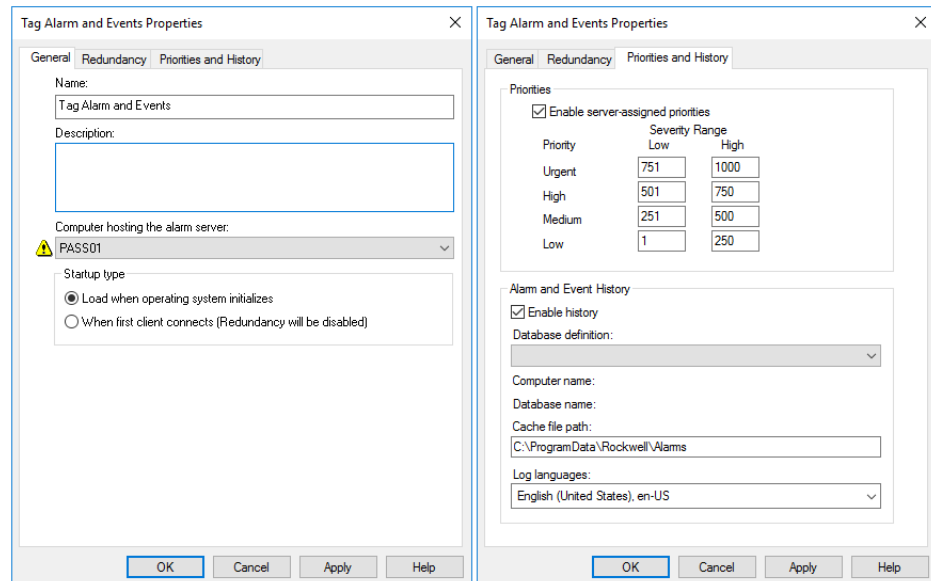
## Add an Alarm and Events Server

An alarms and events server is required for server tag-based alarms.

1. Go to the FTAE area and select Add New Server > Tag Alarm and Event Server.



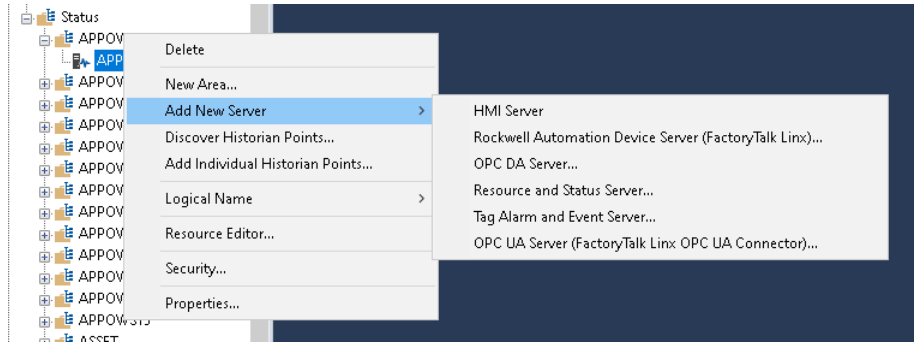
2. Enter a name, startup type, and specify the computer that hosts the service (for example, PASS01).
3. (optional) Click the Redundancy tab to specify a secondary PASS.
4. Click the Priorities and History tab and enable server-assigned priorities.
5. Enable history to configure alarm and event logging.



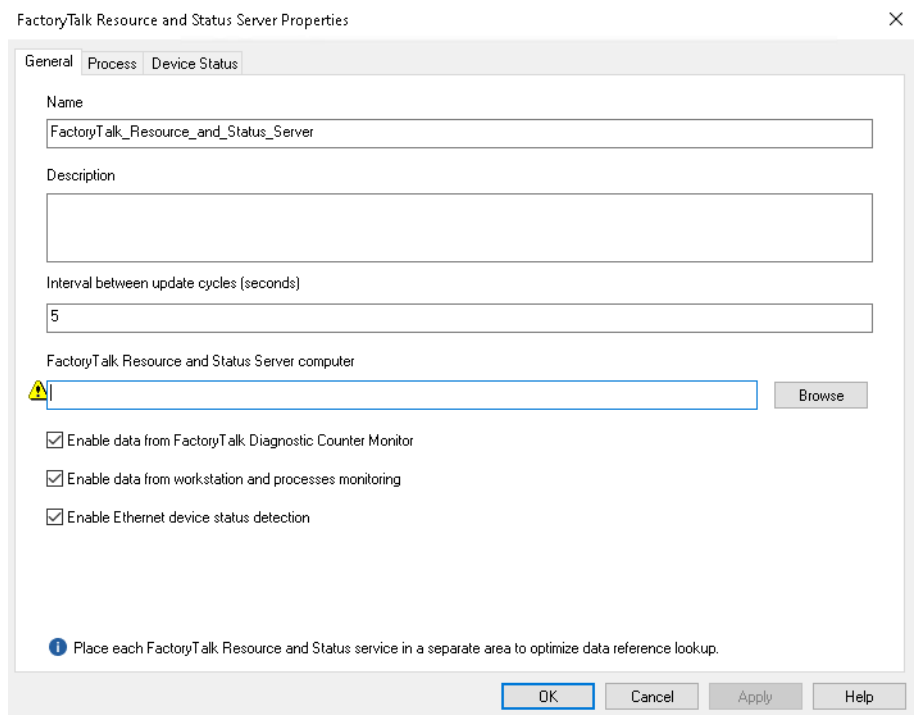
## Add a Resource and Status Server

The FactoryTalk Resource and Status Server provides diagnostics and statistics for Application Servers and Workstations. No more than 20 Resource and Status servers should be configured in a single PlantPax application.

1. Each Resource and Status Server should have its own area. Once the area is created, select Add New Server > Resource and Status Server.



2. Enter a name and specify the computer.

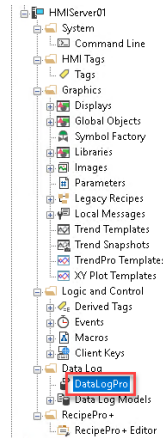


3. Click the Help button for more information on all the configuration options.

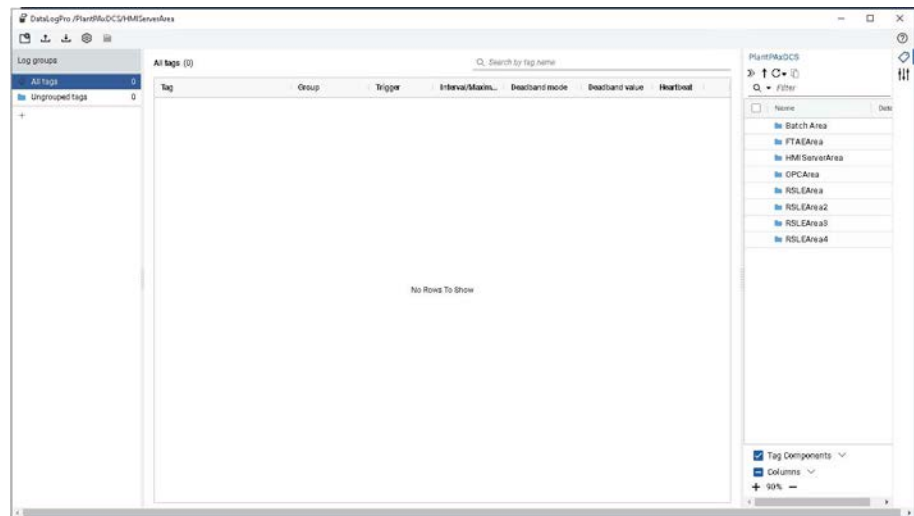
## Configure DataLogPro

DataLogPro is optional and can be used for historical data and trending. DataLogPro also supports remote InfluxDB databases that have been configured in the FactoryTalk Directory. If using FactoryTalk Historian, See [Configure Historian Data Collection on page 207](#).

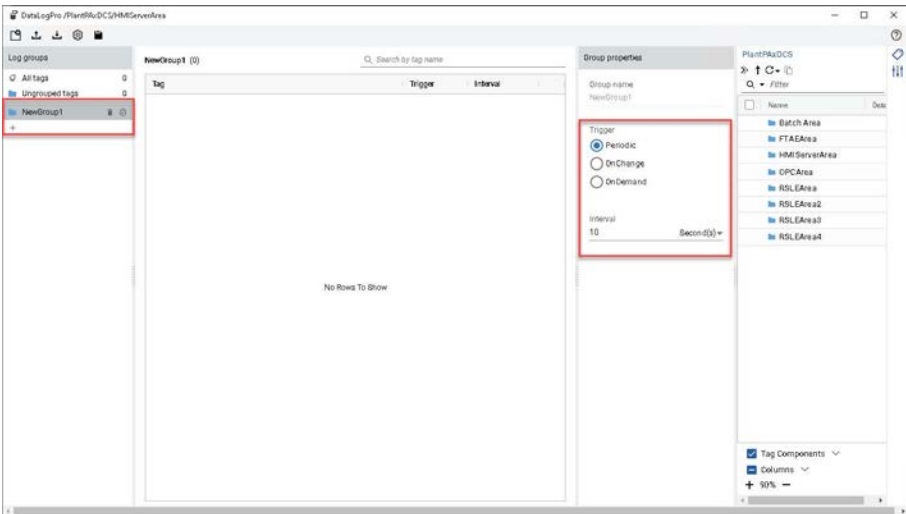
1. Open FactoryTalk View Studio and open a new or existing application. If an HMI server does not already exist in the application, then add an HMI server by following the procedure from the “Add an HMI Server” section.
2. Double-click the DataLogPro option under the HMI server.



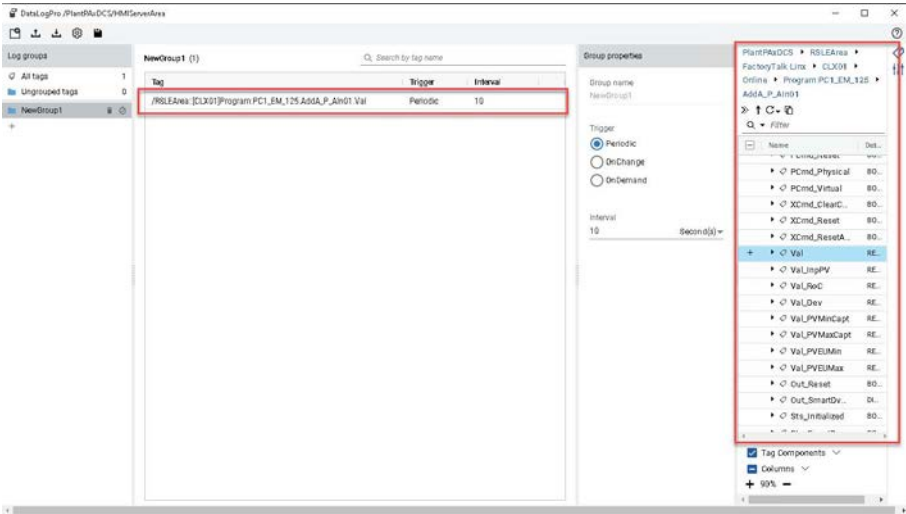
The DataLogPro editor will open.



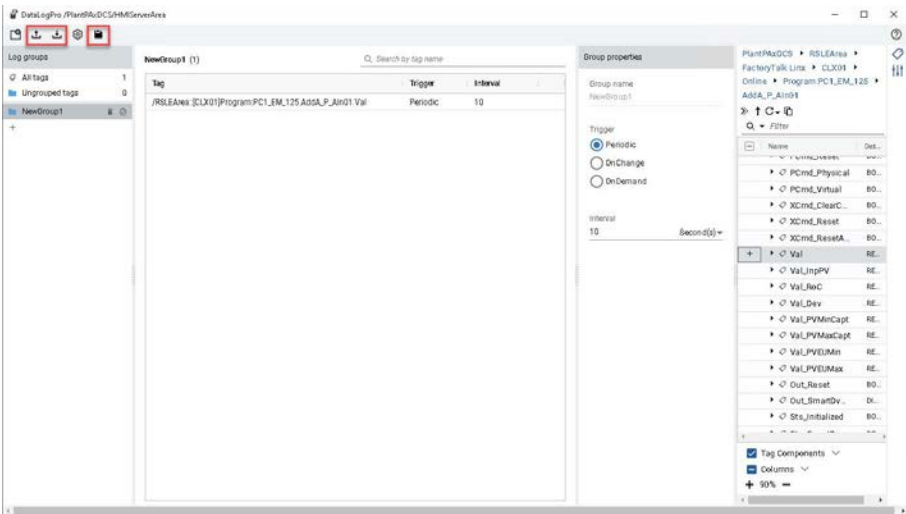
3. New log groups can be added on the left. Select the log group to configure the trigger properties to log data. The options are Periodic, On Change, and On Demand. Periodic trigger will log data based on the defined interval. On Change trigger will log data only when the value has changed according to the deadband configuration. On Demand trigger will log data only when the FactoryTalk View command DataLogSnapshot is issued. For trending, it is recommended to use periodic trigger.



4. Tag values can be added to a log group on the right. Use the filter to search. Tags can be dragged and dropped into a log group.

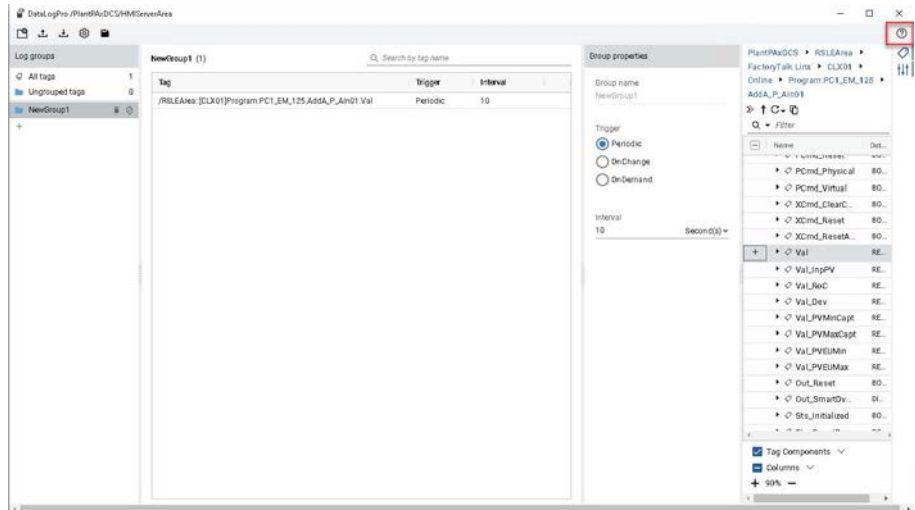


5. Click the save icon to save the DataLogPro configuration. The DataLogPro configuration can be exported or imported.

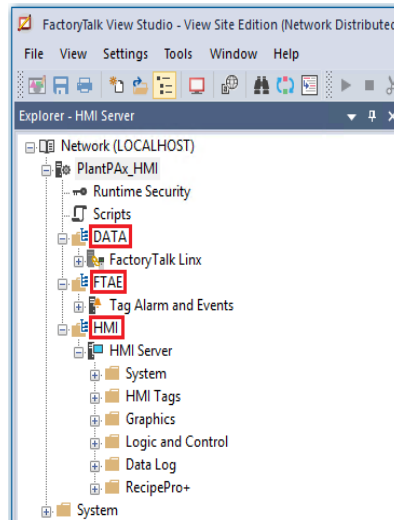




6. For more information, click the help icon in the upper right corner.



Now that your servers are organized into areas, you're ready to start developing your HMI application.



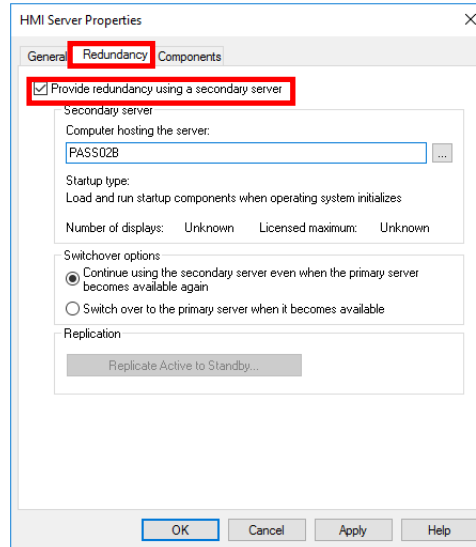
For details on building an HMI template, see the Rockwell Automation Library of Process Objects Reference Manual, publication [PROCES-RM200](#).

## Redundant Server Considerations

Redundant HMI, Data, and Alarm servers provide higher availability on a network distributed architecture. Primary and secondary servers are hosted on different PASS servers where control can be switched between them.

When implementing a primary and secondary server (PASS02A and PASS02B), we recommend that you use a single PASS01 (non-redundant) to host the FactoryTalk Network Directory and FactoryTalk Activations. By using the PASS01, these common components are still accessible in case one of the redundant servers is unreachable.

Access the Redundancy tab of each servers' properties to enable redundancy and specify the secondary server.



## Configure Runtime Security

Runtime security can be configured for three different capabilities or a blending of those capabilities when deploying the HMI content provided in the Process Library.

- User role (that is, Operator, Engineer, and so on)
- Area
- Line-of-sight

Security by user role restricts users to the actions their role allows. The addition of area security can further restrict those allowed actions to specific areas of the plant. Finally, with the addition of line-of-sight security, the user can be further restricted from performing identified actions to the specific computer they are using. Not all these capabilities are required, you can deploy each security option individually or in any combination.

Refer to [Security Example with Concurrent Implementation of all Three Security Methods on page 81](#) for an example implementation.

## Role-Based Security

See [Appendix G](#) for the security policies.



The images in this section depict a single application with both FactoryTalk User Groups and Domain User Groups together. However, it isn't recommended to use both types of user groups in a single application.

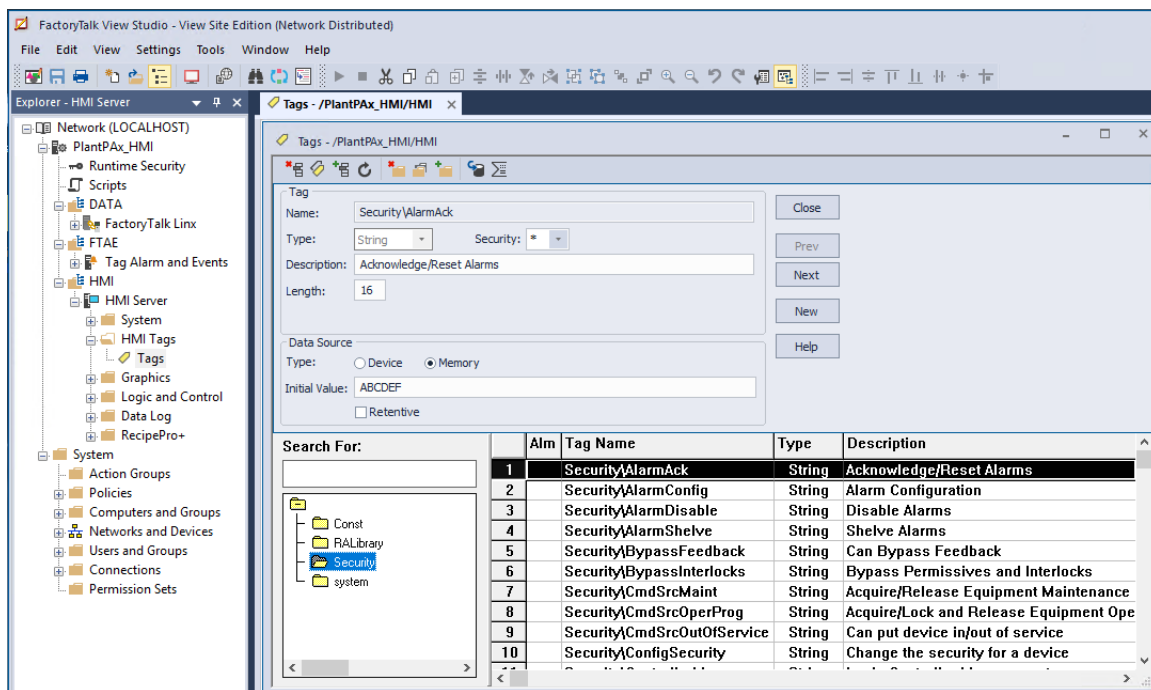
Runtime security must be configured to provide each account or user group with the correct FactoryTalk View security codes. The security codes verify that operators, maintenance personnel, and engineers have permission to run secured commands, open secured graphic displays, or write to secured tags at runtime.

1. On the PASS, go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk View > Tools > Tag Import and Export Wizard.

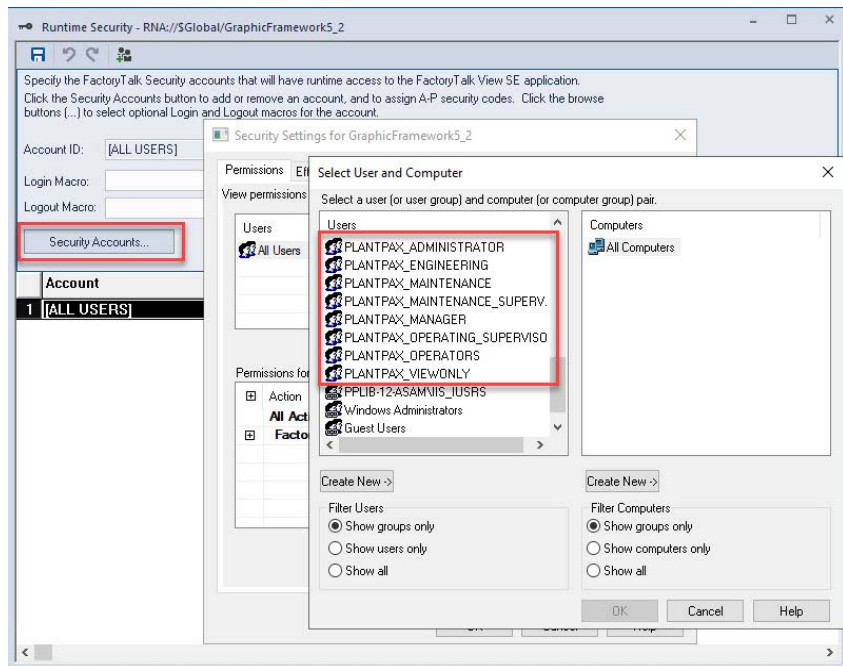
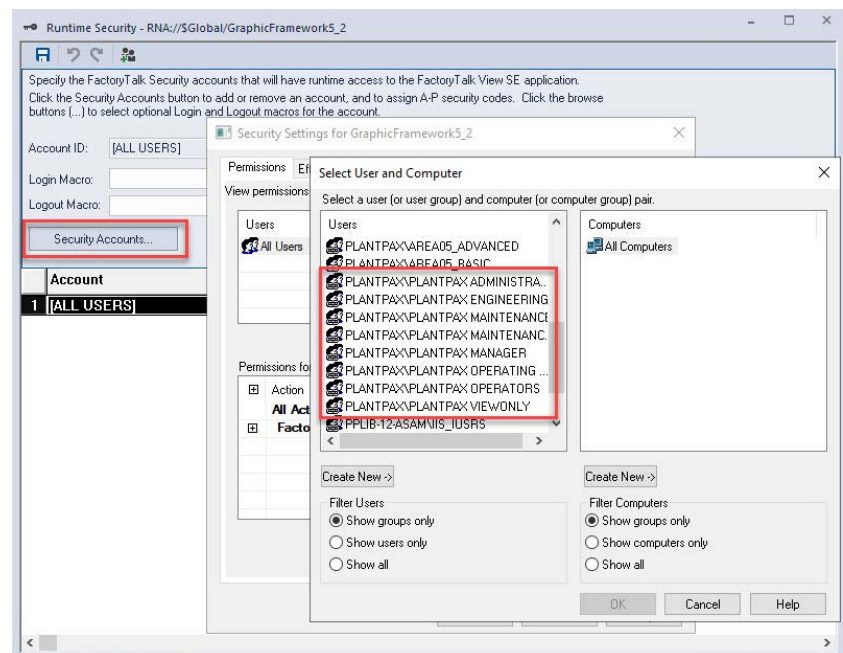
Page	Action
Tag Import and Export Wizard Operations field	From the Operation pull-down menu, select Import FactoryTalk View tag CSV files and click Next.
	From the pull-down menu, select Site Edition and click Browse (ellipsis '...').
	Select the path of SE > HMI Projects > HMI Server.
	Select HMI Server.sed and click Open.
	Click Next and Browse (ellipsis '...') for the FTViewSE_ProcessLibrary_Tags_5-00_xx.CSV file; where xx = the service release number. This file is distributed with the PlantPax Library of Process Objects Library.
	Click Open, click Next twice, and then Finish. The import results appear on the Database Import window.

To set security permissions to groups on the workstation, complete these steps.

1. Open the HMI application with FactoryTalk View Studio software.
2. Verify that the security tags have been imported by expanding the HMI Area and viewing HMI Tags folders. (Const, RALibrary, and Security)



3. Select Runtime Security from the Explorer window or top menu bar under Settings.
4. Within Runtime Security, click the Security Accounts button.
5. From the Security Settings dialog box, select 'All Users' and click Remove.
6. Click Add.
7. From the Select Users and Computer dialog box, select a PlantPax group and click OK.

For **FactoryTalk** user groups:For **Domain** user groups:

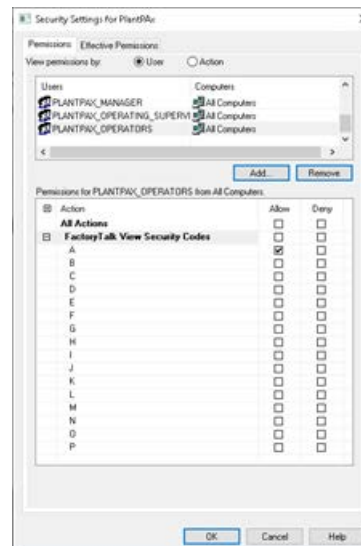
8. Repeat adding users until all PlantPax groups are selected.
9. You can assign security to each PlantPax group based on letters (A...G, P).
10. If you're using e-signature with approval, add the group HMI\_Approver. A-P codes aren't required for HMI\_Approver.
11. Select a group from the Users list.  
The default is that all FactoryTalk View Security Codes are checked Allow.
12. Click the Allow box beside each FactoryTalk View Security Code that you want to allow permission for the selected account.

For example, allow security of 'A' for an Operator.

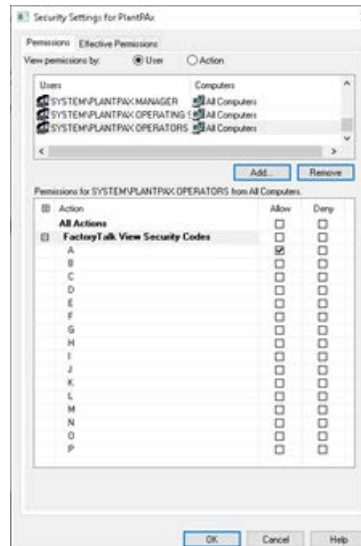
**Table 4 - Recommended Group Security Codes**

Group	Security Code
Operators	A
Operating Supervisor	B
Maintenance	C
Maintenance Supervisor	D
Engineering	E
Manager	F
Administrator	G
View Only	P

For **FactoryTalk** user groups:

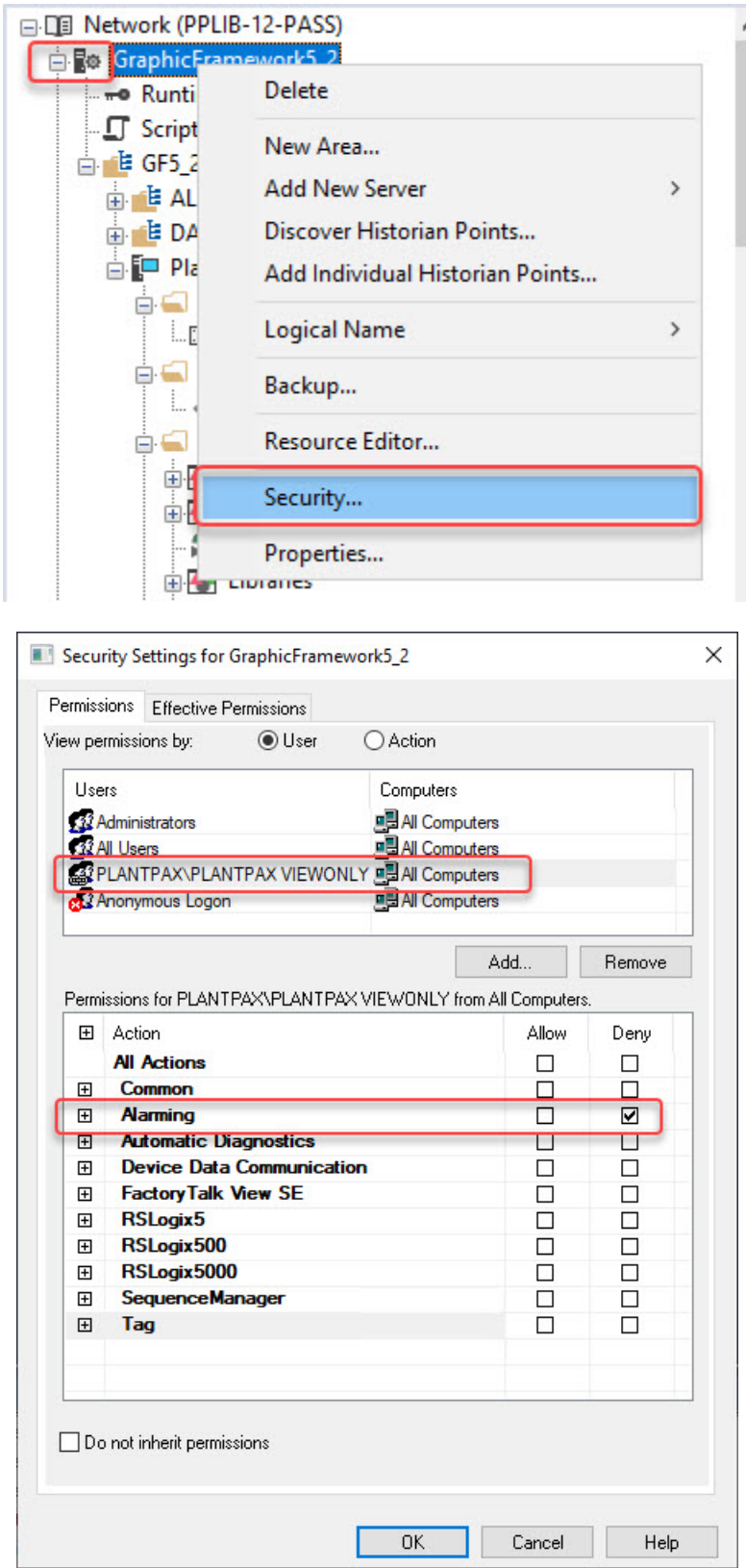


For **Domain** user groups:



- Repeat the steps for each user or group account that you want to configure with runtime security.

For the View Only user group, it is recommended to “Deny” certain security privileges for the application. Right-click your application, select “Security...”. Add the View Only user group and select “Deny” for applicable permissions.



## Area-Based Security

Complete these steps to create area **FactoryTalk** user groups for each secure area of a production facility.

1. From the FactoryTalk Administration Console, click '+' to expand System and then click '+' to expand Users and Groups.



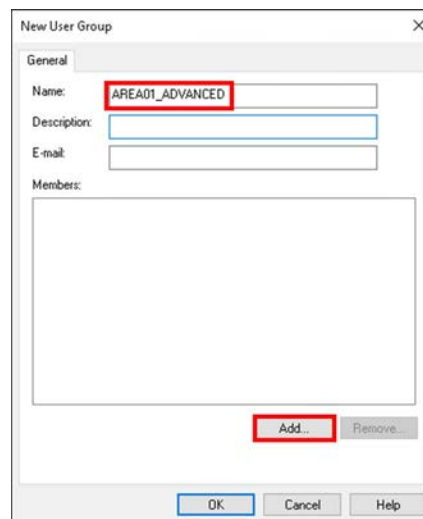
2. Right-click User Groups and choose New>User Group.

On the New User Group dialog box, you must add two groups: 'area01\_Advanced,' 'area01\_Basic'. These groups define which Area01 Users have basic functions on the faceplate or advanced functions (engineering, maintenance).

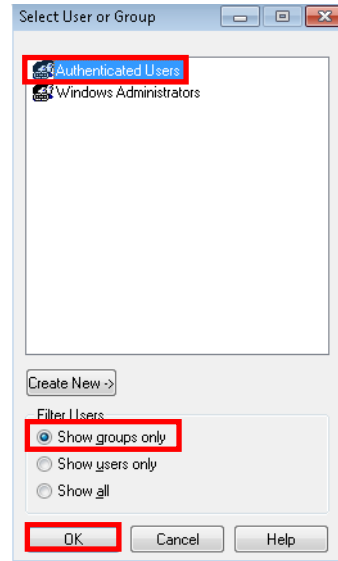


The instructions default to Area01. You may modify the area name in the instruction and group names to meet your needs.

3. To add groups, type the name (example, AREA01\_ADVANCED) and click Add.

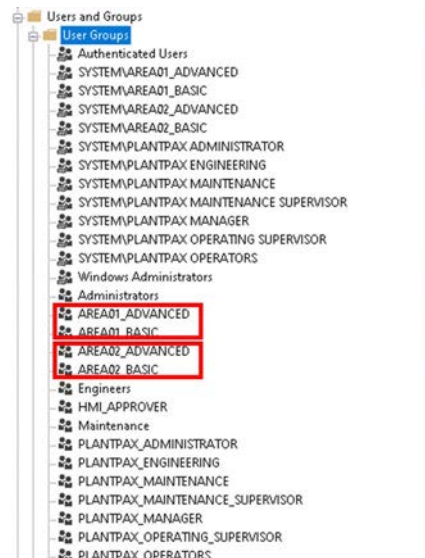


4. Select Authenticated Users and use the default 'Show groups only' and click OK.



5. Click OK again.

Your two groups for AREA01 look like the example.



6. Repeat [step 3](#) and [step 4](#) to add groups for additional areas.

Complete these steps to import area **Domain** user groups for each secure area of a production facility.

1. From the FactoryTalk Administration Console, click '+' to expand System and then click '+' to expand Users and Groups.
2. Right-click User Groups and choose New>Windows-Linked Group.

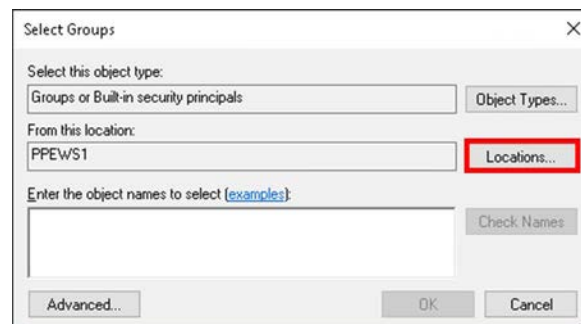




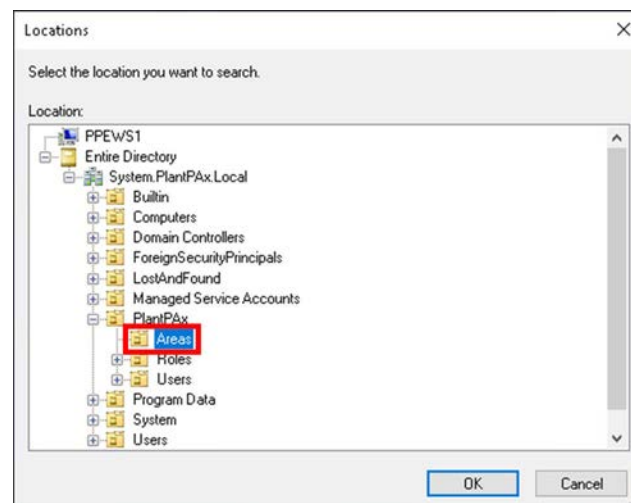
## 3. Select Add.



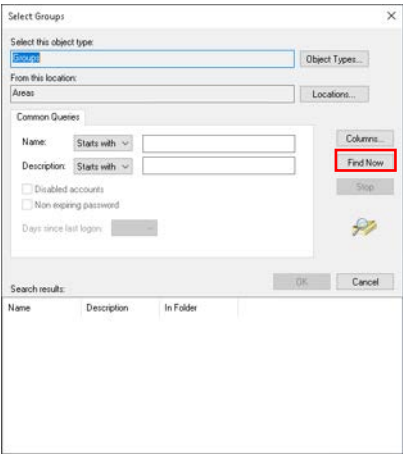
## 4. Select Locations.



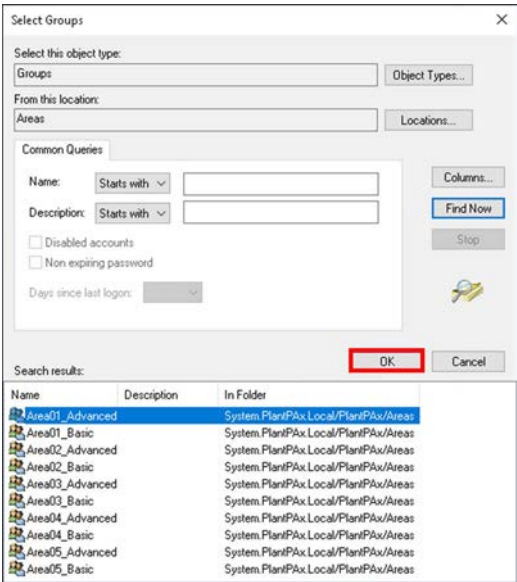
## 5. Browse to your domain directory where you created areas. For this example System.PlantPax.Local\PlantPax\Areas



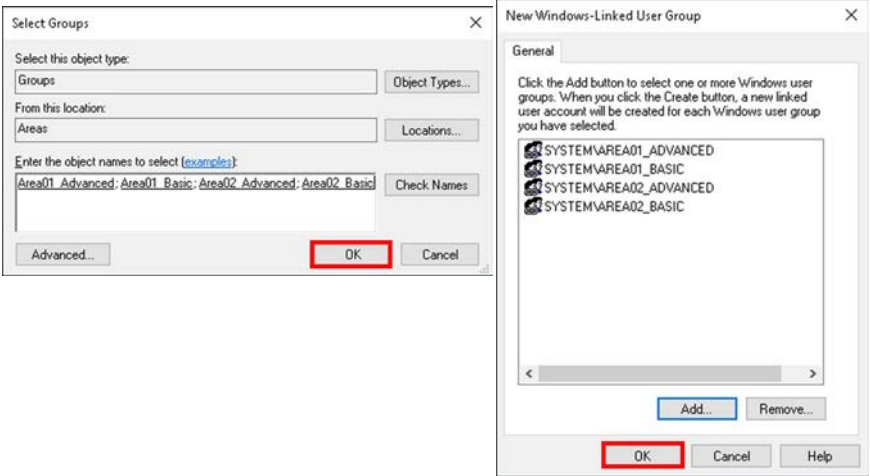
6. Select Find Now.



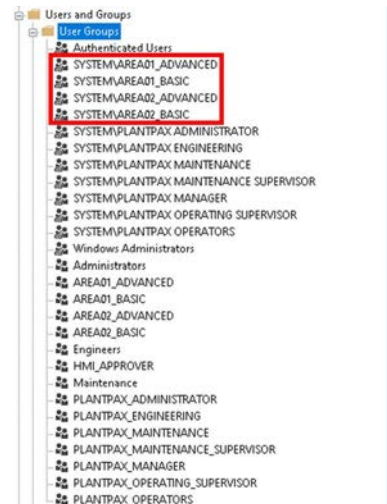
7. Select all areas from the search results that you want to import.  
For this example Area01\_Basic, Area01\_Advanced, Area02\_Basic, Area02\_Advanced. Click OK.



8. Select OK on the next two displays.



The domain areas are added to User Groups and look as follows:



### Configure an Area

For each object instance in controller code, it's required to configure an area using the instruction dialog box (PlantPax instructions) or extended tag property area (Add-On Instructions). Configuring each instruction with the specified area name will grant or deny permissions on the faceplates for these objects. The following displays use the default value "Area01".



To grant permission on faceplates, the Area name in the controller must match the area that is created within the HMI application (without \_Basic \ \_Advanced).

For **FactoryTalk** user groups:

**Figure 3 - PlantPax Instruction Dialog Box**

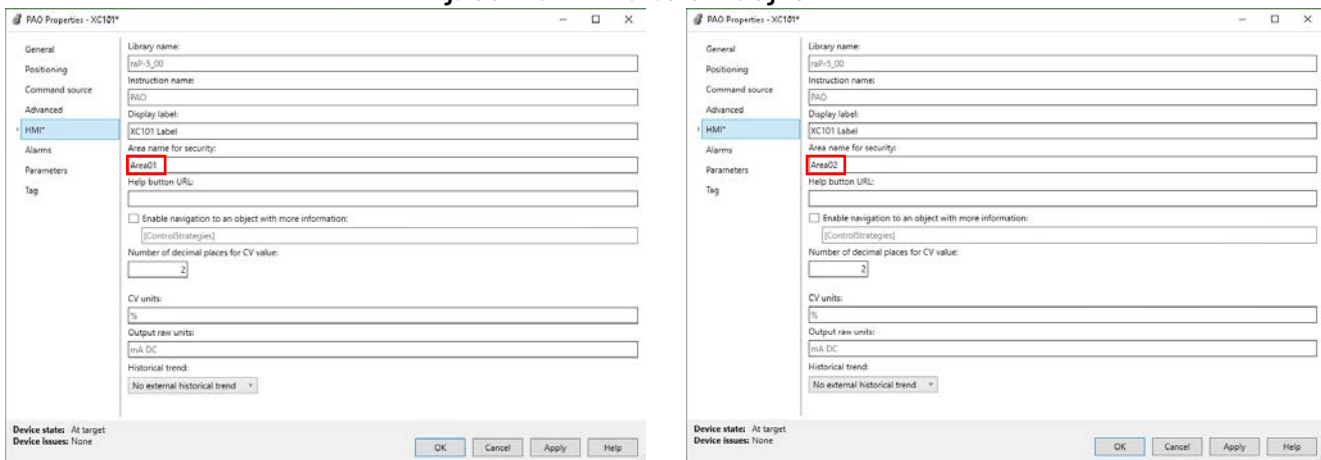
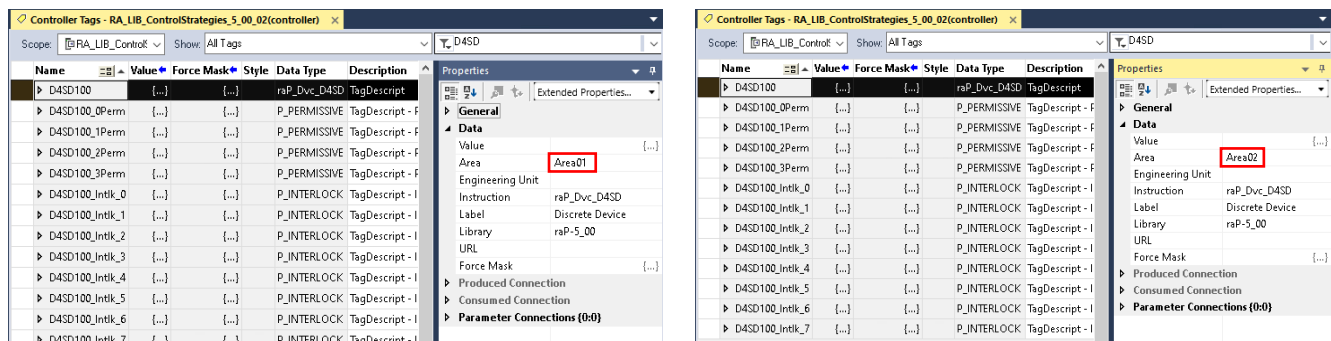


Figure 4 - Add-On Instruction Extended Tag Property



For Domain user groups:

Figure 5 - PlantPax Instruction Dialog Box

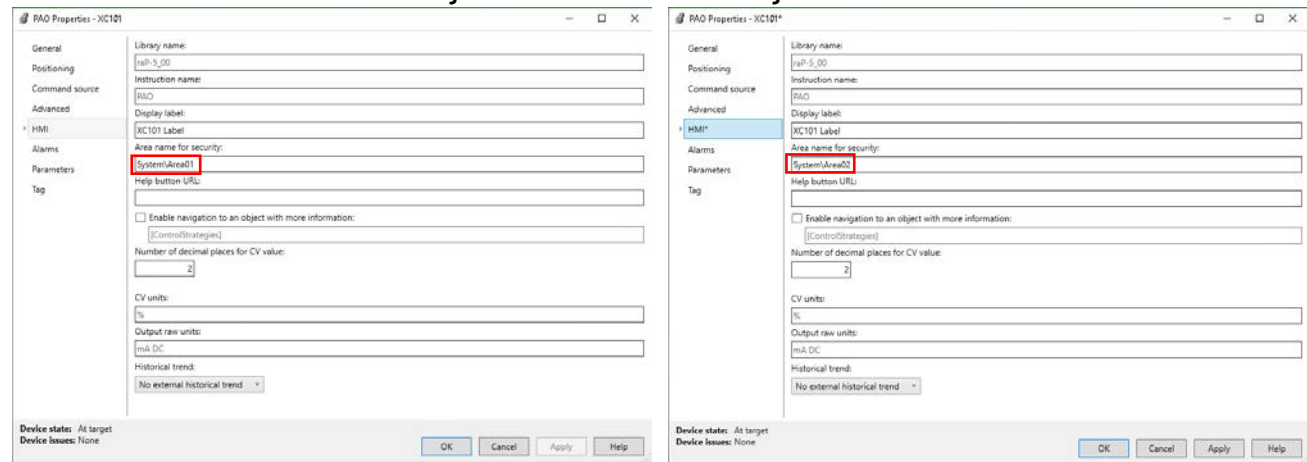
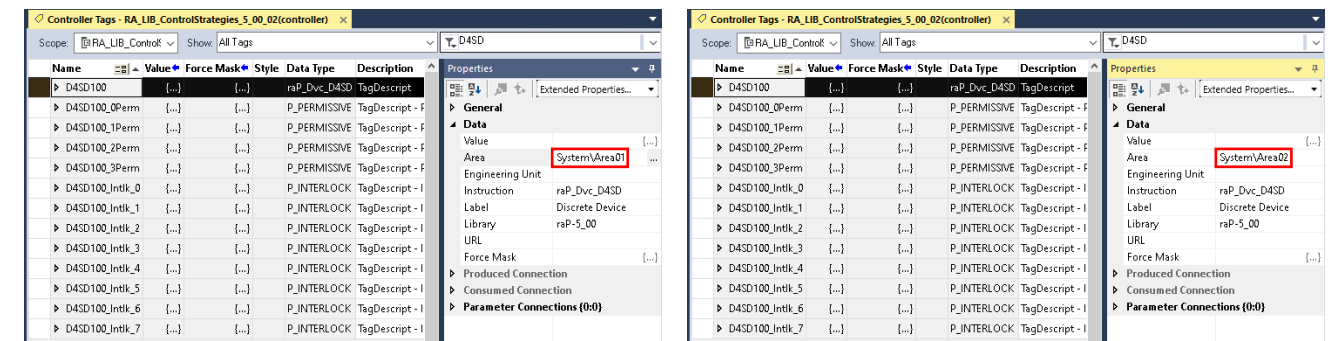


Figure 6 - Add-On Instruction Extended Tag Property



## Adding Users to Groups

Assign each user to the appropriate user group. Only FactoryTalk users need to be added to Users. Windows-Linked Users are automatically added when Windows-Linked User Groups are added.

With multiple process areas defined (example Area01, Area02), note that each user needs to be assigned not only to the HMI\_{group} (example HMI\_Operator) but also the “area” group. Operators are assigned to the HMI\_Operator group and then also to the Area01\_Basic group. This limits operator access to only the faceplate operator controls for devices that are assigned to Area01. Engineers are assigned to the HMI\_Engineering group and also to the

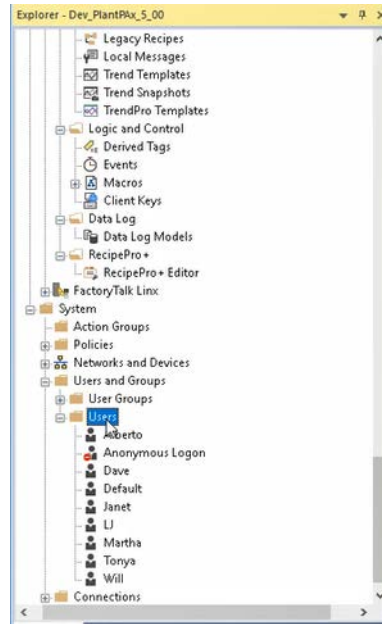
Area01\_Advanced and Area01\_Basic groups. This allows the engineer access to also the advanced engineering features on the faceplates for devices that are assigned to Area\_01.

---

**IMPORTANT** Users assigned to “Advanced” groups must also be assigned to the corresponding “Basic” groups

---

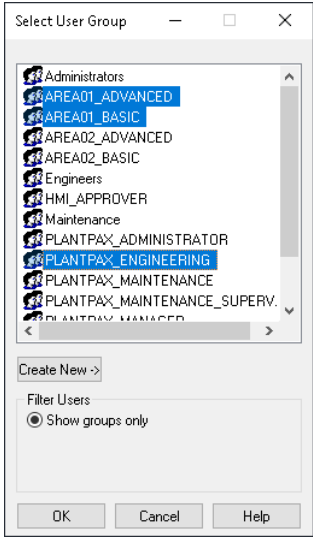
1. Open the HMI application with FactoryTalk View Studio software.
2. Select Users from the menu.



3. Right-click on a user to select that user's properties.
4. Select the Group Membership tab and select Add.

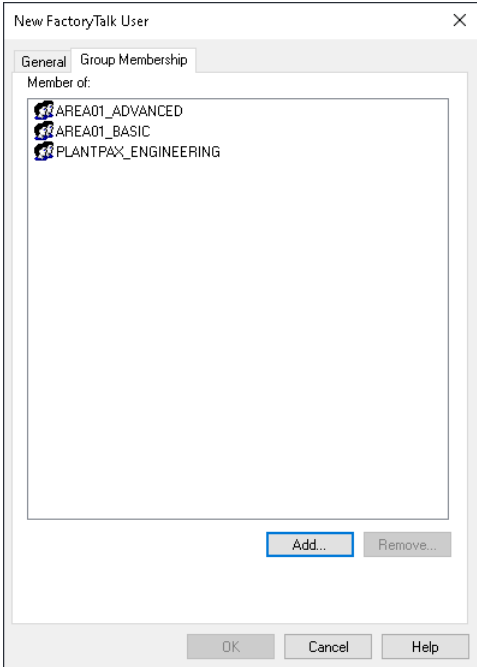


- Select the groups to assign to the user. (Multiple groups can be selected by holding down the Ctrl key.)



It's recommended that users that belong to the HMI\_Engineer and HMI\_Maintenance\_Supervisor group also be added to both the area01\_Basic and area01\_Advanced groups.

- Once added, the groups appear assigned to the user.



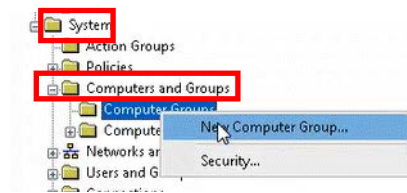
### Line of Sight Based Security

The procedures for this functionality require a distributed system. This section describes how to add a desired computer to a group ('Computer Group') and to an area of the plant.

**IMPORTANT**

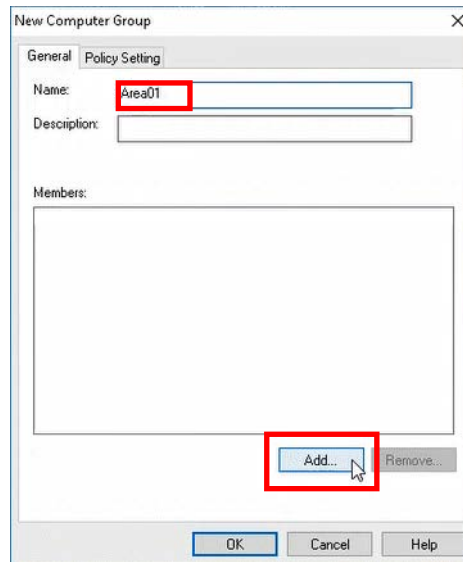
The macro 'NavToDisplay with line of sight' must be added to the project and renamed 'NavToDisplay' to replace the existing 'NavToDisplay'.

1. From the FactoryTalk View Distributed application, click '+' to expand System and then click '+' to expand Computers and Groups.

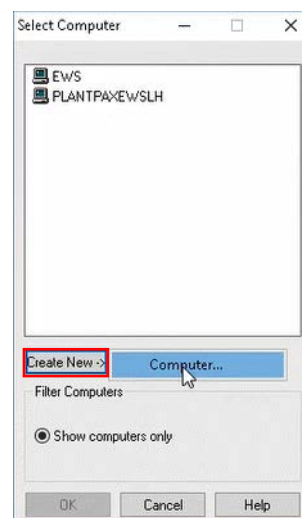


2. Right-click Computer Groups and choose New Computer Group.
3. Enter the area name and click Add.

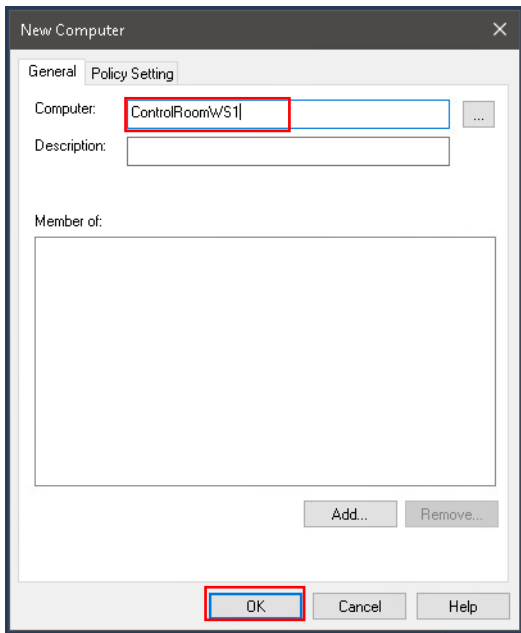
The area name is the same name as the area name configured in the controller. The computer area name does not have the 'Basic' or 'Advanced' suffix.



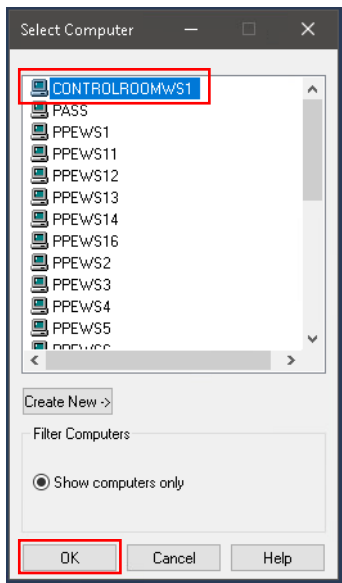
4. On the Select Computer window, select Create New and choose Computer.



5. Enter a desired computer name.



6. Select the name of the desired computer.





## 7. To add the computer group to the area, click OK.

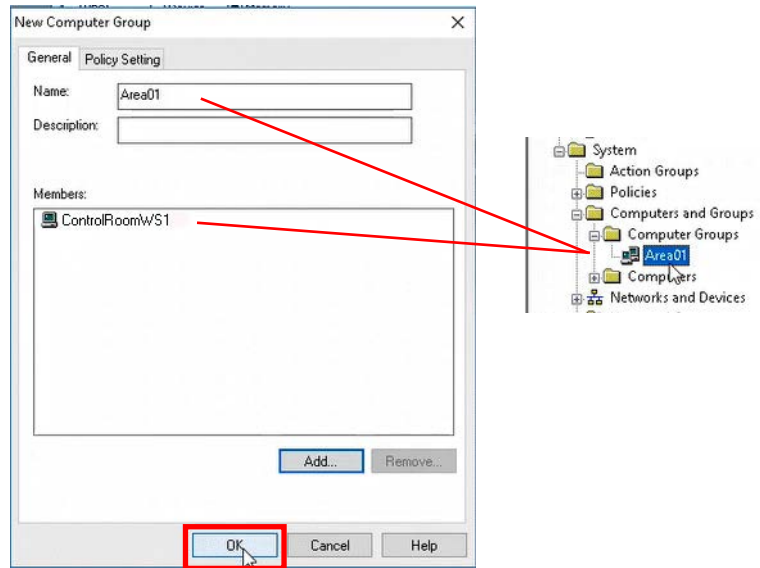
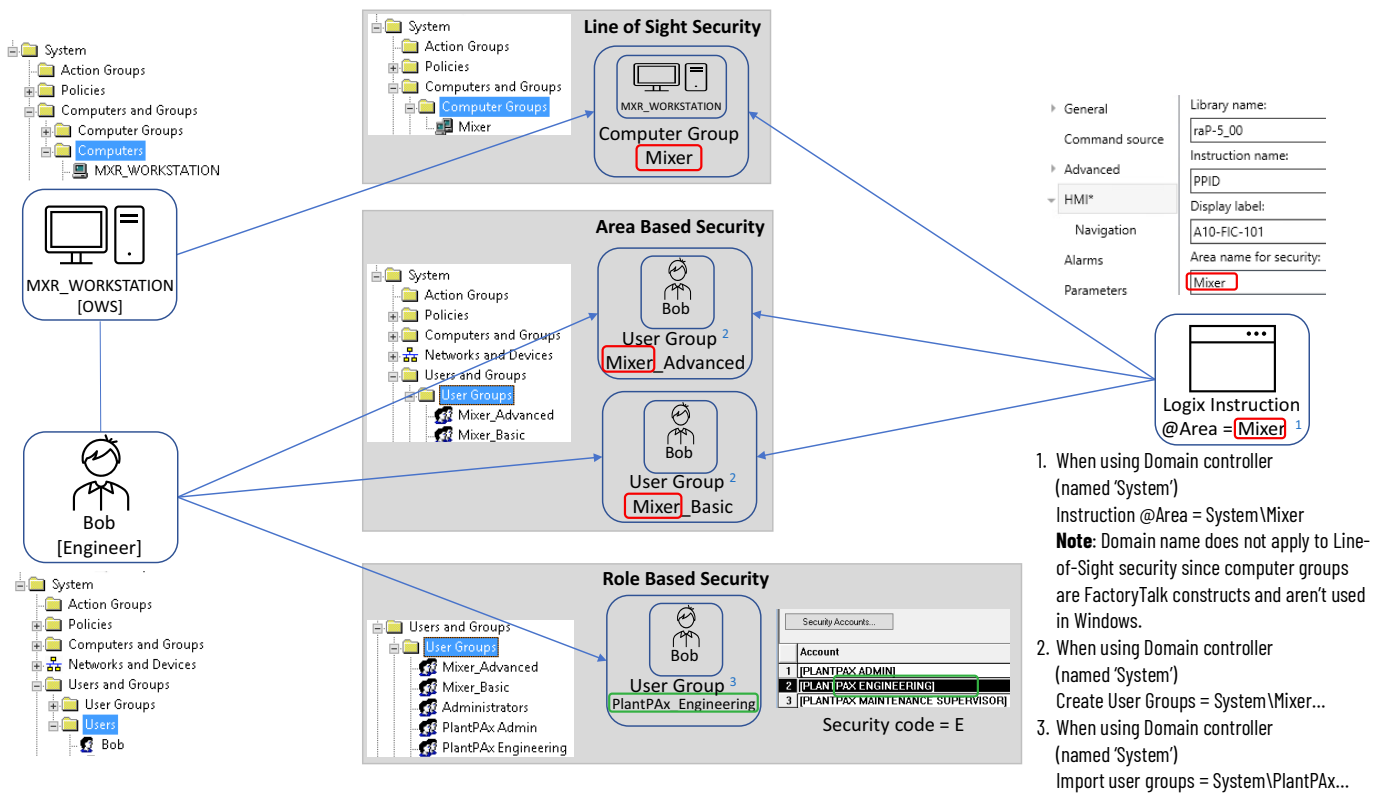


Figure 7 - Security Example with Concurrent Implementation of all Three Security Methods



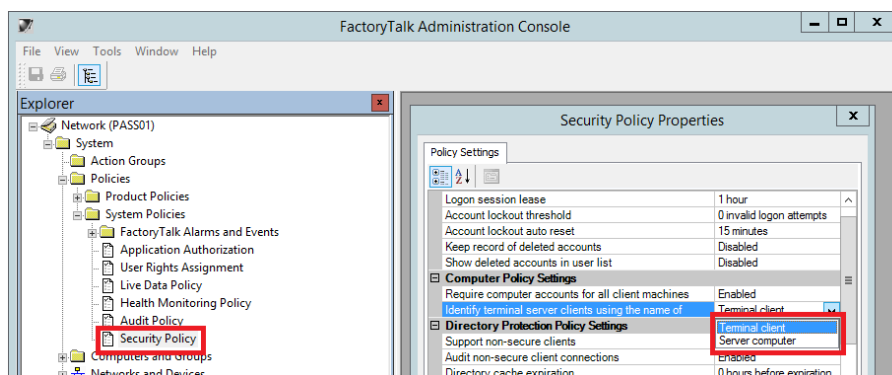
## Remote Desktop Services

This optional section describes how to use Remote Desktop Services (RDS) to access FactoryTalk applications, such as thin clients.

### Use Default Terminal Client

You have two server options to specify how each remote terminal identifies itself to FactoryTalk Security: terminal client or server computer; terminal being the default.

1. Navigate to Rockwell Software>FactoryTalk Administration Console.
2. Under System>Policies>System Policies, double-click Security Policy.
3. On the Policy Settings dialog box under Computer Policy Settings, leave terminal client as the default for remote desktop services to be available and select OK.

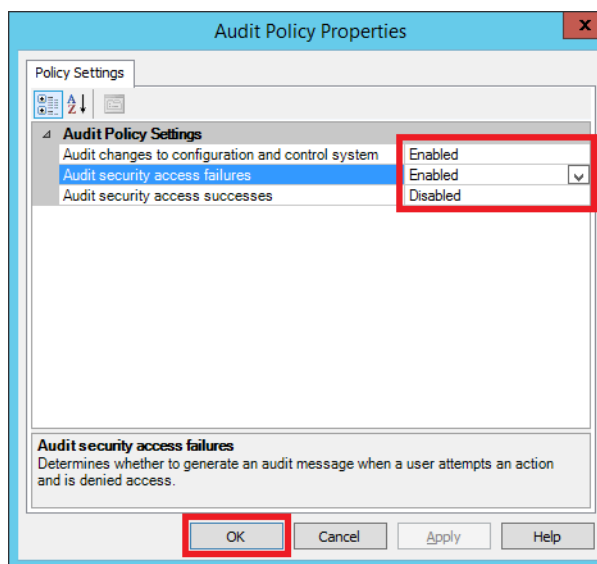


Select Server computer from the pull-down menu and click OK if you want external client computers to be able to log in to the FTD without any pre-configuration. This option, however, does not let you track specific actions from the terminal client.

### Audit Security Actions

You can enable an audit to track configurations and security.

1. Navigate to Rockwell Software>FactoryTalk Administration Console.
2. Under System>Policies>System Policies, double-click Audit Policy.
3. Under Audit Policy Settings, select Enabled from the Audit security access failures dropdown menu and select OK.



## Network Infrastructure

The PlantPax® Distributed Control System supports several network topologies to meet specific needs. The following sections summarize the recommended network topology designs with more detail available by following the referenced links to the details provided later in this chapter.

You need to know which of the following are in your system:

- Domain controller or workgroup
- PASS or PASS-C

Before you design and implement a PlantPax network infrastructure, you should:

- Have experience with VLAN and IP schemes.
- Have a network design that defines the requirements for the supervisory and control networks in the PlantPax system.
- Be familiar with how to use the Express Setup and Device Manager utilities to configure and configure Stratix® switches.
- Be familiar with the Cisco IOS® command-line interface (CLI).
- Verify that no fixed IP is assigned to the workstation that is being used to configure the switch. You want the switch to manage the IP address configuration in your computer.

For more information, see these additional resources.

Resource	Description
Network Device Library, Publication <a href="#">DEVICE-RM400</a>	Device Object Libraries enable you to easily interface with Rockwell Automation® intelligent devices like drives, motion, network switches, sensors, IO and more.
Stratix Managed Switches User Manual, publication <a href="#">1783-UM007</a>	Describes how to build, configure, and troubleshoot Stratix switches.
Stratix 5200 and Stratix 5800 Managed Switches, publication <a href="#">1783-UM012</a>	Describes how to configure, manage, and troubleshoot Stratix® 5200 and Stratix 5800 managed Ethernet switches and expansion modules.
Converged Plantwide Ethernet (CPwE) Design and Implementation Guide, publication <a href="#">ENET-TD001</a>	Describes tested and validated industrial network architectures, recommendations and best practices, including network resiliency and security.
EtherNet I/P Parallel Redundancy Protocol Application Technique, publication <a href="#">ENET-AT006</a>	Describes how you can configure a PRP network with a compatible device or switch.
EtherNet I/P Device Level Ring Application Technique, publication <a href="#">ENET-AT007</a>	Describes DLR network operation, topologies, configuration considerations, and diagnostic methods.
Deploying a Resilient Converged Plantwide Ethernet Architecture, Publication <a href="#">ENET-TD010</a>	Describes how to design and deploy a resilient plant-wide or site-wide LAN architectures for IACS applications.
Deploying Device Level Ring within a CPwE Architecture, publication <a href="#">ENET-TD015</a>	Describes how to design and deploy DLR technology with IACS device-level, switch-level, and mixed device/switch-level ring topologies across OEM and plant-wide or site-wide IACS applications.
Scalable Time Distribution within a Converged Plantwide Ethernet Architecture, publication <a href="#">ENET-TD016</a>	Describes how to design and deploy Scalable Time Distribution technology throughout a plant-wide Industrial Automation and Control System (IACS) network infrastructure.
Deploying Parallel Redundancy Protocol within a CPwE Architecture, publication <a href="#">ENET-TD021</a>	Describes how to design and deploy PRP technology with redundant network infrastructure across plant-wide or site-wide IACS applications.

## Network Configuration Preparation

Smart devices on PlantPax system architectures communicate on the EtherNet/IP network via Stratix and Cisco switches. These managed switches provide a secure switching infrastructure for harsh environments. You can connect the switches to network devices such as servers, routers, and other switches. In industrial environments, you can connect Ethernet-enabled industrial communication devices, including controllers, human machine interfaces (HMIs), drives, sensors, and I/O.

The Ethernet network provides the communication backbone for the supervisory network for the workstations, servers, and the controllers:

- Configure all communication interfaces to operate at the fastest speed possible for your hardware configuration, full-duplex for 100/1000 network adapters. See Important for autonegotiate settings.

**IMPORTANT**

Use of autonegotiate settings is recommended to reduce chance of mis-configuration and failures. However, it's desirable to operate at the fastest speed possible at full-duplex. We recommend verifying your switch settings during commissioning to make sure that the system was able to autonegotiate properly. The speed and duplex settings for the devices on the same Ethernet network must be the same to avoid transmission errors.

- Select the cable type based on environmental conditions.

Type	Details
Fiber-optic	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Long distances</li><li>• Near high magnetic fields, such as induction-heating processes</li><li>• For extreme high-noise environments</li><li>• For poorly grounded systems</li><li>• For outdoor applications</li></ul>
Shielded twisted-pair	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use Category 5e, 6, or 6a cables and connectors</li><li>• Use termination sequence 568A for industrial applications</li></ul>


Follow these guidelines for devices on the EtherNet/IP network:

- Make sure that an I/O module RPI is two times faster than the periodic task that you're using.
- The number of devices can affect the CIP™/TCP count differently. Never use more than 80% of the available connections for the communication modules.
- Consider packets per second for performance if you use many devices.
  - I/O packets per second (pps) describes an implicit message rate (Class 1). An I/O communication use approaching or above 80% can necessitate an adjustment to the RPI.
  - HMI packets per second (pps) describes an explicit message rate (Class 3). FactoryTalk Linx® connections and message instructions generate CIP traffic. HMI traffic is TCP-based, not UDP-based.
  - The combination of implicit and explicit messaging provides the total use for a device. If you add implicit messaging (I/O), it takes bandwidth from the HMI because it has higher priority than HMI messaging. The combination of CIP implicit (highest priority) and CIP explicit (second priority) can't exceed 100% use.
- Use compatible keying on communication modules. Where required, such as in validated industries, you can use an exact match for keying.

Recommended VLANs

Subnets segment the devices in a network into smaller groups. The IP address and associated subnet mask are unique identifiers for the switch in a network.

The following table of recommended VLANs segments the system and recommends IP address ranges. Use these recommendations with the topology worksheet to segment your system.



[PROCES-RD100](#) contains the recommended topology and switch settings. Download the spreadsheet and use the tab that is referenced in each step.

**Table 5 - Descriptions for VLANs and Ethernet Address Ranges<sup>(1)</sup>**

VLAN ID (Name)	EtherNet/IP Address Range		Description
1	N/A	N/A	Not used
300 (Native VLAN) <sup>(2)</sup>	N/A		Not to have any assigned IP addresses Native for Control and Supervisory
500 (Control network management VLAN)	172.18.0.1		Default gateway
	172.18.0.2	172.18.0.9	VLAN routing – switch addresses (to be utilized for Layer 3 switches)
	172.18.0.10	172.18.0.253	Application – switch addresses
501 (Control network – Default)	172.18.1.1	N/A	Default gateway
	172.18.1.2	172.18.1.9	VLAN routing
	172.18.[2...].10	172.18.[...9].253	Ethernet interface between controllers and system applications.
502...509 (Additional Control network VLANs for IO and MCC)	172.18.[2...].1	172.18.[...9].1	Default gateway
	172.18.[2...].2	172.18.[...9].9	VLAN routing
	172.18.[2...].10	172.18.[...9].253	Ethernet interface between controllers, I/O modules, and MCCs (fixed)
600 (HMI Control + Supervisory management VLAN)	172.20.0.1	N/A	Default gateway
	172.20.0.2	172.20.0.9	VLAN routing – switch addresses (to be used for Layer 3 switches)
	172.20.0.10	172.20.0.253	Application – switch addresses
601 (HMI Control network + Supervisory network – wired network)	172.20.1.1	N/A	Default gateway
	172.20.1.10	N/A	Domain/DNS primary server
	172.20.1.11	N/A	Domain/DNS secondary server
	172.20.1.12	172.20.1.99	Servers and workstations (DHCP)
	172.20.1.2	172.20.1.9	VLAN routing
	172.20.1.1	172.20.1.25	Workstation interface
602 (Supervisory network – wireless network)	172.20.2.1	N/A	Default gateway
	172.20.2.2	172.20.2.9	VLAN routing – switch addresses (to be used for Layer 3 switches)
	172.20.2.10	172.20.2.253	Mobile interface
603 (External – untrusted network) <b>Note:</b> From IDMZ (industrial demilitarized zone)	172.20.3.1	N/A	Default gateway
	172.20.3.2	172.20.3.9	VLAN routing – switch address (to be used for Layer 3 switches)
	172.20.3.10	172.20.3.253	External interface

(1) The referenced IP Addresses can be changed for your system requirements.

(2) All networks do not need to use a dedicated management VLAN, but it's a good practice. Many times, a supervisory VLAN is the same VLAN as the management VLAN.

## Command-line Interface (CLI)

Along with Device Manager and Logix Designer applications, you can use the Cisco IOS® command-line interface (CLI) to manage the switch. This interface enables executes Cisco IOS commands by using a router console or terminal, or by using remote access methods. You can:

- Connect directly to the switch console port
- Enable Secure Shell (SSH) or Telnet in Device Manager

For more information about how to use the CLI, see <https://www.cisco.com/>.

Stratix 5200 and Stratix 5800 provide CLI access via the WebUI. The Command Line Interface can be accessed within the Administration menu in the WebUI.

## Redundant PRP Topology

Parallel Redundancy Protocol (PRP) is defined in international standard IEC 62439-3 and provides high-availability in Ethernet networks. PRP technology creates seamless redundancy by sending duplicate frames to two independent network infrastructures, which are known as LAN A and LAN B.

A PRP network includes the following components.

Component	Description
LAN A and LAN B	Redundant, active Ethernet networks that operate in parallel.
Double attached node (DAN)	An end device with PRP technology that connects to both LAN A and LAN B.
Single attached node (SAN)	An end device without PRP technology that connects to either LAN A or LAN B. A SAN does not have PRP redundancy.
Redundancy box (RedBox)	A switch with PRP technology that connects devices without PRP technology to both LAN A and LAN B.
Virtual double attached node (VDAN)	An end device without PRP technology that connects to both LAN A and LAN B through a RedBox. A VDAN has PRP redundancy and appears to other nodes in the network as a DAN.
Infrastructure switch	A switch that connects to either LAN A or LAN B and isn't configured as a RedBox.

Redundancy uses Hot Standby Router Protocol (HSRP). HSRP lets you configure two or more routers as standby routers, but only one router is active at a time.

### Additional Resources for PRP Topology

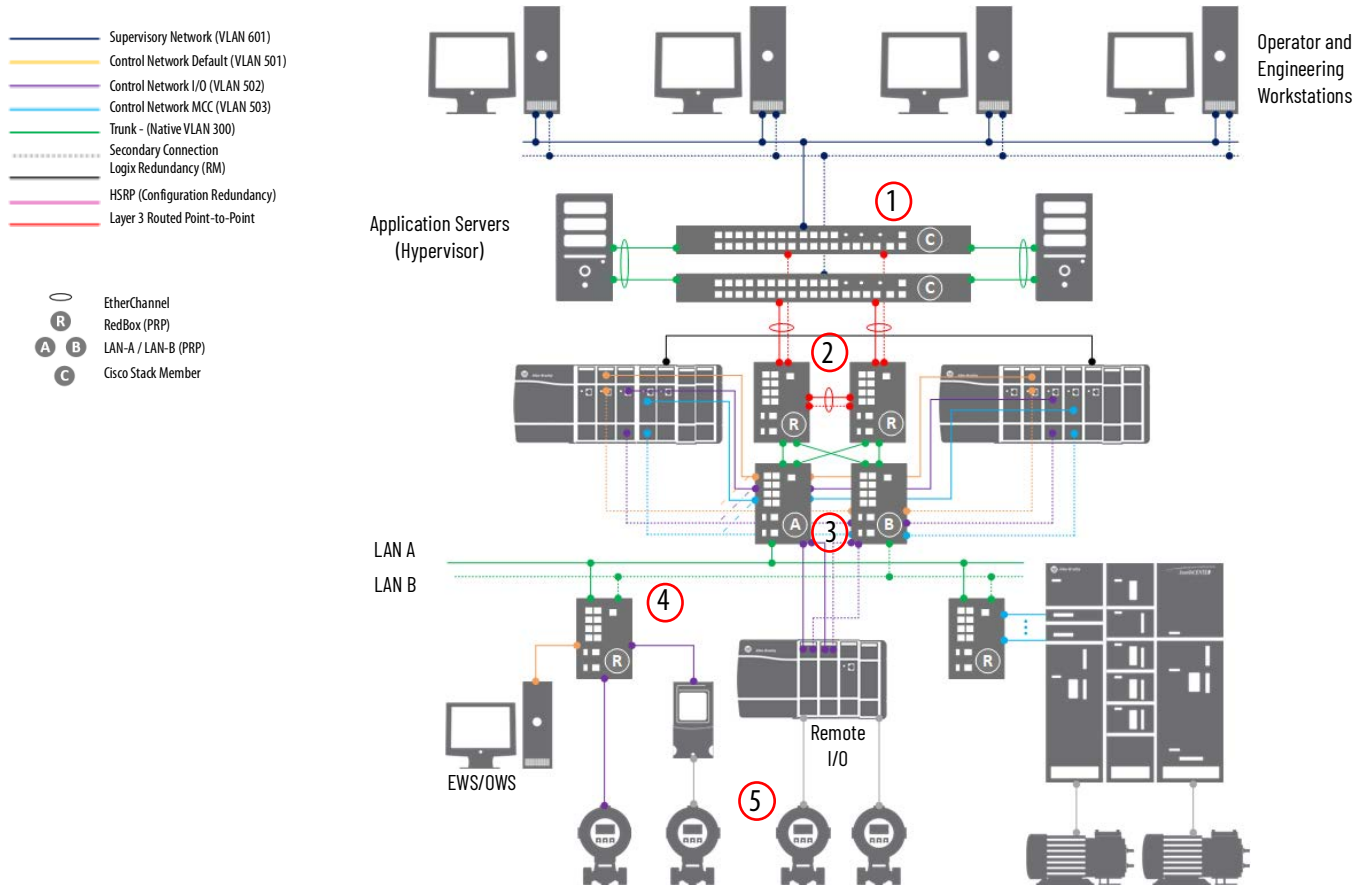
For more information, see these additional resources.

Resource	Description
<a href="#">Design Guide, Deploying Parallel Redundancy Protocol within a CPwE Architecture, publication ENET-TD021.</a>	Highlights key IACS application requirements, technology, and supporting design considerations to help with the successful design and deployment of PRP applications.
EtherNet/IP Parallel Redundancy Protocol, publication <a href="#">ENET-AT006</a>	Describes how you can configure a Parallel Redundancy Protocol (PRP) network with a compatible device or switch.
EtherNet/IP Network Devices User Manual, publication <a href="#">ENET-UM006</a>	Explains Logix 5000® tools that are used in EtherNet/IP topologies and network operation.
Cisco Catalyst® 9300 Series Switches	Describes the <a href="#">hardware installation</a> .
	Describes how to <a href="#">update firmware</a> .
	Lists the recommended <a href="#">firmware downloads</a> .
	Describes how to <a href="#">configure the switch</a> .

## Switch Configuration in a Redundant PRP Topology

The following figure shows an example PRP topology. The numbers circled in red match the sequential instructions below the example.

Figure 8 - Redundant PRP Topology Example



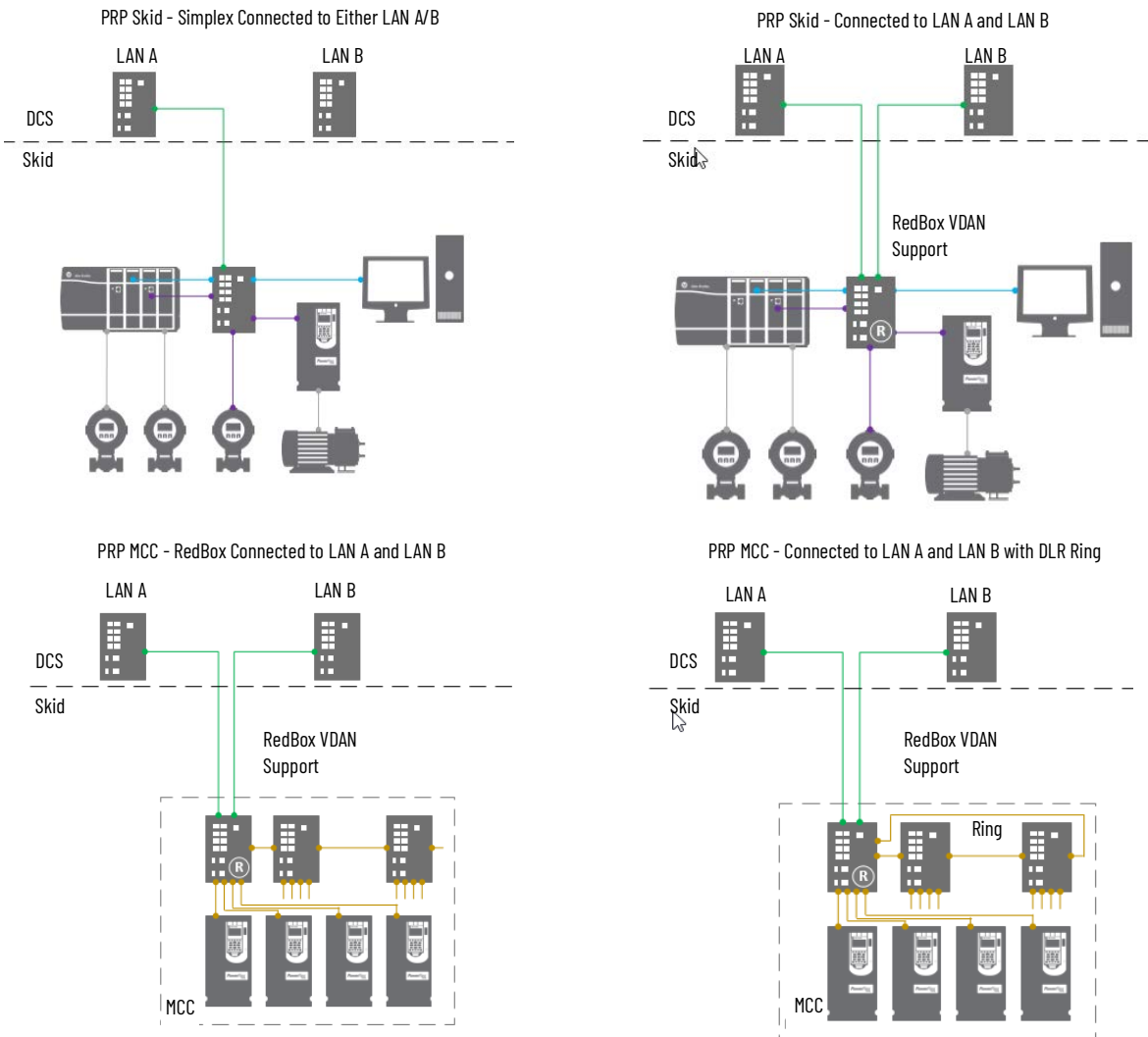
[PROCES-RD100](#) contains the recommended topology and switch settings. Download the spreadsheet and use the tab that is referenced in each step.



**WARNING:** Do not connect switches together before the network is fully configured.

1. Configure the Cisco stack switches.  
See the '1 PRP Cisco Stack Switch' tab in the topology worksheet.xlsx.
  - a. Connect to distribution switches
  - b. Connect to application servers
 For stacking guidelines and cabling considerations, see Cisco user documentation.
2. Configure the HSRP distribution switches.  
See the '2 PRP HSRP Switch' tab in the topology worksheet.xlsx.
  - a. Connect distribution switches to the core stack
  - b. Configure PRP
3. Configure the LAN A/B access switches.  
See the '3 PRP LAN A B' tab in the topology worksheet.xlsx.
4. Configure the RedBox switches.

- See the '4 PRP RedBox Infrastructure' tab in the topology worksheet.xlsx.
5. Add PRP devices or skids.  
See the user documentation for your devices on how to configure PRP settings.  
For examples, see [Figure 9](#).
  6. Verify the PRP configuration.  
See the '5 PRP Verification' tab in the topology worksheet.xlsx.

**Figure 9 - PRP Skid and MCC Lineup**



## Resilient DLR Topology

Device Level Ring (DLR) is an EtherNet/IP protocol that is defined by the Open DeviceNet® Vendors' Association (ODVA). DLR provides a means to detect, manage, and recover from single faults in a ring-based network.

A DLR network includes the following types of ring nodes.

Node	Description
Ring supervisor	<p>A ring supervisor provides these functions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manages traffic on the DLR network</li> <li>• Collects diagnostic information for the network</li> </ul> <p>A DLR network requires at least one node to be configured as ring supervisor. By default, the supervisor function is disabled on supervisor-capable devices.</p>
Ring participants	<p>Ring participants provide these functions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Process data that is transmitted over the network.</li> <li>• Pass on the data to the next node on the network.</li> <li>• Report fault locations to the active ring supervisor.</li> </ul> <p>When a fault occurs on the DLR network, ring participants reconfigure themselves and relearn the network topology.</p>
Redundant gateways (optional)	<p>Redundant gateways are multiple switches that are connected to a single DLR network and also connected together through the rest of the network. Redundant gateways provide DLR network resiliency to the rest of the network.</p>

Consider the following if you choose this topology:

- Depending on firmware capabilities, both devices and switches can operate as supervisors or ring nodes on a DLR network. Only switches can operate as redundant gateways.
- Multiport EtherNet/IP devices that are equipped with DLR technology connect directly to neighboring nodes and form a ring topology at the end devices. If a break in the line is detected, the network provides an alternate routing of the data to help recover the network at fast rates.
- All end devices that are tightly coupled to a controller must be a part of the same embedded switch topology. This peer-to-peer architecture reduces the physical amount (and therefore cost) of cabling.
- Enhanced diagnostics that are built into DLR-enabled products identify the point of failure, helping to speed maintenance and reduce mean time to restoration.
- The DLR ring supervisor maintains a loop-free topology by blocking port 2 of the embedded-switch device. If the supervisor detects a fault in the network, it unblocks port 2 until the fault is corrected. It's important to remember to enable a ring supervisor before closing the DLR ring. If the ring closed before the supervisor is enabled, a bridge loop results, which generates a broadcast storm.

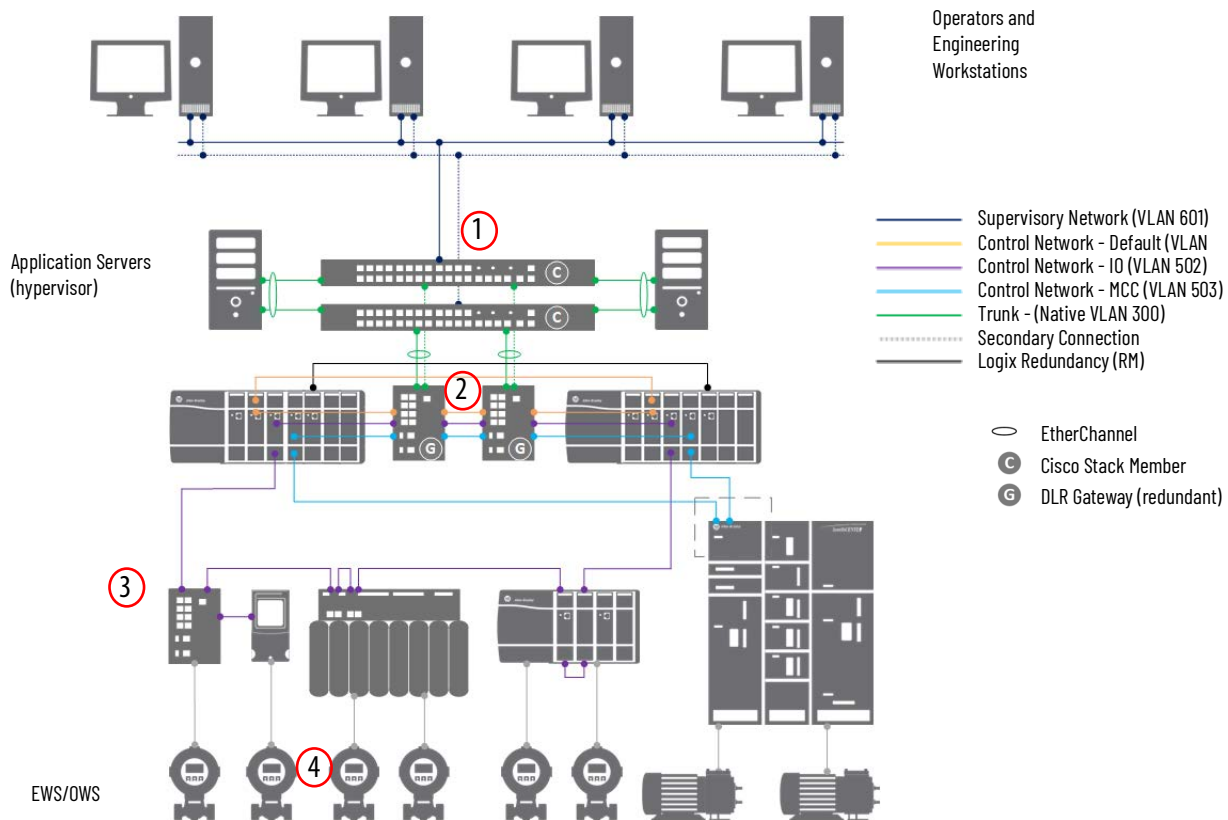
### Additional Resources for DLR Topology

For more information, see these additional resources.

Resource	Description
<a href="#">EtherNet/IP Device Level Ring, publication ENET-AT007</a>	Describes DLR network operation, topologies, configuration considerations, and diagnostic methods
EtherNet/IP Network Devices User Manual, publication <a href="#">ENET-UM006</a>	Explains Logix 5000 tools that are used in EtherNet/IP topologies and network operation.

[Figure 10](#) shows an example DLR topology. The numbers circled in red match the sequential instructions below the example.

Figure 10 - Resilient DLR Topology Example



## Switch Configuration in a Resilient DLR Topology

Switch configuration in a DLR topology follows the workflow that is shown in [Figure 10](#).

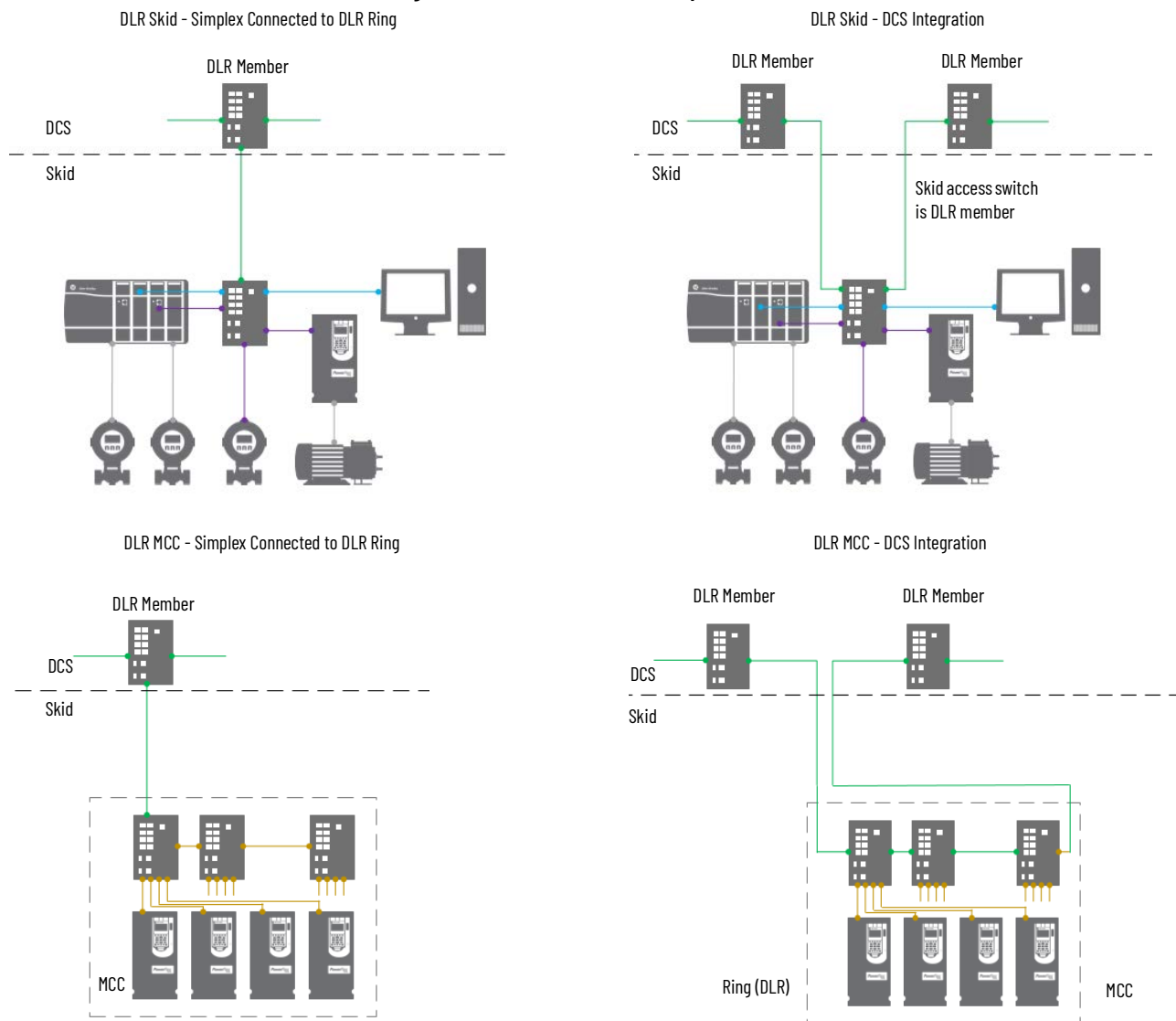


[PROCES-RD100](#) contains the recommended topology and switch settings. Download the spreadsheet and use the tab that is referenced in each step.



**WARNING:** Do not connect switches together before the network is fully configured.

1. Configure the Cisco stack switches.  
See the '1 DLR Cisco Stack Switch' tab in the topology worksheet.xlsx.
  - a. Connect to distribution switches
  - b. Connect to application servers  
For stacking guidelines and cabling considerations, see the Cisco user documentation.
2. Configure the gateways.  
See the '2 DLR Gateway Switch' tab in the topology worksheet.xlsx.
3. Configure the ring access switches.  
See the '3 DLR Ring Switch' tab in the topology worksheet.xlsx.
4. Add DLR devices or skids.  
See the user documentation for your devices on how to configure DLR settings.  
For examples, see [Figure 11](#).
5. Verify the DLR configuration.  
See the '4 DLR Verification' tab in the topology worksheet.xlsx.

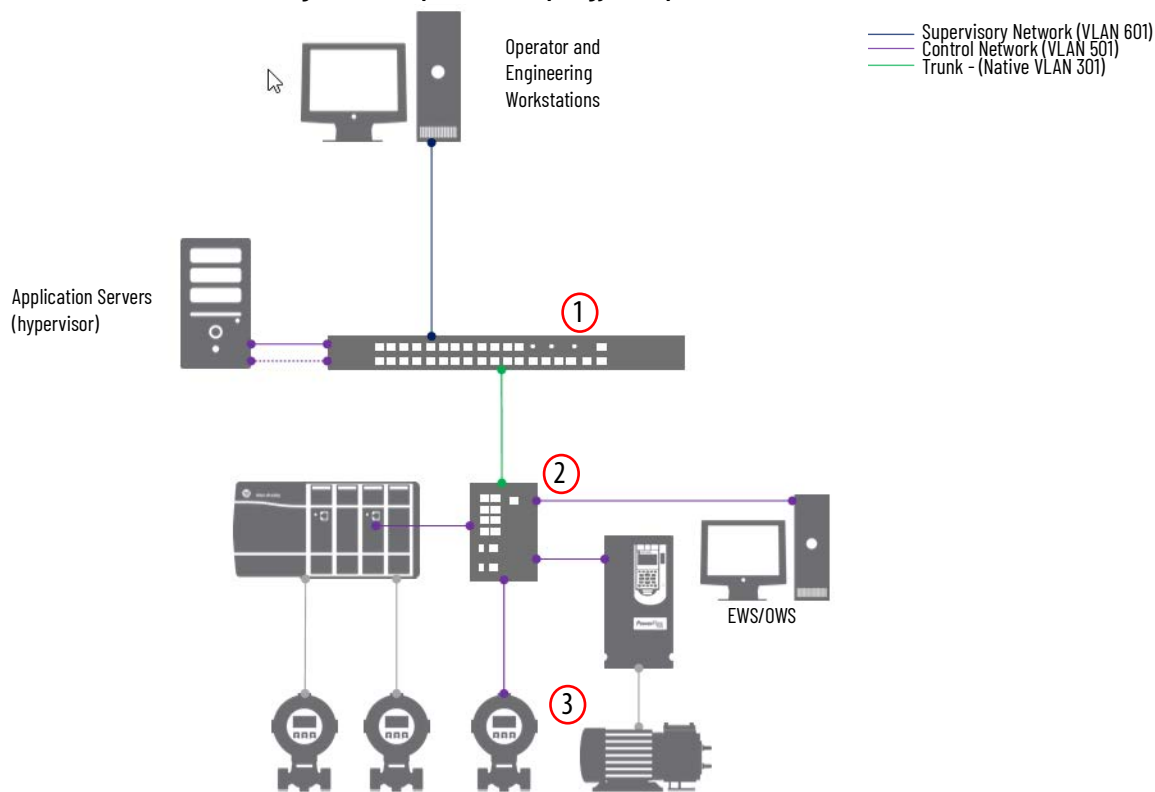
**Figure 11 - DLR Skid and MCC Lineup**

## Simplex - Star Topology

In a star topology, access switches serve as an uplink from the servers to the workstations. Layer 2 switches also send information packets at the controller level from the end devices. With multiple network levels, access switches control the flow of information to make sure that packets are delivered to the correct network level.

Figure 12 shows an example simplex star topology. The numbers circled in red match the sequential instructions below the example.

Figure 12 - Simplex - Star Topology Example



Consider the following if you choose this topology:

- The first switch that Rockwell Automation equipment touches must have IGMP snooping enabled. IGMP snooping enables switches to forward multicast packets to ports that are only part of a particular multicast group.

Additional Resources for Simplex Star Topology

For more information, see these additional resources.

Resource	Description
Stratix Managed Switches User Manual, publication <a href="#">1783-UM007</a>	Describes the embedded software features and tools for configuring and managing the Ethernet managed switches.
Stratix 5200 and Stratix 5800 Managed Switches, publication <a href="#">1783-UM012</a>	Describes how to configure, manage, and troubleshoot Stratix® 5200 and Stratix 5800 managed Ethernet switches and expansion modules.
Stratix Infrastructure Product Family Quick Reference Drawing, publication <a href="#">IASIMP-QR029</a>	Illustration that shows options for connecting your plant network by using standard Ethernet technology.

## Switch Configuration in a Simplex Topology

Switch configuration in a simplex topology follows the workflow that is shown in [Figure 12](#).



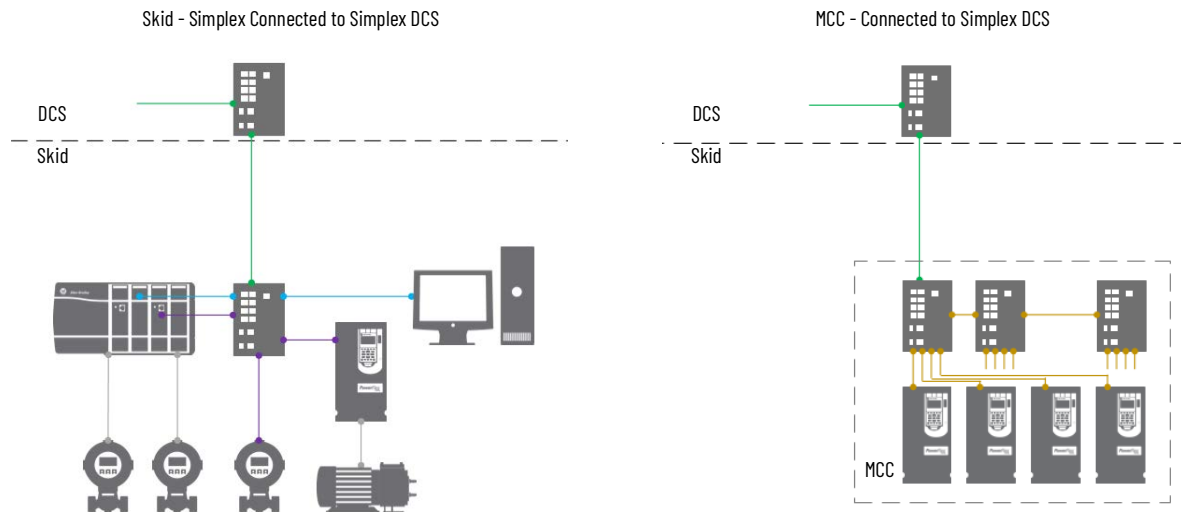
**WARNING:** Do not connect switches together before the network is fully configured.



[PROCES-RD100](#) contains the recommended topology and switch settings. Download the spreadsheet and use the tab that is referenced in each step.

1. Configure the Cisco stack switch.  
See the '1 Simplex Cisco Stack Switch' tab in the topology worksheet.xlsx.  
For stacking guidelines and cabling considerations, see the Cisco user documentation.
2. Configure the access switches.  
See the '2 Simplex Access Switch' tab Simplex Switches tab in the topology worksheet.xlsx.
3. Add simplex devices.  
See the user documentation for your devices on how to configure network settings.  
For examples, see [Figure 13](#).
4. Verify the Simplex configuration.  
See the '3 Simplex Verification' tab in the topology worksheet.xlsx.

**Figure 13 - Simplex Skid and MCC Lineup**



## Perimeter Network Considerations

The Perimeter Network (Microsoft®) is a buffer that enforces data security policies between a trusted network (Industrial Zone) and an untrusted network (Enterprise Zone).

For secure data sharing, the Perimeter Network contains assets that act as brokers between the zones. Consider these methods:

- Use an application mirror, such as a PI-to-PI interface for FactoryTalk® Historian
- Use Microsoft Remote Desktop Gateway services
- Use a reverse proxy server

## Time Synchronization

System time synchronization is important so that the internal clocks in the controllers, workstations, and servers reference the same time for any event or alarm that occurs. Configure the PASS, application servers, OWS, and EWS to use a single server (for example, a domain controller) as their time reference and keep their clocks synced to it.



Use a domain controller with these procedures.



PADCA

## Configure Internet Time Synchronization

This section describes how to configure the Windows Time Service (w32Time) to use the Internet as a medium for sourcing a UTC time. Use the Windows time utility from an elevated command prompt.

Complete these steps by using the domain controller that is hosting the PDC emulator role (PADCA).

1. Open an elevated Command session and click the Windows Key.  
The Start Menu appears.
2. Choose Command Prompt (admin).
3. From within this Command session, type the following while substituting for the <pool> argument per your requirements:

```
w32tm /Config /ManualPeerList:<pool> /SyncFromFlags:Manual /Reliable:yes /Update
```

### IMPORTANT

<pool> is a place holder for the URL or URLs of multiple time servers (for example, atomic clocks). If you can't access the Internet, those URLs could be of your parent domain controller. You can research UTC sources for your proximity, the following table has examples that work for the U.S.

Example	Purpose
us.pool.ntp.org,0x8	URL specifies a single server
0.us.pool.ntp.org,0x8 1.us.pool.ntp.org,0x8 1.us.pool.ntp.org,0x8 2.us.pool.ntp.org,0x8	URLs specify the use of 4 unique servers

There are (at least) four server pools of pool.ntp.org. But, the preferred assignment for <pool> is the first one (us.pool.ntp.org,0x8). Windows Event Viewer can log errors for URLs that do not respond.

The 0x8 qualifier specifies Client Mode packets for server communication. For more information, See [Microsoft Knowledgebase article 875424, Time synchronization may not succeed when you try to synchronize with a non-Windows NTP server.](#)

You can specify a list of URLs that are <space> separated and enclosed in quotes. Make sure to append a type identifier for the URLs identifier as shown in the previous table. For example, 0x8 (client mode).

The illustration shows an example that sources the U.S. pool.

```
Administrator: Cmd
Microsoft Windows [Version 6.3.9600]
(c) 2013 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.
C:\Windows\system32>w32tm /Config /ManualPeerList:us.pool.ntp.org,0x8 /SyncFromFlags:Manual /Reliable:yes /Update
```

If your system can't access the Internet, <pool> can be a single target such as your parent or local Domain controller. Your domain time might not be within tolerable differences of other domains in your enterprise.

Example	Purpose
.	Uses the current computer (PADCA) as the time source
PADCA	Specifies a network time server on your local network

4. After you've commanded the w32tm utility by using the new configuration in [step 3](#), use the Net utility to stop and then start the Windows Time Service from the same command session.

```
C:\Windows\system32>net stop w32time
The Windows Time service is stopping.
The Windows Time service was stopped successfully.

C:\Windows\system32>net start w32time
The Windows Time service is starting.
The Windows Time service was started successfully.
```

## NTP to PTP Clock Conversion

This section illustrates how to configure a Stratix 5800 to convert Network Time Protocol (NTP) to Precision Time Protocol (PTP),

1. From the Device Manager of the switch, click Administration and choose Time.
2. From the Mode pull-down, select NTP-PTP Clock.
3. Type a priority value for Priority1 and Priority2.
4. Click Submit.
- 5.



[PROCES-RD100](#) contains the recommended topology and switch settings. Download the spreadsheet and use the tab that is referenced in each step.

## Configure PTP Time Synchronization for Ethernet Bridges

Precision Time Protocol (PTP) enables precise synchronization of clocks in measurement and control systems. PTP generates a Master-Slave relationship among the clocks in the system. Clocks, which are synchronized over the EtherNet/IP network, derive their time from a clock that is selected as the Grandmaster clock. The Time Sync and Motion option **must** be enabled for Ethernet bridge modules to propagate time through the network via switches.

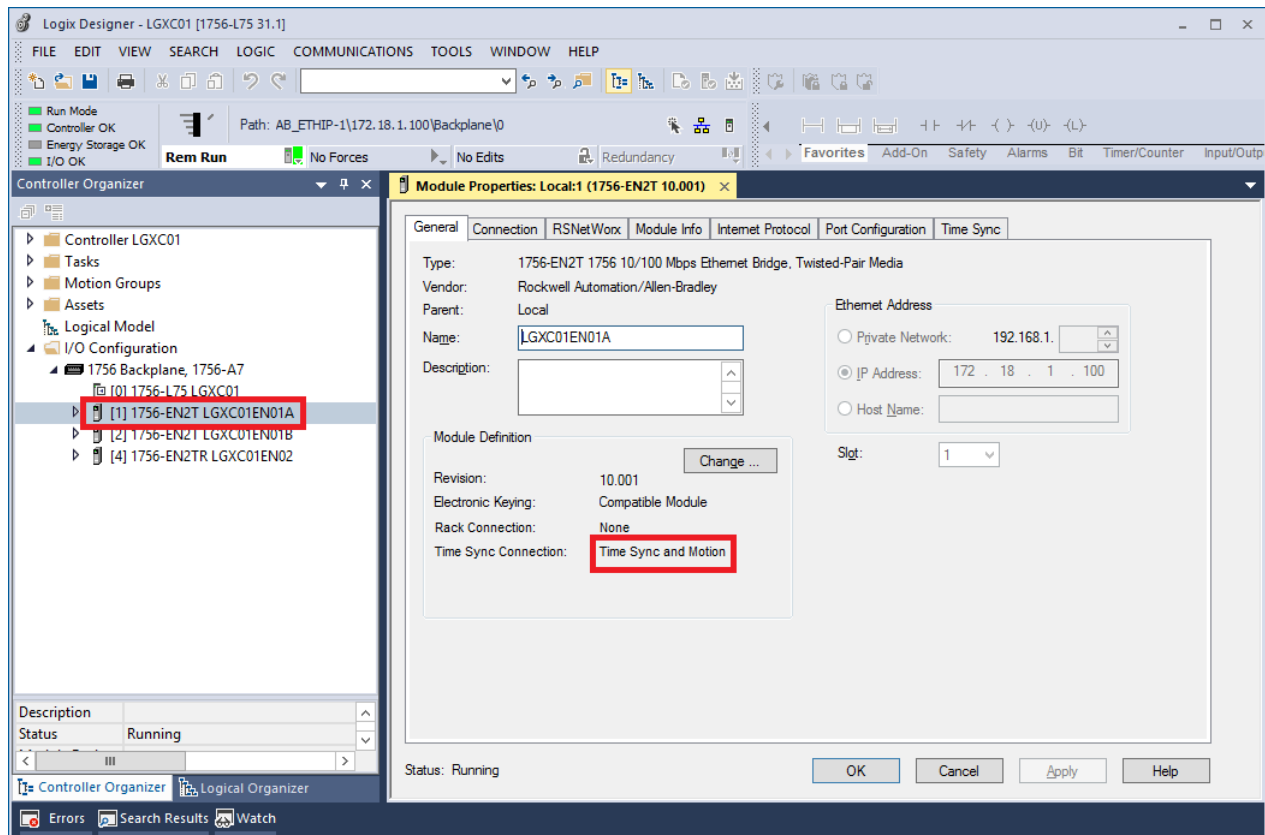
Use an Engineering Workstation with these procedures.



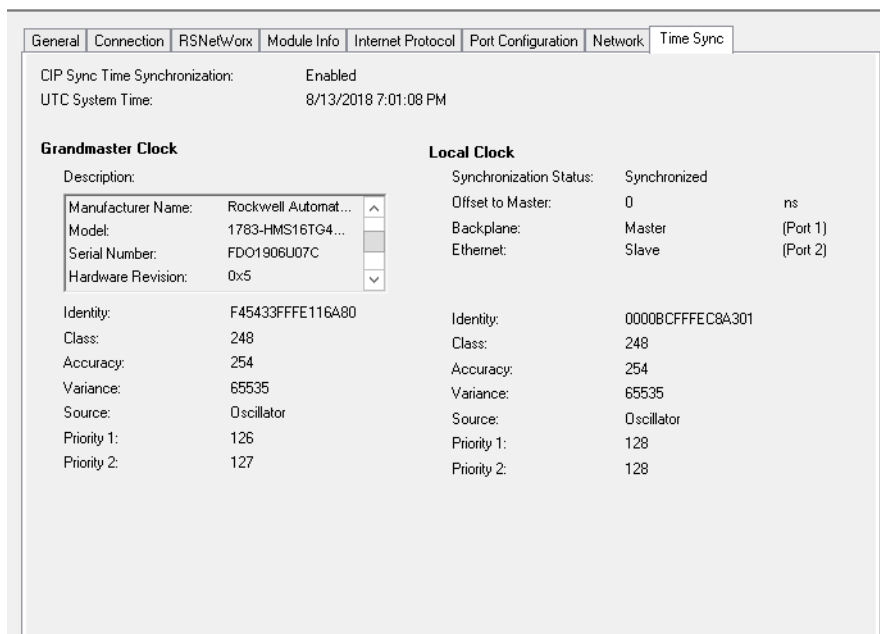
EWS



1. Open your project in Logix Designer. On the General tab of the Module Properties dialog box, make sure that 'Time Sync and Motion' is selected for the connection.



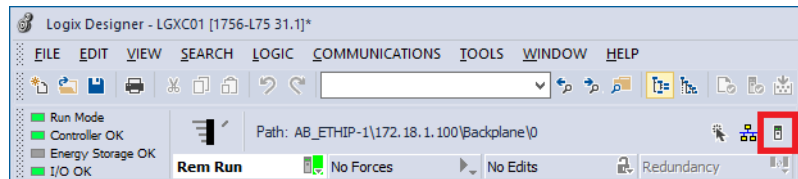
2. If online, select the Time Sync tab to confirm Grandmaster clock settings.



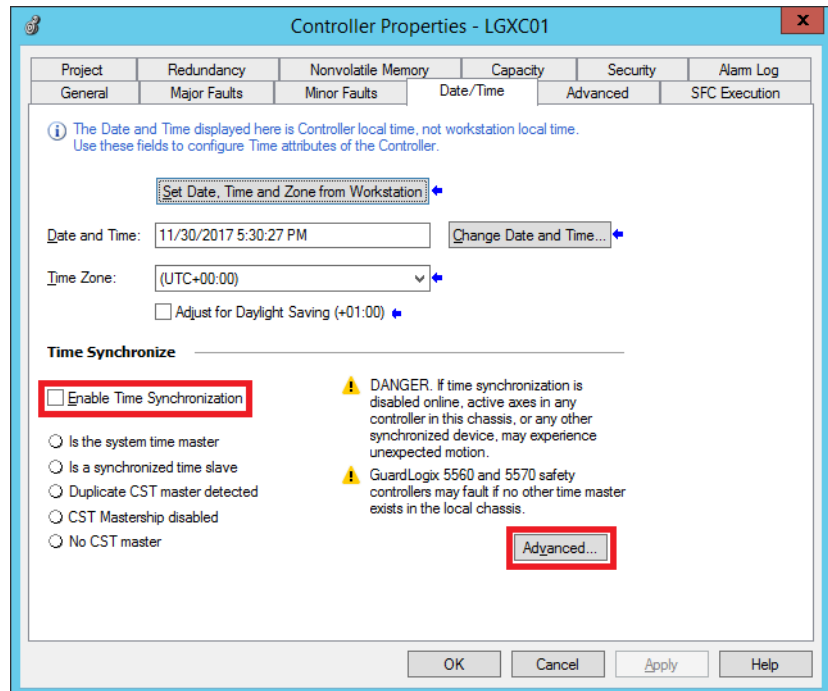
## Configure PTP Time Synchronization for Controllers

A Logix controller that is CIP Sync enabled and designated the Grandmaster clock is the real-time source for the control system. The controller synchronizes with the PTP between the controllers and networks. Complete these steps.

- Using the Logix Designer application, click the Open Controller™ Properties symbol.



The Controller Properties dialog box appears.



- On the Date/Time tab, select Enable Time Synchronization.

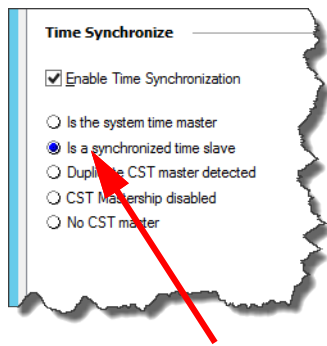
---

**IMPORTANT** Use your local time to configure the Time Zone and Adjust for Daylight Saving.

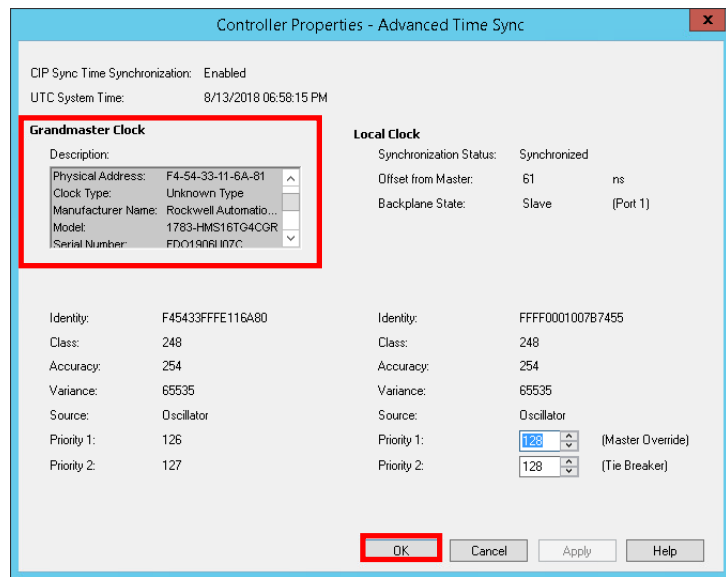
---

- Select Advanced.

## 4. Select OK on the Controller Properties dialog box.



The status 'Is a synchronized slave' appears when the controller is synchronized.



The Grandmaster clock reference can be confirmed.

## Network Device Library

The Network Device Library is a tested, documented, and life cycle managed object library. The Device Library provides pre-configured status and diagnostic faceplates and AOI sets for Rockwell Automation® network devices.

The Network Device Objects may be used with Machine Builder, Process, and Packaged Libraries or as standalone components. Network Device Library add-on instructions objects collect, process, and deliver data between hardware devices and application logic.

The Network Device Library includes Add-On Instructions (AOIs) and HMI Faceplates for Allen-Bradley® Stratix® Switch products, Device-Level Ring (DLR) network monitoring and Parallel Redundancy Protocol (PRP) network monitoring.

For more information, see the Network Device Library reference manual, publication [DEVICE-RM400](#).

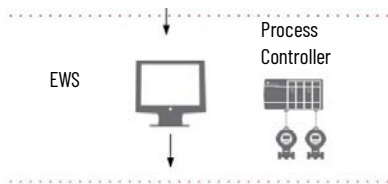
**Notes:**

## Process Controller Features

The process controller is a member of the Logix 5000® family that provides out-of-box process functionality. Embedded PlantPax® instructions, graphical workflows, and tag-based alarms streamline code development for your system.

This chapter explains the process controller features that are central to a PlantPax application. If you create a new application, see [Use ACM to Create an Application](#). To modify an application, see [Modifying an Existing PlantPax System](#).

### Prerequisites



PlantPax system release 5.0 added process controllers to the Logix 5000 family of controllers. The process controllers offer additional capabilities that are targeted for DCS applications.

Controller	Catalog Numbers
ControlLogix® 5580 process controller	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1756-L81EP</li> <li>1756-L83EP</li> <li>1756-L85EP</li> </ul>
CompactLogix™ 5380 process controller	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5069-L320ERP</li> <li>5069-L340ERP</li> </ul>

For standard use information, see:

- ControlLogix 5580 and GuardLogix® 5580 Controllers, publication [1756-UM543](#)
- CompactLogix 5380 and Compact GuardLogix 5380 Controllers, publication [5069-UM001](#)

To best use controller resources:

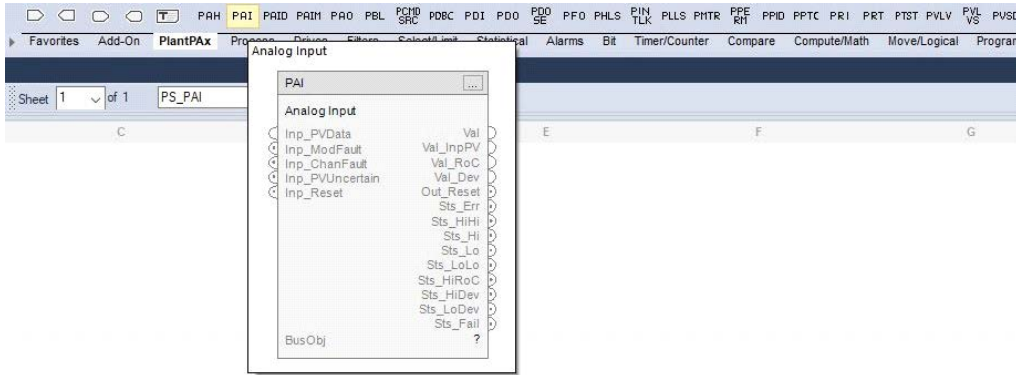
- Use periodic tasks **only**, with minimum number of tasks that are used to define execution speed, faster tasks getting higher priority (lower number).
- Use the raP\_Dvc\_LgxCPU\_5X80 Add-On Instruction to monitor controller use.

For more information, see these additional resources.

Resource	Description
High Availability Systems Reference Manual, <a href="#">HIGHAV-RM002</a>	Provides guidelines for high availability systems, including redundant system components, networks, and other hardware and software considerations.
Rockwell Automation Library of Process Objects Reference Manual, publication <a href="#">PROCES-RM200</a>	Describes how to build and use library components that comprise the Rockwell Automation Library of Process Objects.
Logix 5000 Controllers Produced and Consumed Tags, publication <a href="#">1756-PM011</a>	Details how, with a Logix 5000 controller, to produce and consume standard tags and produce a large array.
Logix 5000 Controllers Import/Export Programming Manual, publication <a href="#">1756-PM019</a>	Describes how to import and export logic components to and from a controller project.

## PlantPax Process Objects

Process controllers support an exclusive set of embedded PlantPax instructions.

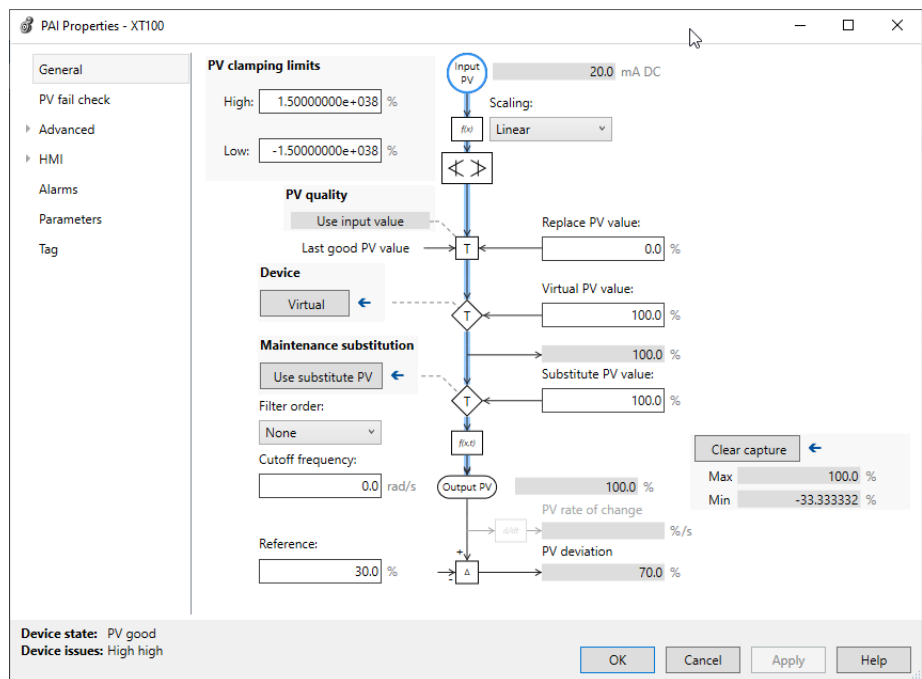


The PlantPax instructions offer enhanced functionality, including tag-based alarms, that can reduce the number of steps to configure control strategies. For more information about the instructions, see:

- Studio 5000 Logix Designer® online help
- Logix 5000 Advanced Process Control and Drives and Equipment Phase and Sequence Instructions Reference Manual, [1756-RM006](#)

Each PlantPax instruction features an intuitive design-time configuration interface. It's based on the SAMA (Scientific Apparatus Makers Association) diagram interface, which focuses on the flow of information.

The example shows the PAI - Process Analog Input Object.



This interface improves upon prior releases of the process library, in where the underlying elements of an Add-On Instruction can be viewed but do not illustrate how it functions.

The blue animation line adjusts depending on the instruction execution. In the previous example, see the Maintenance substitution option. If you select 'Use substitute PV,' the blue animation line shows a new execution path.

## Import Add-On Instructions

There are additional libraries of Add-On Instructions that you can use to supplement the PlantPAx embedded instructions. Studio 5000 Logix Designer can import a single Add-On Instruction or a Program/Routine containing multiple Add-On Instructions, such as a control strategy generated with ACM software.

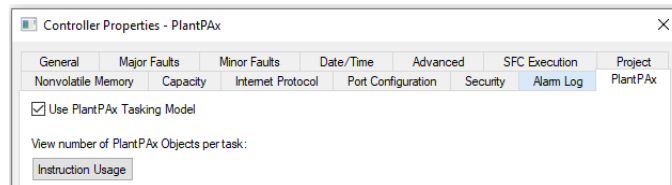
Add-On Instructions are used when the following functionality is required:

Feature	Description
Organization, ownership, and arbitration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Allows the organization of devices into groups from HMI</li> <li>Manages and prioritizes ownership of equipment groups</li> <li>Propagates command and status through equipment groups</li> </ul>
Process Instructions from prior libraries	Non-process controllers use the Add-On Instructions from the process library, release 4.1 or earlier
Device Add-On Instructions for supported network devices	The purpose of device Add-On Instructions is to reshape the data structure of similar but disparate equipment to a common structure that can be used by a single common PlantPAx instruction. For example, a device Add-On Instruction for a Variable Speed Drive (VSD) is used to reshape the disparate VSD source data so that a common PlantPAx instruction (PVSD) can also mean that a common control strategy can be used to control all those same VSDs

## Configure Controller Properties

Use Studio5000 Logix Designer application to configure the controller.

- From the Controller Properties dialog box, click the PlantPAx tab.



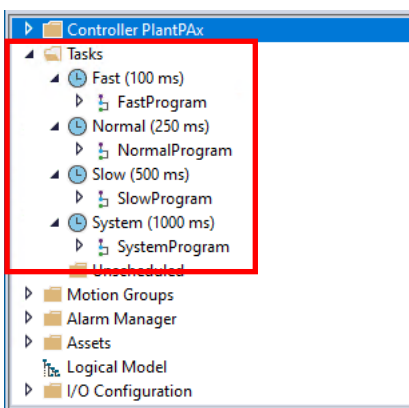
- If you're using a process controller, leave the check for Use PlantPAx Tasking Model box (checked by default).
- Click the Date/Time tab and check the Enable Time Synchronization box.
- Enable Automatic Diagnostics on the Advanced tab.

Automatic Diagnostics is a mechanism to detect and present device descriptive events with no programming required. Diagnostics based on the device definition (such as fault or open wire) are sent to the HMI and displayed on the Automatic Diagnostic Event Summary object.

State	Assess...	Event Time	Area	Device Name	Catalog	Message
<all>	<all>	<all>	<all>	<all>	<all>	<all>
✖		10/1/2020 4:16:16 PM	/RSLEArea	[CLX01]EN2TR_PPAX	1756-EN2TR	Connection Lost with Device

## PlantPAX Task Model

The Task folder contains a project structure that consists of four pre-defined periodic tasks.



Logic is placed in the appropriate task to verify that it meets the process requirements. These tasks are:

- **Fast (100 ms)** – For control fast loops, such as liquid pressure with related transmitters and pump drives
- **Normal (250 ms)** – For discrete control, such as motors, pumps, and valves
- **Slow (500 ms)** – For level, temperature, analysis loops, phases, and batch sequencing
- **System (1000 ms)** – For slow change temperature control and general controller operations, such as messaging or status

The ControlLogix 5580 and CompactLogix 5380 controllers (including the process controllers) have simplified task management from previous controllers. The controller runs control, communication, and packet processing on separate cores within the controller. You no longer have to reserve CPU time for communication or overhead.

## Create the Logical Organizer

The Logical Organizer is a graphical representation of the organization of the configuration logic that is aligned to the process being controlled, called the logic model. It enables you to create and organize hierarchies of the programs and folders in your project, independent of the execution model.

A process controller contains tasks that execute at various rates. Each task contains programs of code that is required to execute at the selected task's rate of execution. The Logical Organizer helps create an understandable organization, based on process functional requirements.

- Server-based alarms and Logix tag-based alarms are often based on area organization within the Logical Organizer and built using the PlantPAX configuration tool.
- Organize batch applications following the ISA-S88 physical model.

### IMPORTANT

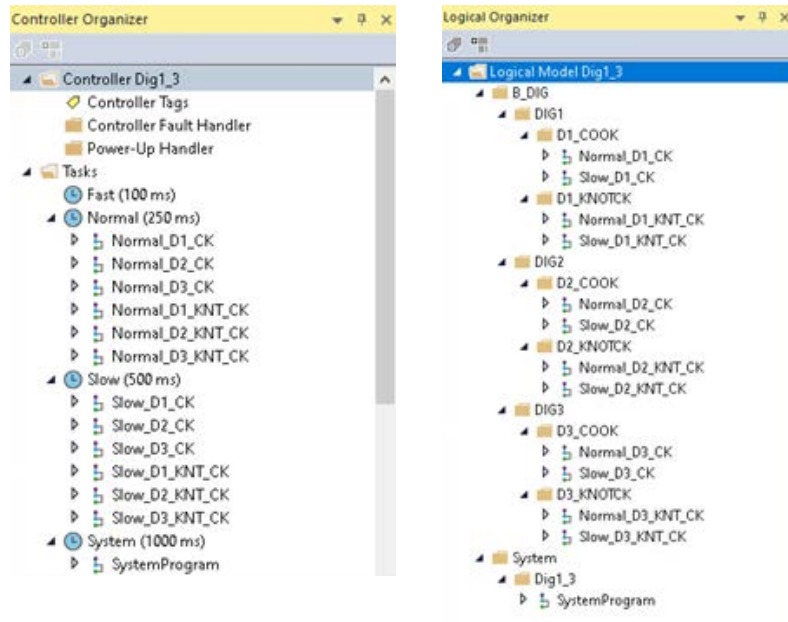
Several components in a PlantPAX system depend on the organization and hierarchy of the system:

- HMI application
- Alarms
- User roles and responsibility
- Security

This example shows the same controller project that is viewed from the Controller Organizer and its associated Logical Organizer. The Controller Organizer is used to ensure that the logic is executed at a rate suitable for the process. The Logical Organizer can be used to create folders aligned with the application (a folder for each HMI display) and allows dragging the associated programs into the appropriate folders. This enables accurate alarm rollups and



breadcrumbs on the Navigation bars to assist the operator in troubleshooting abnormal conditions. (See PROCES-RM200 Chapters 2 and 3 for more detail).



## Add Modules and Devices to the Controller Organizer

All Logix 5000 controllers require module connections (analog, communication, digital, specialty) to be defined in the I/O Configuration list.

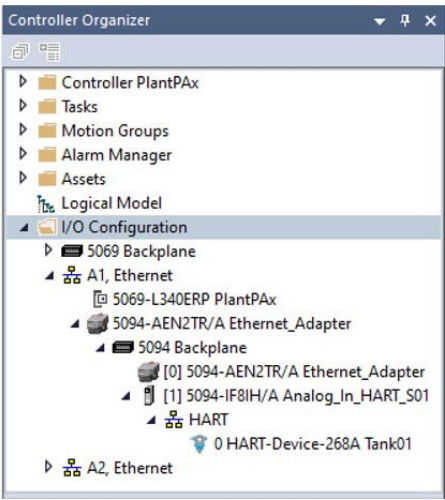
Follow these guidelines for I/O module properties in a PlantPax system.

**Table 6 - Guidelines for Module Configuration**

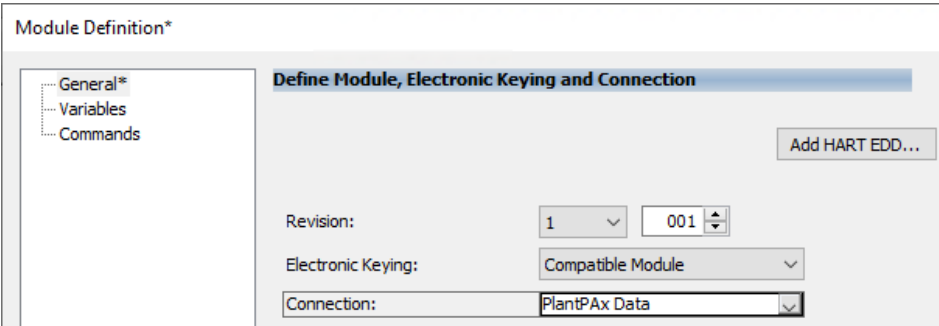
Item	Description
Electronic keying	<p>Electronic Keying reduces the possibility that you use the wrong device in a control system. It compares the device that is defined in your project to the installed device. If keying fails, a fault occurs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use Exact Match for keying in a validated environment. This makes sure that only the same series and revision device can be used.</li> <li>Use Compatible Module for keying in environments where a newer series or revision device can be used without requiring changes to the definition.</li> </ul> <p>For more detailed information on Electronic Keying, see Electronic Keying in Logix 5000 Control Systems Application Technique, publication <a href="#">LOGIXAT001</a>.</p>
Requested Packet Interval (RPI)	<p>The RPI value is the rate at which the controller attempts to communicate with the module. RPI is often defined by the inherent properties of the signal being measured. For example, a temperature measurement changes slower than pressure, so a larger RPI could be used to a device that measures the temperature. We recommend that you specify an RPI that is two times faster than task period. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A device that is used within a 250 ms task requires a 125 ms RPI.</li> <li>A device that is used within a 100 ms task requires a 50 ms RPI.</li> </ul> <p>Use NONE for the Connection Format to remote communication modules used as bridged adapters. For modules that support Precision Time Protocol (PTP) synchronization, it's recommended to use Time Sync and Motion.</p>
Connection tab options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If inhibited, the controller does not attempt to make a connection. This is used as placeholder for a device that is not yet implemented or installed.</li> <li>Major Fault On Controller If Connection Fails While in Run Mode. This is used on critical connections, where controller execution can't continue if a problem is detected.</li> </ul>
Integrated HART device connection	<p>Compact 5000, FLEX 5000®, and FLEXHA 5000™ I/O HART modules support two device connections types. The PlantPax data format is recommended and is pre-defined for the PAH instruction.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>PlantPax Data: Input data includes basic input from the HART device that is used by PlantPax for the four dynamic variables and semi static data. Also includes the configured device variables and commands.</li> <li>Data: Input data includes basic input from the HART device for the dynamic and device variables that are configured plus the configured commands.</li> </ul>
Concurrent Communications with FLEXHA 5000 I/O	Concurrent communications require a dedicated 1756-EN4TR.

Integrated HART Configuration

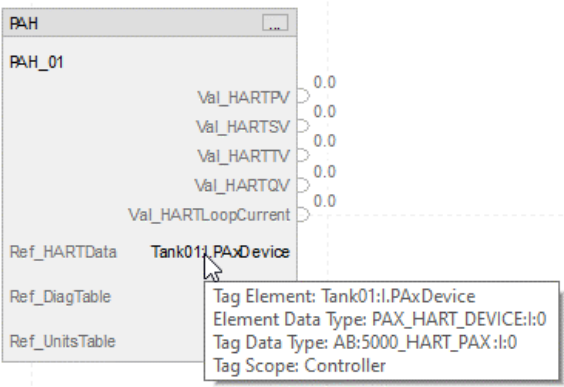
HART integration lets you directly add field devices to the I/O Configuration list.



Configure the variables and commands for the HART devices within the Module Definition. You can add HART EDD files if additional device descriptions are required. See the appropriate manufacturer for these files.



The PlantPax Data connection creates a PAX\_HART\_DEVICE:I:0 structure that is formatted for direct use in the Process Analog HART (PAH) instruction.



### Concurrent Communication Module Configuration

FLEXHA 5000 I/O requires concurrent communications. To use concurrent communication with FLEXHA 5000 I/O modules, you must configure the 1756-EN4TR EtherNet/IP™ communication module on the Device Definition dialog box in your Studio 5000 Logix Designer application project to use concurrent communication.

The screenshot shows the 'Device Definition' dialog box for a 1756-EN4TR Ethernet Bridge module. The 'Concurrent communication' dropdown menu is highlighted with a red circle and set to 'Yes'. Other settings include: Device type: 1756-EN4TR 1756 Ethernet Bridge, 2-Port, Twisted-pair Media; Name: EN4TR\_101; Revision: 4; Electronic keying: Compatible Module; Rack connection: None; Time sync and motion connection: Yes; Ethernet Address Module 1: Private network 192.168.1.101; Ethernet Address Module 2: Private network 192.168.1.102; Slot: 0; Redundant: Chassis Pair. Buttons for OK, Cancel, and Help are at the bottom right.

#### IMPORTANT

You can configure the 1756-EN4TR EtherNet/IP communication module for concurrent communications, to use with I/O modules such as FLEXHA 5000 I/O modules. Or you can configure the 1756-EN4TR EtherNet/IP communication module for standard I/O, for example, remote 1756 ControlLogix I/O modules. You can only configure the module for one or the other.

If the 1756-EN4TR EtherNet/IP communication module is configured for concurrent communication, you can still use it for class 3 communications, for example, HMI, program upload/download/monitor.

## Controller-to-Controller Communication

There are two main options to communicate among controllers:

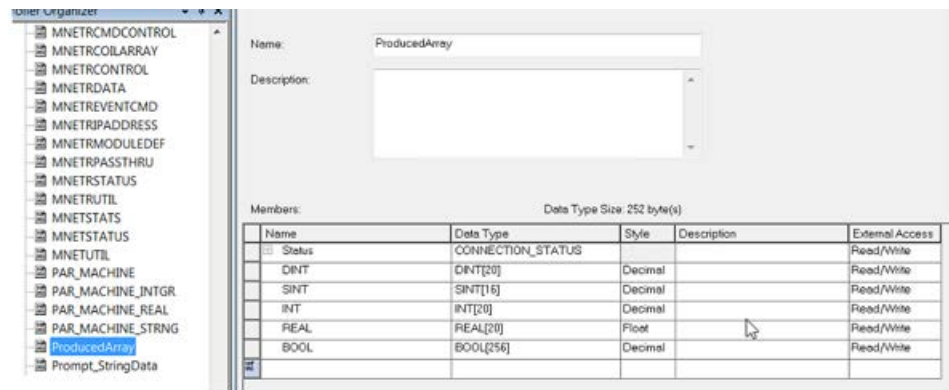
Produced and Consumed Tag	Message (MSG) Instruction
Consumed tag data is automatically received from a producer controller, at a requested packet interval (RPI), without the need for logic programming.	Read or Write messages are programmatically initiated on condition (False to True transition).
Ideal for exchanging critical data that changes frequently; use for higher priority communication.	Ideal for exchanging non-critical data that changes less frequently; use for lower priority communication.
Data is constantly sent regardless of change of state. This does not impact the scan of the controller, but it can impact network bandwidth.	Communication and network resources that are used when needed only, however, a delay can occur if controller resources aren't available when needed.
Tag size is limited to 500 bytes over the backplane and 480 bytes over a network.	Supports larger data payloads, up to 32,767 elements, using multiple data packets.
Supports tags of mixed data types (UDT).	CIP™ Generic messages to third-party devices.
You can't modify or create produced/consumed tags online in Run mode.	You can modify and create MSG instruction online in Run mode.
Routing of traffic across subnets depends upon the transmission type (Unicast or Multicast).	Message traffic can be routed across subnets and across slots of a 1756 chassis.

For more information on controller communication options, see Logix 5000 Controllers Design Considerations Manual, publication [1756-RM094](#).






# Configure Produced and Consumed Tags

Group produced and consumed tags as members in user-defined structures. This technique helps monitor connection status between controllers without increasing execution time, such as using a GSV instruction to detect status.

1. In the Logix Designer application, define a user-defined structure of a tag to be used in all controllers.



2. Name the first member Status and a data type of CONNECTION\_STATUS.  
This data type provides two BOOL bits (RunMode & ConnectionFaulted) in the Status member for each controller consuming the tag.  
MyTag.Connection\_Status.RunMode
  - Value of 1 when Producer is in Run mode.
  - Value of 0 when Producer is in Program mode.MyTag.Connection\_Status.ConnectionFaulted
  - Value of 0 when Producer connection is good, regardless of mode.
  - Value of 1 when Producer Connection is broken.
3. Once the UDT is finished, create a tag of that UDT type to be either Produced or Consumed.
4. It's recommended to add a common prefix to each tag instance of the UDT, so you more easily search for those tags.

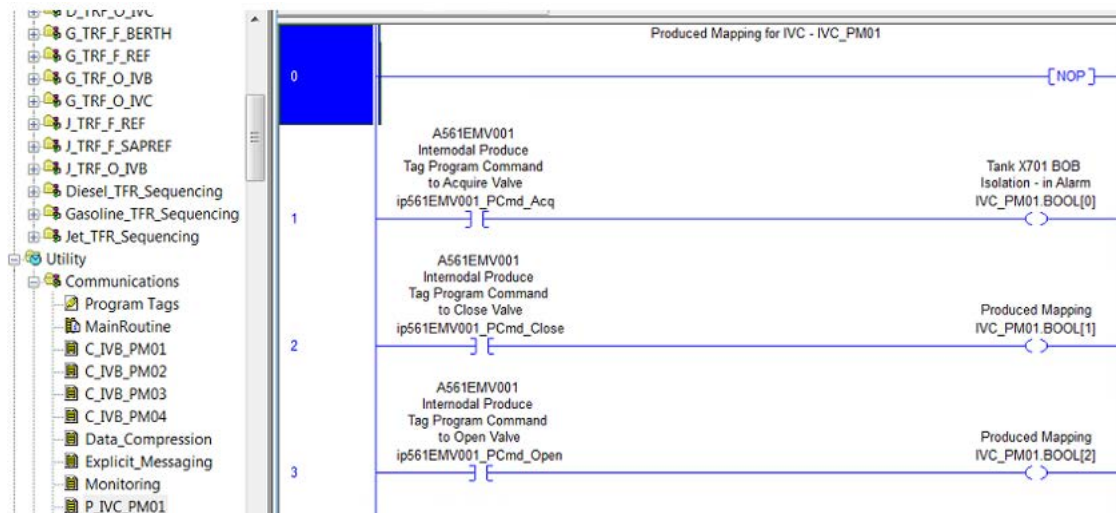
Scope:	 GRAN	Show:	Interprocessor_Comms	 Y. Enter Name Filter...		
	Name	Value	Force Mask	Style	Data Type	Description
	COMMs_from_BMS9275	{ ... }	{ ... }		Interprocessor_Comms	Granulation Dryer BMS P2P Comms
	COMMs_from_DISP	{ ... }	{ ... }		Interprocessor_Comms	Dispatch P2P Comms
	COMMs_GRAN_Produced	{ ... }	{ ... }		Interprocessor_Comms	Granulation Produced Data

5. Create a Produced tag by simply changing the tag property from base to produced and setting the max number of consumers.
6. Create a Consumed tag by changing the tag property from base to consumed. The Producer controller is selected from the I/O configuration list and the remote data (exact name of produced tag) is entered.
7. Select the RPI rate in which the produce tag is consumed.  
For bidirectional P/C tags between two controllers, both consuming controllers have each producer controller in its I/O configuration list. Multiple consumers can receive the same data from a single producer.

**IMPORTANT** When adding the Producer controller to the I/O configuration list of the Consumer controller, the firmware revision does not have to match. However, the rack size and slot number must be correct.

Data arrives asynchronous to program scan. Some applications may require a programmatic handshake. Buffering data to or from P/C tags helps to make sure that the user logic executes on that same data before it changes.

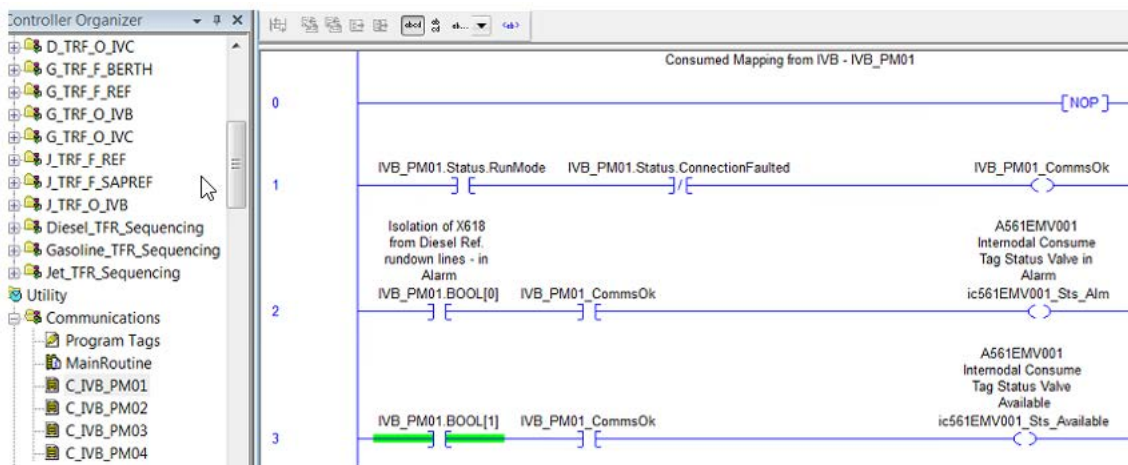
## 8. Create logic that writes values to the Produce tag elements.



## 9. Add corresponding consume tags to each controller that consumes the data.

Note that UDT structures can be exported to L5X format and imported into the other controllers.

## 10. Use Consume tag elements to write to variables in the Consuming controller.



## PlantPax Guidelines for Produced and Consumed Tags

- Produced and consumed (P/C) tags can be a single tag structure or a user-defined structure (UDT) of mixed data types. For example, a UDT tag can contain members up to 120 REALs or 100 REALs and 640 BOOLs.
- Group data in produced and consumed tags into a UDT to reduce the total number of connections.
- Make the first member of the UDT a data type of CONNECTION\_STATUS for connection status.
- Export/Import the same P/C UDT data type among controllers to confirm they match exactly.
- Make sure the number of consumers configured, for a produced tag, is the actual number of controllers consuming it to reduce the number of connections to the controller.
- Always use a handshake when transferring data between controllers through health data or manually configured diagnostic.

- We recommend unicast traffic when possible, because it transmits only to an intended destination, which reduces bandwidth. However, redundant controllers require multicast traffic to consume data.

## PlantPax Guidelines for Message Instructions

The MSG instruction asynchronously reads or writes a block of data to another module on a network.

- ControlLogix 5580 and CompactLogix 5380 support up to 256 connections. If you want to enable more than 256 MSGs at one time, use some type of management strategy.
- Use the cached option when the message connection needs to be maintained.
- Use message Reads, instead of Writes. This makes it easier to troubleshoot code by knowing where the incoming data is coming from.
- When messaging between Logix 5000 controllers, use a DINT data type where possible for maximum efficiency.
- Use MSG status flags, such as the .DN and .ER bits for handling fault conditions.
- Data arrives asynchronous to program scan (use a programmatic handshake or insert between a UID/UIE instruction pair for higher priority)
- Use the unconnected option for CIP Generic messages

## OPC UA

Simplex Process controllers now support OPC UA via the embedded Ethernet ports. The controller can act as either an OPC UA server or client. The PlantPax Process controllers support the following number of OPC UA nodes:

- 5069-L320ERP: 300 OPC UA nodes
- 5069-L340ERP: 600 OPC UA nodes
- 1756-L81EP: 0 (zero) OPC UA nodes
- 1756-L83EP: 1200 OPC UA nodes
- 1756-L85EP: 15,000 OPC UA nodes

No more than 50,000 nodes/sec of OPC UA data when a controller is acting as an OPC UA server in a PlantPax system. Additionally, only OPC UA data should utilize the embedded port on 5580 controllers in a PlantPax system. All other data (HMI, I/O) should use an in-chassis communication module such as the 1756-EN4TR.

Diagnostic data regarding the OPC UA server can be monitored via the controller webpage. By default, the controller webpage is disabled. The controller webpage can be enabled in Studio 5000 Logix Designer. Navigate to the Security tab within the Controller Properties and check the option "Enable Controller Web Pages".

For more information on how to configure OPC UA on a Process Controller, see KnowledgeBase article [OPC UA in 5580 and 5380 Logix Controllers 36 firmware ToC](#) and OPC UA in 5580 and 5380 Controllers, publication [1756-UM023](#).

## Integrate Field Devices

PlantPax systems use specialized field devices that operate on various communication protocols, such as HART, EtherNet/IP™, PROFIBUS PA, and Foundation Fieldbus.

Depending on the controller type and process library version, you need different elements to integrate a field device. These elements use the Logix Designer application for device control to the corresponding object in FactoryTalk® View SE for HMI faceplates.

Most field device integrations require that you instantiate one Add-On module Profile (AOP) and two Add-On Instructions (AOI) per device for end-to-end control and monitoring.

- Module or Device-specific AOP for the Logix Designer application to create the item or device tags in the I/O Configuration list.
- Device-specific Add-On Instruction to access device tags and prepare the data for use within the controller project.



- Generic Add-On Instruction to access device data, along with custom-made device diagnostics and unit tables, to enable visibility on an HMI faceplate within the PlantPax system.

## HART Integration

Highly integrated HART provides a PlantPax data type in the process controller:

- See Integrate Endress+Hauser Instruments in a PlantPax Distributed Control System, publication [PROCES-SG003](#) for more information.
- Configuration of devices within the I/O Configuration tree (no Add-On Instruction needed). See section “5094-IF8IH to PAH Configuration Example” in publication [PROCES-RM200](#) for more information.
- Device diagnostics automatically propagate to the controller project

## PROFIBUS PA Integration

See Profibus PA and FOUNDATION Fieldbus Linking Devices in a PlantPax Distributed Control System, publication [PROCES-RM213](#) for more information about integrating PROFIBUS PA devices.

## FOUNDATION Fieldbus Integration

See Profibus PA and FOUNDATION Fieldbus Linking Devices in a PlantPax Distributed Control System, publication [PROCES-RM213](#) for more information about integrating FOUNDATION Fieldbus devices.

## Electrical Protection Devices Integration (IEC 61850)

See Rockwell Automation Library of Intelligent Electronic Devices, publication [PROCES-RM211](#) for more information about integrating electrical protection devices (IEC 61850).





## Alarm Types



Alarms are a critical function of a distributed control system. Alarms monitor conditions that need response, such as a temperature or pressure signal out of range, or device failures such as drives and motors.

The FactoryTalk® Alarms and Events server provides a common, consistent view of alarms and events throughout a PlantPax system. Language-switching alarm messages are also available. When an alarm condition is received, the FTAE server publishes the information to a subscribing Operator workstation via FactoryTalk Alarm and Event services.

- For information on how to configure the FTAE server on a PASS, see [Chapter 3, Process Automation System Server](#).
- For information on how to configure and monitor FTAE alarm components, see the FactoryTalk Alarms and Events System Configuration Guide, publication [FTAE-RM001](#).

The Alarm Banner resides on the Header display.

July 19, 2020 6:14:16 PM			1/10/1998 4:56:50 PM	Alm_HiHi	EMEA Testbed FT222 HiHi
			6/8/2020 2:43:27 PM	Alm_HiHi	L8SEP Testbed FT555 HiHi
			1/10/1998 4:56:50 PM	Alm_Hi	EMEA Testbed FT222 Hi

An effective alarm system directs the attention of an operator to improve the productivity, safety, and environment of a process plant.

- A PlantPax system can use device-level and server-level alarm methods.
- Recommendations are based on the controller type and supported functionality.

Table 7 - Alarm Types Based on Instructions and Add-On Instructions

If You Have	You Have This Alarm Type	Description
PlantPax 5.0 library	Logix Tag-based	Device level, tag-based alarms monitor a tag value to determine the alarm condition. Tag-based alarms aren't part of the logic program and do not increase the scan time for a project. The controller caches information, such as time stamps, alarm states, and associated tag values in a 1000 KB buffer. The controller transmits the information to subscribing FactoryTalk® Alarms and Event servers. <b>Recommended:</b> PlantPax system release 5.0 or later. Requires: ControlLogix 5580 controller, CompactLogix 5380 controller.
PlantPax 4.1 library or earlier	Server Tag-based	A FactoryTalk Alarm and Event server monitors controllers for alarm conditions through data servers and publishes event information that can be displayed and logged. <b>Recommended:</b> PlantPax system release 4.6 and earlier. Server-based alarm monitoring offers the equivalent of HMI tag alarm monitoring, but with an expanded feature set of the FactoryTalk Alarm and Event server.
ALMA or ALMD controller instructions	Logix Instruction-based	These device-level alarm instructions can consume a larger portion of controller memory and increase scan time when executed. When an alarm is detected, it's time stamped and buffered until it's transmitted to subscribing FactoryTalk Alarms and Events servers. <b>Not Recommended</b> in large deployments due to added controller overhead. Requires: ControlLogix 5570, CompactLogix 5370, ControlLogix 5580, CompactLogix 5380 controller. Device level, Logix instruction-based alarms are programmed within the controller program and integrated to the FactoryTalk Alarm and Event server. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Digital Alarm (ALMD) instruction detects alarms that are based on Boolean (true/false) conditions.</li> <li>The Analog Alarm (ALMA) instruction detects alarms that are based on the level or rate of change of analog values.</li> </ul>

## Guidelines for Logix Tag-based Alarms

In a PlantPax 5.0 or later system, we recommend no more than 7500 in-use Logix tag-based alarms per controller.

Create Logix tag-based alarms to send alerts about specific events or conditions. A tag-based alarm is similar to a digital alarm because both monitor a tag value to determine an alarm condition. However, a tag-based alarm isn't part of the logic program and does not increase the scan time for a project.

State	Use	Owner	Name	Type	Input	Expression	Limit	Message
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	XT540	Alm_Hi	TRIP	XT540.Sts_Hi	= 1		/^S:0 %.@Descripti
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	XT540	Alm_Lo	TRIP	XT540.Sts_Lo	= 1		/^S:0 %.@Descripti
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	XT540	Alm_HiHi	TRIP	XT540.Sts_HiHi	= 1		/^S:0 %.@Descripti
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	XT100	Alm_HiHi	TRIP	XT100.Sts_HiHi	= 1		/^S:0 %.@Descripti
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	XT100	Alm_Hi	TRIP	XT100.Sts_Hi	= 1		/^S:0 %.@Descripti
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	XT540	Alm_LoLo	TRIP	XT540.Sts_LoLo	= 1		/^S:0 %.@Descripti
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	XT540	Alm_LoDev	TRIP	XT540.Sts_LoDev	= 1		/^S:0 %.@Descripti
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	XT540	Alm_Fail	TRIP	XT540.Sts_Fail	= 1		/^S:0 %.@Descripti
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	XT540	Alm_HiRoC	TRIP	XT540.Sts_HiRoC	= 1		/^S:0 %.@Descripti
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	XT540	Alm_HiDev	TRIP	XT540.Sts_HiDev	= 1		/^S:0 %.@Descripti
	<input type="checkbox"/>	WT100	Alm_HiHi	TRIP	WT100.Sts_HiHi	= 1		/^S:0 %.@Descripti
	<input type="checkbox"/>	WT100	Alm_Hi	TRIP	WT100.Sts_Hi	= 1		/^S:0 %.@Descripti

Tag-based alarms do not require an FTAE server. A controller's subscription to the HMI can be serviced using a FactoryTalk® Linx data server. See [Add a Data Server \(FactoryTalk Linx\) on page 57](#) to confirm that FactoryTalk® Linx is configured for Logix Tag-based alarms. PlantPax recommends a limit of 15,000 Logix Tag-based alarms per instance of FactoryTalk Linx. A PASS can host up to two instances of FactoryTalk Linx for a total of 30,000 Logix Tag-based alarms per PASS.

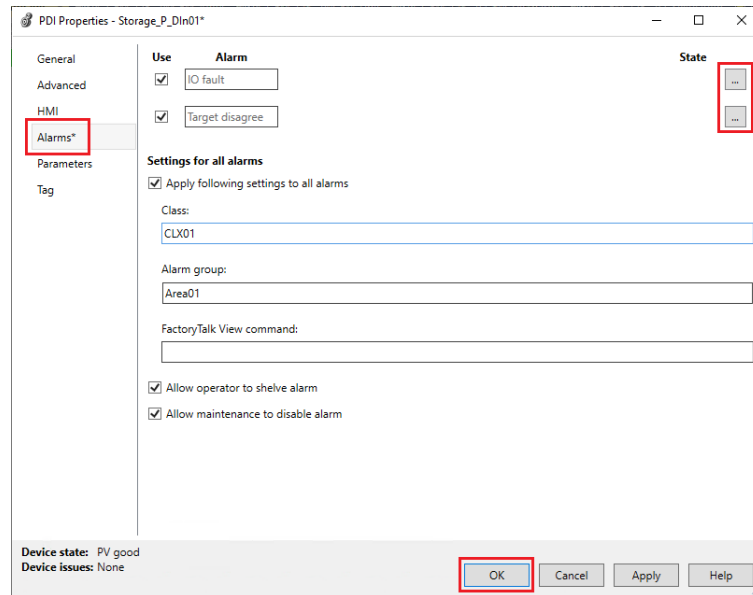
An alarm definition is associated with an Add-On Instruction (AOI) or a defined data type. When a tag is created using a data type or an AOI that has alarm definitions, alarms are created automatically based on the alarm definitions.

## Embedded Tag-based Alarms in PlantPax Instructions

The PlantPax instructions have embedded tag-based alarms. Configure the states as needed and simply enable the alarms that you want to use.



Use the Alarms tab on the instruction properties to assign settings to all pre-defined alarms. There's an option to propagate specified Class/Group settings to all alarms in the instruction.



Alarm settings are also accessible via the Alarm Manager.

State	Use	Owner	Name	Type	Input	Expression	Limit	Message
On	X	XT100	Alm_HiHi	TRIP	XT100.Sts_HiHi	= 1		/^S:0 %.@Description
On	X	XT100	Alm_Hi	TRIP	XT100.Sts_Hi	= 1		/^S:0 %.@Description

## Guidelines for Server Tag-based Alarms (FactoryTalk Alarms and Events)

An FTAE server is required for server tag-based alarms. The server puts these alarm tags on scan, just as it does all other tags it polls for the HMI and Historian. In a PlantPax 5.0 or later system, we recommend you limit the number of server tag-based alarms to 20,000 per FTAE Server. A PASS can host a single instance of the FTAE server for Server tag-based alarms. There are no hard-coded limitations, however you could experience longer recovery time during system restoration if you exceed the recommendation.

Use the PlantPax System Estimator (PSE) for sizing the number of alarm instructions for a more accurate limit that is based on your specific configuration. Be sure to add additional memory that is required to maintain the alarm subscription as it isn't accounted for in the PSE memory calculations.

- Use alarm groups to organize alarms by operator role.
- Use alarm expressions against user groups to provide rolled up indication of alarms by role or display. For example, `AE_InAlmUnackCount('T1*')` returns a count of unacknowledged alarms within groups that start with T1.

For more information on alarm expressions, see the FactoryTalk View Site Edition User's Guide, publication [VIEWSE-UM006](#).

- Use an alarm class to identify alarms that share common management requirements (for example, testing, training, monitoring, and audit requirements). Do not use alarm class to identify alarms by operator role or display because you can't retrieve an alarm count by class by using alarm expressions in FactoryTalk® View software. However, you can filter by class on the alarm displays.

- Use the alarm builder feature in the PlantPAx Configuration Tool to help build server tag-based alarms.

## Guidelines for Logix Instruction-based Alarms

The process library does not provide support for Logix instruction-based alarms. Note that the instruction-based alarms can impact controller performance.

Controller scan time and memory usage are variable with the use of the ALMA or ALMD instructions, depending on the states of the controller. Large alarm bursts can have a significant impact on controller CPU utilization. For example: Controller memory used for buffering by each subscriber (topic in the data server) = 100 KB.

Example execution times:

- ALMD in a 1756-L73 controller with no alarm state changes: 7  $\mu$ s
- ALMD in a 1756-L73 controller with alarm state changes: 16  $\mu$ s

In redundant controller configurations, cross loading of redundancy can add up to 70  $\mu$ s per ALMD instruction.

Reserve the use of ALMA and ALMD instructions for the most critical alarms. Although there are no hard-coded limitations, we recommend limiting the number of instructions to the following:

- 250 per redundant controller
- 2000 per simplex controller

## Monitor Alarms

You can use the alarm status explorer in FactoryTalk View SE to browse all of your configured alarms on a server or the entire system. Alarms also are filtered by the Shelved, Suppressed, and Disabled options. The alarm explorer can be preconfigured as a Shelved alarm display to let operators view a list of shelved alarms.

ANSI/ISA-18.2 provides alarm performance metrics and recommended target values. Some key metrics include the following:

- Alarm rates: annunciated alarms per operator console:
  - Average of 6...12 per hour
  - Average 1...2 per 10 minutes
- Contribution of the top 10 most frequent alarms to the overall alarm load:  $\sim$ <1...5% maximum, with action plans to address deficiencies
- Less than 5 stale alarms (remains annunciated for an extended period, such as 24 hours) present on any day with action plans to address

## Use the Process System Estimator to Plan Alarms

### Process System Estimator - Summary

PlantPax

System Name: Medium    Controllers: 10    PASS Servers: 2    OWS Clients: 30

Digital Inputs: 1000    Digital Outputs: 1000    Analog Inputs: 2000    Analog Outputs: 1000    Total I/O: 5000    Alarms: 14112

**PlantPax Distributed Control System**

1. **PlantPax** (Project Tree)

2. **Process Area\_001a** (Project Tree)

3. **System Summary**

4. Number of Data and Alarm Servers: 2

5. Server Tag Based Alarms: 882

6. Logix Tag Based Alarms: 13230

**System Info**

Project ID: Medium  
Rev:   
Reference ID:   
Project Name: Example Architecture  
Contact Name:   
System Preferences: PlantPax System Preferences v5.20  
Default I/O Entry Method:   
FactoryTalk Directory: FTD  
CIP Security Level: No Security Selection  
Default Network Configuration:   
Use Existing Core Switch:   
Core Switch: Generic Core Switch

**System Summary**

Number of PASSs	2	Number of Data and Alarm Servers	2
Network Stations	0	Server Tag Based Alarms	882
Number of OWSs	30	Logix Tag Based Alarms	13230
Number of OWS Clients	30	OPC-UA Alarms	0
Number of EWs	5	Number of Historian Tags	37860
Number of Controllers	10	Total Control Strategies	2900
Number of HMI Servers	1	Total Tags on Scan	82020

**System I/O Summary**

	New I/O	Existing I/O	MCC/MCD/IED
Number of Digital Inputs	1000	0	0
Number of Digital Outputs	1000	0	0
Number of Analog Inputs	2000	0	0
Number of Analog Outputs	1000	0	0

**Virtualization Options**

Employ a Virtual Architecture: ☒   
Include Virtual Image Templates on BOM: ☒   
Minimum Virtual Requirements:   
CPUs: 71    RAM Memory: 198 GB    Storage Capacity: 1892 GB

Service Contract & Software License Options:   
Edit Preferences    System ID: PASS\_001

☐ Generate Bill-of-Material upon Finish

Finish    Cancel    Help

Item	Description
1	Select the top of the project tree to view the system summary.
2	Select to view some of the system limits.
3	System Summary
4	Total number of Server Tag-Based FactoryTalk Alarm and Event servers. <b>Note:</b> These servers support controllers that utilize the PlantPax Process Object Library 4.1 and earlier.
5	The total number of Server Tag-Based Alarms.
6	The total number of Logix Tag-Based Alarms.

## Process System Estimator - FactoryTalk Alarms and Events Limits

Manage PlantPax System Preferences

Template: PlantPax System Preferences v5.20

System Limits:

Type of Limit	Value
# of HMI Servers limit	10
# of Data and Alarm Servers limit	10
# of Operator Workstations limit	120
# of Historian Servers limit	2
Data server tags on scan/second limit	100000
Data server potential tags in memory limit	3000000
FTAE Total Alarms/System limit	100000
FTAE Total Alarms/Server limit	30000
FTAE Server-based Alarms/Server limit	20000
FTAE Logix-based Alarms/Server limit	15000
I/O per System Limit	25000
Controllers Per Subsystem Limit	10
# tags on scan / alarm	5
Max Controller Visualization Tags on Scan	12000
PASS Tags on Scan Limit	100000
System Tags on Scan Limit	1000000
Display Tag Update Rate	0.5
Base Memory Load (Kb) CompactLogix	380
Base Memory Load (Kb) ControlLogix	480
Base Memory Load (Kb) CompactLogix P-Controller	56
Base Memory Load (Kb) ControlLogix P-Controller	56
CompactLogix P-Controller Alarm Limit	7500
ControlLogix P-Controller Alarm Limit	7500
# of Historian Tags per Historian Server limit	60000

Virtualization Sizing:

Server and Workstation Type	Ratio (vCPU:1)	vRAM	vHardDisk	vCPU
Process Automation Domain Controller (PADC)	2	4	40	1
Process Automation System Server (PASS)	2	16	60	4
Operator Workstation (OWS)	6	4	40	2
Engineering Workstation (EWS)	2	8	100	2
Application Server OWS (AppServ-OWS)	2	16	60	8
Application Server EWS (AppServ-EWS)	2	16	100	4
Application Server Information Historian (ASIH)	2	4	120	2
Application Server Information Reporting (ASIV)	2	4	60	2
Application Server Information SQL (ASIS)	2	4	120	2
Application Server Asset Management (AppServ-Asset)	2	4	60	2
Application Server Batch (AppServ-Batch)	2	4	60	2
OPC UA Connector Server (OPC)	2	4	60	2
VMWare vCenter	1	12	600	2
System Reservation (Specify % to be reserved)	10			

MCC Sizing:

Device Type	DI	DO	AI	AO
Full Voltage Starters	2	2	1	0
Reduced Voltage Starters	2	2	1	0
Variable Frequency Drives	2	2	2	1

Load System... Save System As... OK

Item	Description
1	The maximum number of Data and Alarm Servers (Server Tag-Based) in the project.
2	Total number of FTAE Alarms allowed in the system. <b>Note:</b> The total <b>Server</b> Tag-Based Alarms plus the total <b>Logix</b> Tag-Based Alarms must be less than this value.
3	Total number of FTAE Alarms allowed in per PASS server. <b>Note:</b> The total <b>Server</b> Tag-Based Alarms plus the total <b>Logix</b> Tag-Based Alarms supported by any individual PASS must be less than this value.
4	The maximum <b>Server</b> Tag-Based Alarms that an individual PASS can support.
5	The maximum <b>Logix</b> Tag-Based Alarms that an instance of FactoryTalk Linx data server can support. A single PASS can host up to two data servers.
6	The average number of backing taggs that are configured for <b>Server</b> Tag-Based Alarms. This field only applies to <b>Server</b> Tag-Based Alarms.
7	Maximum number of Logix Tag-Based Alarms. (CompactLogix)
8	Maximum number of Logix Tag-Based Alarms. (ControlLogix)

Process System Estimator - PASS Alarms

1

2

3

4

Item	Description
1	Select to view the alarm information for the PASS.
2	PASS-specific configuration information for the <b>Server</b> Tag-Based Alarm server. This is the configurable percent of <b>Server</b> Tag-Based Alarms that will be used for each controller under this PASS. <b>Note:</b> You can also add additional alarms in the server that are beyond what is calculated. The default is zero. When using the latest library and Process Controllers, the section in the red box does not appear as it does not apply.
3	Total number of <b>Server</b> Tag-Based Alarms for this PASS.
4	Total number of <b>Logix</b> Tag-Based Alarms for this PASS.

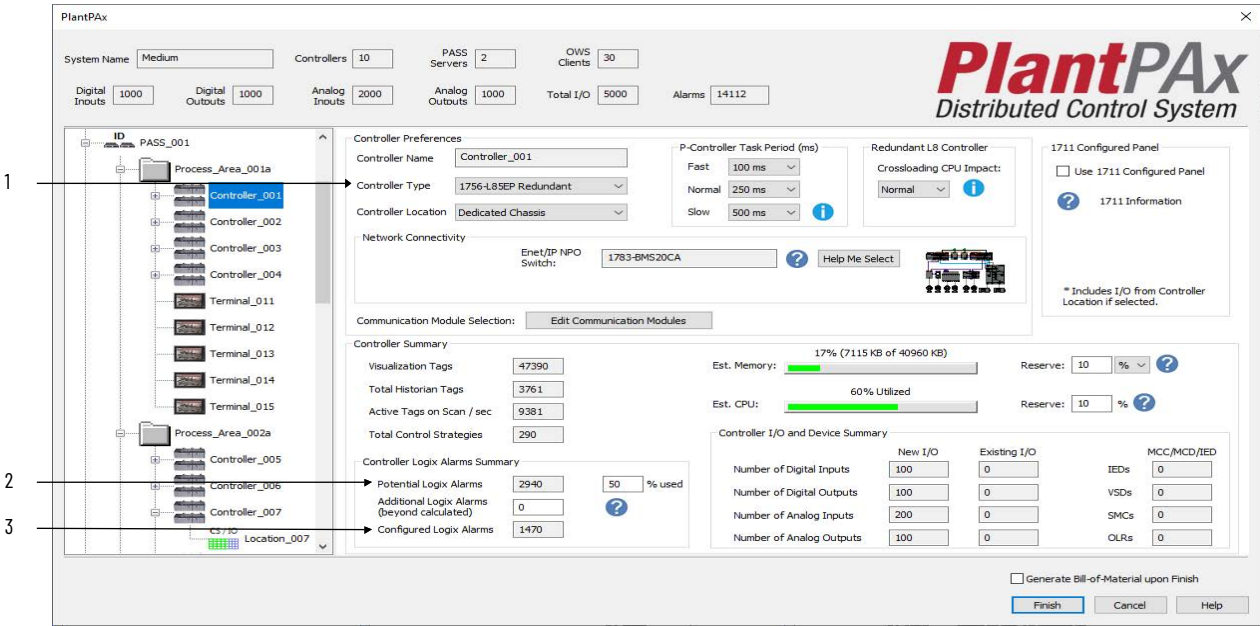
Process System Estimator - Non-Process Controller

1

2

Item	Description
1	This non-Process controller uses PlantPax Process Object Library 4.1. <b>Note:</b> Since this controller is using Process Object Library 4.1, it uses Server Tag-Based alarms.
2	Potential Server Tag-Based Alarms. We know that 30 percent of these alarms are used (See <a href="#">Process System Estimator - PASS Alarms on page 117.</a> ) therefore, the actual load on the server for this specific controller will be: 2940 alarms x 30% = 882 alarms.

Process System Estimator - Process Controller



Item	Description
1	This Process controller uses PlantPax Process Object Library 5.0 and later.
2	The calculated Potential Logix Alarms in the controller based on the configured I/O or control strategy counts.
3	Configured Logix alarms once multiplied by the user indicated percentage. In this example, 50%.

Security Considerations

PlantPax provides options you can use to make your controller more secure. For controller security options, see:

- ControlLogix 5580 and GuardLogix 5580 Controllers, publication [1756-UM543](#)
- CompactLogix 5380 and Compact GuardLogix 5380 Controllers, publication [5069-UM001](#)

For runtime security, See [Configure Runtime Security on page 66](#)

For general system security (domain controller, FT Security), See [Domain or Workgroup on page 23](#)

A PlantPax reference architecture has been certified for the IEC-62443-3-3 SL1 requirements. When certification is necessary, designing and implementing a similar architecture can improve the certification process timing. See [PlantPax Security Certification on page 239.](#)

Create HMI Displays

The Process Automation System Server (PASS) is a required system element for the PlantPax system. The PASS hosts the HMI server, which stores the HMI project components, such as graphic displays, and provides these components to an Operator Workstations (OWS) client upon request.

For more information on how to configure these servers, see [Chapter 3, Process Automation System Server.](#)



Follow these guidelines:

- Use FactoryTalk® View Studio software on the EWS to access the application.
- Configure the FactoryTalk View SE servers to start automatically on startup on the PASS. Let the servers fully start up before starting the client computers.
- FactoryTalk View SE displays contain expressions for each customized animation that holds simple or complex calculations to accomplish the animations. Each expression consumes memory and requires processing time to execute. Too many expressions can make the screen animate sluggishly and affect system performance.
- Use global objects to display the status of a control module or device when the information to be displayed is stored in a tag structure within Logix (for example, UDT or Add-On Instruction) and there are many identical instances. A global object is a display element that is created once and can be referenced multiple times on multiple displays in an application. When changes are made to the original (base) object, the instantiated copies (reference objects) are automatically updated.
  - Base global objects are stored in FactoryTalk View in displays (.ggfx files). If you have a large number of base global objects defined, do not put them all in a single display. Limit the number of global object instances on a single display to 60 or less.
  - As global objects can be instantiated multiple times, the performance impact of their design is amplified by their number of instances. Therefore, design global objects carefully to reduce the number of objects, expressions, and animations that are used within the base object.
- Use 'Replace' display types. This display type closes the currently displayed screen when a new screen opens. 'Overlay' display types must be managed because multiple screens open at once consumes memory and CPU resources.
- Only use Cache After Displaying and Always Updating for displays frequently accessed by the operator and not applied generally. Used sparingly on these displays, these settings improve display call-up time for important displays. When displays are cached and always updating, the additional memory load of this display on the view client is persistent after call-up regardless of whether the display remains visible. This action affects system load and can affect system performance.
- We do not recommend the use of data logs. If necessary, use data logs for short-term data retention only.
- Do not create derived tags that depend on the results of other derived tags. Derived tag processing is not sequential.
- Avoid use of VBA when possible. VBA runs as a single-threaded process so it's possible the application that is written in VB does not allow the HMI to perform predictably.

Use FactoryTalk View Studio software to create or import any system-specific graphic displays that your PlantPax system requires.

For PlantPax common graphics, you can use ACM-generated displays or graphic framework displays (from the process library).

## Graphic Framework Displays

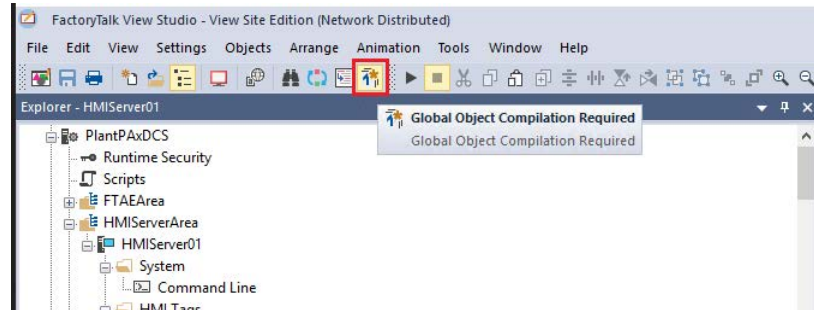
For more information on how to develop graphic framework displays, see the Rockwell Automation Library of Process Objects Reference Manual, publication [PROCES-RM200](#).

## Optimize Runtime Performance

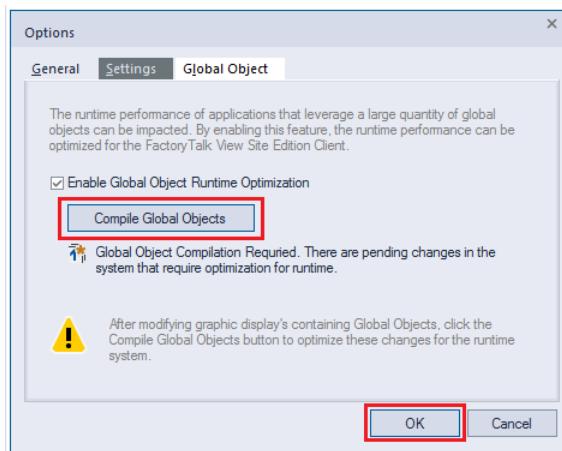
PlantPax guidelines recommend using global objects to display the status of a control module or device when there are multiple, identical instances. Global objects offer consistency; and changes to a global object propagate to all the affected displays.

FactoryTalk View Studio has an Enable Global Object Runtime Optimization feature that improves runtime performance.

1. After you modify graphics that contain global objects, select Global Object Compilation Required



2. Select Compile Global Objects to optimize the changes for the runtime system.

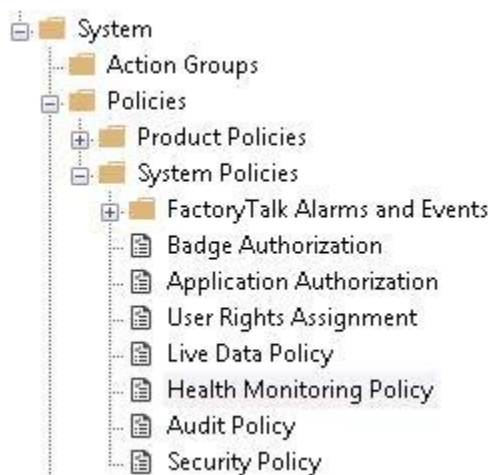


The first time that you compile global objects, the process can take an extended amount of time, depending on the number of displays in the application. Subsequent compiles require less time as they only process changes to displays.

## Optimize HMI Redundancy

For HMI redundancy, change these settings to optimize the failover speed to achieve proper visibility on the HMI clients.

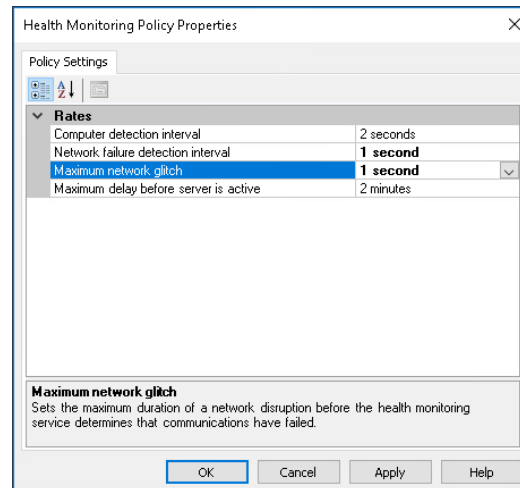
1. In FactoryTalk View Studio, go to System > Policies > System Policies and select Health Monitoring Policy.



2. Change the following settings:



- Network failure detection interval: From 2 seconds to 1
- Maximum network glitch: From 5 seconds to 1 second



**Notes:**

## Use ACM to Create an Application

Studio 5000® Application Code Manager is a tool that enables more efficient project development with libraries of reusable code. This software enables more efficient project development with bulk configuration of highly reusable libraries of code. Reclaim some of your valuable time by leveraging this tool to streamline design and achieve faster commissioning.

Modularity in your projects means that they are repeatable, supportable, and consistent. Whether you are using the Rockwell Automation application libraries or creating your own, Studio 5000 Application Code Manager software allows you to manage and rapidly deploy projects across your organization. Additionally, you can drive standardization across your teams by using library objects that are consistent no matter who does the programming.

See [PROCES-RM201](#) for more details on using the Control Strategies.

### Prerequisites

Following the [System Workflow](#), develop your process application, including graphical displays and controller logic. To develop your controller program, you must be familiar with how to do the following:

1. Gather system requirements, such as:
  - User requirement specifications
  - Instrument index or database
  - P&ID diagrams
  - Network architecture requirements
  - I/O requirements
  - Produced/consume and message requirements
  - Product specifications
2. Use the PlantPax® System Estimator tool that comes with Integrated Architecture® Builder utility, to:
  - Size your PlantPax system
  - Generate a bill of materials
3. Build your PlantPax system:
  - Install and configure process controllers (recommended)
  - Make sure that the HMI server and requirements are configured (required)

For more information, see these additional resources.

Resource	Description
Rockwell Automation Library of Process Objects Reference Manual, publication <a href="#">PROCES-RM200</a>	Describes how to build and use library components that comprise the Rockwell Automation Library of Process Objects.
Application Code Manager User Manual, publication <a href="#">LOGIX-UM003</a>	Provides details on a modular, object-based approach to the creation of ACD controller code, FactoryTalk® View SE / ME display content, FactoryTalk® Historian Tag and FactoryTalk® Alarms and Events (FTAE) import configuration.

## Develop a Project Plan

Based on the system requirements and PSE results, start by planning the scope of the process application. Use a spreadsheet or other tracking tool to define the details for each controller in the project, such as:

- Controller name
- Task name
- Program name
- Description
- I/O type
- Control strategy name
- Minimum and maximum values and units of measure
- Alarm values (LoLo, Low, High, and HiHi)
- HMI display name

This level of detail helps you organize the actual programs and tasks in the application. For example:

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N
1	NAME	CONTROLLER	TASK	PROGRAM	DESCRIPTION	I/O	Control Strategy	Min	Max	Unit	LOLO	LOW	HIGH	HiHi
11	FT0120	Water	Task_D_500ms	Polymer_TaskD	Flow to Large Storage #2	AI	P_Aln	0	10000	GPM	-1.50E+38	-1.50E+38	1.50E+38	1.50E+38
12	FT200	Water	Task_D_500ms	Canals_TaskD	Flow Offsite #1	AI	P_Aln	0	100	GPM	5	10	90	99
13	FT201	Water	Task_D_500ms	Canals_TaskD	Flow Offsite #2	AI	P_Aln	0	100	GPM	5	10	90	99

## Determine Which Libraries to Use

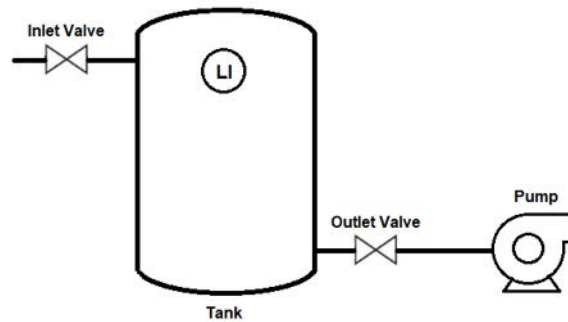
Rockwell Automation provides libraries to simplify application development.

**Table 8 - Library Descriptions**

Item	Description
Process Library	Rockwell Automation Library of Process Objects provides sample projects, application templates, Endress + Hauser library objects, Application Code Manager library objects, and tools and utilities. Includes the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Graphics for built-in instructions</li> <li>• HMI images and Help files</li> <li>• Logix diagnostic objects</li> <li>• Process objects</li> <li>• Control strategies</li> <li>• Sequencer object</li> <li>• PlantPAx Configuration Tools for Tags, Alarms, and Historian</li> <li>• Color Change utility</li> <li>• Historian -- Asset Framework template and objects</li> </ul>
I/O Device Library	Provides objects for Rockwell Automation 1756, 1769, 1734, 1794, 1738, 1732E, 1719, 5015, 5069, 5094 I/O modules. Provides preconfigured status and diagnostic faceplates sets for Rockwell Automation digital and analog I/O devices. You can use these objects with Machine Builder, Process, and Packaged Libraries, or as standalone components.
IO-Link Device Library	Provides IO-Link master and sensor objects. Provides preconfigured status and diagnostic faceplates.
Machine Builder Libraries	Library objects for use with Application Code Manager. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Independent Cart Technology Libraries, includes ICT Libraries for iTRAK® and MagneMotion®</li> <li>• Studio 5000® Application Code Manager</li> <li>• Power Device Library, including objects for E300, ArmorStart®, PowerFlex®, and Kinetix®</li> </ul>
Network Device Library	Provides objects for Stratix® switch, Parallel Redundancy Protocol (PRP) network objects, and Device Level Ring (DLR) network objects.
Power Device Library	Provides objects for E300, ArmorStart, SMC™-50, PowerFlex, and Kinetix.

## Develop an Example Application

In this example you will create a process application to allow flow in and out of a tank. You will also monitor the tank level and control a motor to pump out of the tank. The system design is based on this drawing. We will start with a simple tank configuration and then show how that can be used to complete a bulk configuration file to be used in larger deployments.



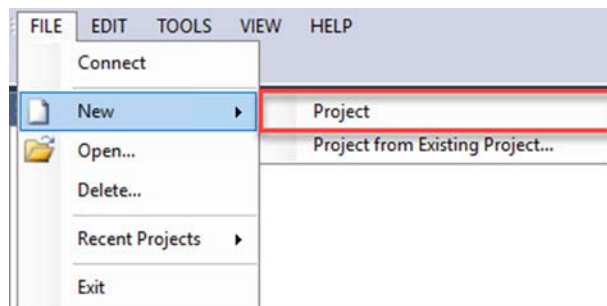
The following information is required as part of the project plan.

- Controller name - (CLX)
- Task name - (Normal)
- Program name - (Tanks)
- Description - (Process\_Example)
- I/O type - 5 "Use Program Connections" (recommended)
- Control strategy names - (LI100, XV100 & XV101, MT100)
- Minimum and maximum values and units of measure - (example: 0-100)
- Alarm values (LoLo, Low, High, and HiHi) - (example: 1,10,90,99)
- HMI display name - (Tank1...)

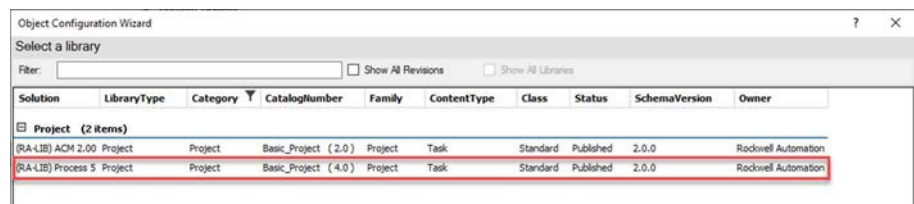
NAME	CONTROLLER	TASK	PROGRAM	DESCRIPTION	I/O	Control Strategy	Min	Max	Unit	LoLo	Lo	Hi	HiHi
LI100	CLX	Normal	Tanks	Tank Level Indicator	Analog Input	CS_PAI	0	100	%	1	10	90	99
XV100	CLX	Normal	Tanks	Inlet Valve Control	Digital Output	CS_PVLV	0	1	Pos				
XV101	CLX	Normal	Tanks	Outlet Valve Control	Digital Output	CS_PVLV	0	1	Pos				
MT100	CLX	Normal	Tanks	Motor on Pump	PowerFlex Drive	CS_PVSD	0	60	Hz				

## Create the Example Project Create a New Project

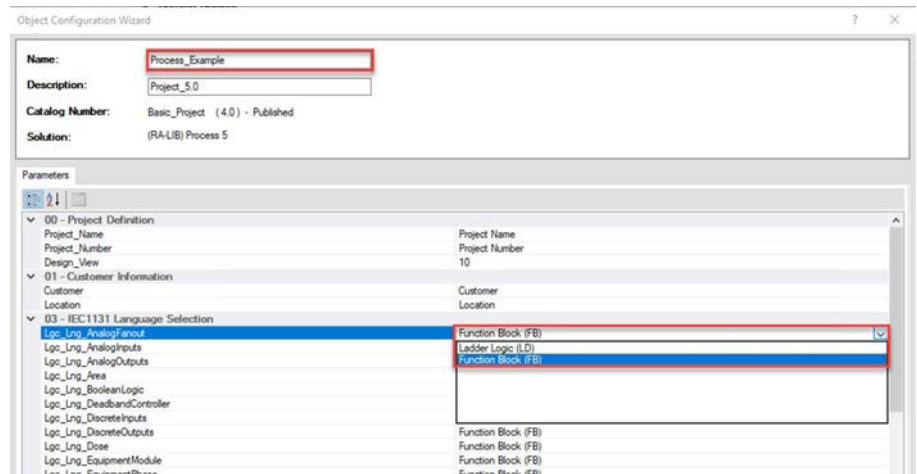
1. Launch the ACM software
2. Create a project using the File> New > Project option from the top menu.



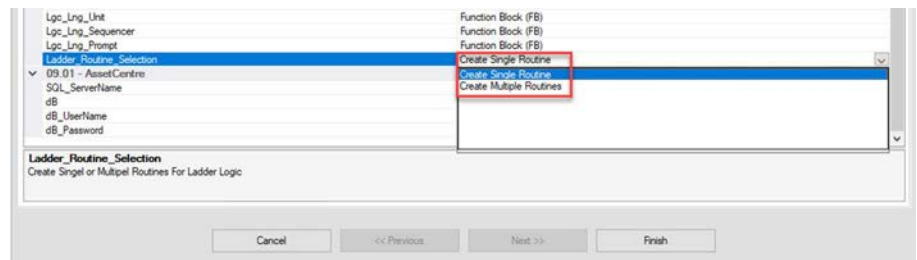
3. Select (RA-LIB) Process 5 Project and select Next.



4. Enter a new project name. Throughout this example, we use Process\_Example. Name the project and configure if the control strategies should be coded in function block or ladder Logic. The project has a parameter to configure code type for each control strategy, so a mix of function block and ladder is supported in the project. All control strategies of a given type added to the project will follow this code type selection in the resulting ACD file.



If 'Ladder Logic' is selected on any of the parameters, the Ladder\_Routine\_Selection parameter becomes visible. Select if the ladder-based control modules will all be created in one or multiple routines using this parameter. This determines the code structure for all ladder-based PlantPAx Control Modules that are created in this project.

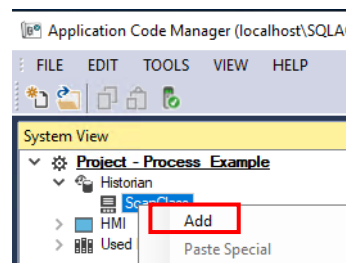


Select Finish and your project will be created.

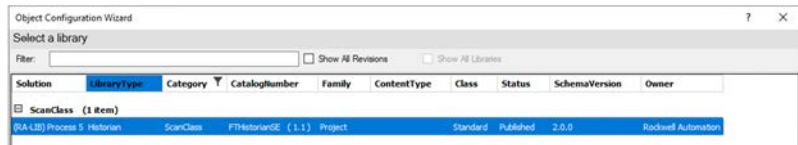
## Add System References

Application Code Manager provides capability to generate content for PlantPAx system elements associated with the HMI, Historian, and Batch. For example, ACM can generate tags for FactoryTalk Historian SE and HMI graphics for FactoryTalk View SE HMI displays. This section adds system server references and create a display for the tank graphics.

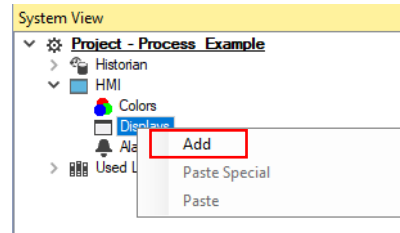
1. In System View, expand Historian and right-click ScanClass then select Add.



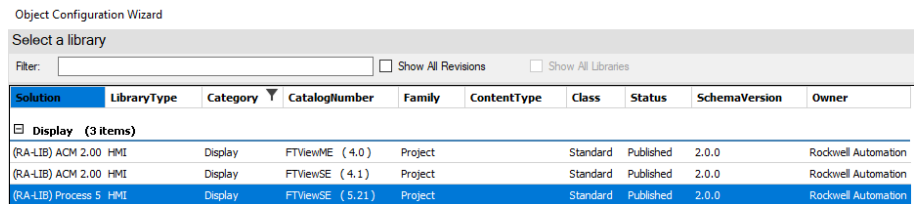
2. Select (RA-LIB) Process 5 HistorianSE and select Next.



3. Select Next to view the Point Types. The defaults are sufficient for this example. Select Finish.
4. In System View, expand HMI and right click Displays then select Add.

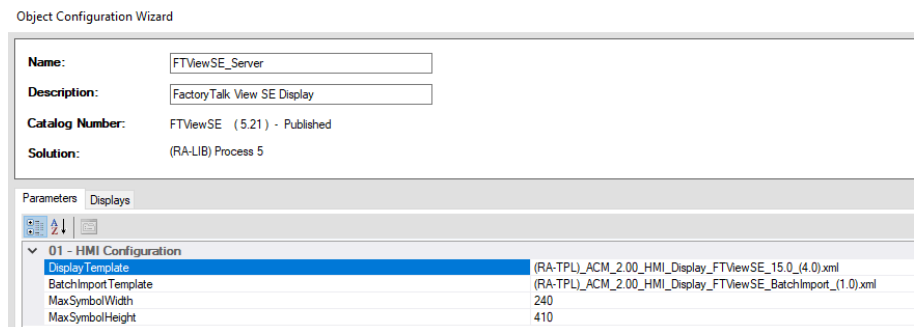


5. Select (RA-LIB) Process 5 HMI and select Next.

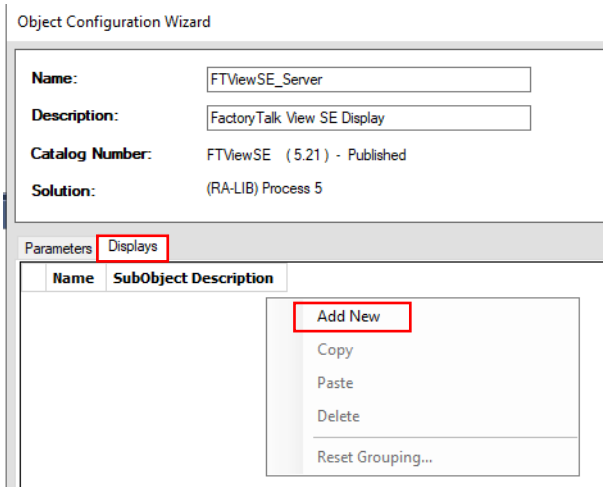


6. In the Object Configuration Wizard, use the parameters list to select a Display Template.

The HMI Configuration parameters can remain at default settings. In some cases, you can change the Display Template to match the correct version of FactoryTalk View that you are using. In this case, we are using FactoryTalk View SE version 15 templates.

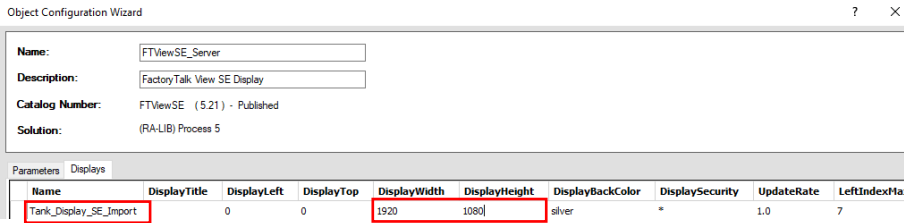


7. Select the Displays tab. Right click within the displays window and select Add New.

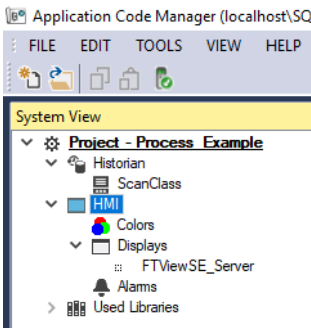


A new FactoryTalk View SE display is added to the table with the name "Graphic".

8. This display is where your tank graphics will be created and later imported to the HMI. Change the graphic name and size as follows:
- Name: Tank\_Display\_SE\_Import
  - Display Width & Height: 1920 x 1080



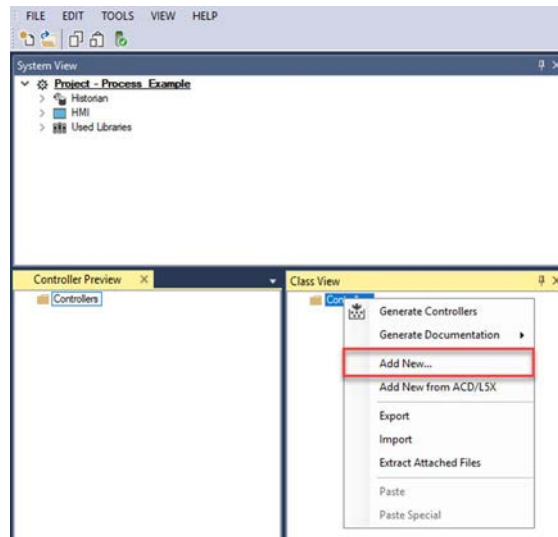
9. Select Finish. You now have both the Historian ScanClass and HMI FTViewSE\_Server references within your ACM project.



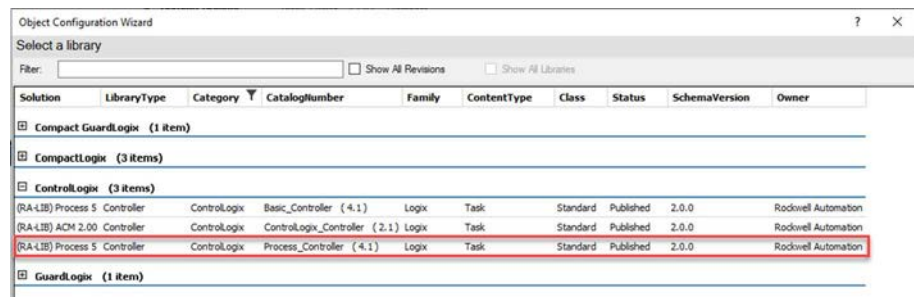


## Add a Controller

1. Add a new object in the class view window.



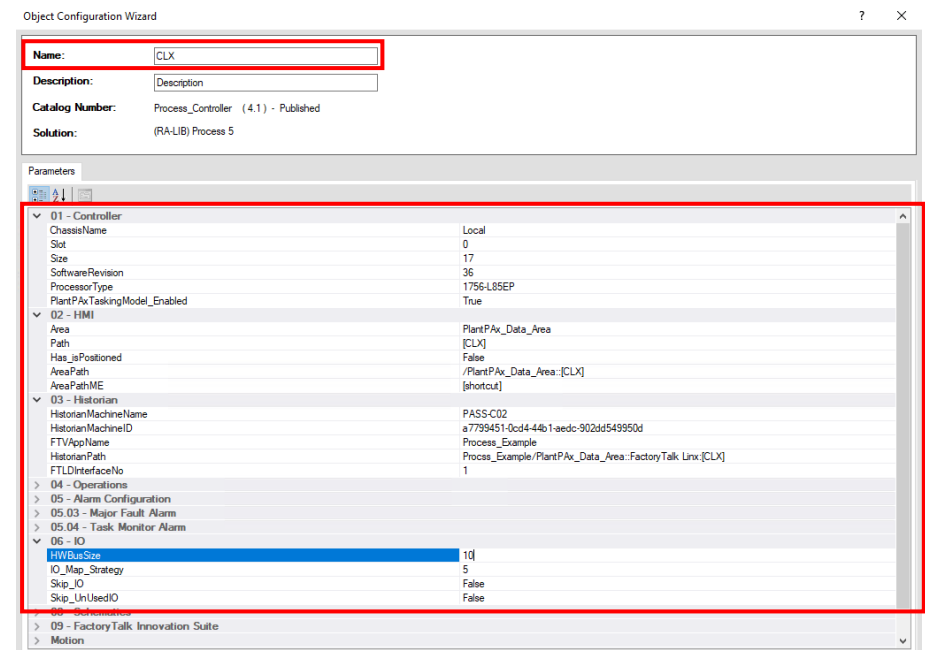
2. Select the controller family that is used in the application and if it is a regular or process series controller. To use PlantPAx Process Objects one of the Process controller options must be used. In this example we select a ControlLogix® Process Controller.



## Configure the Controller Object

In this example, you use ACM to create a controller named CLX.

1. Name the controller and match controller parameters to equipment that will be used in the project.



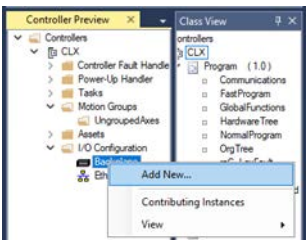
## Add Devices

In this example, you add two I/O modules. One communication module and one drive.

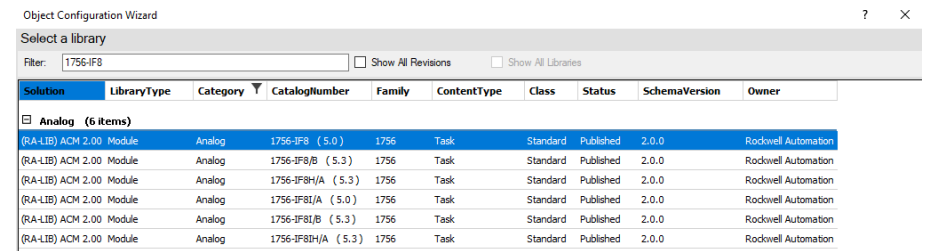
- 1756-IF8 Analog Input module (Local\_01) for the tank level input.
- 1756-OB16 Digital Output module (Local\_02) to control both valves.
- 1756-EN2T Communication module (Local\_03) to connect the drive.
- PowerFlex 755T Variable Speed Drive (MT100\_Dvc) to run the pump motor.

### Create the 1756-IF8 Analog Input Module

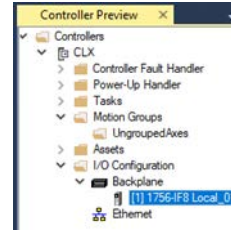
1. Right click the I/O Configuration > Backplane and select Add New.



2. Enter 1756-IF8 into the Filter bar. Select the first option (RA-LIB) ACM 2.0 Module Analog 1756-IF8 and select Next.

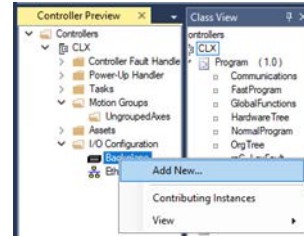


- When the Object Configuration Wizard for the 1756-IF8 appears, select Finish. The default for slot 1 is acceptable for this example.

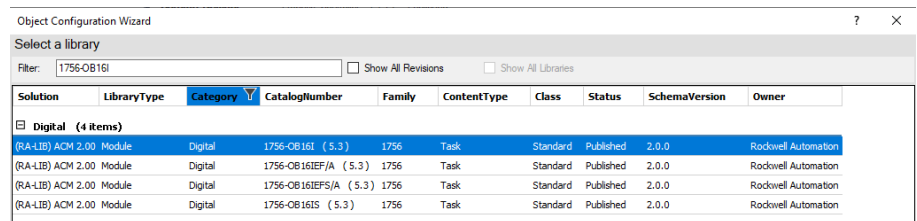


### Create the 1756-OB16 Digital Output Module

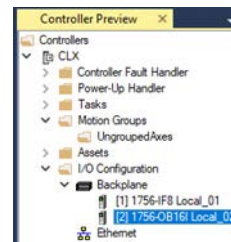
- Right click the I/O Configuration > Backplane and select Add New.



- Enter 1756-OB16I into the Filter bar. Select the (RA-LIB) ACM 2.0 Module Digital 1756-OB16I.

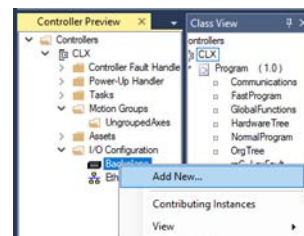


- When the Object Configuration Wizard for the 1756-OB16I appears, select Finish. The default for slot 2 is acceptable for this example.

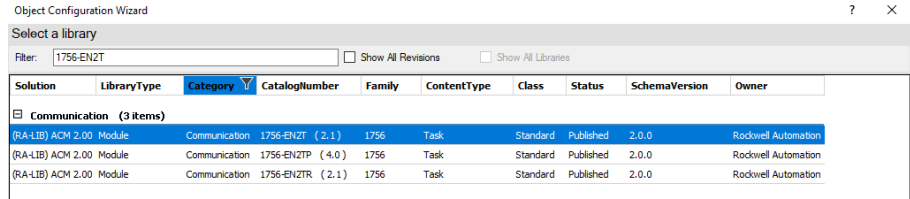


### Create the 1756-EN2T Communication Module

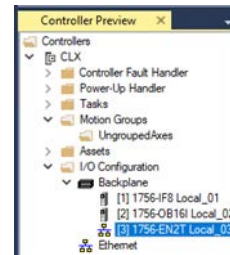
- Right click the I/O Configuration > Backplane and select Add New.



- Enter 1756-EN2T into the Filter. Select the first (RA-LIB) ACM 2.0 Module Communication 1756-EN2T.

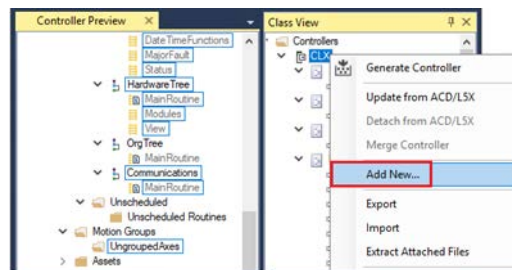


- When the Object Configuration Wizard for the 1756-EN2T appears, select Finish. The default for slot 3 is acceptable for this example.

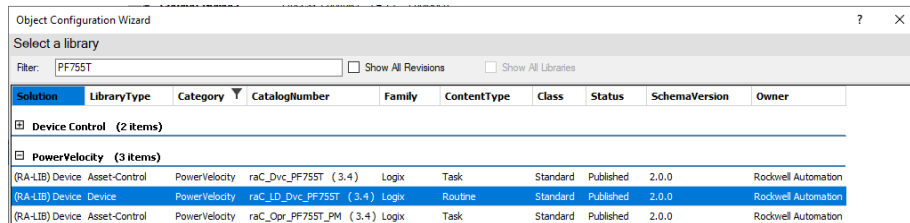


### Create the PowerFlex 755T Variable Speed Drive

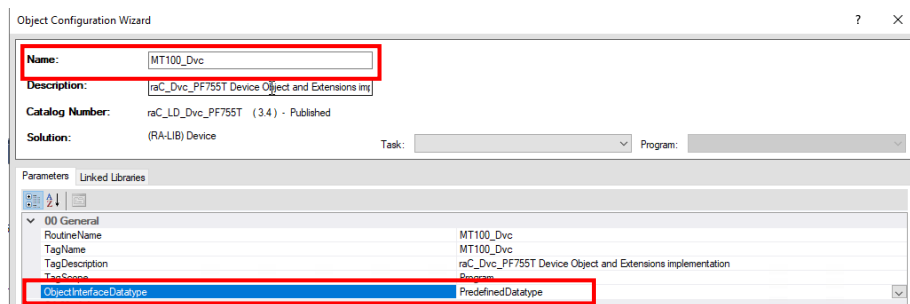
- Using the Class View window, right-click on the CLX controller and select Add New.



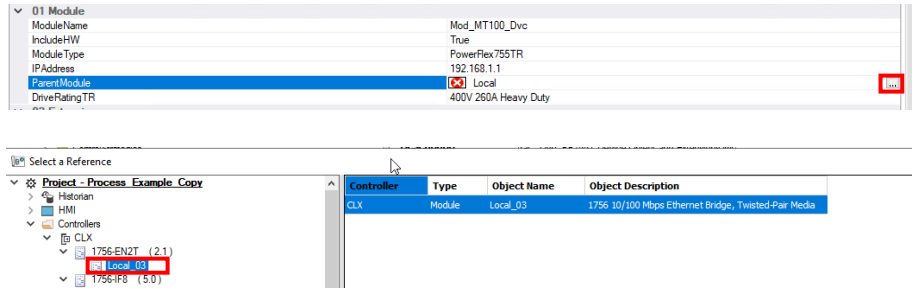
- Enter PF755T into the Filter bar. Select the (RA-LIB) Device Power Velocity raC\_LD\_Dvc\_Pf755T.



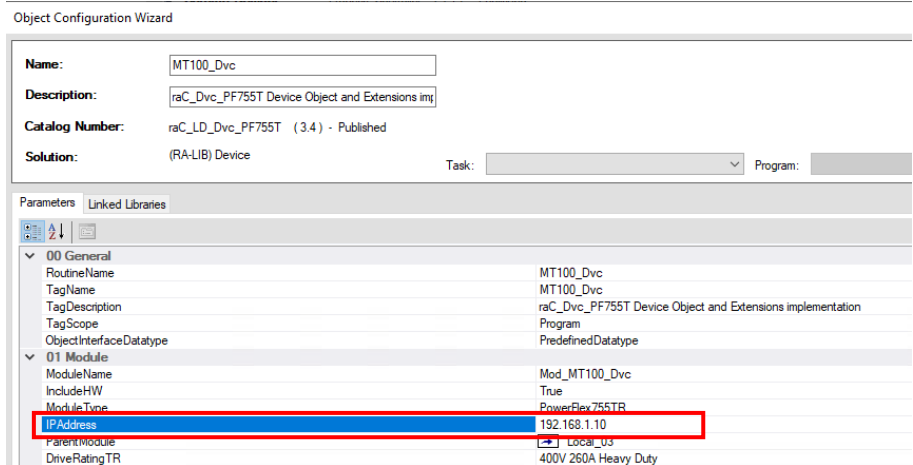
- In the Object Configuration Wizard for PF755T, change the name of the drive MT100\_Dvc and change the ObjectInterfaceDatatype to PredefinedDatatype.



4. Add a parent module by selecting the ellipse button. Select the 1756-EN2T module in slot 3. (Local\_03) and select Finish.



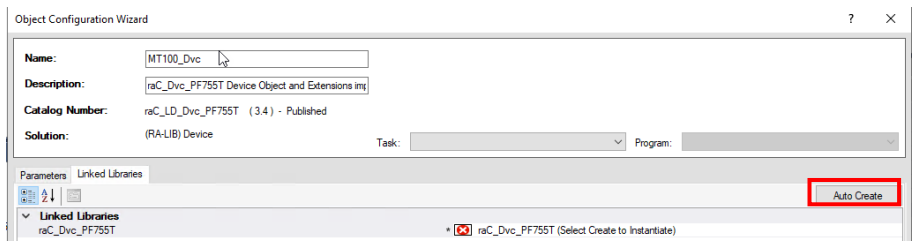
5. Change the IP Address to 192.168.1.10 (must be something different than the parent) and then select Next.



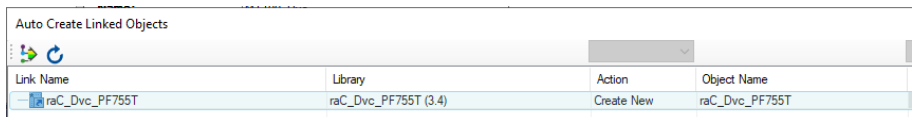
6. Select the Linked Libraries tab and select the Auto Create button on the next screen.



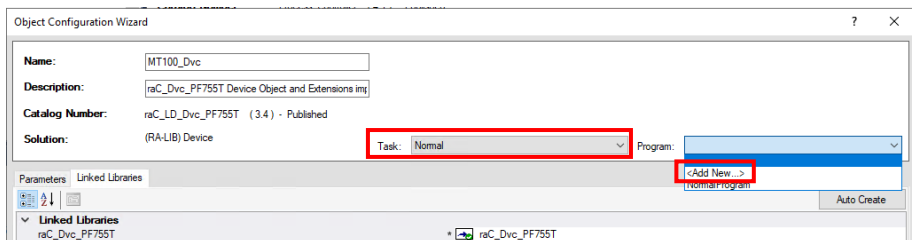
Linking to the device library allows ACM to create the Add-On Instruction (AOI) designed to interface to the drive data structure. The AOI formats the data for use throughout the project and control strategies.



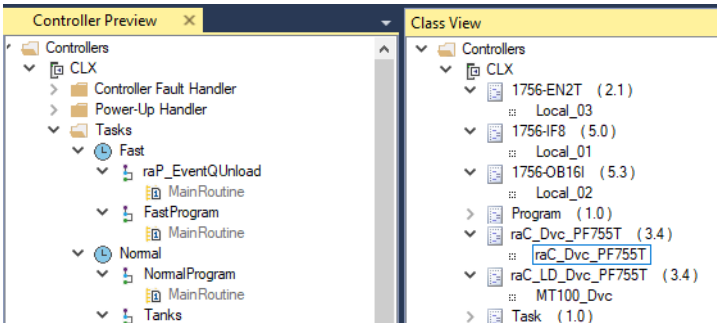
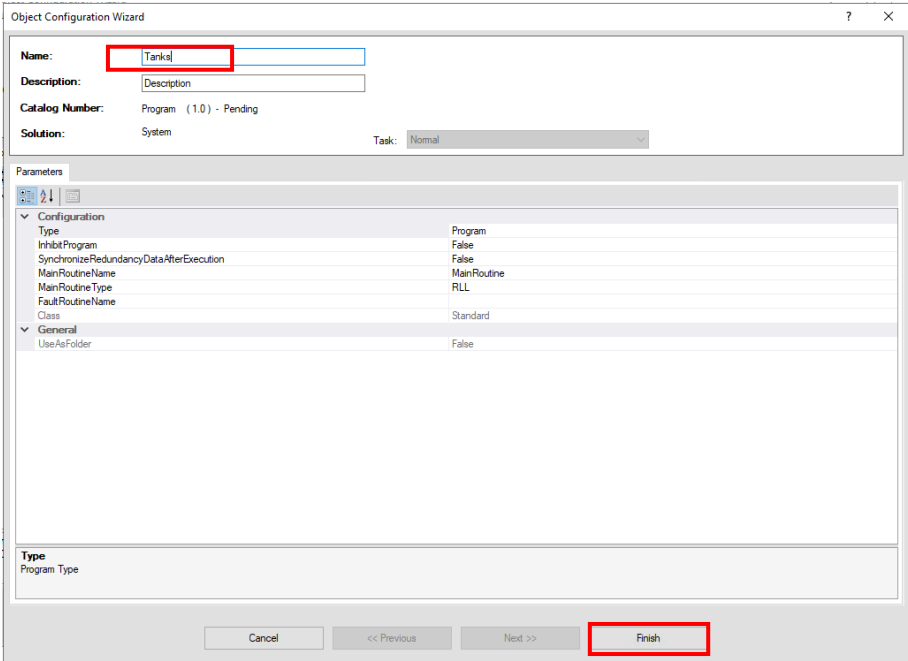
7. Select the raC\_Dvc.PF755T link name and select OK.



8. Select the Normal Task in which the logic will be inserted and select Add New program.



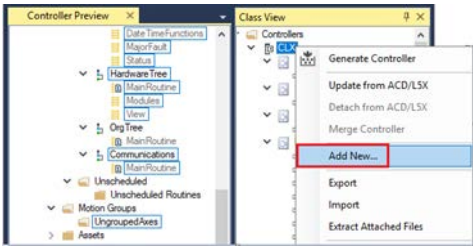
9. Type Tanks for the new Program the name and select Finish to complete adding the PowerFlex 755T Drive and device library code.



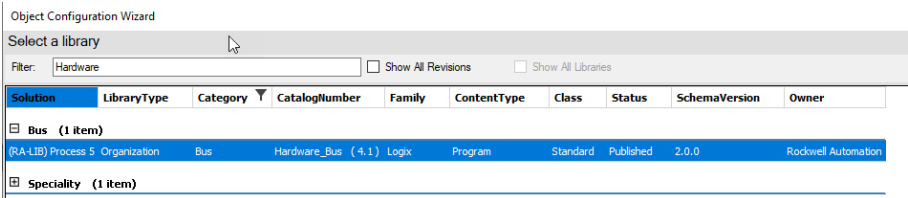
### Add Hardware Bus Object

In this section you create the Hardware Bus object to reference the three local I/O modules from the prior section.

1. Right click the CLX controller and select Add New.

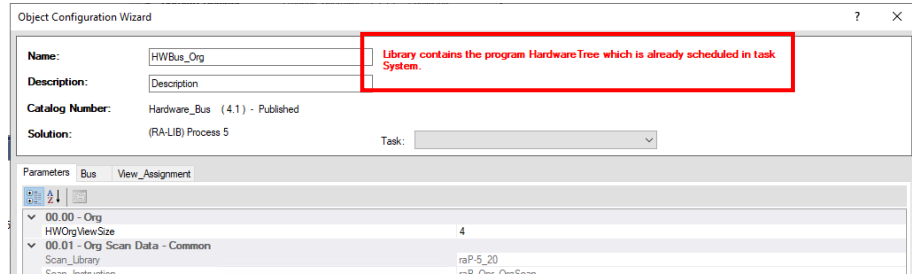


2. Enter Hardware into the Filter bar. Select (RA-LIB) Process 5 Organization Hardware\_Bus and select Next.

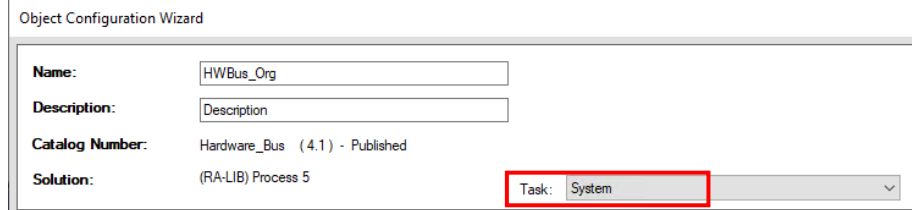




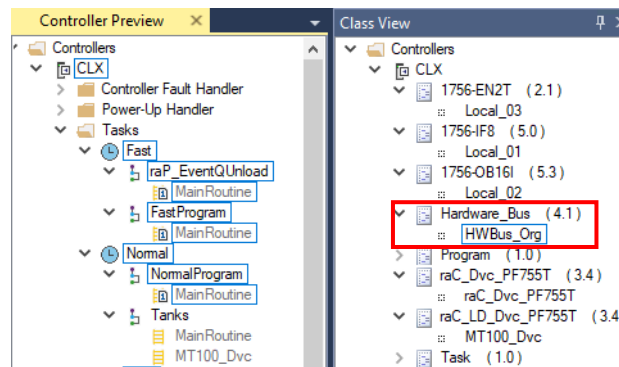
You will see a warning on the next window stating, “Library contains the program HardwareTree which is already scheduled in the task System”. This is normal.



3. Use the Task drop down and select the System Task.



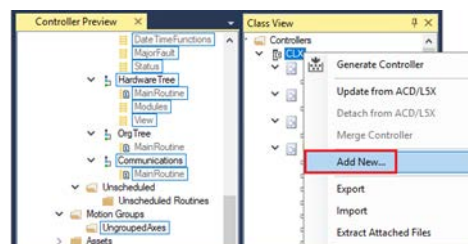
4. Select Finish and verify that the Bus was created



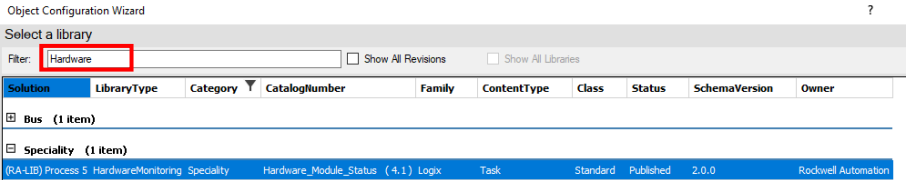
## Add Hardware Module Status Object

In this section you create the Hardware Module Status object to reference the three local I/O modules from the prior section.

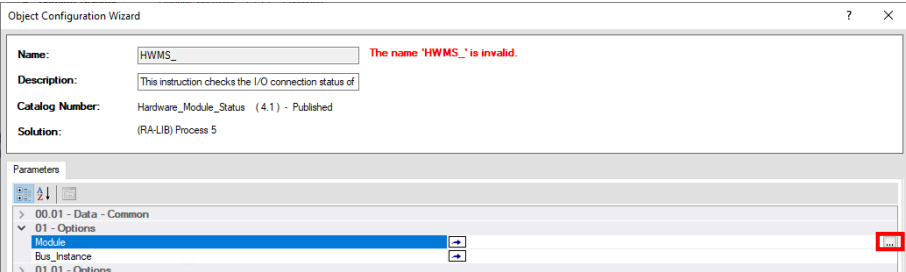
1. Right click the CLX controller and select Add New.



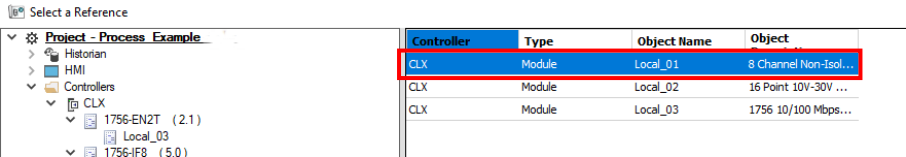
2. Enter Hardware into the Filter. Select the (RA-LIB) Process 5 Hardware\_Module\_Status and select Next.



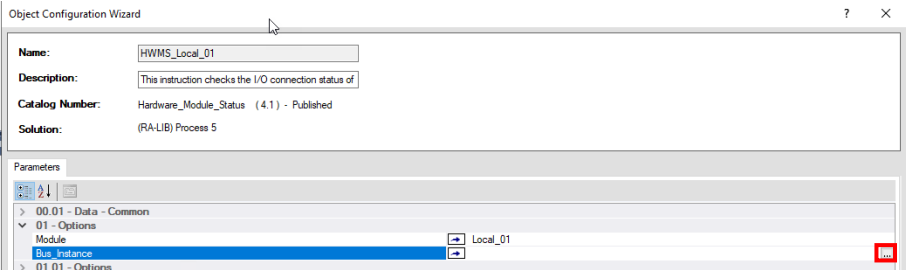
3. To select a module, select the ellipse button on the far right of the Module row.



4. Select your first module. In this example, select the module in slot 1 (Local\_01) and select Finish.



5. To select a Bus Instance, select the ellipse button on the far right of the Bus\_Instance row.

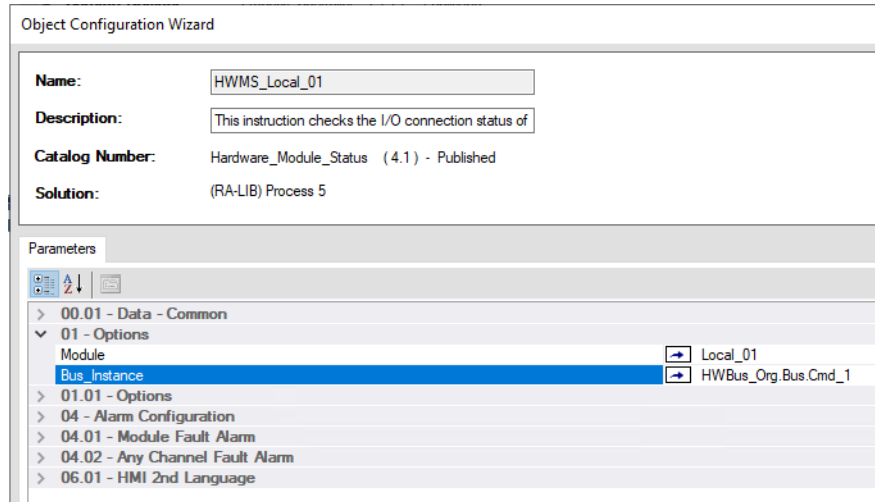


6. Select the Bus tab on the far right. Select Cmd\_1 and select Finish.

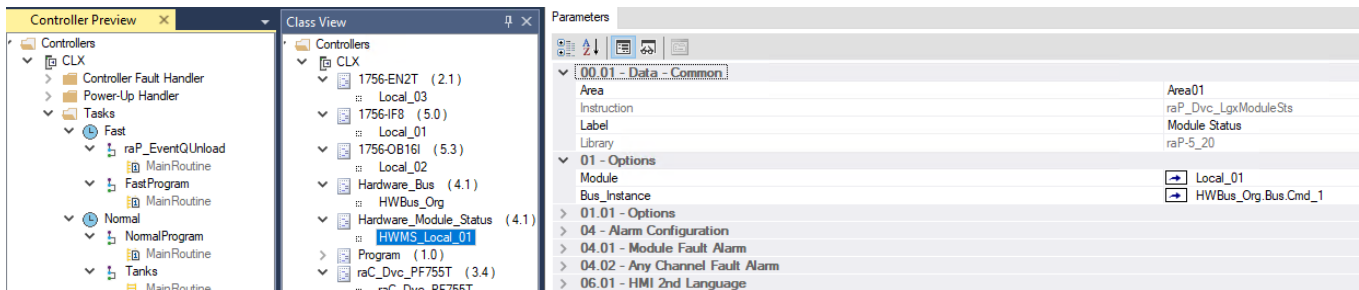




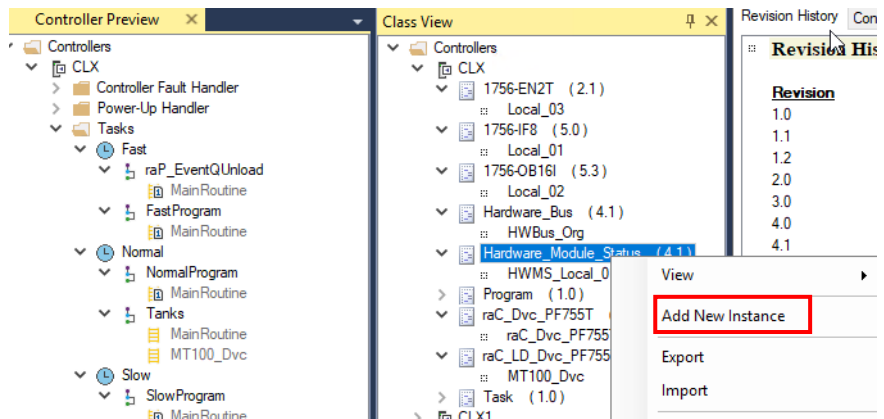
7. Verify the module Local\_01 is assigned to HWBus\_Org\_Bus\_Cmd\_1 and select Finish.



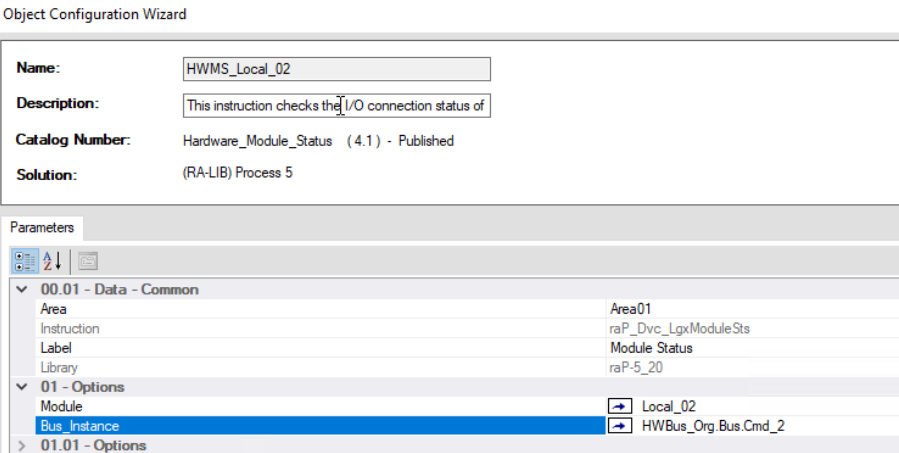
The first Hardware Module Status object looks like the following highlighted example.



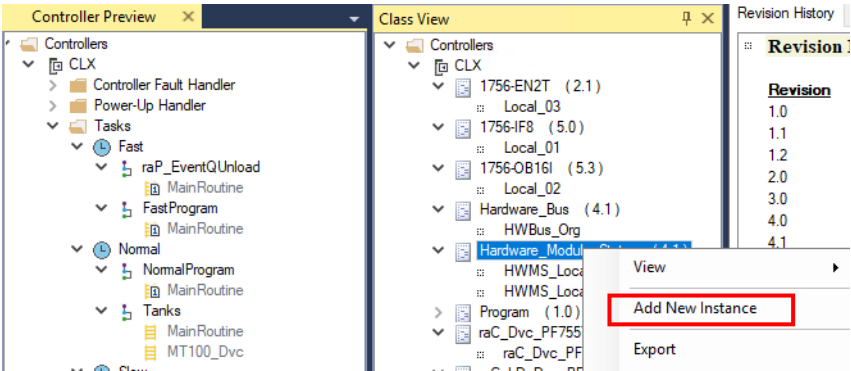
8. Right-click on Hardware\_Module\_Status. and select Add New Instance for the second module.



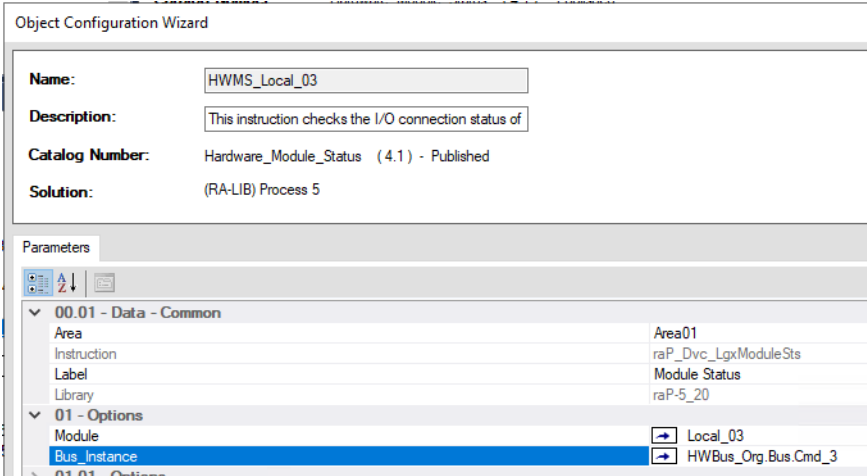
9. Using the same steps when adding the first module, select the Ellipse on the right and select the module in slot 2 (Local\_02). Then select the second bus element (HWBus\_Org.Bus.Cmd\_2).



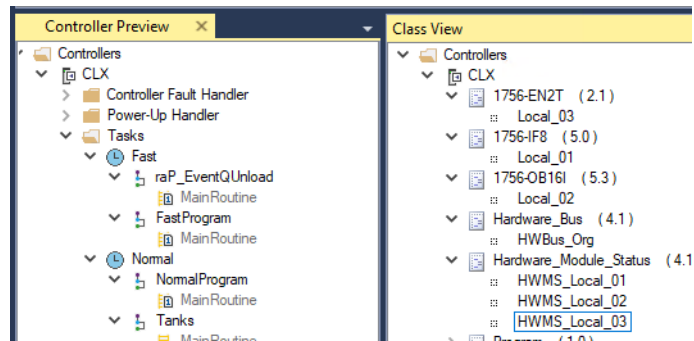
10. Select Finish.
11. Right-click on Hardware\_Module\_Status. and select Add New Instance for the third module.



12. Using the same steps when adding the second module, select the Ellipse on the right and select the module in slot 3 (Local\_03). Then select the second bus element (HWBus\_Org.Bus.Cmd\_3).



13. Select Finish. The Hardware Module Status looks as follows:



## Add Control Strategies

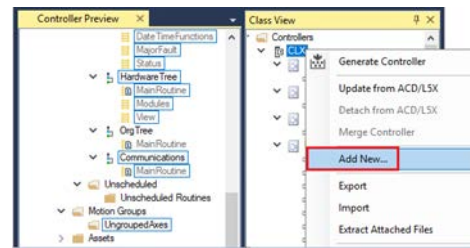
In this section, you add three Control Strategies into the ACM project.

- CS\_PAI (Process Analog Input) for the Tank Level Indicator LI100
- CS\_PVLV (Process Valve) for the Inlet and Outlet Valves XV100 & XV101
- CS\_PVSD (Process Variable Speed Drive) for the pump motor MT100

See [PROCES-RM201](#) for more details on using the Control Strategies.

### Add CS\_PAI

1. Right click the CLX controller and select Add New.



2. Enter PAI into the Filter bar. Select the option (RA-LIB) Process 5 Control Strategies Input Processing PAI and select Next.

Object Configuration Wizard

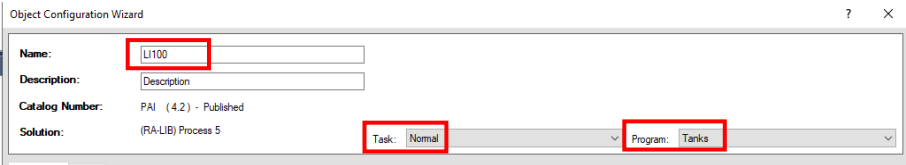
Select a library

Filter: PAI ☐ Show All Revisions ☐ Show All Libraries

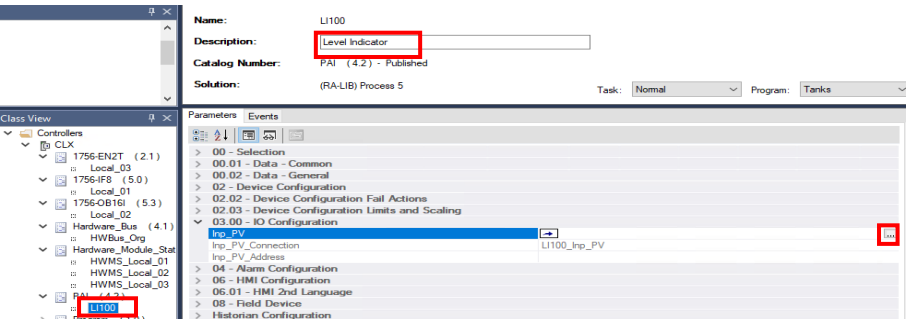
Solution	LibraryType	Category	CatalogNumber	Family	ContentType	Class	Status	SchemaVersion	Owner
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Input Processing	CS_PAI (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0	Rockwell Automation	
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Input Processing	CS_PAI_EtherNetIP (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0	Rockwell Automation	
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Input Processing	CS_PAI_EtherNetIP_NoHB (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0	Rockwell Automation	
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Input Processing	CS_PAI_EtherNetIP_Sensor (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0	Rockwell Automation	
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Input Processing	CS_PAI_FF (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0	Rockwell Automation	
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Input Processing	CS_PAI_HART (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0	Rockwell Automation	
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Input Processing	CS_PAI_PA (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0	Rockwell Automation	
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Input Processing	CS_PAID (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0	Rockwell Automation	
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Input Processing	CS_PAID_EtherNetIP (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0	Rockwell Automation	
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Input Processing	CS_PAID_EtherNetIP_NoHB (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0	Rockwell Automation	
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Input Processing	CS_PAID_FF (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0	Rockwell Automation	
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Input Processing	CS_PAID_HART (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0	Rockwell Automation	
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Input Processing	CS_PAID_PA (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0	Rockwell Automation	
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Input Processing	CS_PAIM (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0	Rockwell Automation	
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Input Processing	CS_PAIM_EtherNetIP (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0	Rockwell Automation	
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Input Processing	CS_PAIM_EtherNetIP_NoHB (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0	Rockwell Automation	
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Input Processing	CS_PAIM_FF (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0	Rockwell Automation	
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Input Processing	CS_PAIM_HART (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0	Rockwell Automation	
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Input Processing	CS_PAIM_PA (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0	Rockwell Automation	
(RA-LIB) Process 5 ControlStrategies	Input Processing	PAI (4.2)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0	Rockwell Automation	
(RA-LIB) Process 5 ControlStrategies	Input Processing	PAID (4.2)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0	Rockwell Automation	
(RA-LIB) Process 5 ControlStrategies	Input Processing	PAIM (4.2)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0	Rockwell Automation	

**IMPORTANT** Select a Control Strategies solution and not a Plug-In.

3. Change the control strategy name to LI100 and select the Task Normal and Program Tanks, then select Finish.



4. When the import is complete, select the LI100 routine in the Class View window. In the center window, provide a description of Level Indicator and scroll down the parameters list to the IO Configuration section. Select the Ellipse button for input process variable Inp\_PV.



5. Select the module Local\_01 and channel 0 Local\_01\_00 for the input process variable reference, then select Finish.

Project - Process\_Example

Historian

HMI

Controllers

CLX

1756-EN2T (2.1)

1756-IF8 (5.0)

Local\_01

1756-OB16I (5.3)

Hardware\_Bus (4.1)

Hardware\_Module\_Status (4.1)

PAI (4.2)

Program (1.0)

raC\_Dvc\_Pf755T (3.4)

raC\_LD\_Dvc\_Pf755T (3.4)

Task (1.0)

CLX1

1756-OF8IH/A (5.3)

Hardware\_Module\_Status (4.1)

PAI (4.2)

PAID (4.2)

PAIM (4.2)

Program (1.0)

Task (1.0)

Controller	Type	Object Name	Object
CLX	Module	Local_01	8 Channel Non-Isol...

AI

Object References

Parameters

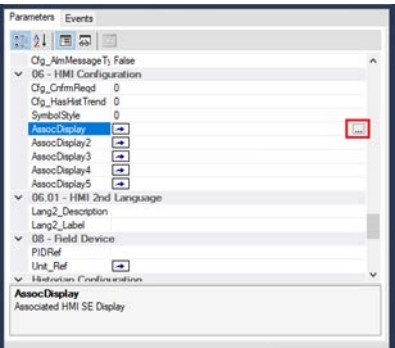
Name	Referenced By	Referenced By Description	Channel	SubObject Descrip
Local_01_00			0	
Local_01_01			1	
Local_01_02			2	
Local_01_03			3	
Local_01_04			4	
Local_01_05			5	
Local_01_06			6	
Local_01_07			7	

SubObject References

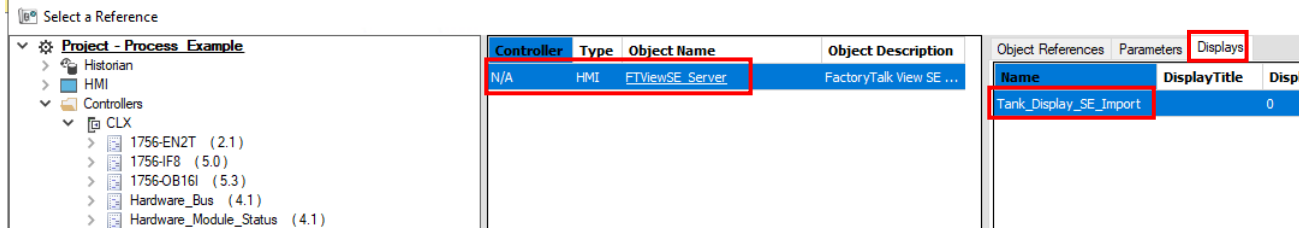
SubParameters

Name	Scope	Val	Description	DType	CLXDep	AADDep
Address	AI	Local:1:I.Ch0Data		String	true	false
ChFault	AI	Local:1:I.Ch0Fault		String	true	false
Overrange	AI	Local:1:I.Ch0Overrange		String	true	false
Underrange	AI	Local:1:I.Ch0Underrange		String	true	false

6. Scroll down the parameters list for LI100 to the HMI Configuration and select the Ellipse button for input process variable AssocDisplay.



7. Select the HMI FTViewSE Server and the Displays tab on the right. Select the Display that we created earlier named Tank\_Display\_SE\_Import then select Finish.

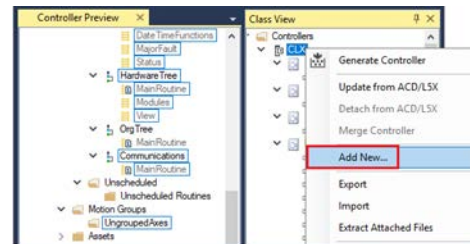


8. When the HMI display named Tank\_Display\_SE\_Import is selected for the LI100 control strategy, select the Apply Changes button. This reference will create and link LI100 to a level indicator graphic for our Tank display in the HMI.

The AssocDisplay reference allows ACM to create a level indicator graphic for LI100 on our Tank display in the HMI.

### Add CS\_PVLV

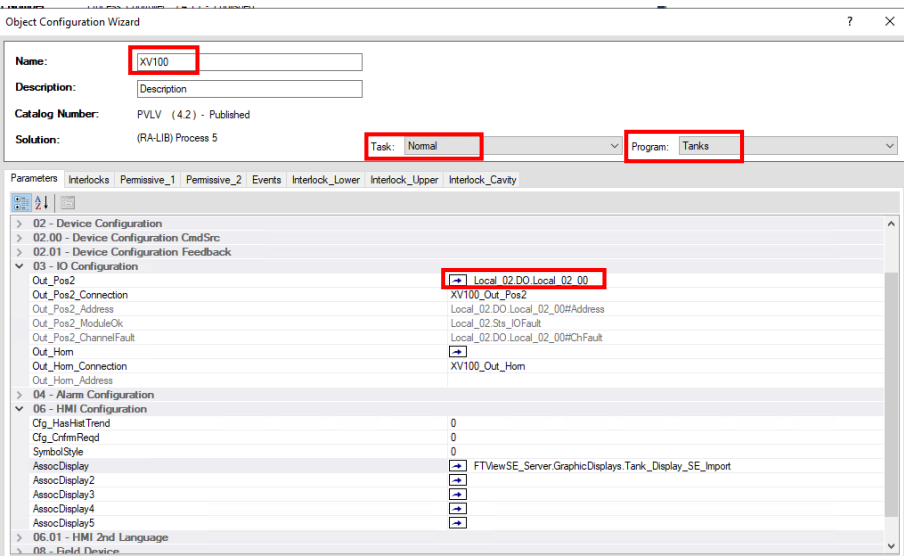
1. Right click the CLX controller and select Add New.



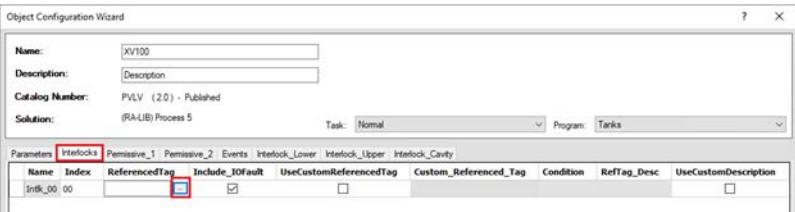
2. Enter PVLV into the Filter bar. Select the bottom option (RA-LIB) Process 5 Control Strategies Device Control PVLV and select Next.

Object Configuration Wizard									
Select a library									
Filter: PVLV				<input type="checkbox"/> Show All Revisions		<input type="checkbox"/> Show All Libraries			
Solution	LibraryType	Category	CatalogNumber	Family	ContentType	Class	Status	SchemaVersion	Owner
Device Control (5 items)									
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Device Control	CS_PVLVHO (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0		Rockwell Automation
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Device Control	CS_PVLVMO (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0		Rockwell Automation
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Device Control	CS_PVLVMP (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0		Rockwell Automation
(RA-LIB) Process 5 Plug-In	Device Control	CS_PVLVSO (4.1)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0		Rockwell Automation
(RA-LIB) Process 5 ControlStrategies	Device Control	PVLV (4.2)	Logix	Task	Standard	Published	2.0.0		Rockwell Automation

3. Change the control strategy name to XV100 and select the Task Normal and Program Tanks. Then scroll down the Parameters list and select the Out\_Pos2 reference to Local\_02.DO.Local\_02\_00.



4. Scroll down the parameters list for XV100 to the HMI Configuration and select the Ellipse button for input process variable AssocDisplay. Configure the AssocDisplay to Tank\_Display\_SE.Import display to select the references as you did with the level indicator control strategy previously.
5. Select the Interlocks tab. Right click in the background and select Add New.
6. For Intk\_00 choose a reference tag by selecting the Ellipse button.



7. Select the PAI LI100 control strategy that we created earlier and in the right-side window select Sts\_HiHi reference, then select Finish.

Select a Reference

Project - Process Example

History

HMI

Controllers

CLX

1756-EN2T (2.1)

1756-IF8 (5.0)

1756-OB16I (5.3)

Hardware\_Bus (4.1)

Hardware\_Module\_Status (4.1)

PAI (4.2)

LI100

Program (1.0)

PVLV (4.2)

XV100

rc\_Dvc\_Pf755T (3.4)

rc\_LD\_Dvc\_Pf755T (3.4)

Task (1.0)

CLX1

1756-OF8IH/A (5.3)

Hardware\_Module\_Status (4.1)

PAI (4.2)

PAID (4.2)

PAIM (4.2)

Program (1.0)

Task (1.0)

Controller	Type	Object Name	Object Description
CLX	ControlStrategies	LI100	Level Indicator

Name	Scope	Val	Description	DType	CLXDep	AADDep
Sts_ErrOoRDB	Object	LI100.Sts_ErrOoRDB	Error OoRDB	Bool	true	false
Sts_ErrOoRGateDly	Object	LI100.Sts_ErrOoRGateDly	Error OoRG...	Bool	true	false
Sts_ErrOoRdly	Object	LI100.Sts_ErrOoRdly	Error OoRO...	Bool	true	false
Sts_ErrOoRdlyDly	Object	LI100.Sts_ErrOoRdlyDly	Error OoROf...	Bool	true	false
Sts_ErrStuckTime	Object	LI100.Sts_ErrStuckTime	Error StuckT...	Bool	true	false
Sts_ErrAlm	Object	LI100.Sts_ErrAlm	Error Alarm	Bool	true	false
Sts_ErrDB	Object	LI100.Sts_ErrDB	Error DB	Bool	true	false
Sts_ErrCtrlDB	Object	LI100.Sts_ErrCtrlDB	Error Contro...	Bool	true	false
Sts_ErrCtrlHIDB	Object	LI100.Sts_ErrCtrlHIDB	Error CtrlH...	Bool	true	false
Sts_ErrCtrlHIDB	Object	LI100.Sts_ErrCtrlHIDB	Error CtrlHIDB	Bool	true	false
Sts_ErrCtrlLoDB	Object	LI100.Sts_ErrCtrlLoDB	Error CtrlLoDB	Bool	true	false
Sts_ErrCtrlLoLoDB	Object	LI100.Sts_ErrCtrlLoLoDB	Error CtrlLo...	Bool	true	false
Sts_Alm	Object	LI100.Sts_Alm	Alarm	Bool	true	false
Sts_AlmInh	Object	LI100.Sts_AlmInh	Alarm Inh	Bool	true	false
Sts_IOfault	Object	LI100.Sts_IOfault	IOfault	Bool	true	false
Sts_HiHiCmp	Object	LI100.Sts_HiHiCmp	High High Cmp	Bool	true	false
Sts_HiHiGate	Object	LI100.Sts_HiHiGate	High High Gate	Bool	true	false
Sts_HiHi	Object	LI100.Sts_HiHi	High High	Bool	true	false
Sts_HiCmp	Object	LI100.Sts_HiCmp	HighCmp	Bool	true	false
Sts_HiGate	Object	LI100.Sts_HiGate	High Gate	Bool	true	false
Sts_Hi	Object	LI100.Sts_Hi	High	Bool	true	false

8. Verify the level indicator LI100#Sts\_HiHi is selected for the Interlock, then select Finish.

Object Configuration Wizard

Name:

Description:

Catalog Number: PVLV (4.2) - Published

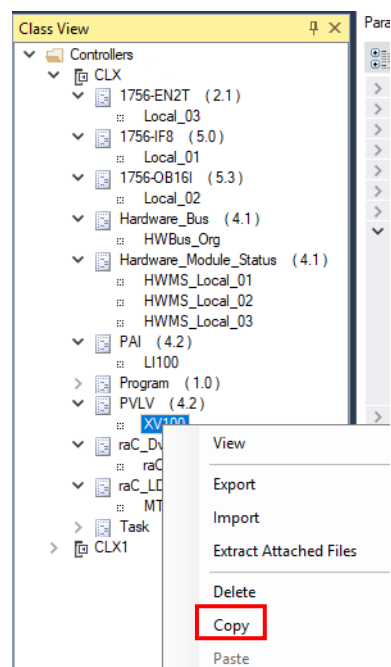
Solution: (RA-LIB) Process 5 Task: Normal Program: Tanks

Parameters Interlocks Permissive\_1 Permissive\_2 Events Interlock\_Lower Interlock\_Upper Interlock\_Cavity

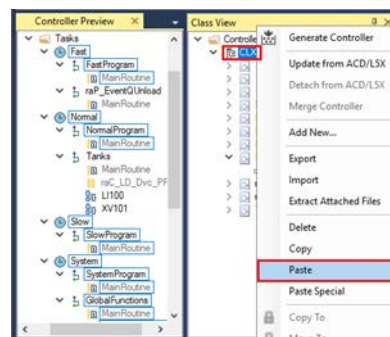
Name	Index	ReferencedTag	Include_IOFault	UseCustomReferencedTag	Custom_Referenced_Tag	Condition	RefTag_Desc	UseCustomDescription
Intlk_00	00	LI100#Sts_HiHi	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		Level Indic...	High High	<input type="checkbox"/>

This interlock prevents the inlet valve from opening and filling the tank when the tank level is full.

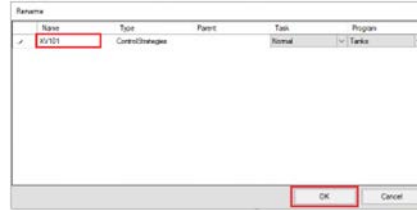
9. To create a second control strategy for the outlet valve, you can repeat the previous steps or follow the faster copy/paste method as described for this example. Right click the XV100 control strategy and select Copy.



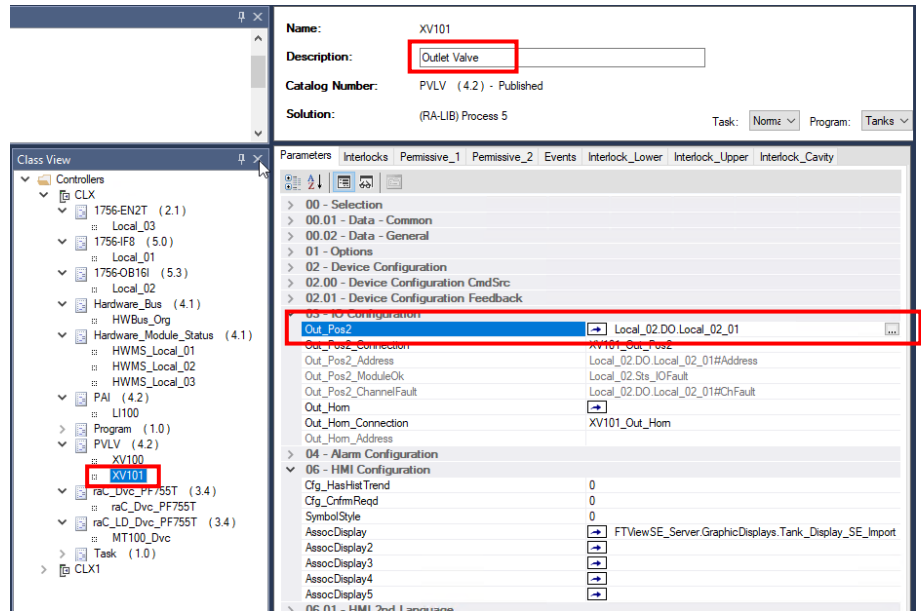
10. After XV100 is copied, right click CLX and select Paste.



- The paste operation asks you to rename the control strategy. Rename XV100\_copy to XV101 and select OK.

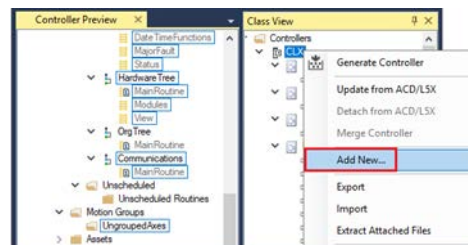


- Using the Class View window, select XV101 control strategy. Change the description to Outlet Valve and scroll down the parameters list to Out\_Pos2 and change the IO point to channel 1 Local\_02.DO.Local\_02\_01, then select Apply Changes.



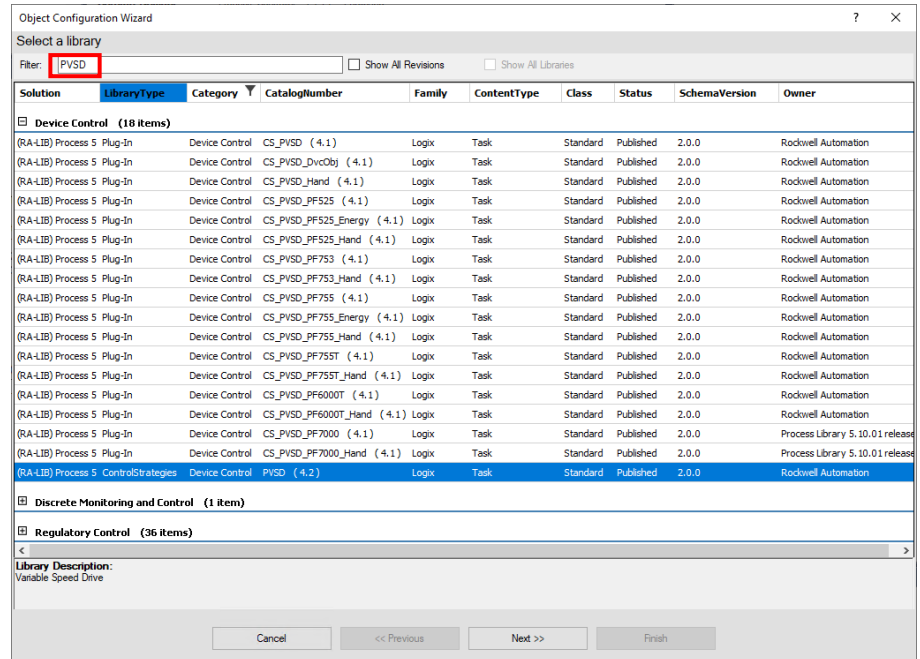
### Add CS\_PVSD

- Right click the CLX controller and select Add New.

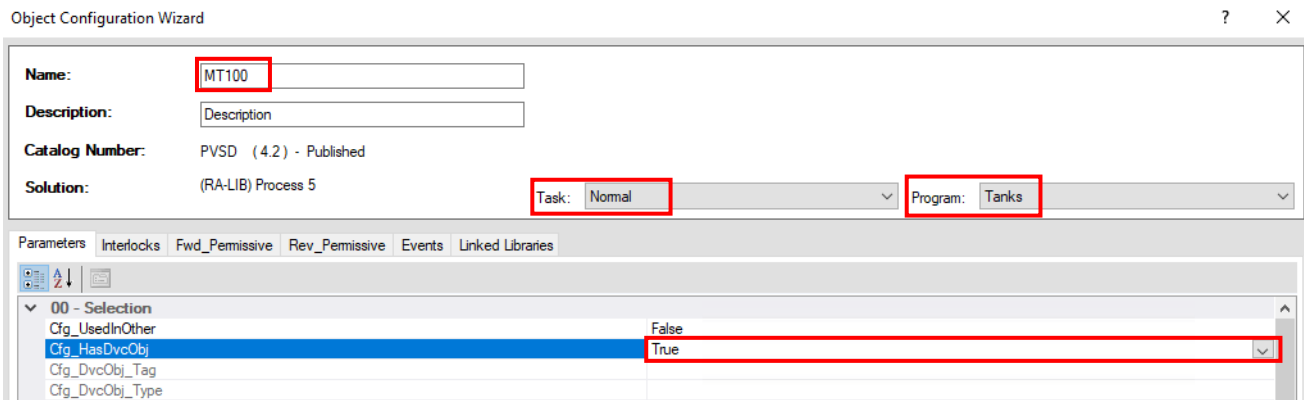




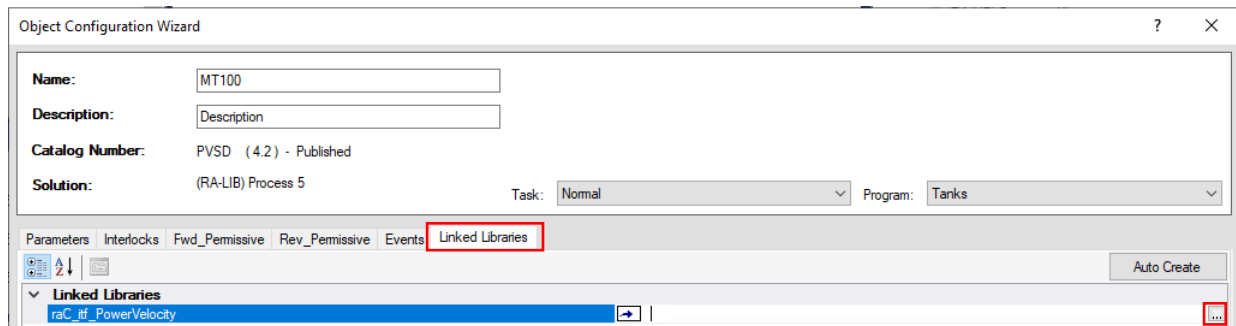
- Enter PVSD into the Filter bar. Select the bottom option (RA-LIB) Process 5 Control Strategies Device Control PVSD and select Next.



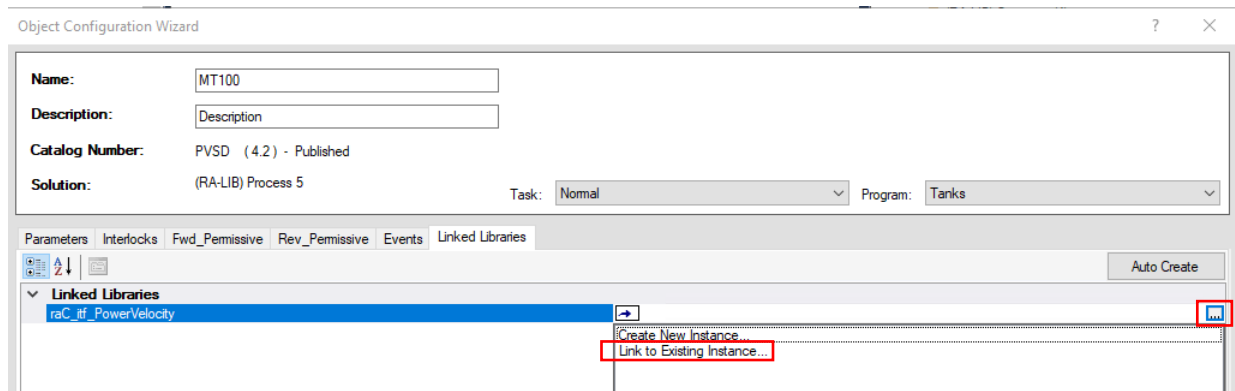
- Change the name of the drive control strategy for the motor to MT100 and assign it to Task Normal and Program Tanks. Change Cfg\_HasDvcObj from False to True. Then select the ellipse for the Ref\_DvcObject and browse to the drive MT100\_Dvc.



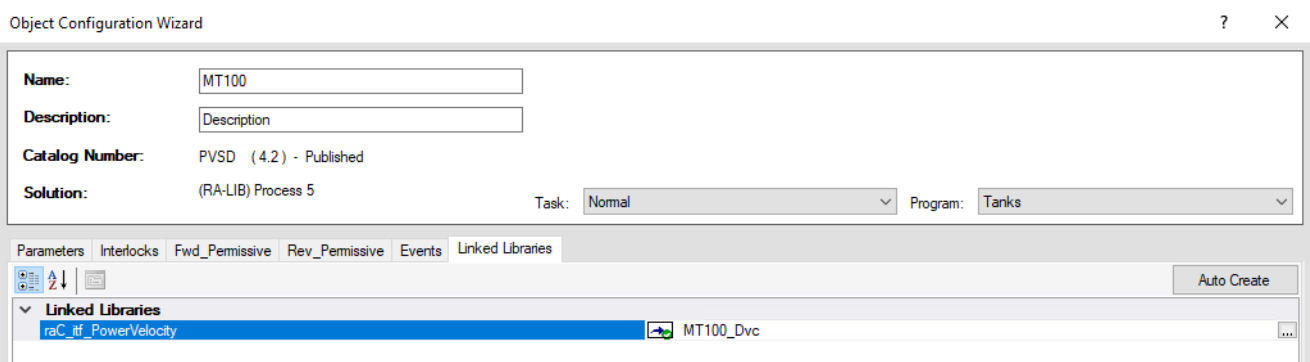
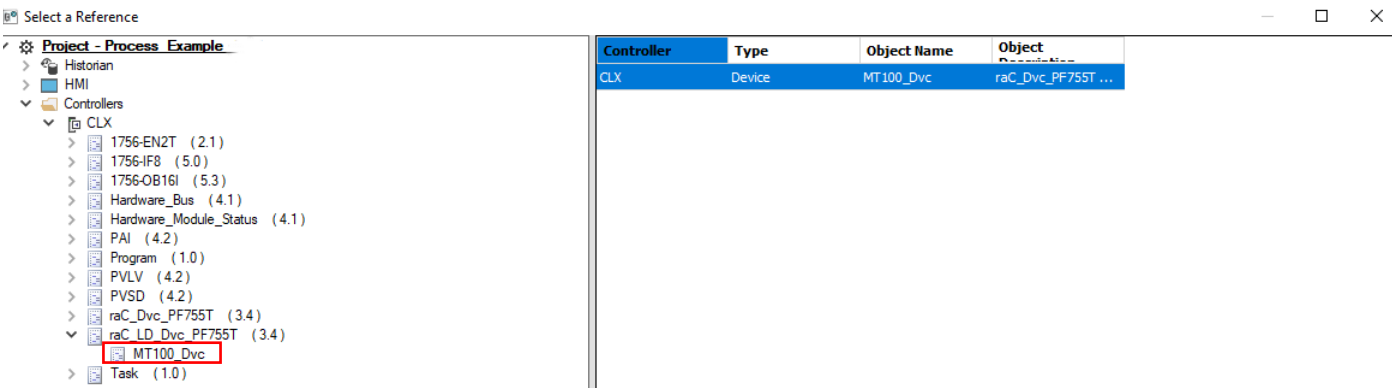
- Select the Linked Libraries tab.



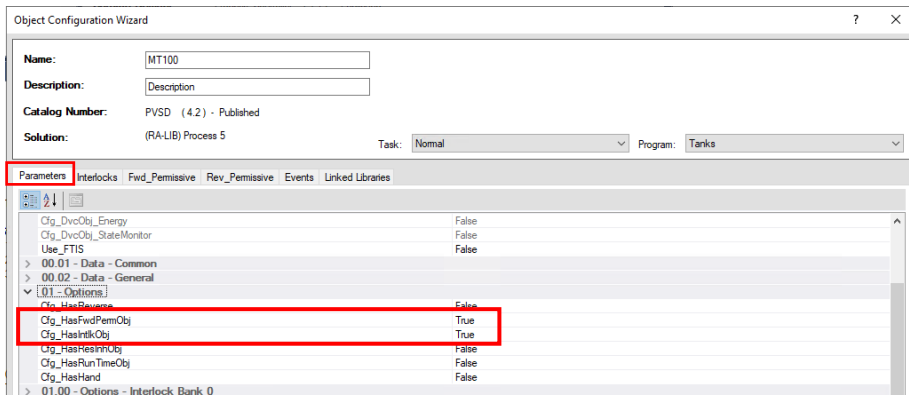
5. Select Link to Existing Instance.



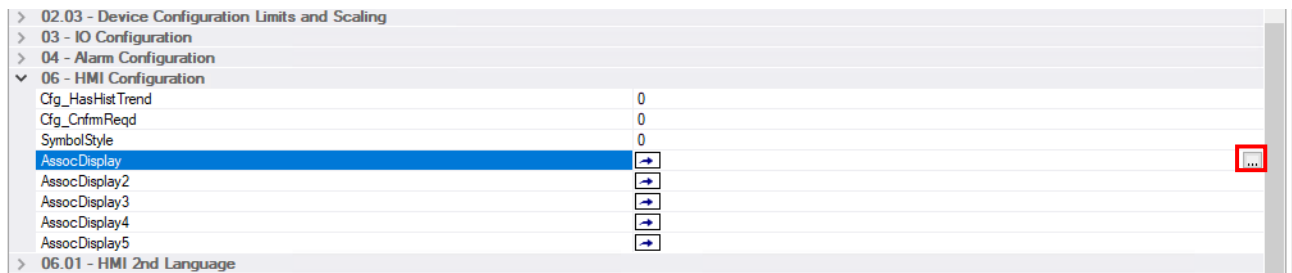
6. Select MT100\_Dvc and select finish.



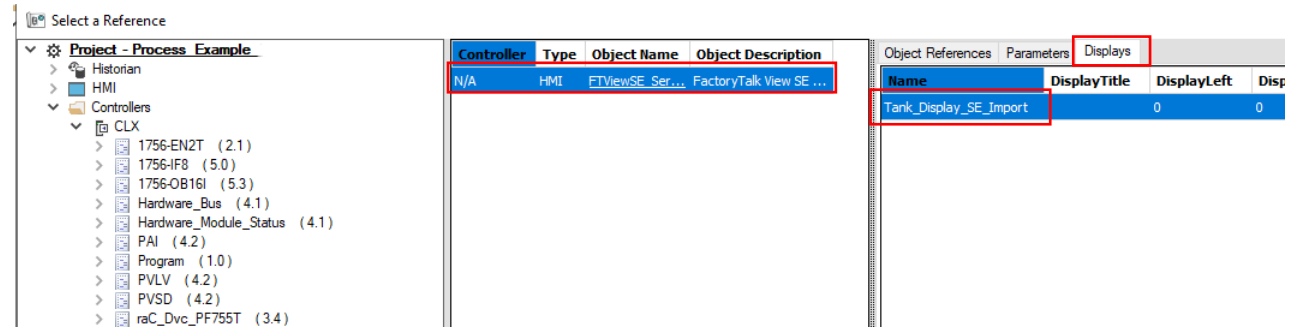
7. Select the Parameters tab and scroll down the list to change the options for Cfg\_HasFwdPermObj and Cft\_HasIntlkObj both to True.



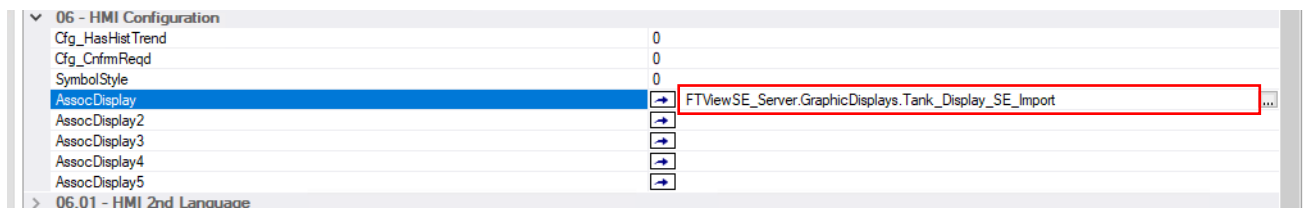
8. Continue to scroll down the parameters list to assign the 06 - HMI Configuration to reference the graphic using the Ellipse button.



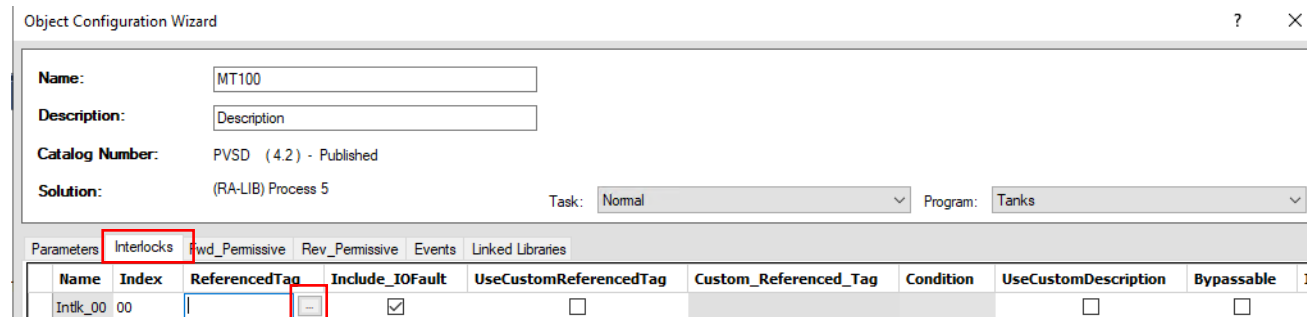
9. Browse to the HMI FTViewSE Server and select the Displays tab on the right. Select the display that we created earlier named Tank\_Display\_SE\_Import.



10. Select Finish. The display reference appears as follows.



11. Select the Interlocks tab. Right-click and select Add New. Select the Ellipse button in the Reference Tag column.



12. Browse to the PAI > LI100 level indicator control strategy. On the right, select the Sts\_LoLo reference. Select Finish.

Select a Reference

Project - Process Example

- Historian
- HMI
- Controllers
  - CLX
    - 1756-EN2T (2.1)
    - 1756-IF8 (5.0)
    - 1756-OB16I (5.3)
    - Hardware\_Bus (4.1)
    - Hardware\_Module\_Status (4.1)
    - PAI (4.2)
      - LI100**
        - Program (1.0)
        - PVLV (4.2)
        - PVSD (4.2)
          - MT100
            - rac\_Dvc\_Pf755T (3.4)
            - rac\_LD\_Dvc\_Pf755T (3.4)
            - Task (1.0)

Controller	Type	Object Name	Object Description
CLX	ControlStrategies	LI100	Level Indicator

Name	Scope	Val	Description	DType	CLXDep	A
Sts_ErrCtrlHIDB	Object	LI100.Sts_ErrCtrlHIDB	Error CtrlHIDB	Bool	true	fa
Sts_ErrCtrlLoDB	Object	LI100.Sts_ErrCtrlLoDB	Error CtrlLoDB	Bool	true	fa
Sts_ErrCtrlLoLoDB	Object	LI100.Sts_ErrCtrlLoLoDB	Error CtrlLoLoDB	Bool	true	fa
Sts_Alm	Object	LI100.Sts_Alm	Alarm	Bool	true	fa
Sts_AlmInh	Object	LI100.Sts_AlmInh	Alarm Inh	Bool	true	fa
Sts_IOFault	Object	LI100.Sts_IOFault	IOFault	Bool	true	fa
Sts_HiHiCmp	Object	LI100.Sts_HiHiCmp	High High Cmp	Bool	true	fa
Sts_HiHiGate	Object	LI100.Sts_HiHiGate	High High Gate	Bool	true	fa
Sts_HiHi	Object	LI100.Sts_HiHi	High High	Bool	true	fa
Sts_HiCmp	Object	LI100.Sts_HiCmp	HighCmp	Bool	true	fa
Sts_HiGate	Object	LI100.Sts_HiGate	High Gate	Bool	true	fa
Sts_Hi	Object	LI100.Sts_Hi	High	Bool	true	fa
Sts_LoCmp	Object	LI100.Sts_LoCmp	LoCmp	Bool	true	fa
Sts_LoGate	Object	LI100.Sts_LoGate	LoGate	Bool	true	fa
Sts_Lo	Object	LI100.Sts_Lo	Lo	Bool	true	fa
Sts_LoLoCmp	Object	LI100.Sts_LoLoCmp	LoLoCmp	Bool	true	fa
Sts_LoLoGate	Object	LI100.Sts_LoLoGate	LoLoGate	Bool	true	fa
<b>Sts_LoLo</b>	Object	LI100.Sts_LoLo	LoLo	Bool	true	fa
Sts_CtrlHiHi	Object	LI100.Sts_CtrlHiHi	CtrlHiHi	Bool	true	fa
Sts_CtrlHi	Object	LI100.Sts_CtrlHi	CtrlHi	Bool	true	fa

This interlock prevents the pump from dry starting if the tank is nearly empty.

13. Select the Fwd\_Permisive tab. Right-click and select Add New. Select the Ellipse button in the Reference Tag column.

Object Configuration Wizard

Name: MT100

Description: Description


Catalog Number: PVSD (4.2) - Published

Solution: (RA-LIB) Process 5

Task: Normal

Program: Tanks

Parameters Interlocks **Fwd\_Permisive** Rev\_Permisive Events Linked Libraries

Name	Index	ReferencedTag	UseCustomReferencedTag	Custom_Referenced_Tag	UseCustomDescription	Condition	Bypassable	RefObjectName	R
Fwd_...	00								

14. Browse to the PVLV > XV101 level indicator control strategy. On the right, select the Sts\_Pos2 reference. Select Finish.

Select a Reference

Project - Process Example

- Historian
- HMI
- Controllers
  - CLX
    - 1756-EN2T (2.1)
    - 1756-IF8 (5.0)
    - 1756-OB16I (5.3)
    - Hardware\_Bus (4.1)
    - Hardware\_Module\_Status (4.1)
    - PAI (4.2)
    - Program (1.0)
    - PVLV (4.2)
      - XV101**
        - PVSD (4.2)

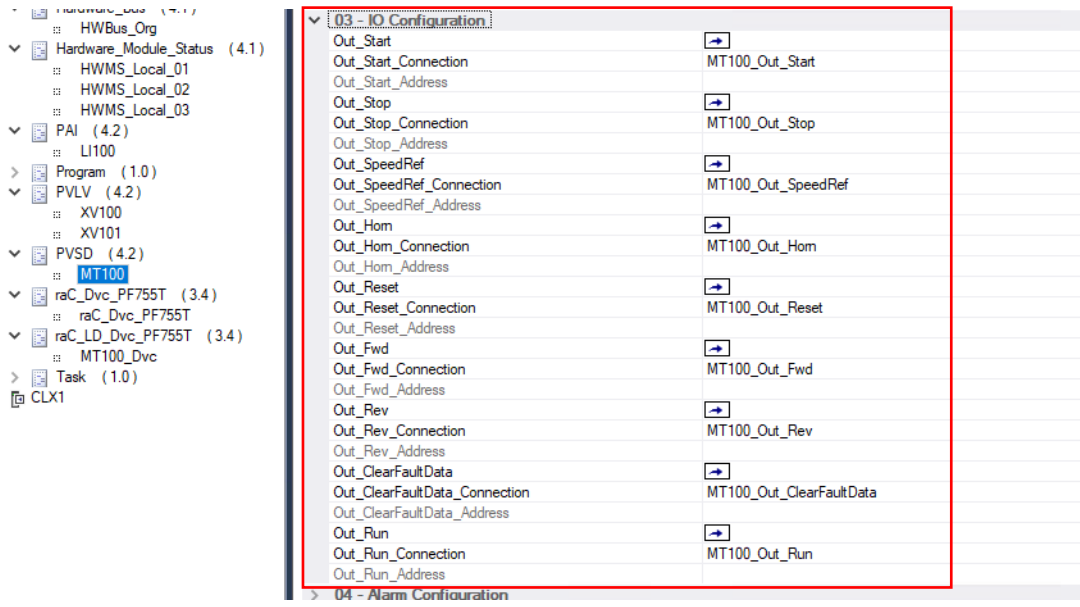
Controller	Type	Object Name	Object Description
CLX	ControlStrategies	XV101	Outlet Valve

Name	Scope	Val	Description	DType	C
Sts_Moving	Object	XV101.Sts_Moving	Moving	Bool	tn
Sts_MovingTo...	Object	XV101.Sts_MovingTo...	Moving To P...	Bool	tn
Sts_MovingTo...	Object	XV101.Sts_MovingTo...	Moving To P...	Bool	tn
Sts_Pos1	Object	XV101.Sts_Pos1	Position 1	Bool	tn
<b>Sts_Pos2</b>	Object	XV101.Sts_Pos2	Position 2	Bool	tn
Sts_Pulsing	Object	XV101.Sts_Pulsing	Pulsing	Bool	tn
Sts_Stopped	Object	XV101.Sts_Stopped	Stopped	Bool	tn
Sts_TransitStall	Object	XV101.Sts_TransitStall	Transit Stall	Bool	tn
Sts_TripFail	Object	XV101.Sts_TripFail	Trip Fail	Bool	tn

This permissive only allows the pump to start when the outlet valve is opened.

15. Select Finish in the Object Configuration Wizard.

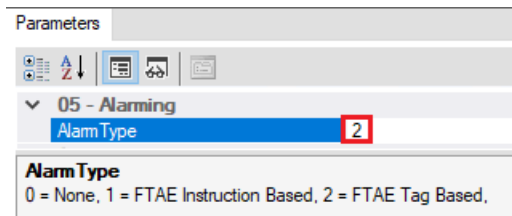
16. Select the newly created control strategy MT100 for the pump motor and scroll down the parameters list to IO Configuration.



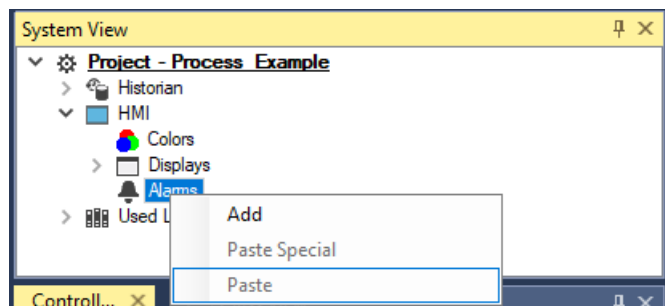
Tags are automatically created for connection parameters. This strategy IO was determined when you first created the controller and entered type 5.

## Add Alarm Groups

ACM can create alarm groups and you can assign alarms within control strategies to those groups based on organization. Specify the type of alarms that ACM generates in the controller parameters.



- Go to ACM System View > HMI > Alarms and add an FTAlarmEvent object from the library. The default name is FTAlarmEvent\_Server.



- 2. Select the FTAlarmEvent\_Server object to access the Alarm Group Tab and select Add New.

Parameters		Alarm Group			
	Name	AlarmGroupID	ParentAlarmGroupID	AlarmGroup	SubObject Description
	Default_0	1	0	Default	FactoryTalk Alarm Groups
<div><div>Add New</div><div>Copy</div><div>Paste</div><div>Delete</div><div>Reset Grouping...</div></div>					

- 3. Add groups for your areas and assign the Parent Alarm Group ID to represent the parent/child hierarchy.

Parameters		Alarm Group			
	Name	AlarmGroupID	ParentAlarmGroupID	AlarmGroup	SubObject Description
	Area01_0	2	1	Area01	FactoryTalk Alarm Groups
	Area02_0	3	1	Area02	FactoryTalk Alarm Groups
	Area03_0	4	1	Area03	FactoryTalk Alarm Groups
	Process01_1	1	1	Process01	FactoryTalk Alarm Groups

Once you have alarm groups, you can enable alarms in your control strategies and link each alarm to the desired group.

- 4. For each control strategy, access the parameters tab and expand 04 - Alarm Configuration. Enable the alarms that you need (such as, Hi Hi, Hi, Lo, or Lo Lo).



Ideally an alarm design has been performed to assure that only those alarms that uniquely identify an abnormal situation and require action by the operator are enabled. Configuring alarms without a proper design effort creates nuisance alarms that make the operator less effective and create mistrust in the alarm system

- 5. Expand an enabled alarm (such as, Hi Hi Alarm) and select the Group parameter (such as, Cfg\_HiHiAlarmGroup).

- Click the ellipse button and use the Select a Reference dialog to choose the alarm group.

**Name:** XT100

**Description:** Description

**Catalog Number:** PAI (1.0) - Published

**Solution:** (RA-LIB) Process 5

**Task:** N **Program:** P

**Parameters**

- 04 - Alarm Configuration
  - Cfg\_HasHiHiAlm: True
  - Cfg\_HasHiAlm: False
  - Cfg\_HasLoAlm: False
  - Cfg\_HasLoLoAlm: False
  - Cfg\_HasFailAlm: False
  - AlarmClass: 0
  - AlarmCommand: NavToDisplay [ControlStrategies]XT100 x "Faceplate" "/RP"
  - Cfg\_AlarmMessgae Type: False
- 04.02 - Hi Hi Alarm
  - Cfg\_HiHiDeadband: 1
  - Cfg\_HiHiOnDly: 0
  - Cfg\_HiHiOffDly: 0
  - Cfg\_HiHiAckReqd: True
  - Cfg\_HiHiResetReqd: False
  - Cfg\_HiHiSeverity: 750
  - Cfg\_HiHiMaxShelveDuration: 480
  - Cfg\_HiHiAlarmGroup: FTAlarmEvent\_Server.AlarmGroups.Area01\_1
  - Cfg\_HiHiAlarmSetoperations: True

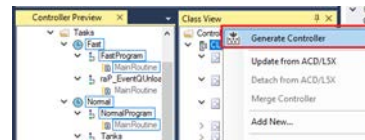
## Generate Controller and Graphics Files

Application Code Manager can generate Logix Designer controller files in both the L5X and ACD formats. The controller files contain the I/O modules, hardware bus and status, and control strategies that you created in ACM so you can download the project to a Logix controller.

ACM can also generate HMI graphics to be imported to FactoryTalk View SE displays. These standard PlantPax graphics are sourced from the Process Library and each graphic is associated to the control strategy referenced in ACM.

### Generate Controller ACD File

- Right click the CLX controller and select Generate Controller.



The Logix Code Generation dialog appears.

- Check the Create ACD box. Take note of where you save the file. Select the Generate button.

**Logix Code Generation**

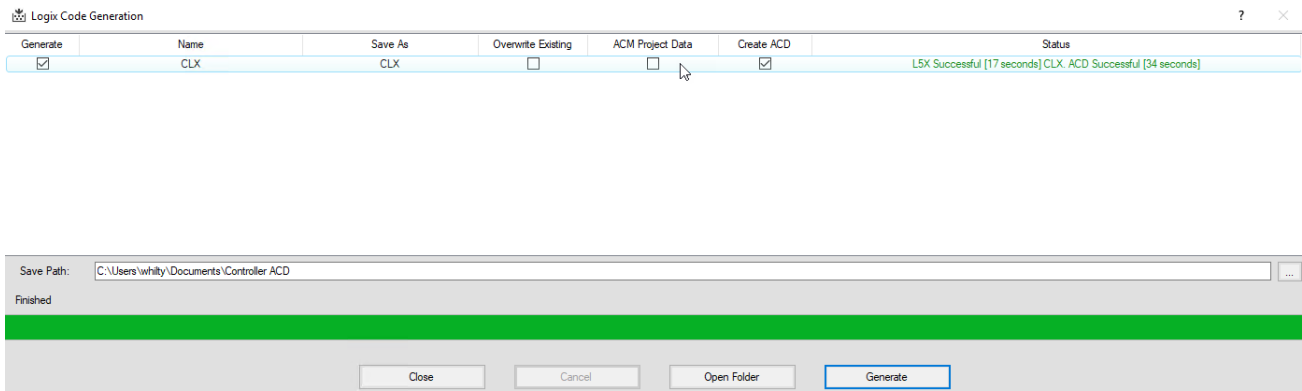
Generate	Name	Save As	Overwrite Existing	ACM Project Data	Create ACD	Status
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	CLX	CLX	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	OK

**Save Path:** C:\Users\whilly\Documents\Controller ACD

Close Cancel Open Folder Generate

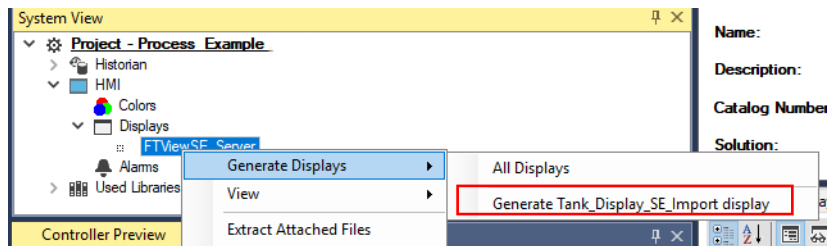
The Overwrite existing checkbox is optional and is selected if you want to overwrite a file already in the directory. The ACM Project Data creates just the L5X formatted file.

3. When the generation is completed, select the Close button.

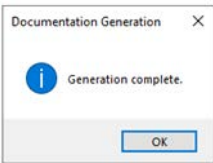


*Generate the HMI Display File*

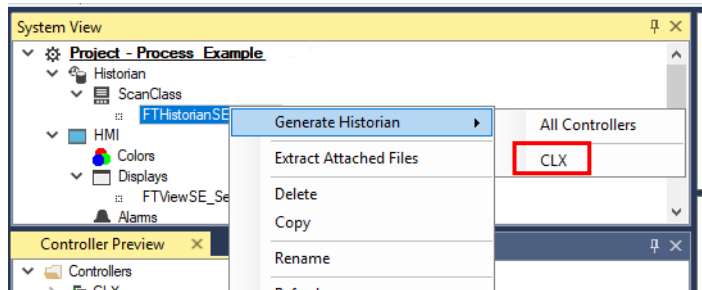
1. Using the System View, expand HMI > Displays and right-click on FTViewSE\_Server. Select Generate Displays and Generate Tank\_Display\_SE\_Import display.



2. Save the display Tanks\_Display\_SE.Import.xml to the same directory as the ACM file.  
3. Select OK when the Generation is complete.



4. If needed, generate a CSV file of tags to import into your FactoryTalk Historian SE database.

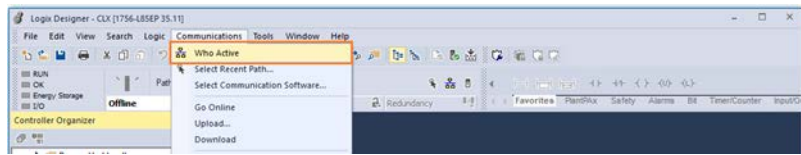




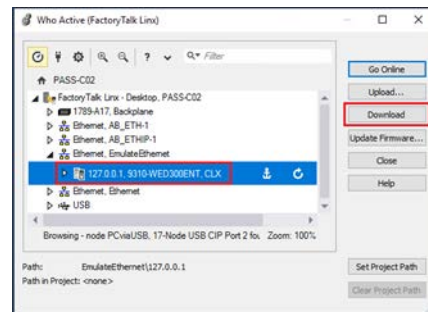
## Download ACD File to the Controller

Since ACM is an offline tool, after a controller file is generated, the Studio 5000 Logix Designer software is required to open and download to a Logix controller.

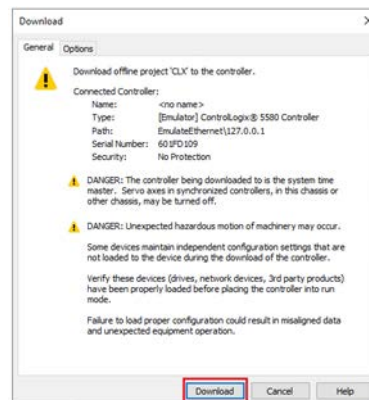
1. Using Logix Designer select Communications > Who Active from the top menu.



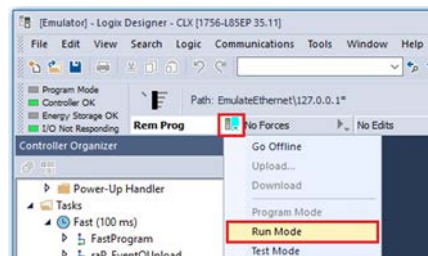
2. Select a controller from the tree. For this example, expand the Ethernet, EmulateEthernet driver in FactoryTalk Linx and select the empty controller at address 127.0.0.1. 9310-WED300ENT, CLX and then select Download.



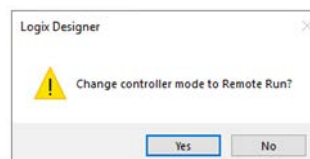
3. Review the standard warning dialog and select Download.



4. After the download is complete, put the controller into Remote Run mode.



5. Select Yes to change the mode to Remote Run.



## Add Graphics to HMI

See Rockwell Automation Publication, PlantPAx Display and Library Guidelines [PROCES-RM200](#) for information on the Graphic Framework.

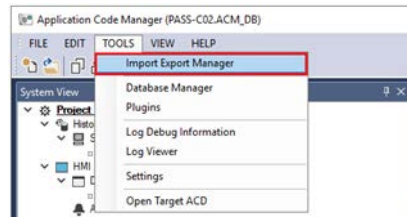
## Bulk Configuration

This section is to demonstrate the advantage that Application Code Manager has over Studio 5000 Logix Designer when creating large projects with numerous similar devices.

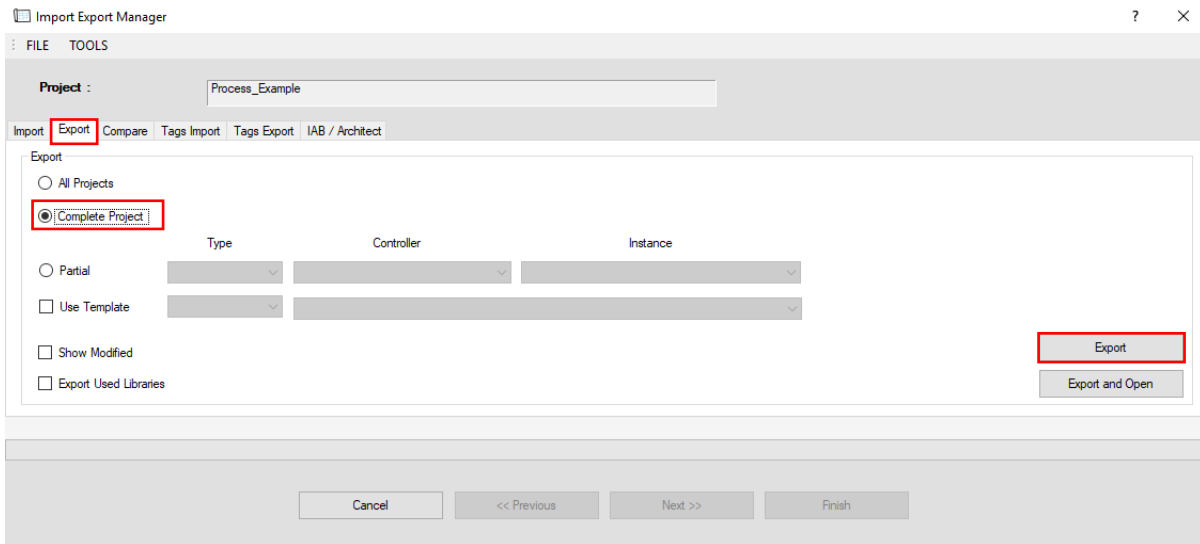
For simple projects the traditional Studio 5000 design environments can be sufficient, however as complexity and size increase the export/import features of ACM can greatly reduce design time.

ACM creates the initial control strategy and devices. ACM then exports the project where devices can be quickly replicated. Afterwards, import the bulk project back into ACM to generate your final controller file, HMI graphics and Historian tags.

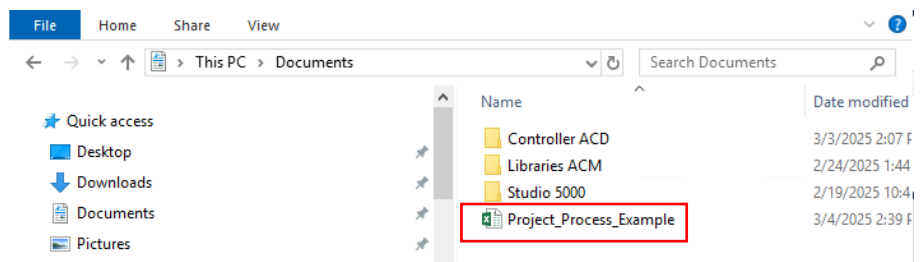
1. In ACM, select Tools > Import Export Manager.



2. Select the Export tab, select Complete Project and select Export.



3. Save the export file and ensure that you keep the default file name.
4. Select Finish when the export is done and minimize ACM software.
5. Navigate to the newly exported file.



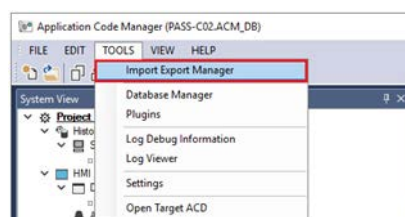
- The project opens to the PVLV control strategy tab by default. Notice both valves XV100 & XV101 are listed, along with the configured parameters as you scroll right. Explore the other tabs across the bottom to review other components of the ACM project.

[illegible]

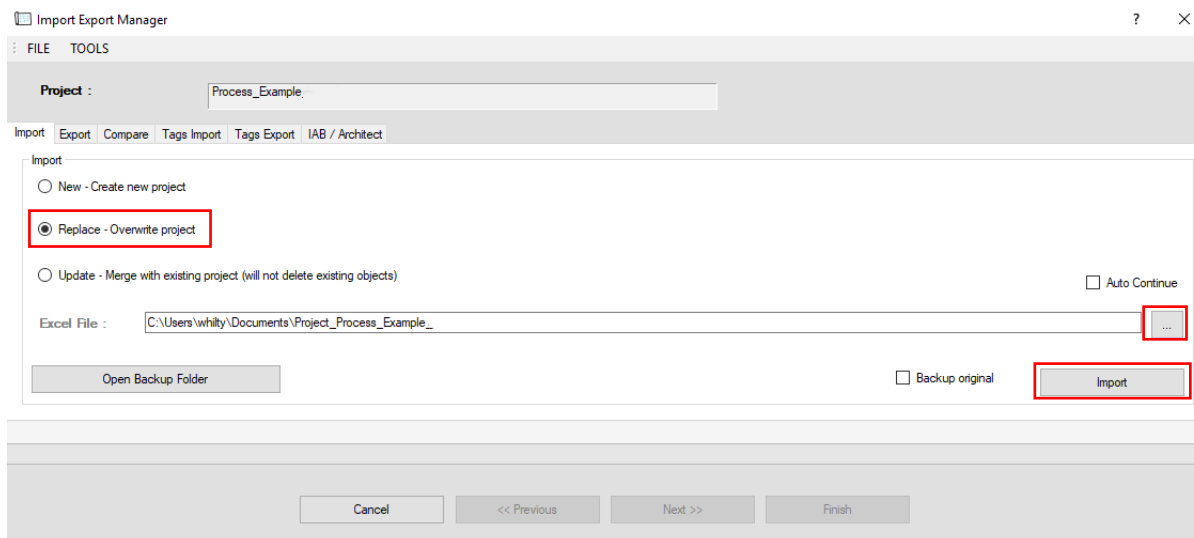
7. The bulk creation of devices is achieved by copying existing devices and pasting as new rows. Then focus on a new row and using Search & Replace you can easily change the names for each new additional device that is controlled by this control strategy.

[illegible]

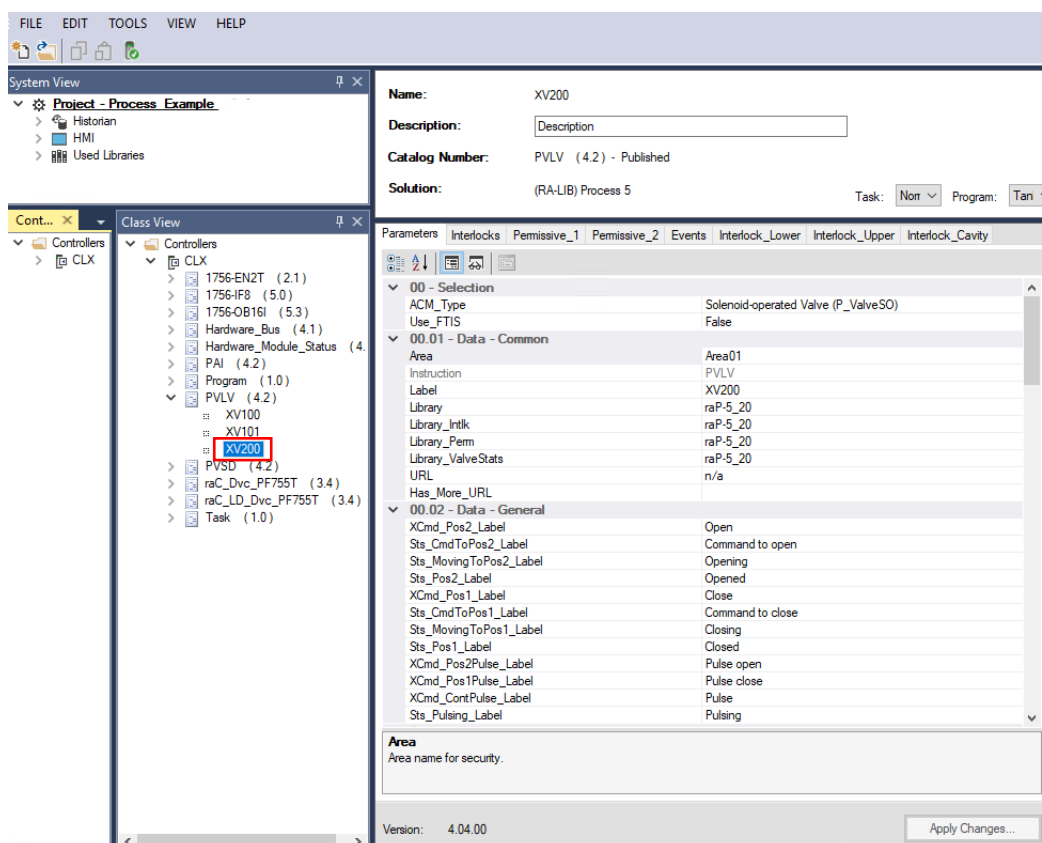
8. Save the bulk ACM file and close the spreadsheet.
9. In ACM, select Tools and Import Export Manager from the top menu.



10. Select the Import tab, select Replace - Overwrite project. Using overwrite for this example prevents errors if the user project differs from what was intended.
11. Use Ellipse to navigate and select the bulk creation file and select Import.



12. Select Next on the import verification and Finish when the import is done.
13. Explore the additional content imported into ACM.



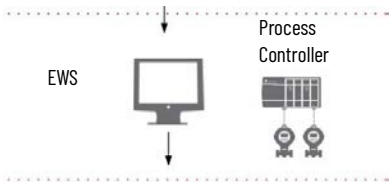
## Modifying an Existing PlantPax System

The process library includes templates of controller and HMI applications to get you started if you are not using ACM or have an existing project.

The PlantPax® Configuration Tool for Tags, Alarms, and FactoryTalk® Historian are compiled in a separate download, PlantPax Tools, which can be used to edit existing projects. See the following table for software and tool usage and explanation.

New or existing	Studio 5000 Logix Designer® and FactoryTalk® View SE software	<p>Studio 5000 Logix Designer and FactoryTalk View SE software can open templates to start new projects or import library elements directly into existing projects. Both software products are required throughout the application development process,</p> <p>Open and import library elements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Controller project template .ACD files</li><li>• Controller Add-On Instruction and rung .LSX files</li><li>• HMI project template .APA files</li><li>• HMI global object and graphic display .GFX files</li><li>• HMI image .PNG files</li></ul>
Existing	PlantPax Configuration Tool for Tags, Alarms, and Historian	<p>The PlantPax Configuration Tool for Tags, Alarms, and Historian helps define controller .ACD files with associated HMI applications. The PlantPax Configuration Tool for Tags, Alarms, and Historian is best suited for modifying the output from an ACM project, an existing controller project, or a template project from the process library.</p> <p>Use the PlantPax Configuration Tool for Tags, Alarms, and Historian to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Organize parameter files for use the code, tags, and HMI displays into a process tree (builds the Logical Organizer)</li><li>• Create FactoryTalk® Alarms and Events alarm groups</li><li>• Create Historian Asset Framework elements</li><li>• Edit controller tag data with import and export</li><li>• Build HMI parameters for use with tag search and navigation graphics</li></ul>

### Prerequisites



Which library elements to use depends on whether you:

- Modify an existing application
- Create a new application based on a sample template
- Import library elements into a project
- Generate library elements into code by tools

For more information about the process library, see the Rockwell Automation Library of Process Objects Reference Manual, publication [PROCES-RM200](#).

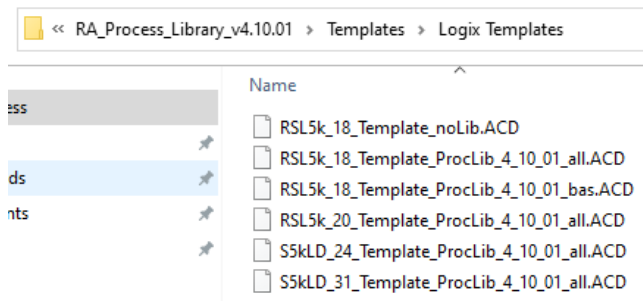
Resource	Description
Rockwell Automation Library of Process Objects Reference Manual, publication <a href="#">PROCES-RM200</a>	Describes how to build and use library components that comprise the Rockwell Automation Library of Process Objects.

### Studio 5000 Logix Designer and FactoryTalk View SE Software

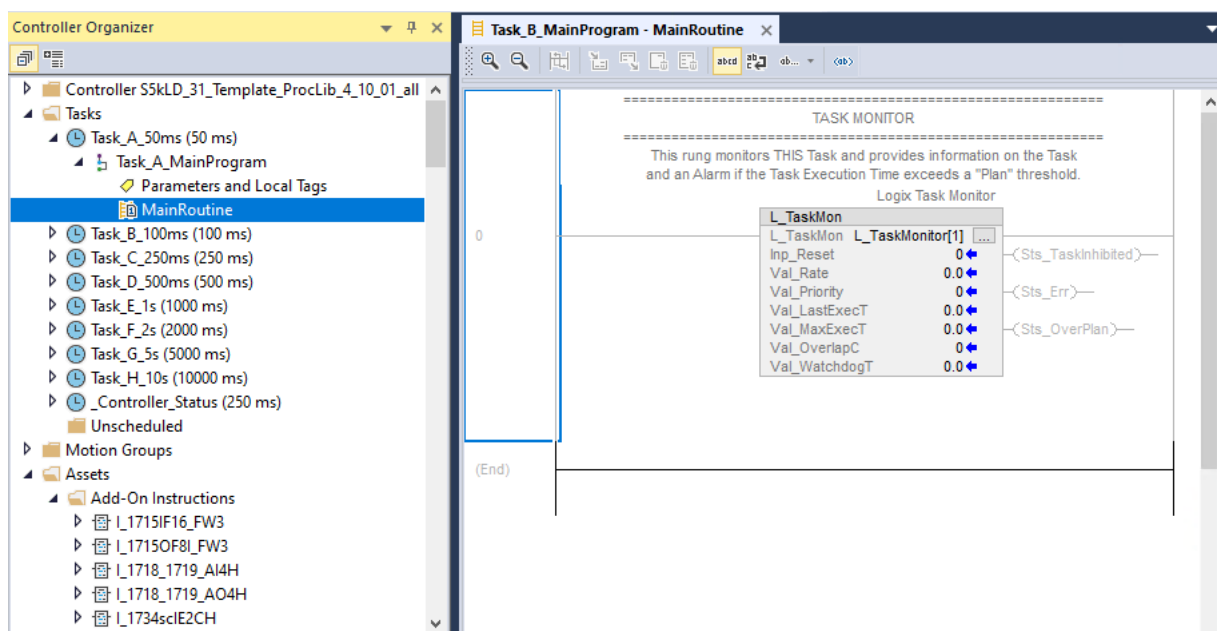
The process library includes templates of controller and HMI applications. These templates are designed to get you started if you aren't using ACM software or do not have an existing project.

## Logix Designer Application Templates

Controller templates have the library instructions and task model already defined. They also have a basic IO configuration that you can modify according to your project plan.



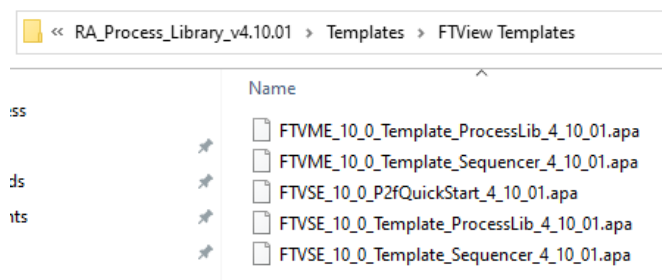
Open a Logix Designer application project and browse to the template directory and select the template to open.



For more information, see [PlantPax Process Objects](#).

## FactoryTalk View SE templates

HMI templates contain pre-defined components such as, Displays, Global Objects, Libraries, Images, Macros, and basic configurations for FactoryTalk View SE applications.



If you already have an HMI project on your PASS, you can:

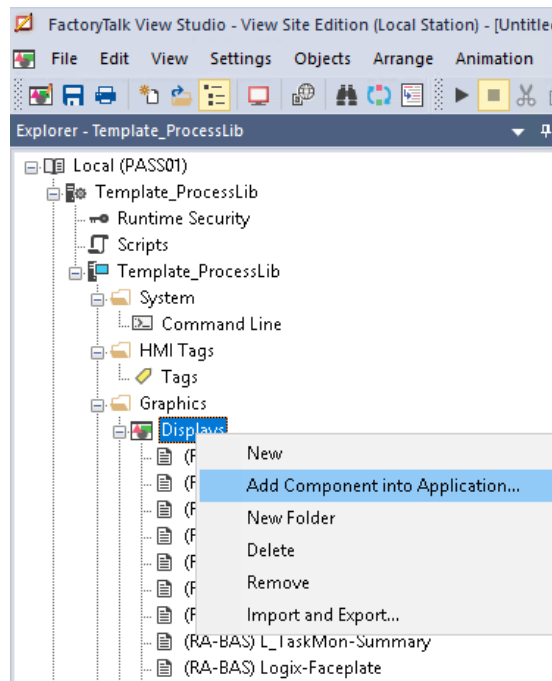
- Use the template application as a new HMI, then recreate your Areas, HMI server, data server and alarms and events server, such as you do when you configure a PASS.
- Use the existing HMI application, on the PASS, and add library components into the application.

You must restore the template so you can access the application and its components.

1. Go to the FactoryTalk View SE Application Manager and select to restore a local station archive.
2. Browse to the .APB file in the templates folder in the process library and open the application.
  - If you choose to make this template your new HMI application, see [Chapter 3, Process Automation System Server](#) for how to create areas and servers.
  - If you choose to maintain your existing HMI application, export the Displays, Global Objects, Libraries, Images, Macros from the template and import them into your application.

You can use the Add Components in Application method to add Displays, Global Objects, Libraries, Images, directly from the library.

1. In your application, select the component (such as Displays) and select Add Component in Application.



2. Browse to the .GFX files in the library folders and select those to open.

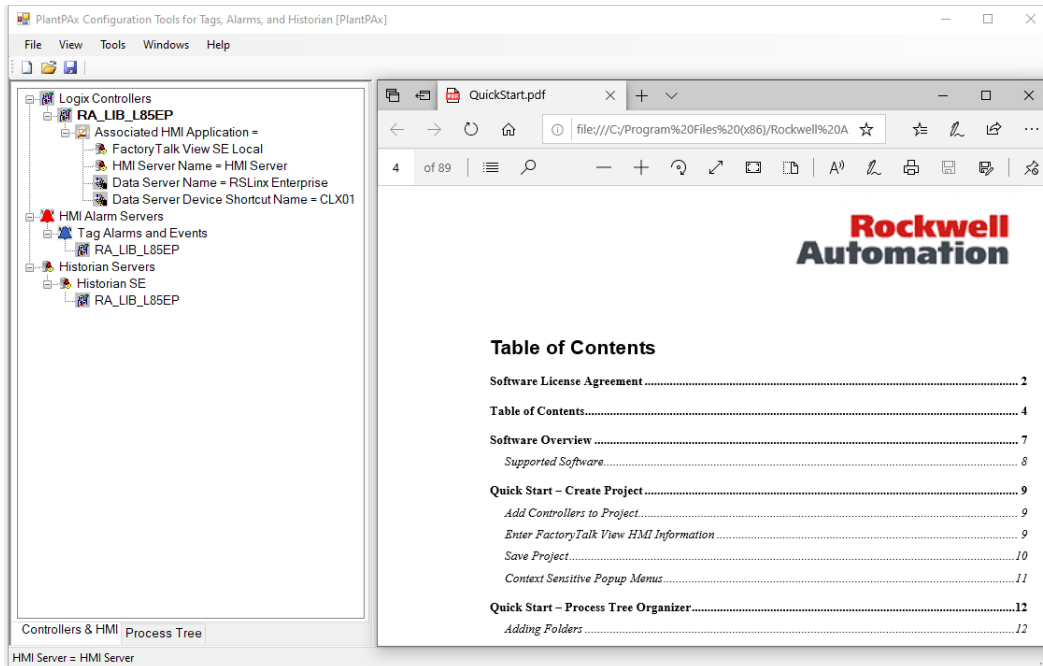
## Edit a Project via the PlantPax Configuration Tool for Tags, Alarms, and Historian

The PlantPax® Configuration Tool for Tags, Alarms, and FactoryTalk® Historian are compiled in a separate download, PlantPax Tools, which can be used to edit existing projects. This tool performs various functions to help you create or modify an existing PlantPax project. To use this tool, you must have a controller project (.ACD) file, which can be:

- Generated from ACM
- Existing controller project
- Sample controller project from the process library



For more information, see the quick start guide that comes with the tool. The Quick Start guide automatically launches when you open the PlantPAx Configuration Tool for Tags, Alarms, and Historian.

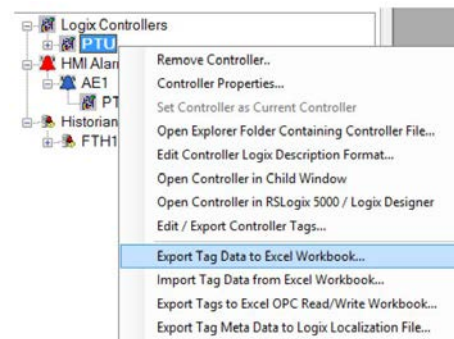


With the PlantPAx Configuration Tool for Tags, Alarms, and Historian, you can:

- Define a project that has multiple controller .ACD files and associated FactoryTalk® View HMI applications.
- Organize controller logic, tags, and HMI displays in a Process Tree organizer. You can then use the tree structure to create FactoryTalk Alarms and Events alarm groups and Historian Asset Framework elements.

## Edit Tag Data

- Edit tags and data in offline controller .ACD files.
  - Export and import tag data to and from text files.
  - Create Microsoft® Excel® workbooks for online OPC tag data reads and writes.
1. Add controllers to the project or load existing project.
  2. Launch the bulk data editing function from the controllers project tree by right-mouse clicking a project controller and selecting one of the four export/import tools:



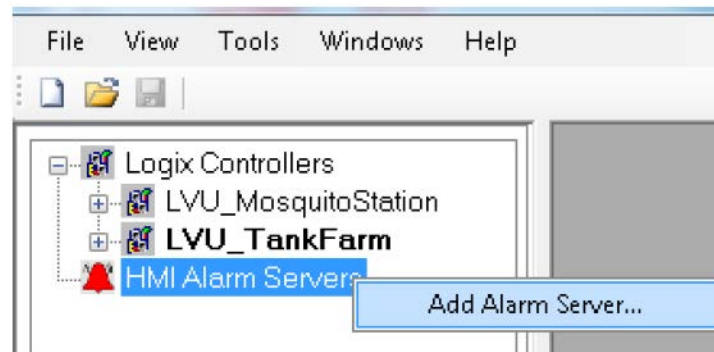
3. This launches a dialog window for each of the tools. Click the “Help” button in the dialog window for additional instructions.

## Edit Alarms

- Create FactoryTalk Alarms and Events. XML import files using tag data from controller files.



1. Multiple AE alarm servers can be used in FactoryTalk applications. Each AE alarm server can provide alarms from multiple Logix controllers. The project can contain multiple controllers. Select the controllers to use for each AE alarm server XML import file you want to create. Right-mouse click "HMI Alarm Servers" and "Add Alarm Server":



2. Enter alarm server name and description. It is recommended that the FactoryTalk AE server name be used.

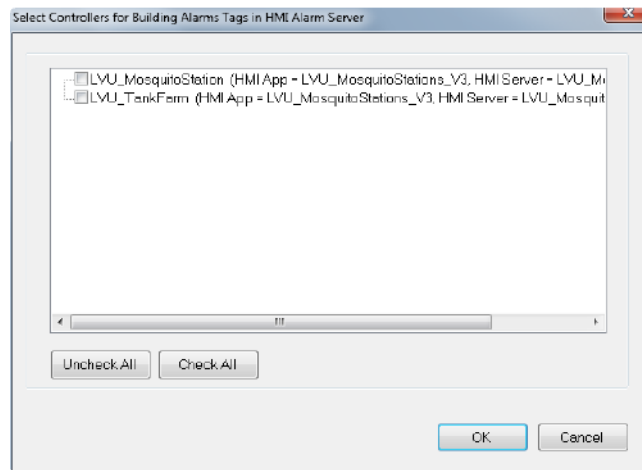
---

**IMPORTANT**

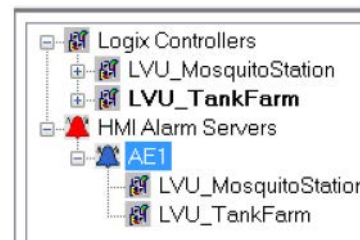
The software does not have the capability of accessing the FactoryTalk AE server. The alarm server created here is merely used for organizing the controllers associated with the server. Any name can be used. However, it is recommended to use the actual AE server name to avoid confusion.

---

3. Select the controllers to associate with the alarm server. Only Logix tags from the selected controllers will be used.

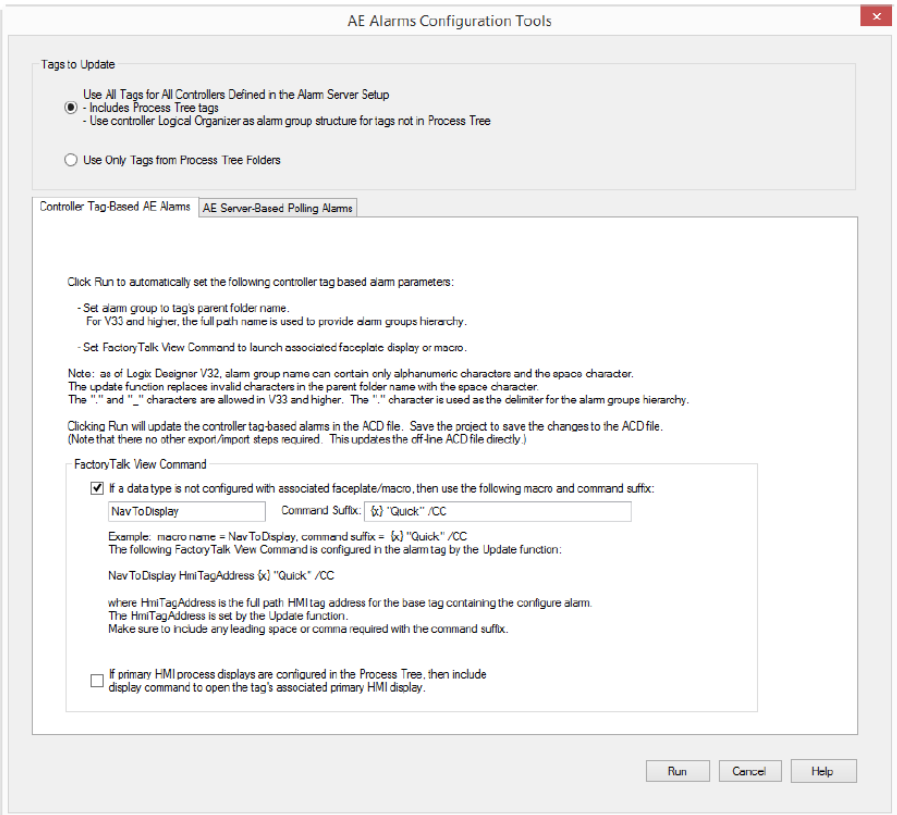


The alarm server and associated controllers are added to the project tree.



## Launch AE Alarm Configuration Tools

The tool can be used for controller tag-based alarms and AE server-based alarms. Click Help for details.



## Edit Historian Points

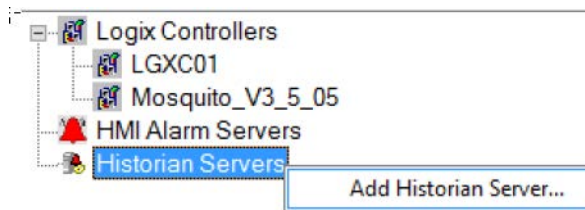
- Bulk configure OSI PI Asset Framework (AF) databases with Logix tag AF elements. This includes automatic configuration of related PI points in the FactoryTalk® Historian data server (PI data server).
- For systems without Asset Framework, a separate utility provides bulk configuration of PI points in the Historian data server. The utility provides the option of generating a bulk import file, or adding the PI points directly if a Historian data server connection is available. The bulk import file can be used with the PI Point Builder Excel AddIn to create points in the data server.

For more information about Historian tags, see [Chapter 9, Historical Data](#)

1. Create project with Logix controller files.



- Right-mouse click on the Historian Servers tree node and add a historian server. Any names and description can be used as the name is used as a project placeholder.



- Select the controllers to use and fill in the information in the window. For FTH, the point source name is "FTLD". Contact your PI administrator for the point source name if not using FTH. Note the data server name is not required when the point source is not FTLD.

Select Controllers for Building Data Points in Historian Server

Name: EWS30  
Description: Production Historian  
FTLD Interface Number: 1  
Server or Collective Name:   
Point Source Name: FTLD

Select Controllers and Enter Data Server Information

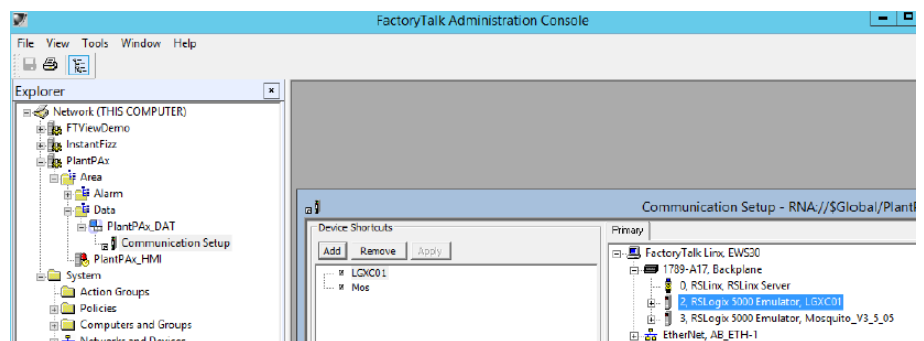
Select	Controller	Application Name	Data Area Full Path	Data Server Name	Device Shortcut Name
<input type="checkbox"/>	LGXC01				
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Mosquito_V3_5_05				

FactoryTalk Application Name, Data Server Name and Device Shortcut Name must be provided when using FTLD point source.  
Data Server Name is not required when point source is not FTLD.  
The default data server name used by FactoryTalk is "RSLink Enterprise".  
(Data Area Full Path example: "NorthPlant(Data1)")

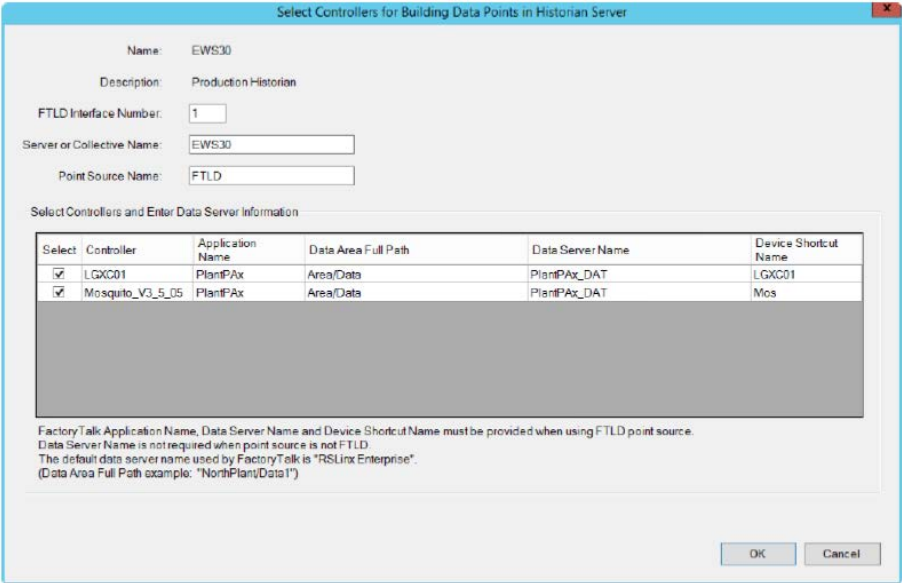
OK Cancel

If the controllers are already configured for a project Alarm Server (refer to the Alarm Builder user manual), then the application and data server information are automatically filled in – it's assumed that the same data servers from the HMI application are used. Make any changes if necessary.

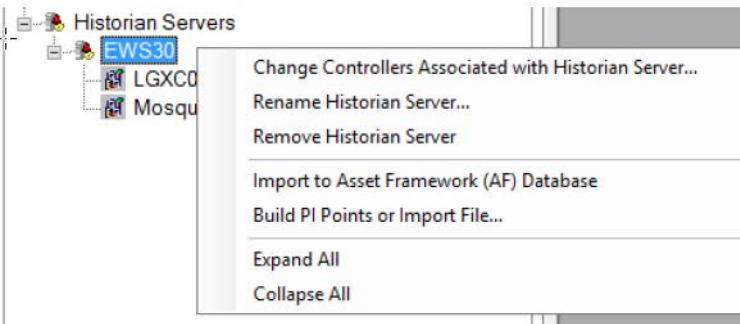
Use FactoryTalk Administration Console to find the data server information:



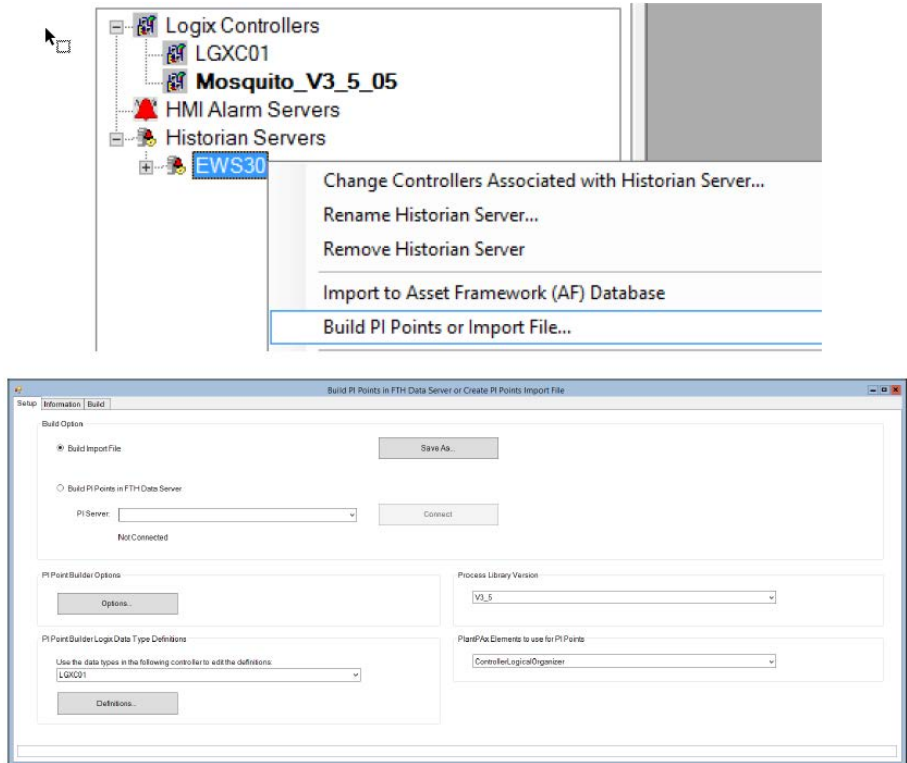
4. Click OK when the information has been entered. A new Historian Server tree node should appear in the project tree.



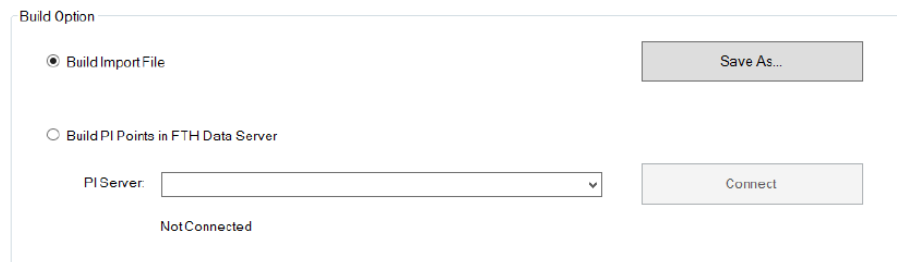
5. Right-mouse click the historian server node to make changes.



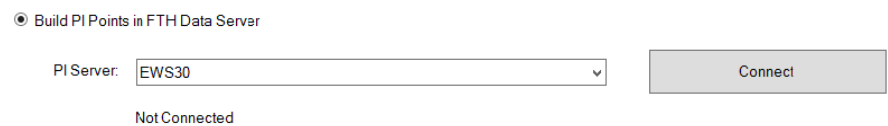
6. Right-mouse click the project historian server tree node and select “Build PI Points or Import File”:



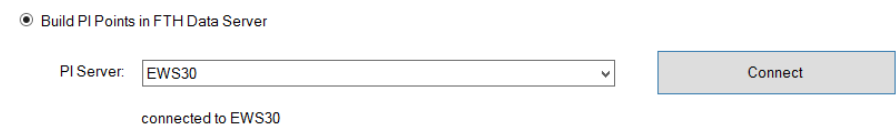
7. Select the Build Option to create an import file or add PI points directly to an FTH Data Server. An OSI PI client must be installed to add PI points directly. See OSI PI documentation for instructions.



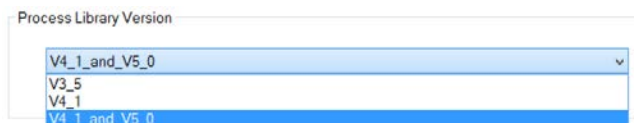
8. If the “Build PI Points in FTH Data Server” option is selected, then use the pull-down list box to select the data server and click Connect.



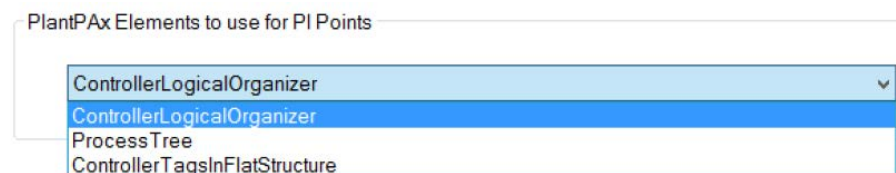
The connection status is displayed under the pull-down list box after clicking Connect:



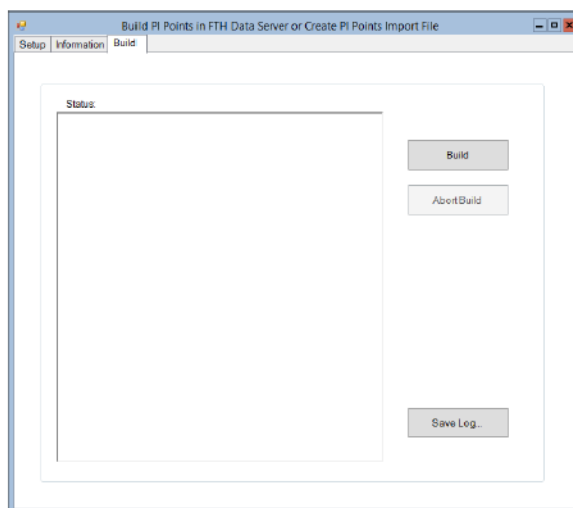
9. Since different Process Library versions can have the same data type names containing different parameter names, separate sets of historian library definitions and templates are used. Select the library version using the pull-down list box:



10. Use the "PlantPAx Elements to use for PI Points" pull-down box to select the project elements to use.

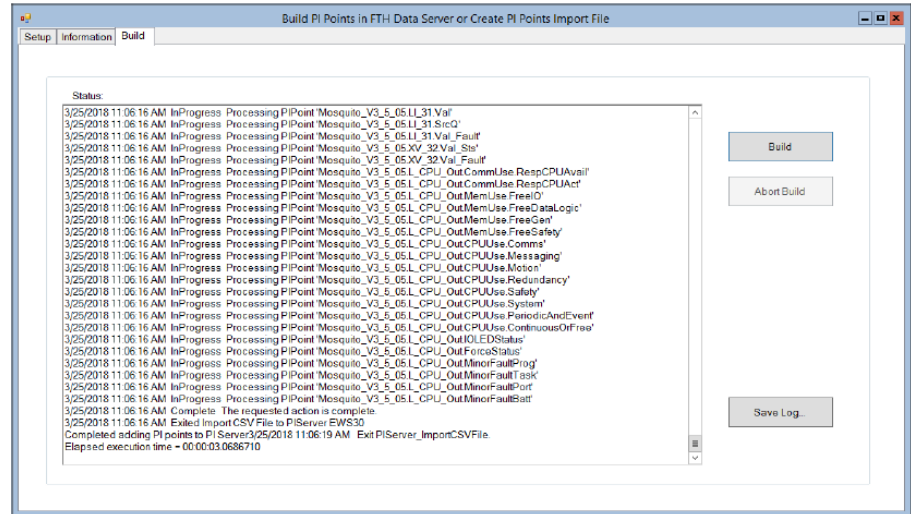


- "ControllerLogicalOrganizer". All tags from the historian controllers list are added (same as ControllerTagsInFlatStructure option).
  - "ProcessTree". The contents of the project Process Tree are used. See the "Process Tree Organizer" user manual for configuration instructions.
  - "ControllerTagsInFlatStructure". All tags from the historian controllers list are added (same as ControllerLogicalOrganizer option).
11. Click the Build button to create the import file or add PI points to the PI data server.

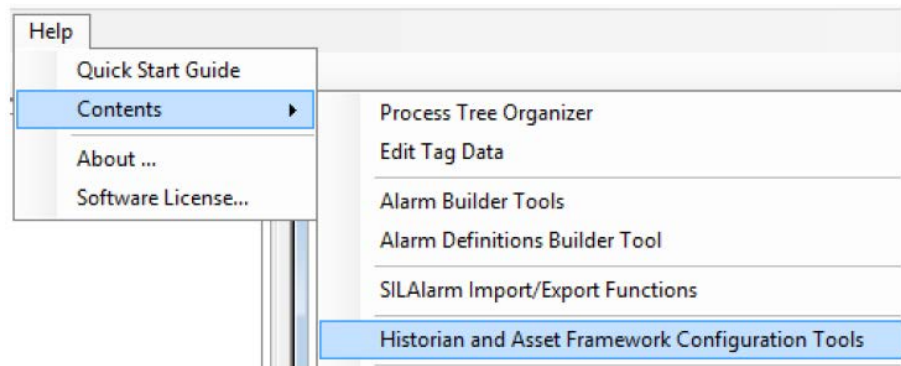


If the build import file setup option was selected, then a text file with PI points configuration generated. Use PI Builder Excel add-in to import the points to the PI data server.

If the PI points in FTH data server setup option was selected, then the build function updates the connected data server with library digital states sets and PI points.



See the help user manual for additional details:



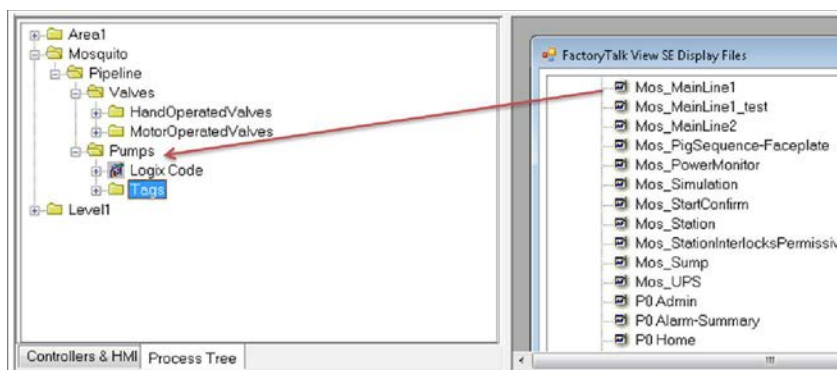
## Edit HMI Displays

Two utilities help build specially formatted FactoryTalk View SE parameter files.

- One utility builds a parameter file containing a list of controller tags with associated HMI faceplate displays. Users can search for tags using tag names and tag descriptions. The user can open tag faceplates from the returned search results.
- The other utility creates a navigation tree from the project Process Tree structure.

Organize the FactoryTalk View SE HMI displays under process tree folders.

1. Go to Logix Controllers > Open FactoryTalk View SE Displays List... and select the Process Tree tab.
2. Drag a display file from the SE display files window and drop it into the Process Tree folder.





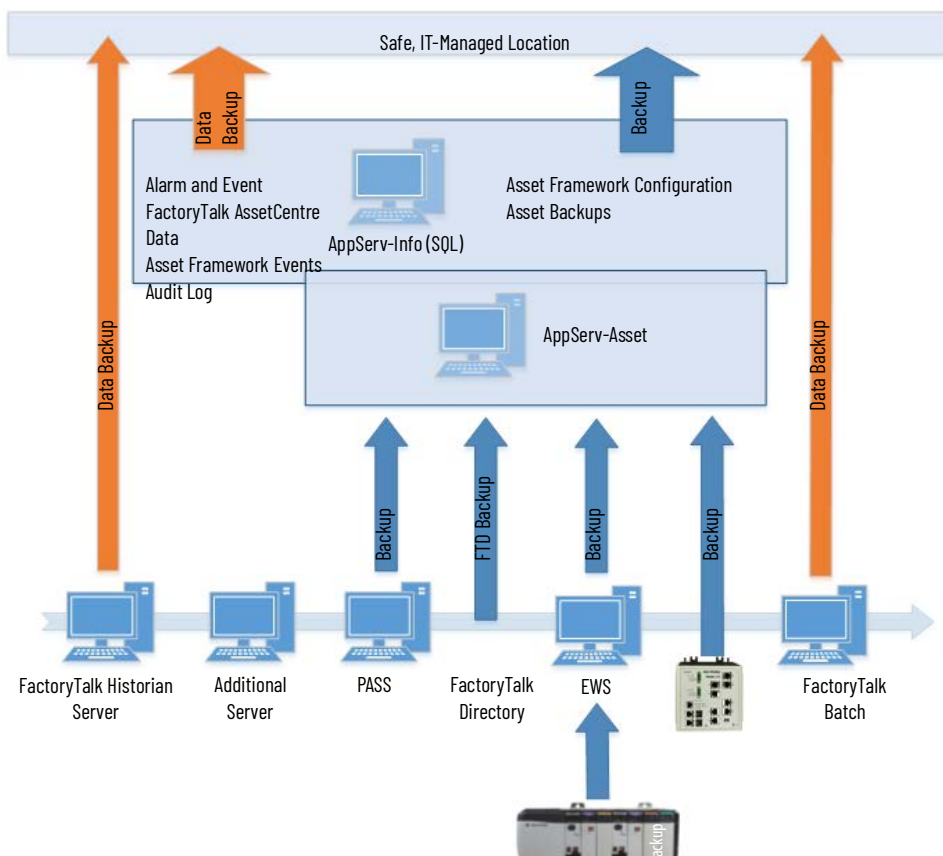
## Asset Management

FactoryTalk® AssetCentre software is a centralized tool that helps:

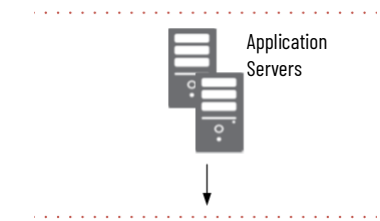
- Maintain inventory assets in the system
- Manage version control to track program changes
- Collect audit logs to track user and system activity
- Schedule backups and verify program integrity

This is the recommended workflow to configure and implement a FactoryTalk AssetCentre application. Each step outlines requirements. For more detailed information, follow the referenced links.

### Example Asset Data Flow



# Prerequisites



Following the [System Workflow](#), configure application servers.

An asset management server (AppServ-Asset) supports maintenance and plant operations to the system with FactoryTalk AssetCentre software.

In most PlantPAX® systems, the AppServ-Asset server is on a separate computer and requires these components local or distributed on remote servers:

- FactoryTalk® Directory
- FactoryTalk® Activation server
- FactoryTalk® SQL server (can be on the same computer as the AppServ-Asset server or on its own computer)

Install FactoryTalk AssetCentre Client software on the FactoryTalk AssetCentre server, the EWS, and the OWS.

For more information, see these additional resources.

Resource	Description
FactoryTalk AssetCentre Installation Guide, publication <a href="#">FTAC-IN005</a> .	How to install the FactoryTalk AssetCentre system.
FactoryTalk AssetCentre Getting Results Guide publication <a href="#">FTAC-GRO02</a>	How to get started with the FactoryTalk AssetCentre system.
FactoryTalk AssetCentre Utilities User Manual, publication <a href="#">FTAC-UM001</a>	How to use FactoryTalk AssetCentre utilities.

For Rockwell Automation tutorials, see these [YouTube videos](#).

- Introduction to Asset Management
- Using the Inventory Agent in FactoryTalk AssetCentre
- Getting Started with FactoryTalk AssetCentre
- Introduction to FactoryTalk AssetCentre Disaster Recovery
- FactoryTalk AssetCentre Disaster Recovery to Backup and Compare a FactoryTalk® View SE Application

# FactoryTalk AssetCentre

FactoryTalk AssetCentre provides a centralized tool to manage and track asset information and protect assets.

To help protect your automated control system, we recommend that you develop a strategy for archiving application data and determine recovery plans. For a tutorial, see the [YouTube video](#) 'Introduction to Asset Management'.

# Inventory Plant Assets

FactoryTalk AssetCentre software provides a centralized tool to manage and track asset information as well as protect assets. You can:

- Scan the network for existing devices to create an inventory.
- Manually add individual assets.

Regardless of method, we recommend that you add asset types for controller project, HMI, engineering workstation, and servers.

An asset inventory lists the connected devices and computers on the network and stores unique identification information about the hardware, firmware, and software in the system.

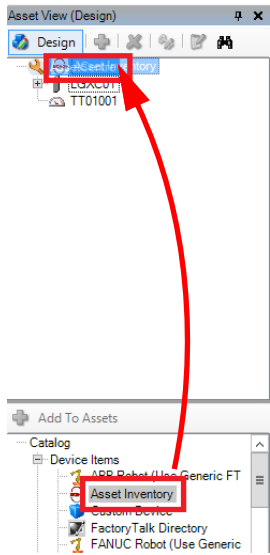
There are multiple ways to build your inventory list of assets with FactoryTalk AssetCentre software tools.

## Scan the System for Assets

Drag-and-drop an Asset Inventory asset type into the FactoryTalk AssetCentre tree and scan for device information.

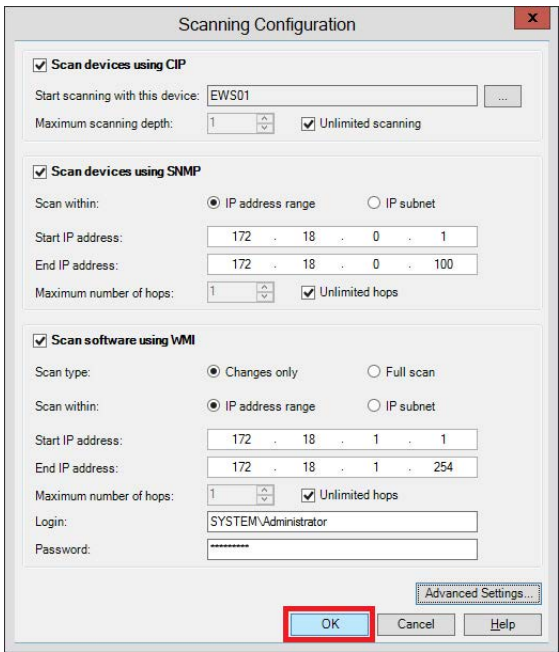
For a tutorial, see the [YouTube video](#) 'Using the Inventory Agent in FactoryTalk AssetCentre'.

1. In the FactoryTalk AssetCentre window in Design mode, move the Asset Inventory item into your asset tree.



2. Open the Asset Inventory Properties and select Scanning Configuration to define how to scan the system.

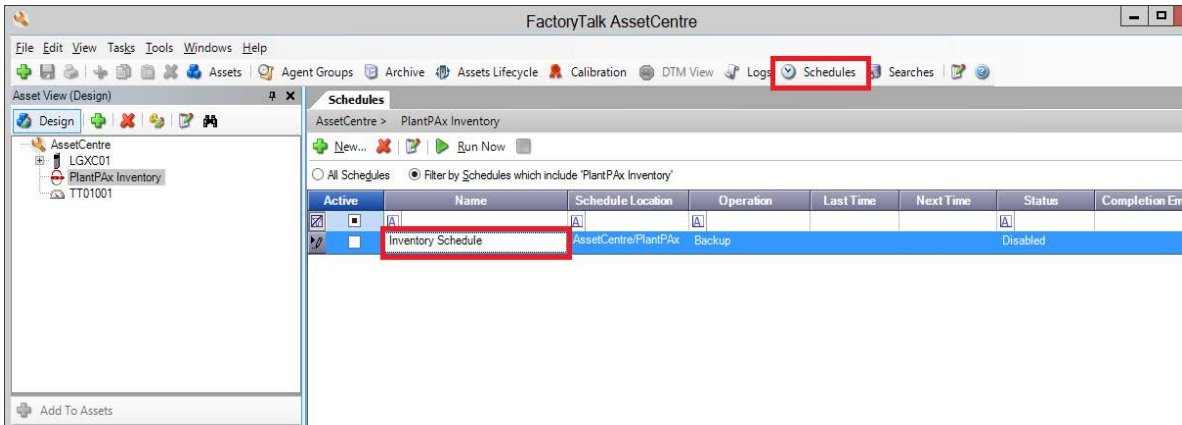
Dialog Box	Action
Scanning Configuration	<p>Select a type of scan from the following options:</p> <p><b>Scan devices using CIP™:</b> Common Industrial Protocol (CIP) scanning browses the network by using FactoryTalk® Linx drivers to return Rockwell Automation® Asset Management Program™.</p> <p><b>Scan devices using SNMP:</b> Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) scanning browses the network for SNMP-enabled devices with a specified IP address range or IP subnet. If a device responds, the FactoryTalk AssetCentre service requests available SNMP information.</p> <p><b>Scan software using WMI:</b> Windows® Management Instrumentation (WMI) scanning browses the network within the specified IP address range or IP subnet, and returns software installed on a Windows host.</p> <p>When you've selected a scan type, select Advanced Settings.</p> <p><b>IMPORTANT:</b> Leave the default Unlimited scanning box checked to scan the entire network.</p>
Advanced Settings	Select Community String.



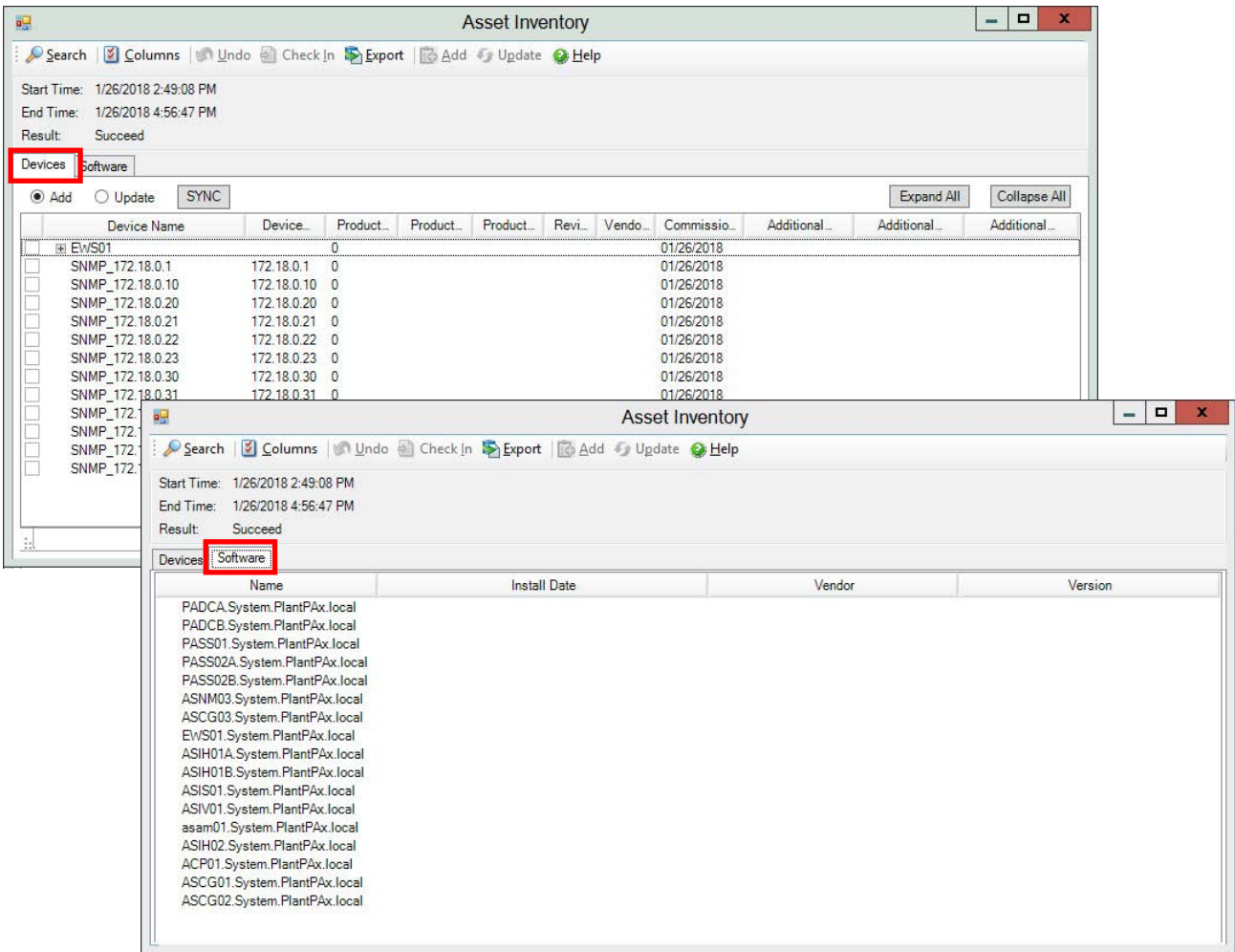
3. Select a device.

The device must have communication paths to any devices that you want to return when the Inventory Agent runs.

4. Select Schedules and create a schedule for the Asset Inventory item. When the schedule runs, an inventory list is generated.



An inventory has a list of devices and a list of software.

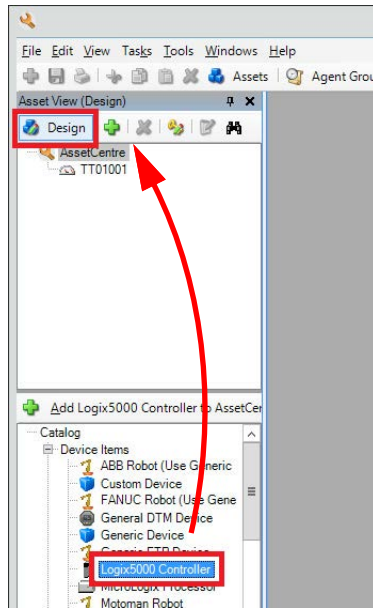


## Manually Add Individual Assets

You can manually add assets.

For a tutorial, see the [YouTube video](#) 'Getting Started with FactoryTalk® AssetCentre'.

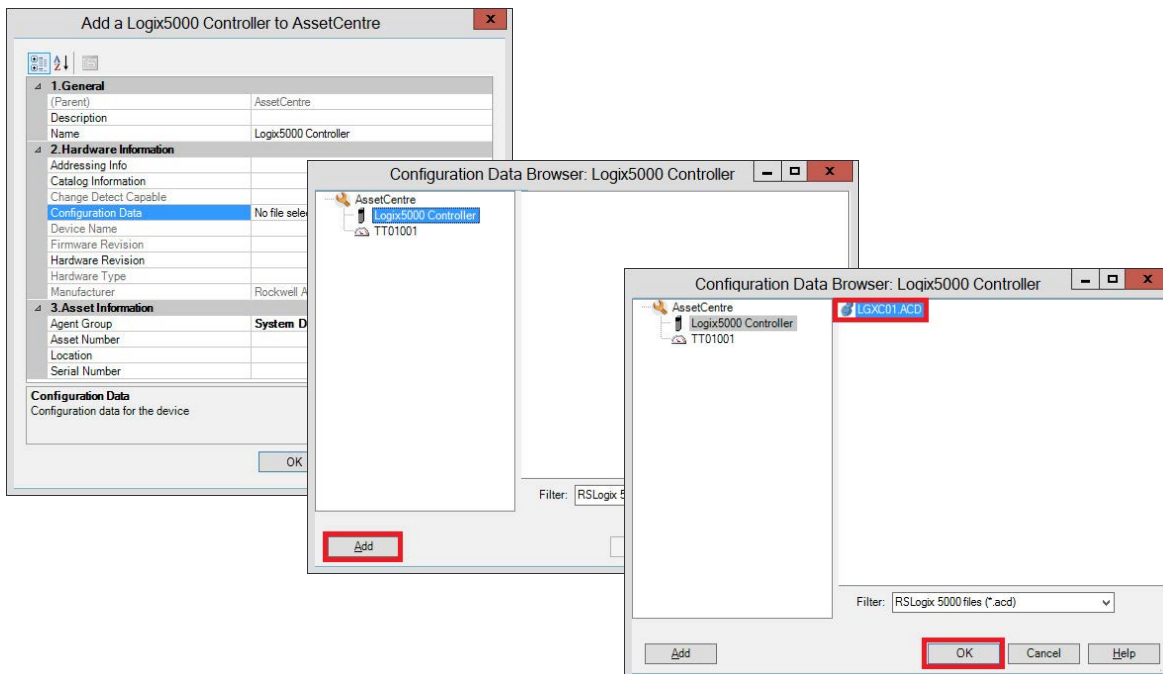
1. While in Design mode, drag-and-drop the asset into your FactoryTalk AssetCentre project.



An FactoryTalk AssetCentre dialog box appears for the asset that you are adding.

2. Select the asset to configure details.

For example, add an .ACD file for a controller.



3. For a controller, select a path to the controller by using the Addressing Info Browser ('...' ellipsis) button.
4. Name the asset.

We recommend that you use the steps to add each of these asset types from the catalog to your inventory:

- Controller project

- HMI
- Engineering workstation
- Servers

## Configure Audit Logs

There are multiple logs that can be generated to capture asset data. Select the one that you want:

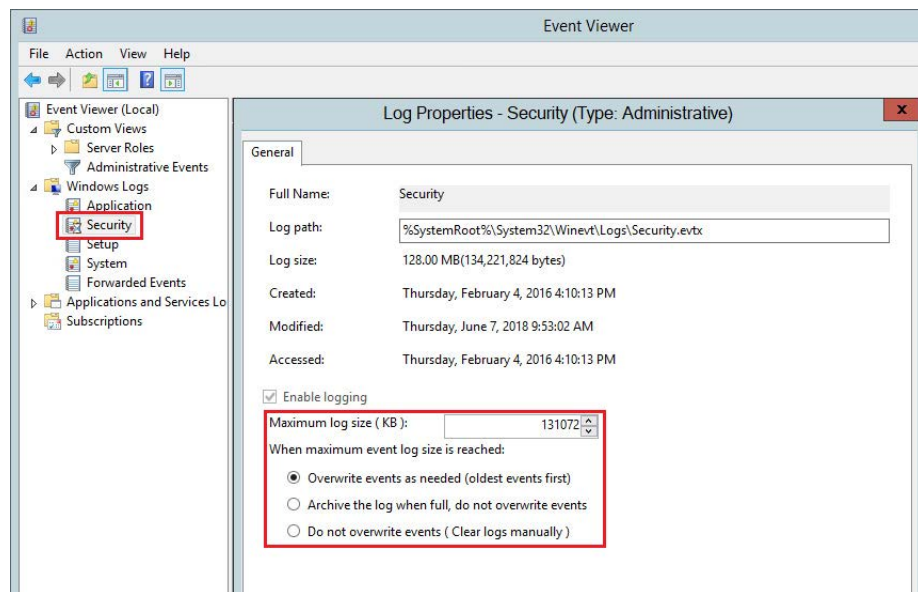
- Audit Log monitors FactoryTalk-enabled software products and logs user actions. For example, who was the last user to change a program.
- Diagnostic Log to monitor system health.
- Event Log to track FactoryTalk AssetCentre events, such as when a backup starts and who generates a report.

Audit data is stored in the SQL server and displayed in the FactoryTalk AssetCentre logs. Information that is collected includes:

- User actions
- Program changes
- Security events

## Security Audit Logs

Microsoft Windows® OS captures security audit records locally for every PlantPAx server and workstation. We recommend that you make sure the log is sized adequately to capture sufficient records to satisfy your retention policy. In Windows Event Viewer adjust the configuration of the security log according to your system requirements.



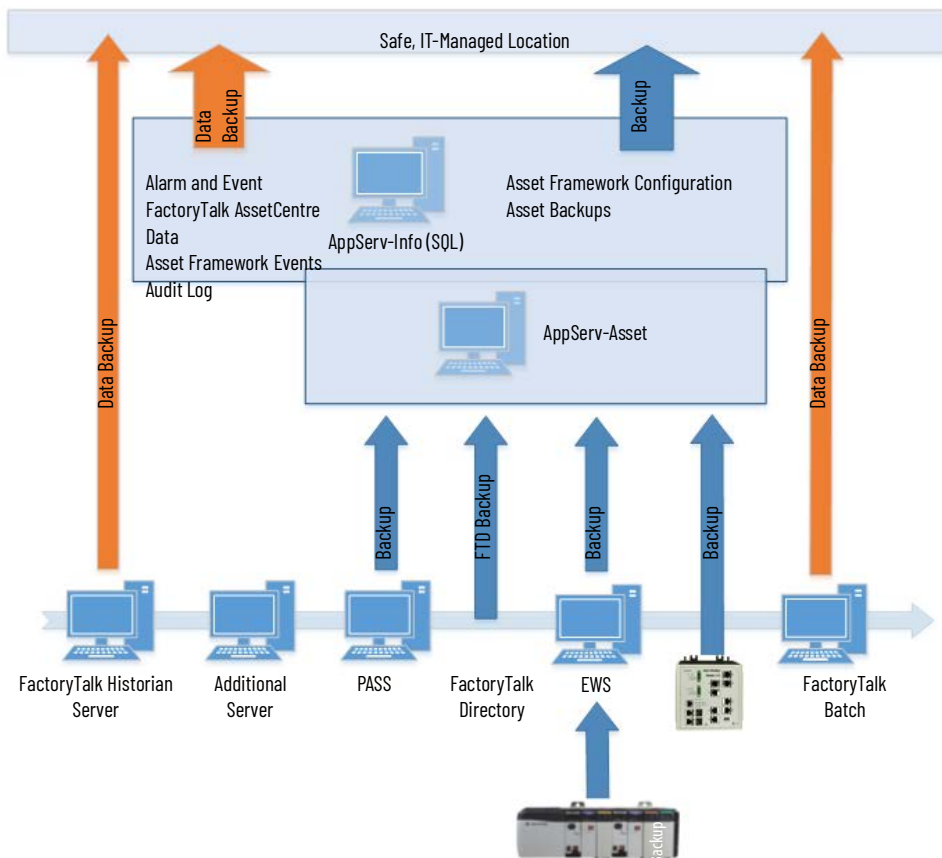
For information about how to configure secure audit logs, see Configure System Security Features User Manual, publication [SECURE-UM001](#).

## Schedule System Backups

FactoryTalk AssetCentre software stores backup data on an SQL server.

The Disaster Recovery function creates backup files from the running asset on the plant floor. The backup file is compared to the original and archived to a Master version. The Agent service performs these comparisons and can be scheduled to operate at specific times and intervals.

## Example Asset Data Flow

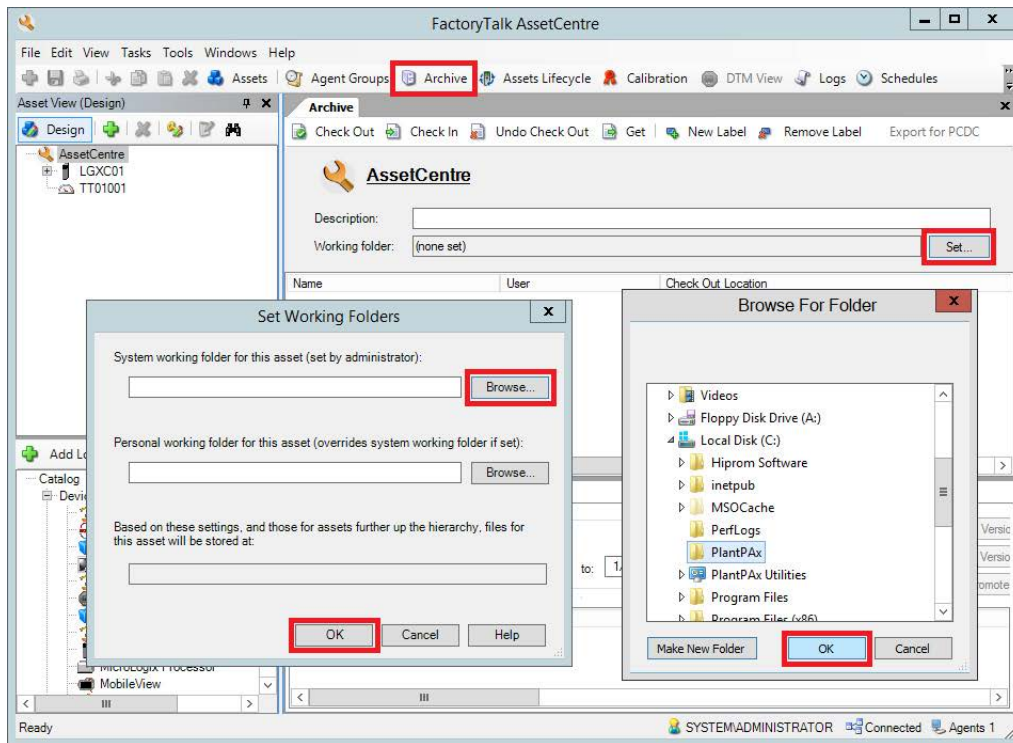


Once assets have been added to your system, the assets can be configured from the Archive tab. From the Archive view, you can do the following:

- View the archive of current and previous versions of programs and assets.
- Set a personal working folder to hold Checked-Out files.



- Promote a specific program version to be the master.



## Create a Backup Schedule

- From the main menu of the FactoryTalk AssetCentre client dialog box, select Schedules.
- Select New and follow the Wizard instructions at the top of the dialog boxes.

## Configure Disaster Recovery

The Disaster Recovery function creates backup files from the running asset on the plant floor. The backup file is compared to the original and archived to a Master version. The Agent service performs these comparisons and can be scheduled to operate at specific times and intervals.

The Agent service can be co-located with the FactoryTalk AssetCentre server, or it can be located with another server. The Agent service performs the background actions of uploading and comparing program files and versions.

For more information about FactoryTalk AssetCentre Agents, see the resources that are listed in the table on [page 170](#).

For a tutorial, see the [YouTube video](#) 'Introduction to FactoryTalk AssetCentre Disaster Recovery'.



## Maintenance Strategy Recommendations

We suggest that you develop a plan to back up your control system configuration and process data on a regular schedule. Consider involving your IT department to develop this plan. An effective backup plan can help protect you from loss of resources and revenue.

### IMPORTANT

We recommend that you verify operating system or software updates on a non-production system or when the affected system components are not-active. These precautions help to prevent unexpected results.

For equipment monitoring and safety, we recommend that you follow the procedures of the manufacturer

The following table summarizes the types of backups and updates for routine and annual maintenance. The time frames are examples and can be modified based on the attributes and risk factors in your plant.

### Maintenance Type Recommendations

Backups	Why?	When?	What?
Application configuration - See <a href="#">page 177</a>	Roll back or file protection	Periodic	Controllers PASS servers <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FactoryTalk Directory</li> <li>HMI, FactoryTalk® Linx data servers</li> <li>FactoryTalk® Alarms and Events servers</li> </ul> Network switches
Data - See <a href="#">page 179</a>	Archive or project protection	Periodic and on-demand	FactoryTalk® Historian FactoryTalk® Batch FactoryTalk AssetCentre

The PlantPAx system can be configured to back up control system configuration data automatically. FactoryTalk AssetCentre software stores data in a SQL server. The server stores an Archived copy of both the master files and previous file revisions in a protected database. The Archived files are available if there's a failure.

Database backups for FactoryTalk software packages (Historian, FactoryTalk AssetCentre) can occur anytime without system operation impact. We recommend that process backups be routinely scheduled so that data loss is minimized if computer issues occur.

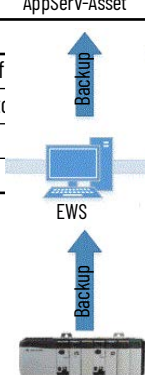
FactoryTalk® Batch uses a SQL server for archiving journal data, storing master recipes, and material database.

Application configurations for PlantPAx system servers and workstations are to be backed up separately and more regularly. The frequent backups mitigate the risk of configuration and application information loss between PlantPAx system backups. Frequent backups simplify the process of restoring only a portion of your application, if needed.

The following table shows examples of project files that are to be backed up regularly. Some files contain configuration scripts and collected data.

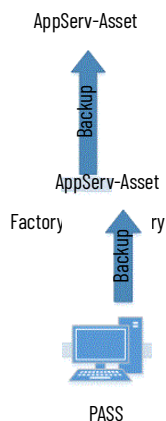
### Recommended Configuration Backup

Configuration	Host Environment	Tool	Files Backed Up
Controller project files	Studio 5000® application	FactoryTalk AssetCentre Disaster Recovery	.ACD
FactoryTalk Directory	FactoryTalk® Administration Console	Distributed Application Manager	.APB
PASS servers	FactoryTalk® View Studio software		
Network switches	System network	User choice	.TXT (based)



### Controller Project File

Use FactoryTalk AssetCentre software on your AppServ-Asset server to back up Logix 5000® software and Studio 5000 Logix Designer® application project files (.ACD). Logix 5000 assets are created in the FactoryTalk AssetCentre project tree for each controller and project files can be associated with those assets and checked into FactoryTalk AssetCentre software.



A schedule can be created to back up the project files at regular intervals. Use an EWS to perform check-out and check-in features to make modifications to the project file.

FactoryTalk AssetCentre software is integrated with the Logix Designer application to let you access files in the Archive without leaving the design environment. Use change tracking on project files to audit modifications.

## FactoryTalk Directory

Our recommendation is to back up the FactoryTalk® Directory regularly. The backup includes any FactoryTalk® Security, users, and computers, among other configurations.

The backup is contained in the output .APB file of the Distributed Application Manager, which is installed on the PASS with the FactoryTalk® View software, version 8.1 and later.

## PASS Servers

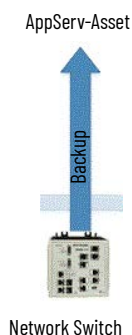
The core servers in the FactoryTalk View application need to be backed up regularly whenever changes are made. The core servers on the PASS consist of the HMI, Data, and Alarm and Event servers.

### IMPORTANT

FactoryTalk AssetCentre software, version 9, includes an asset for FactoryTalk View SE version 11 and later. This new asset can be created to support disaster recovery for a FactoryTalk View SE application. For details see the [YouTube video](#) 'Use FactoryTalk AssetCentre Disaster Recovery to Backup & Compare a FactoryTalk View SE application'.

A FactoryTalk AssetCentre custom asset can be created by following the procedure in Knowledgebase Answer ID [818741](#) 'Building Custom Device assets for FactoryTalk Distributed Application Disaster Recovery'. The project servers store the output .APB file to the FactoryTalk AssetCentre server. Schedule the custom asset to run regularly.

## Network Switches



If using an older version of FactoryTalk AssetCentre software, back up the network switch configuration to retain the network architecture by using a custom asset. An export of the switch configuration can be generated by using various tools, including the following:

- Studio 5000 Logix Designer application software
- Third-party applications, for example the Cisco® Network Assistant Tool
- Command-line interface
- Other desired methods of your IT department

The custom asset pulls the contents of the backup into the FactoryTalk AssetCentre server. You specify the file location in the custom asset configuration. Schedule the FactoryTalk AssetCentre software to back up the exported switch configuration regularly.

For more details about the custom device plug-in for FactoryTalk AssetCentre, see the Knowledgebase Answer ID [634595](#) Building Custom Devices for use with FactoryTalk AssetCentre Disaster Recovery.

## Server Back up and System Restore

FactoryTalk® Historian and FactoryTalk® Batch servers produce process system data to document historical production data. The software configurations, which create the system data, must be protected along with the data.

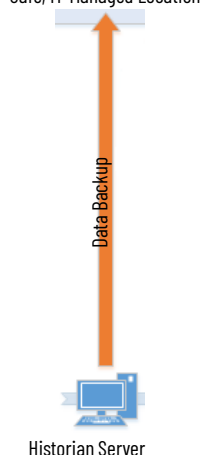
### Recommended Data Backup

Configuration	Host Environment	Tool	Files Backed Up
Historian configuration and data	FactoryTalk® Historian software	Pibackup.bat	Backup folder contents
Batch configuration and data	FactoryTalk® Batch software	Batch system files	System folder contents
FactoryTalk AssetCentre data	SQL server	SQL Management Studio	AssetCentre.BAK
SQL server data			[DBName].BAK

Consider the following when using FactoryTalk AssetCentre software:

- No single asset (verification or custom asset) is to exceed 1 GB.
- The system is not to exceed 100 assets that are scheduled in a 12-hour period for one Agent only. Increasing the number of Agents can increase the load capacity of your system.

Safe, IT-Managed Location



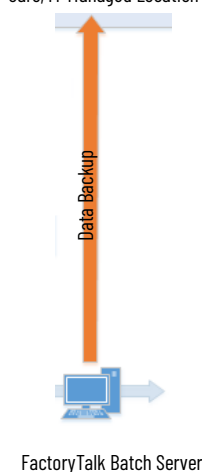
### Historian Configuration and Data

The FactoryTalk® Historian server contains historian points, configurations, and data that need to be regularly backed up. As a part of the Historian standard installation, a script file pibackup.bat is installed on the Historian server. This script is used to back up the Historian server.

The output of this tool is a folder hierarchy that contains all components necessary to back up and recover the Historian server. We suggest that you consider separating the historical data from the configuration for scheduling purposes.

The historical backup data, which is generated by FactoryTalk Historian, is stored on the Historian server. Consult with your IT department to determine the appropriate location to move and store these files outside of the AppServ-Info (Historian) server.

Safe, IT-Managed Location



### Batch Configuration and Data

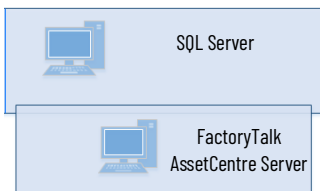
There are multiple components of a FactoryTalk® Batch system that require a backup plan depending on the implementation of your system. See Knowledgebase Answer ID [538578](#) 'FactoryTalk Batch: How to backup and restore a Batch configuration to a new computer'. Included are files that are to be backed up for each of the following components of a batch system:

- Batch server files
- Batch client files
- eProcedure® files
- Material manager files

The file contents of the various Batch system components need to be separated into two groups: (1) configuration or system files and (2) data files.

The configuration files are all files that comprise the Batch project, such as area models and recipes. The data files are the batch journals that are constantly created by a running Batch server.

The configuration files and data can be backed up at different intervals to a safe, IT-managed location outside of your AppServ-Batch server.



## FactoryTalk AssetCentre Data

FactoryTalk AssetCentre software manages the information that is produced by each of its assets and processes the data into a SQL server. When performing a backup of FactoryTalk AssetCentre software, nothing must be done within FactoryTalk AssetCentre. To back up the FactoryTalk AssetCentre configuration and data, back up the FactoryTalk AssetCentre database in your SQL server.

For guidelines on how to back up your FactoryTalk AssetCentre database in SQL, see the Knowledgebase Answer ID [59541](#) Backing up and Restoring FactoryTalk AssetCentre with Microsoft® SQL Server.

## SQL Server Data

The FactoryTalk® Alarms and Events History software is configured to log to a SQL database.

These databases include the following:

- For FactoryTalk Alarms and Event database, go to FactoryTalk® Administration Console and expand System>Connections>Databases. Select the database to view the information on the Alarm and Event Historian Database Properties dialog box.
- For FactoryTalk Historian Asset Framework, the SQL Database 'PIFD' contains the Asset Framework data and configuration content.

## Backup Verification

We recommend that your system use a dedicated, non-production environment that is capable of accepting and validating backups. You need a strategy for how frequently the backups are validated.

## System Restore

We recommend that you consider a strategy for recovering and restoring your PlantPax system to a known secure state after a disruption or failure.

System recovery and restore to a known secure state means that all system parameters (either default or configurable) are set to secure values. If any security-critical information, such as patches, is installed after the last backup, the information must be reinstalled. For example:

- Security-related configuration settings re-established
- System documentation and operating procedures available
- Application and system software that is reinstalled and configured with secure settings
- Information from the most recent, known secure backup is loaded and the system that is fully tested and functional.

## Retention Policy Considerations

There are two ways to retain data: archived records and a detailed backup policy. While archiving provides historical records, backups are typically not useful unless you can access the data for a restore. You must take the time to design a retention policy for the reuse of dated materials.

For example, a backed up .ACD file from the Studio 5000 Logix Designer application could possibly not be saved in the most current version of Studio 5000 environment. Accessing the contents of this .ACD file could be problematic. But an archived printout of the logic that is stored in PDF format could help restore a system project.

Secure archived data and make sure that you can search for the data if requested. There are numerous reasons to archive data, including, but not limited to, the following:

- Compliance with government regulations

- Retention of production knowledge
- Reduction of backup storage footprint

Consider the following when developing a backup retention policy:

- Location – Backup information is only worthwhile if retrievable for a restore. To mitigate risk, duplicate the backup contents to an off-site location if an 'Act of God' renders the on-site copy unusable.
- Storage – The type of storage medium that is used to backup data can affect how quickly you're able to restore data. Cloud storage provides scalable backup potential and requires the least amount of on-site hardware. But, the cloud requires additional steps if the process facility isn't connected to the enterprise cloud servers. Disk mirroring can provide the fastest time to restore and smaller data loss intervals. This process can cost more than periodic backups to a hard disk drive.
- Security – The confidentiality and importance of backup information must be carefully evaluated. Limit access to the retained backup storage devices and locations to help reduce the risk of threats. Password protection and encryption can improve risk mitigation.
- Cost – The cost of backing up a process system can be justified with one application configuration restore. The time alone to re-engineer a process configuration can justify the cost of physical media and IT infrastructure. Automated backup policies can reduce time and money for IT to complete regular backups.

## System Storage Rates

The following tables provide an estimate of storage usage for a PlantPAx system. Evaluate your system size and adjust appropriately according to your corporate policy.

### System Operating Assumptions

Description	Small <sup>(1)</sup>	Medium <sup>(2)</sup>	Large <sup>(3)</sup>
Alarms SQL database (alarms/min according to the ISA 18.2 peak alarm rate)	20	50	100
FactoryTalk Historian Event Frames SQL database (event frames per hour)	250	500	1000
FactoryTalk AssetCentre SQL database (commands/min per PlantPAx audit log guidelines)	2	5	10
FactoryTalk Historian points	5000	10,000	20,000

(1) 3000 I/O points and 10 operator workstations

(2) 3000 I/O points and 25 operator workstations

(3) 5000 I/O points and 50 operator workstations

### Storage Rates

Description	Small <sup>(1)</sup>	Medium <sup>(2)</sup>	Large <sup>(3)</sup>
Microsoft SQL server	4 GB/month	5 GB/month	9 GB/month
FactoryTalk Historian server	2 GB/month	3 GB/month	6 GB/month

(1) 3000 I/O points and 10 operator workstations

(2) 3000 I/O points and 25 operator workstations

(3) 5000 I/O points and 50 operator workstations

**Notes:**

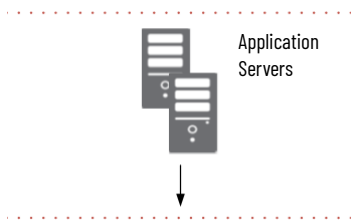
# Historical Data

FactoryTalk® Historian SE software captures data for reports to help maximize plant-floor objectives and productivity. The software collects historical points in the system to produce analytical data. Analytical data includes process variables, trends, estimations, and statistical reporting.

For a PlantPax® system, it's recommended to implement more than one historian server to create a collective of historian servers. A collective provides higher availability with continuous access to data during planned and unplanned outages. Adding redundant node interfaces is also recommended to send time-series data to all servers in the collective.

To streamline the FactoryTalk® Historian SE software configuration, follow this quick start. For experienced users, each step outlines requirements. For more detailed information, follow the referenced links.

## Prerequisites



Following the [System Workflow](#), configure application servers.

A historian application in a PlantPax system requires:

- Domain controller
- Process Automation System Server (PASS) hosting the FactoryTalk® Directory (PASS01)
- Process Automation System Servers (PASS) for node interfaces (PASS02A, PASS02B)
- Engineering Workstation (EWS)
- Operator Workstation (OWS)
- SQL standard or SQL Express database server
- Asset Framework server

When you deploy a FactoryTalk Historian application in a PlantPax system:

- Install FactoryTalk Historian servers as a collective.
- Configure a Performance Monitor interface.

The following software must be available:

- FactoryTalk Historian SE Server
- FactoryTalk Historian Asset Framework Server
- FactoryTalk Historian Asset Framework SQL database
- PI Builder Excel® add-in

Your must be familiar with the following utilities:

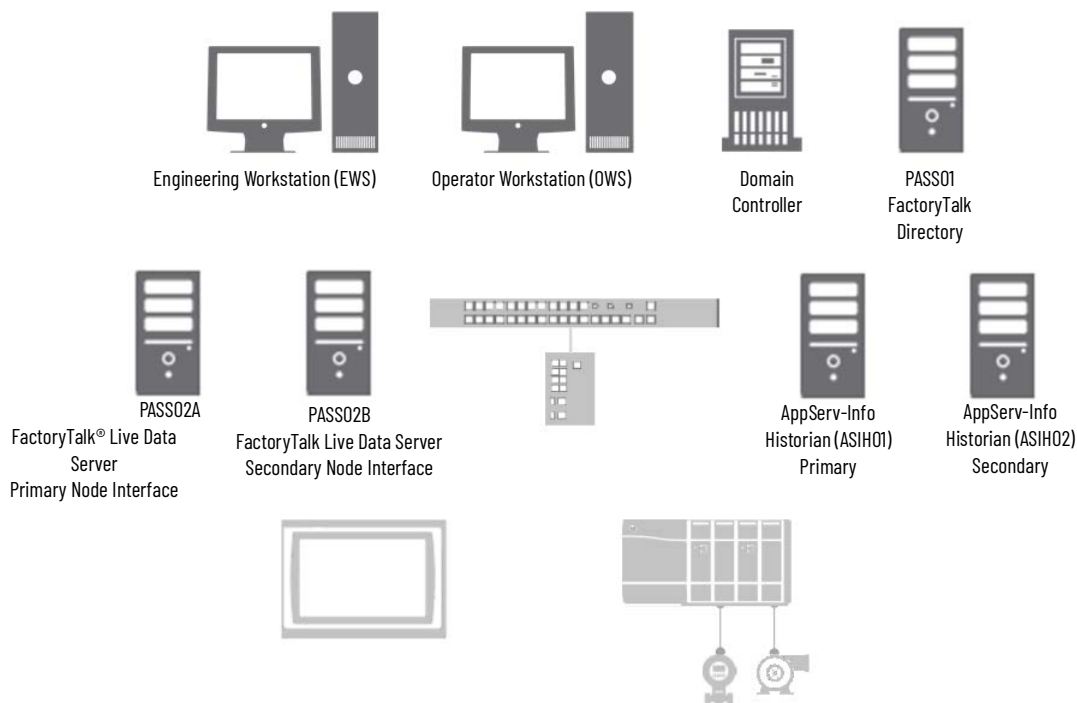
- PI SDK – An object-oriented library that is designed for customizing applications
- Powershell – Command-line shell and scripting language.

For more information, see this additional resource.

Resource	Description
FactoryTalk Historian SE 7.00 Installation and Configuration Guide, publication <a href="#">HSE-IN025</a>	Installation, configuration, and troubleshooting of FactoryTalk Historian Site Edition software.

## Required PlantPax Elements

Configuring historical data collection requires access to the following equipment. All equipment must be physically installed before using this document.



## Historical Data

In a PlantPax system, the FactoryTalk Historian SE software collects, stores, and manages data. The software includes these hardware and software components:

- **Data Sources** - Plant floor devices and instruments that generate data, typically controllers. Other Data Sources can include external databases.
- **Historian SE Interfaces** - The FactoryTalk Historian node interface enables process data to be passed between a FactoryTalk® Live Data Interface (for example, FactoryTalk® Linx) and a FactoryTalk Historian server. Each instance of the interface can provide data to a single FactoryTalk Historian server or collective.
- **Historian SE Server** - Compresses and stores the collected data and acts as a data server for Microsoft® Windows®-based clients applications. It's also possible to use the Historian SE server to interact with data that is stored in external systems.
- **Historian SE Clients** - Microsoft Windows-based applications that are used by plant personnel to visualize the Historian SE data.
- **Historian Asset Framework** - Asset Framework replaces the Historian module database (MDB) with a Microsoft SQL server database for improved scripting and reporting.

## Configure Servers for a Collective



A collective is a configuration of multiple servers that act as a logical server in your Historian database to provide high availability (HA), disaster recovery, load distribution, and increased scalability. Each server in a collective is called a member of the collective. When the primary member in a collective becomes unavailable, a secondary collective member continues to collect and provide data access to your Historian clients.

## Create Firewall Rule for Historian Servers

To create a server collective on computers that have the Windows Firewall turned on, you must manually open the TCP 445 port between the two computers. Perform this section on both the primary and secondary Historian servers.

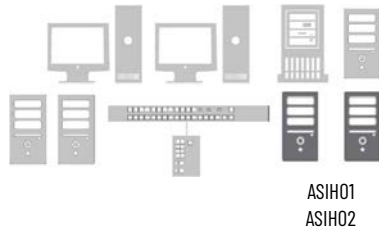
1. Go to Control Panel > Windows Firewall settings on the Historian Server.



- In the Advanced Settings, select Inbound Rules and create a New Rule.  
For the new rule, specify the following:

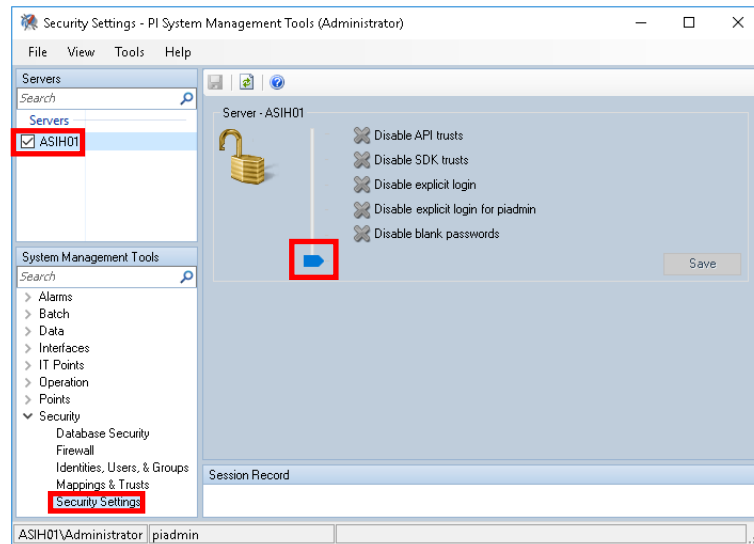
On This Page	Configure
Rule Type	Select Port
Protocol and Ports	Configure Specific Local TCP Port as 445
Action	Allow the connection
Profile	Apply the rule to the Domain, Private, and Public
Name	Type a name for this rule (Collective Connection in the example)

## Set Initial Security Settings



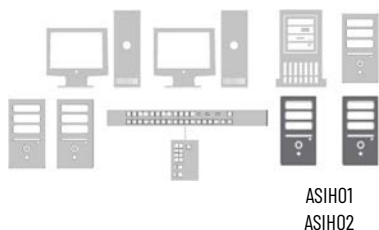
For any Historian server that is going to join a Collective, security settings must be considered for each initial connection. To simplify the connection process, reduce the security levels of both the primary and secondary Historian servers. After the initial connection, the security levels can be modified as needed.

- Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Historian SE > System Management Tools.
- Select the server in the Collectives and Servers section.
- In the System Management Tools section, select Security > Security Settings.
- Set the slider to its lowest point and click Save.



- Repeat the settings for the secondary server.
- For the security setting changes to take effect, restart the servers.

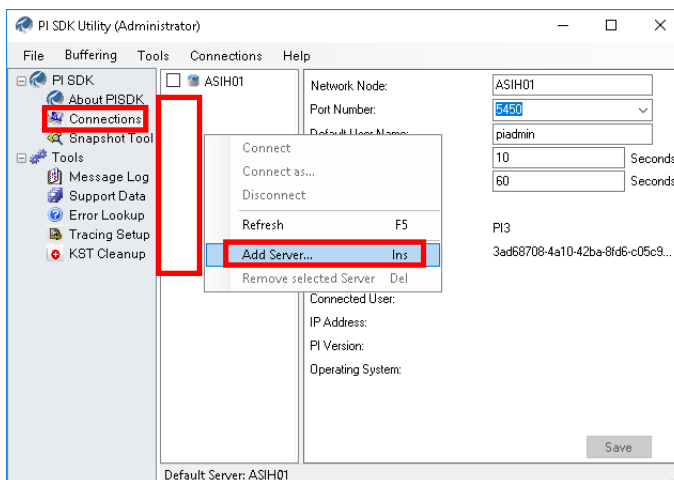
## Create Connections Between Historian Servers



The PI SDK Utility is used to create the connection between the Historian servers. This action is required on both servers before creating a collective.

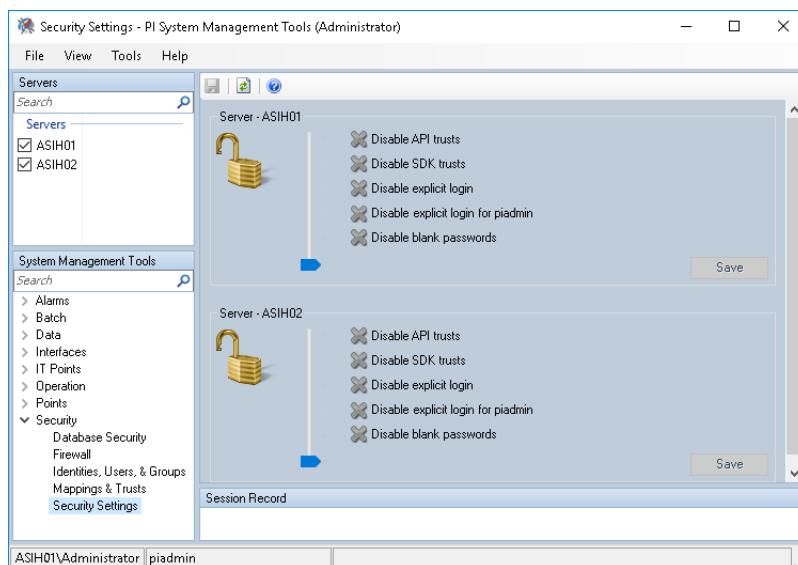
- Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Historian SE > FactoryTalk Historian SE System > PISDK Utility.
- Select Connections and then right-click on the empty area next to the servers.

## 3. Select Add Server.

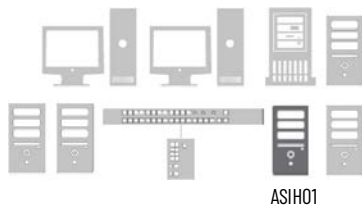


4. Enter the server name in the Network Path dialog box and accept the rest of the default settings.
5. Remove any servers that aren't necessary.
6. To verify the connections, go to Security Settings > PI System Management Tools (Administrator.)

This example shows servers ASIH01 and ASIH02.



## Create the Historian Collective

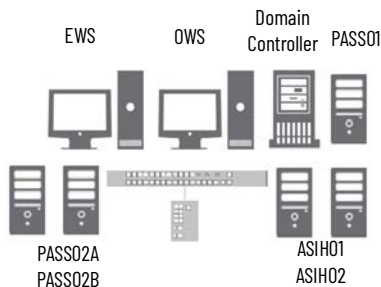


Now that the servers are configured, you can create a Collective by using the PI Collective Manager.

Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Historian SE> FactoryTalk Historian SE System > PI Collective Manager and complete these steps:

On this Dialog Box	Action
Create New Collective Initial Page	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select I have verified my backups are valid</li> <li>Select I have verified my PI interface servers configuration</li> </ul>
Create New Collective - Existing or New Primary	Select a newly installed PI server
Create New Collective - Select Primary and Collective name	Select the Collective Primary server and define the properties.
Create New Collective - Select Secondary Servers	Select the Collective Primary server and define the properties.
Create New Collective - Select Archives	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Accept the default number of archives to be copies</li> <li>Accept the default location for the temporary backup</li> </ul>
Create New Collective - Verify Selections	Verify the information
Create New Collective - Conversion Progress	Verify the conversion progress is completed
Server ID Mismatch	Select Accept the new ID
Create New Collective - Finished	Acknowledge the creation of the collective

## Client to Server Connections



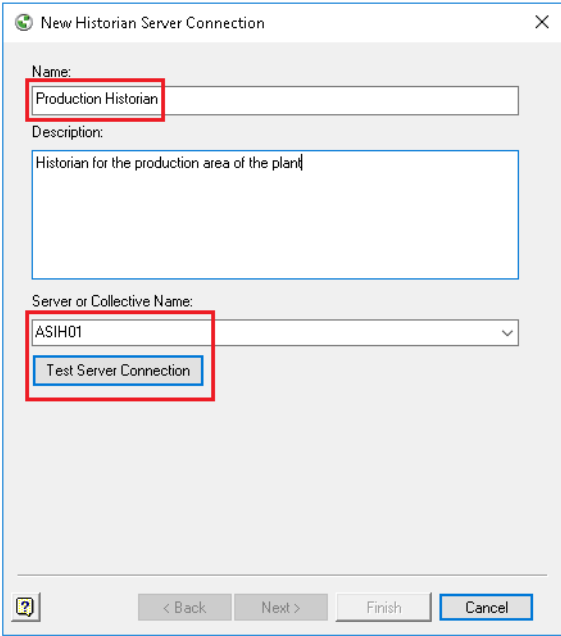
For all servers and workstations that require access to Historian data, use the PI SDK Utility to add a connection to a Historian server or Collective of servers. This includes the PASS servers (PASS01, PASS02A & PASS02B), EWS, and OWS workstations.

### Connect another Computer to Historian Server

For each computer that requires a connection to the collective, complete these steps:

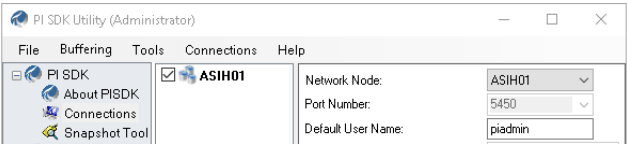
- Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Historian SE > FactoryTalk Historian SE System > PISDKUtility.
- Select Connections and then right-click on the empty area next to the servers to add a new server.

3. Maintain the default connection name of 'Production Historian' for library object reference, then select the Server or Collective Name and click Test Server Connection.



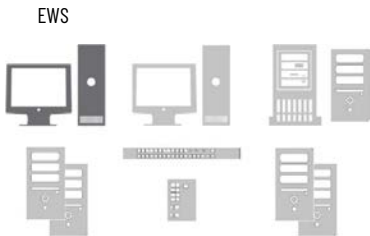
If you're using a collective, enter the primary server.

4. Select the box next to the new server.  
The server appears in the middle of the utility for a successful connection.



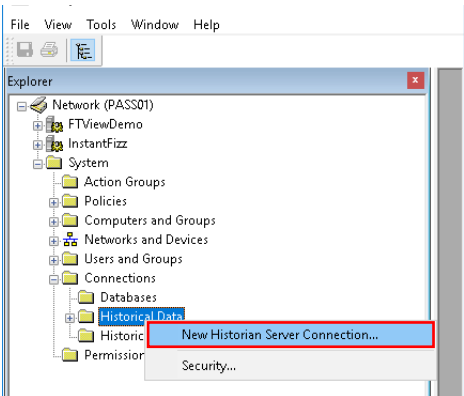
5. Remove any server connections that aren't necessary.

# Historian to FactoryTalk Directory Connection



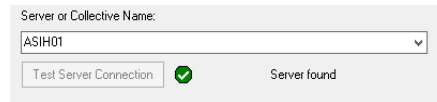
Use the FactoryTalk® Administration Console to add the FactoryTalk Historian server connection to the FactoryTalk Directory.

1. Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Administration Console and select 'Network' for the directory you want to use.  
2. Go to Network > System > Connections > Historical Data and select New Historian Server Connection.



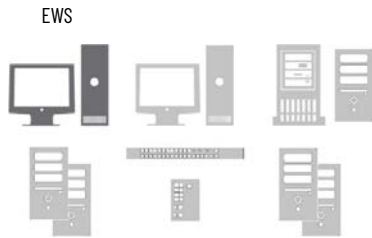
3. Select the Server or Collective Name and click Test Server Connection.

If the connection is good, a green check mark appears along with the text 'Server Found.'



4. In the FactoryTalk Administration Console, go to Network > System > Connections > Historical Data > Production Historian and choose Properties.
5. Select the Licensing tab and enter how many licenses are stored on the server.
  - If one license is stored locally in each collective server, enter '1' in the Assigned column.
  - If both activation licenses are on the activation server, enter '2' in the Assigned column

## Create a Data Collection Interface



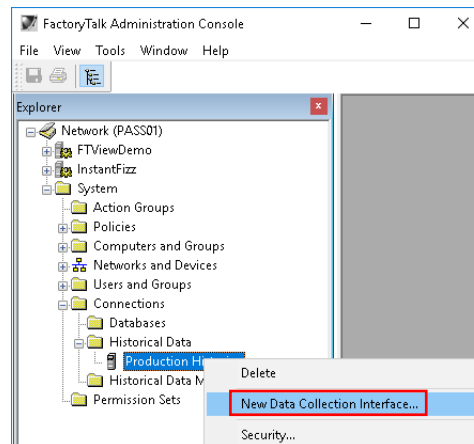
A data collection interface is used to collect data (tags) from data sources, such as Logix 5000™ controllers, and pass it to the FactoryTalk Historian server or collective.

The FactoryTalk Administration Console is used to create and configure the data collection interface.

1. Using an EWS, launch the FactoryTalk Administration Console and expand Historian server connection.

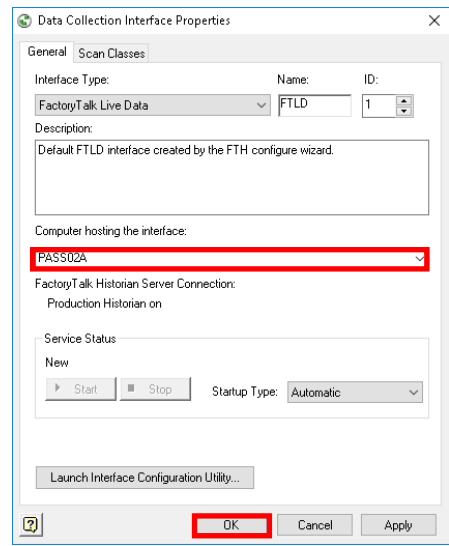
When a new FactoryTalk Historian server is added, a default node interface is created along with a name FTLD and ID 1 (FTLD1).

2. Delete the default node interface FTLD1.
3. Select the Historian server connection and select New Data Collection Interface.



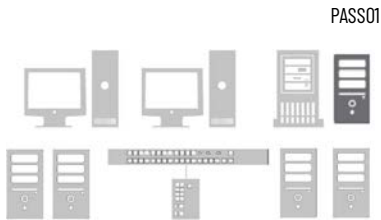
4. Select the Interface Type: (FactoryTalk Live Data), Name: FTLD and ID: 1 and choose the computer hosting the interface.

For example (PASS02A) where the remote FactoryTalk® Linx data server runs.

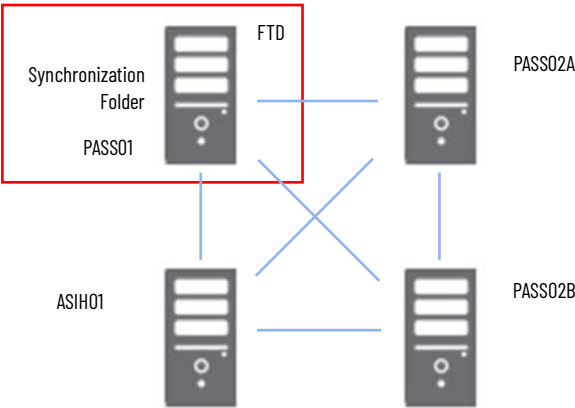


**IMPORTANT** When redundant node interfaces exist (PASS02A & PASS02B), only one data collection interface is required, and it references the primary (PASS02A) node interface.

Create a Synchronization Path for Redundant Node Interfaces

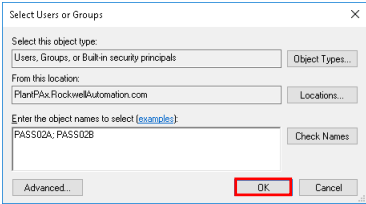


A common folder is used for files that are used for handshaking and redundancy. This folder is created on the PASS server that hosts the FactoryTalk Directory.



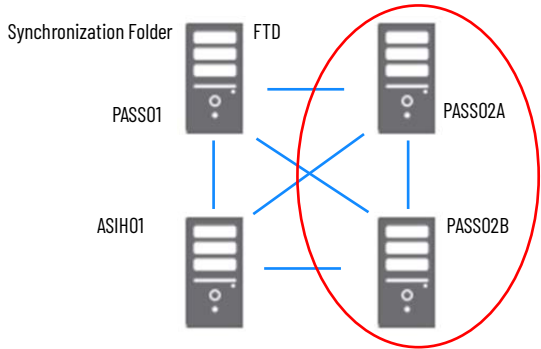
1. On the PASS01, create a folder on Local Disk (C:) named FTHSE\_Failover.
2. Specify these properties for the folder.

From this Location	Configure
Sharing Tab	Advanced Sharing
Advanced Sharing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Select Share this folder</li><li>• Select Permissions</li></ul>
Permissions for FTHSE_Failover	Add the group Everyone
Select Users, Computers, Service Accounts, or Groups	Select Object Types

From this Location	Configure
Object Types	Select Computers
Select Users, Computers, Service Accounts, or Groups	<p>Enter the PASS servers used as Node Interfaces as the object names to select</p> 
Permissions for FTHSE_Failover	Allow Full Control, Change, and Read permissions for all Node Interface servers

# Configure Redundant Node Interfaces

A FactoryTalk Historian node interface enables process data to be passed between a FactoryTalk Live Data server and a FactoryTalk Historian server.



A PlantPax system with redundant data servers requires configuration of the node interface on the primary and secondary servers (PASS02A and PASS02B).

The PI Configuration Utility (PI ICU) is an application that aids in system management by consolidating the setup and configuration options of each node interface. PI ICU allows you to:

- Configure all interface parameters
- Manage, start and stop interface service
- View and configure interface service dependencies
- Configure and run buffering
- Configures the Universal Interface (Unilnt)

Unilnt provides generic functions that are required by most interfaces, such as establishing a connection to the Historian Server node and monitoring the Historian Point Database for changes. To minimize data loss during a single point of failure within a system, Unilnt provides two failover schemas: (1) synchronization through the data source (Phase 1) and (2) synchronization through a shared file (Phase 2).

Phase 1 Unilnt Failover uses the data source itself to synchronize failover operations and provides a hot failover, no data loss solution when a single point of failure occurs.

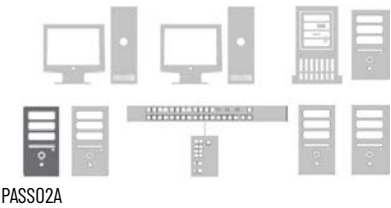
Phase 2 Unilnt Failover uses a shared file to synchronize failover operations and provides for hot, warm, or cold failover. The Phase 2 hot failover configuration provides a no data loss solution for a single point of failure similar to Phase 1.

**IMPORTANT** In this section, only Phase 2 Unilnt Failover is addressed.

The Unilnt failover scheme requires the data source to be able to communicate and service data to two interfaces simultaneously. Additionally, the failover configuration requires that the interface supports outputs. A redundant solution requires two separate interface nodes communicating with the data source.

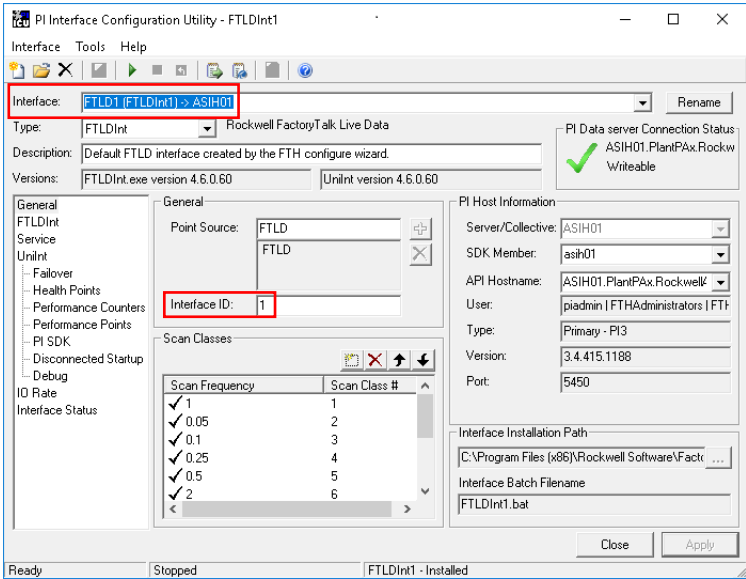
In a hot failover configuration, the interface copy that is in a backup role collects and queues data in parallel to the interface that is in the primary role. The interface in the backup role does not send the data that is collected to the Historian server. However, if a failover occurs, the interface immediately sends its data to the Historian server.

Configure a FactoryTalk Live Data Primary Interface



The primary interface goes on PASS02A and connects data servers to the historian database.

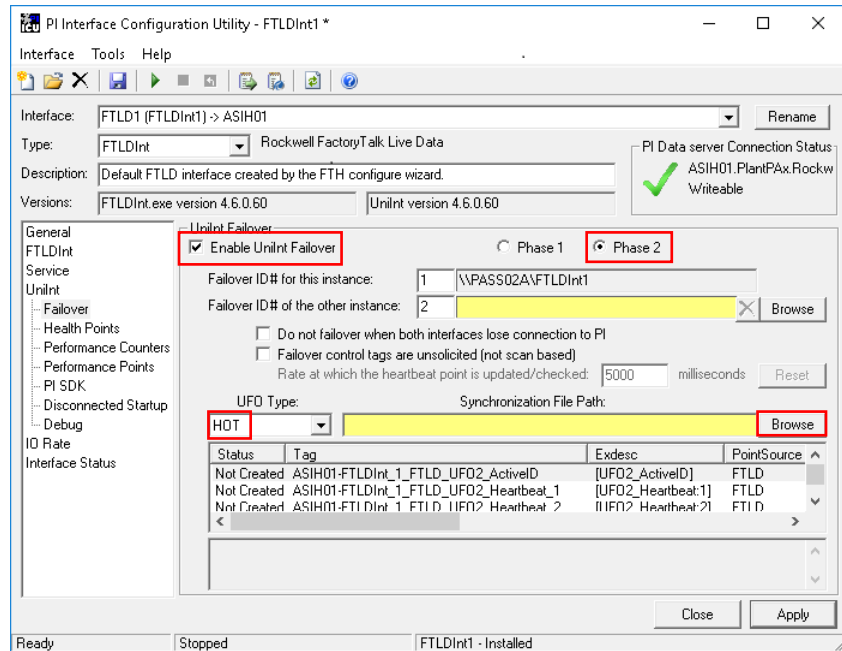
- 1. Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Historian SE > Interface Configuration Utility and select the interface.  
For example, select 'FTLDInt1 (FTLDInt1)->ASIH01.'
- 2. If the Interface ID isn't already '1', change it to '1'.



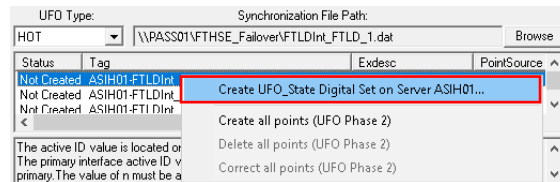
- 3. Select Service and do one of the following:
  - If prompted, select Yes. The PI ICU sets the PIBufss service to be a dependency of FTLDInt1.
  - If you aren't prompted, you must scroll down the Services list and set the PIBufss service to be a dependency of FTLDInt1.
- 4. Go to Unilnt > Failover and select the following:

Location	Action
Unilnt Failover	Select Enable Unilnt Failover and Phase 2
UFO Type	HOT
Synchronization File Path	Path = Network > pass01 > FTHSE_Failover directory (that was created in the previous section)



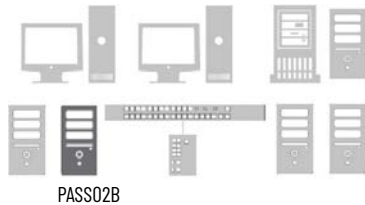


5. Right-click the tag area and select 'Create UFO\_State Digital Set on Server ASIH01'.



6. In the tag area, select 'Create all points (UFO Phase 2)'
7. When the status for FTLDiInt1\_UFO2\_ActionID tags changes to 'Created', select Apply.  
The 'Unilnit Failover' configuration isn't complete until the 'Other' interface is selected.

## Configure a FactoryTalk Live Data Secondary Interface



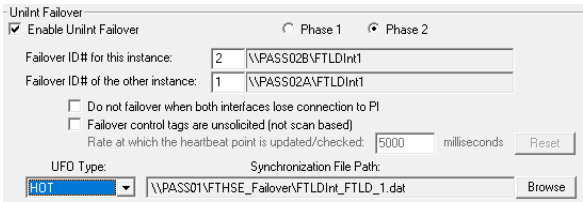
The secondary interface goes on PASS02B and connects data servers to the historian database. The configuration is provided in a .BAT file.

1. Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Historian SE > Interface Configuration Utility.
2. Select the folder symbol to create an interface instance from a .BAT file and enter this information.

From Location	Action
Open Interface Configuration File Dialog Box	Select the LDInterface folder
Interfaces > LDInterface directory	Select C:\Program Files (x86)\Rockwell Software\FactoryTalk Historian\PIPC\Interfaces\LDInterface\ directory
The Select Host PI Data server/collective dialog box	Select the host PI Data server/collective and the collective member
Service > Service Configuration > Display name	Enter FTLDi
General > General > Interface ID	Enter 1
Unilnit > Failover > Unilnit Failover	Select Enable Unilnit Failover Select Phase 2
Unilnit > Failover > UFO Type	Select HOT
Unilnit > Failover > Synchronization File Path	Path = Network > pass01 > FTHSE_Failover

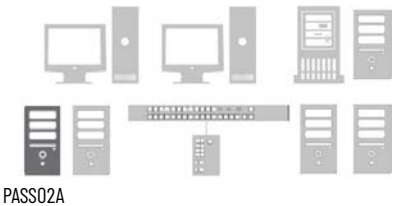
From Location	Action
Unilnit > Failover > Unilnit Failover > Failover ID # for this instance	Enter 2
Unilnit > Failover > Unilnit Failover > Failover ID # for the other instance	Enter 1 Select the interface file (FTLInt_FTLd.bat.bak) on the secondary server
Synchronize UFO settings dialog box	Select yes to synchronize the UFO settings

3. The failover and synchronization information appears in the respective fields.

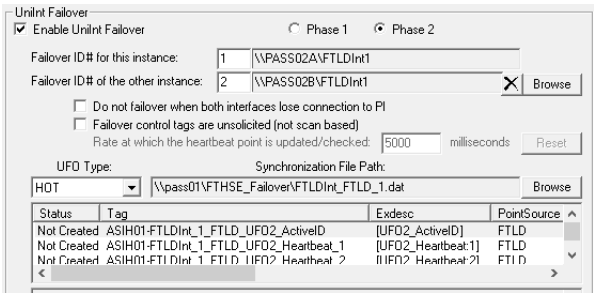


4. In the PI Interface Configuration Utility window, select Apply.

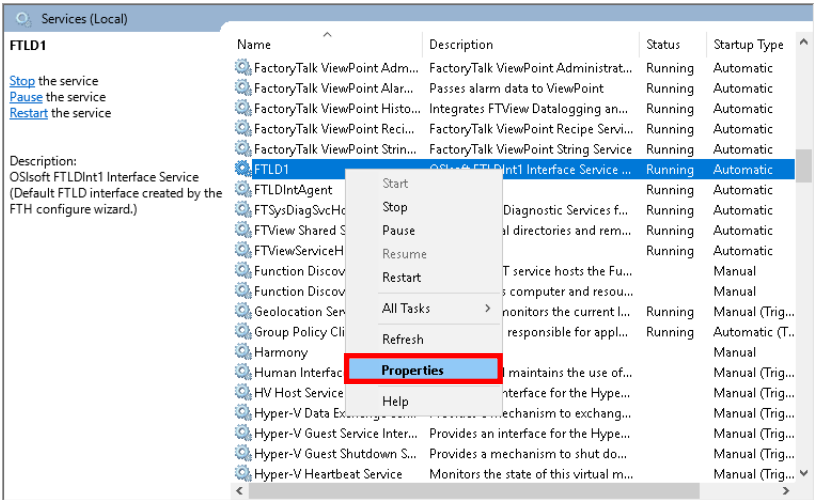
*Return to the Primary PASS (PASS02A)*




1. Select the interface path for the second interface.

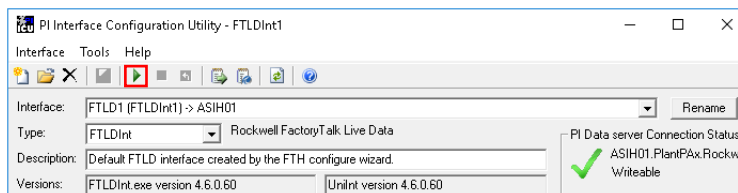


2. Go to Control Panel > Administration Tools > Services and select Properties for FTLd1.



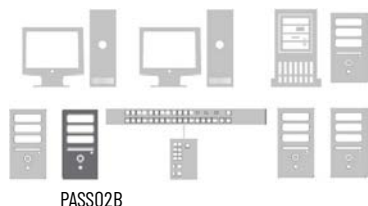
3. From the Log On tab, Select Log on as Local System Account.


- In the PI Interface Configuration Utility window, select Apply and Play  to start the primary service (if not already running).

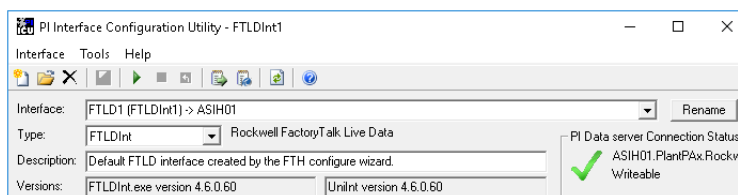


- Select Yes if asked 'Would you like ICU to start this service for you?'

*Return to the Secondary PASS (PASS02B).*



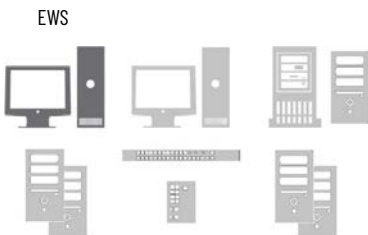
- Select the Interface that was created earlier and click Play  to start the secondary service.




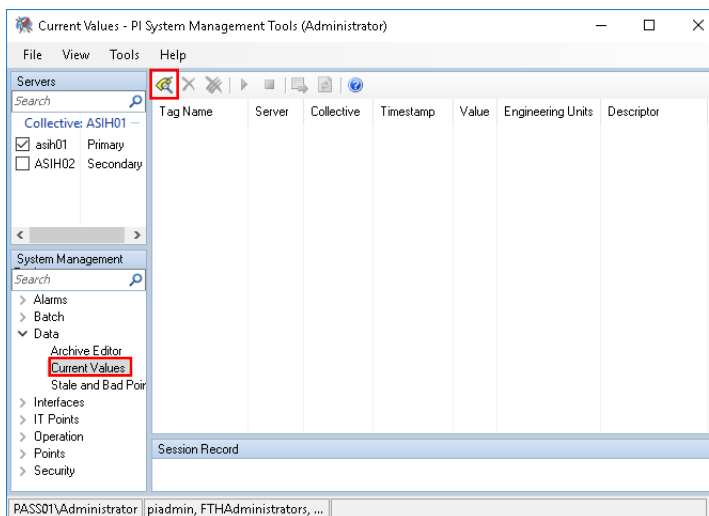
- Select Yes if asked 'Would you like ICU to start this service for you?'

## Confirm Unit Failover Diagnostics


From an EWS, test and confirm the failover diagnostics from the Historian server.

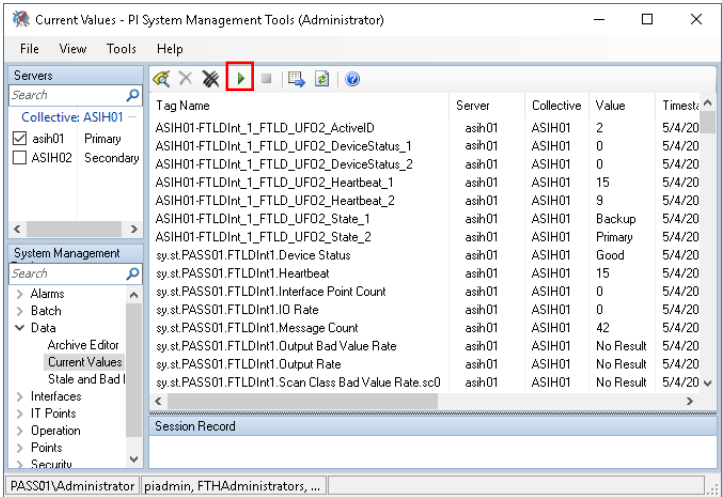


- Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Historian SE > System Management Tools.
- Select Data > Current Values and select the Tag Search  icon.



From Location	Action
Tag Mask field	Enter *FTLD*
Tag Search Dialog Box	Select all tags

3. Select Play  to see the online status.

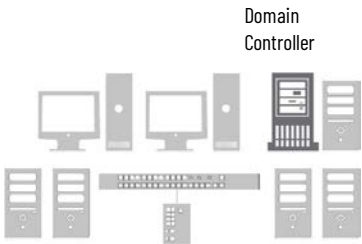


Configure PI Performance Monitor

The Windows Performance Monitor (PerfMon) is a powerful operating system tool to monitor the health of resource usage and processes on a computer.

The PI Interface for Performance Monitor (PIPerfMon) collects performance counter data from Windows performance data providers, local and remote, and sends this data to the Historian server. It's **recommended** to use PIPerfMon in a PlantPax system.

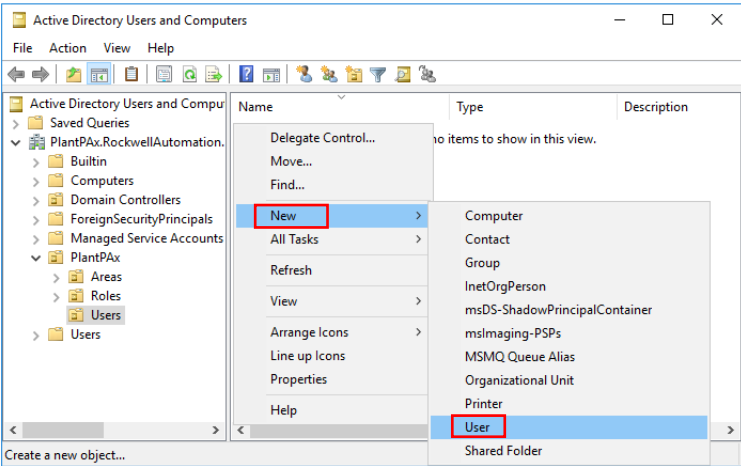
Create Domain User for PIPerfMon Service



The PIPerfMon service defaults to running in a local account. For PlantPax systems with a domain, it's recommended running the PIPerfMon service in a domain account. This enhances security and provides access to obtain data for a performance capture among other domain computers.

The domain user account for PIPerfMon service must be created on the domain controller. It's a user account with privileges to run the service on other computers within the domain.

- 1. From the Server Manager utility on the domain controller, select Tools > Active Directory Users and Computers.
- 2. Add a new user to the Managed Service Accounts.



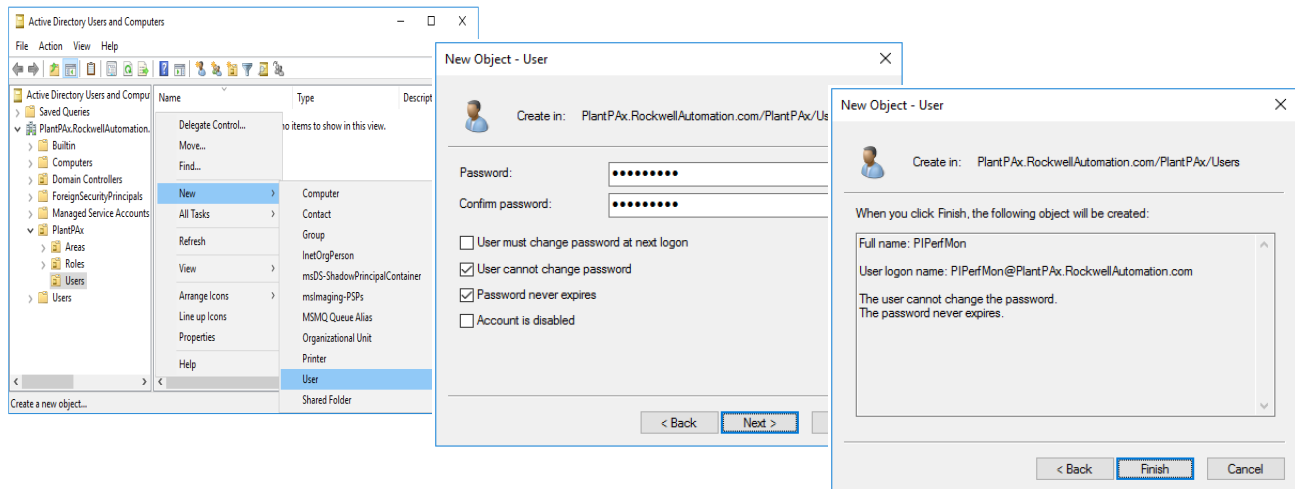
## 3. Specify these properties for the User.

Item	Description
First name	Type a name for the PI PerfMon service. <b>IMPORTANT:</b> The 'PI' preface is the name of the OSIsoft product.
Initials	Optional
Full name	Type the same name for the PI PerfMon service.
User login name	Type the same name for the PI PerfMon service and click the pull-down to select your domain folder.

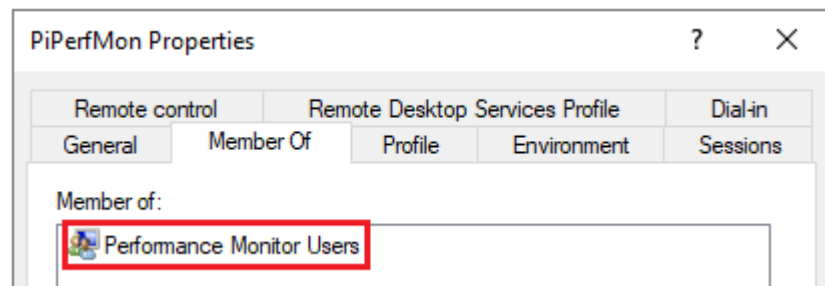
**IMPORTANT** The logon password creates a service user, not a person. The service user grants access to system computers for placing data into memory (buffer).

## 4. Create a password with the following conditions:

- User cannot change password
- Password never expires

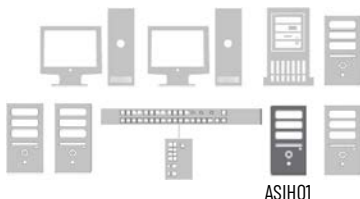


## 5. Assign the PIPerfMon profile as a member of Performance Monitor User.



## Configure the PIPerfMon Interface

To use PIPerfMon, you must configure an interface name and a points value within the FactoryTalk Directory. The points are the limit that the interface uses based on the number of computers in your system. Each variable – CPU usage, RAM, disk space – is one point. You can use the number of points up to 20% of your FactoryTalk Historian SE software license.



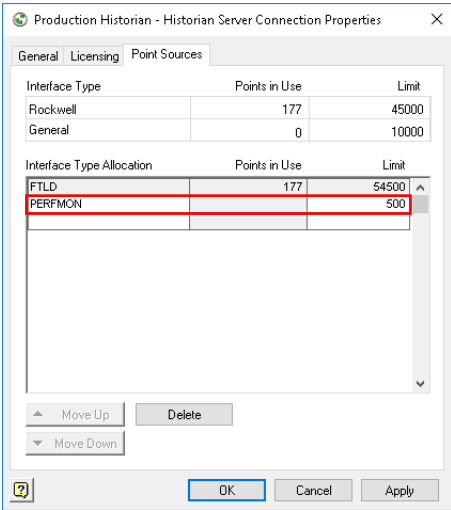
Configure the interface on the primary historian server.

1. Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Administration Console and select 'Network' for the directory you want to use.

- 2. Go to System > Connections > Historical Data folders > Production Historian and select properties.

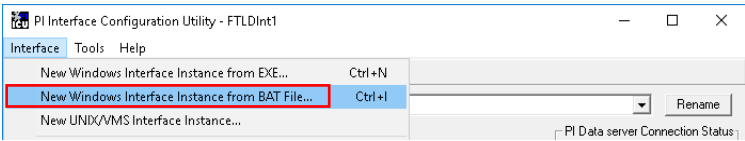
**IMPORTANT**      Be patient because this dialog box could take a few minutes to appear.

- 3. On the Point Sources tab, type an interface name (such as PerfMon) and a value for the points limit.



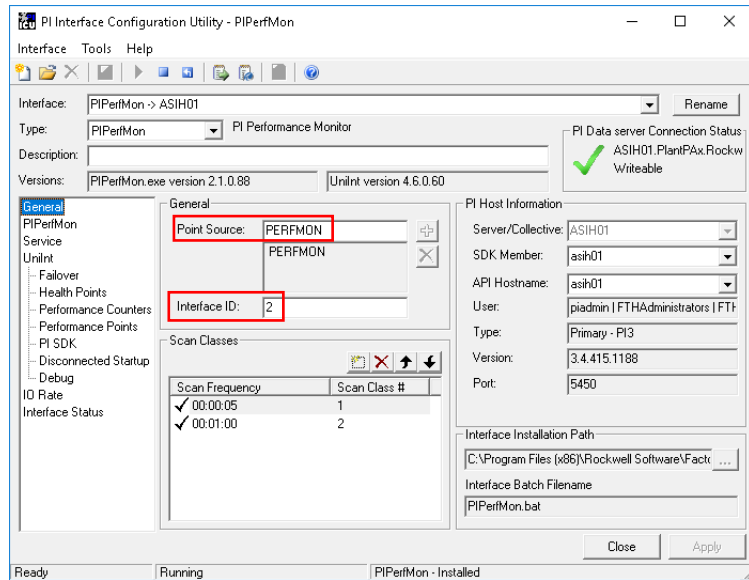
The value is the expected number of performance points in the system.

- 4. Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Historian SE > Interface Configuration Utility. and select New Windows Interface Instance from BAT file.



- 5. Select the PiPerMon.bat\_new file from C:\Program Files (x86)\Rockwell Software\FactoryTalk Historian\PIPC\Interfaces\PIPerfMon directory.
- 6. Select the FactoryTalk Historian server as the host PI Data server/collective.

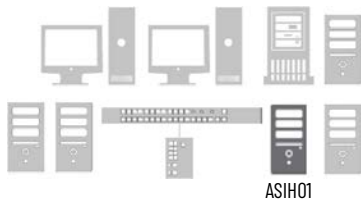
## 7. Enter a Point Source name and an Interface ID number.



**IMPORTANT** The Point Source name **must** match the interface name that you typed in the Historian Production dialog box in [step 3 on page 198](#).  
The Interface ID number must be unique in the system.

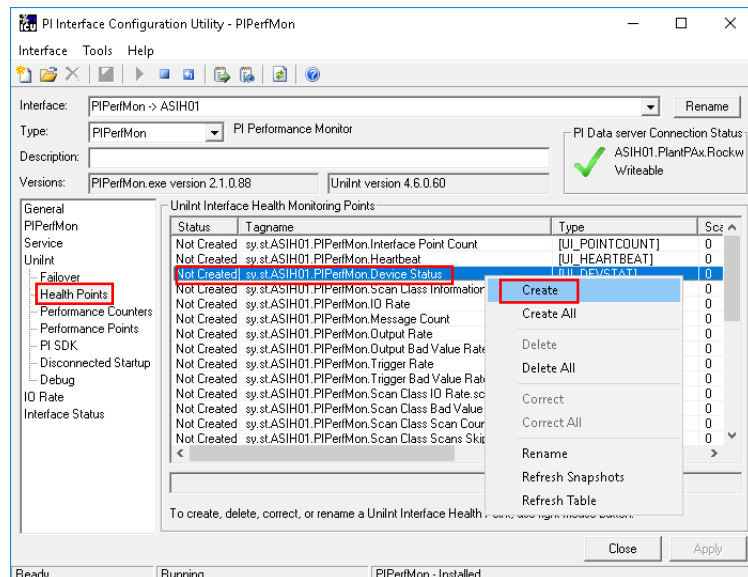
## 8. Restart the interface service.

## Create PIPerfMon Diagnostic Health Points



For diagnostics, associate the PIPerfMon interface with the health tags that monitor a device heartbeat. The heartbeat count helps to determine if the system is working efficiently. If there's a stoppage, you can analyze what prompted the fault or device error.

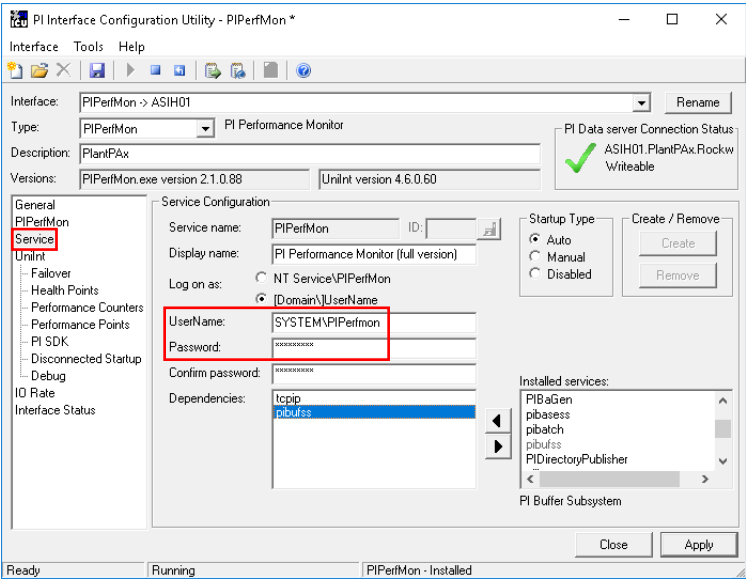
- Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Historian SE > Interface Configuration Utility and select the PIPerfMon for the interface.
- Create the Health Points for PIPerfMon.DeviceStatus.



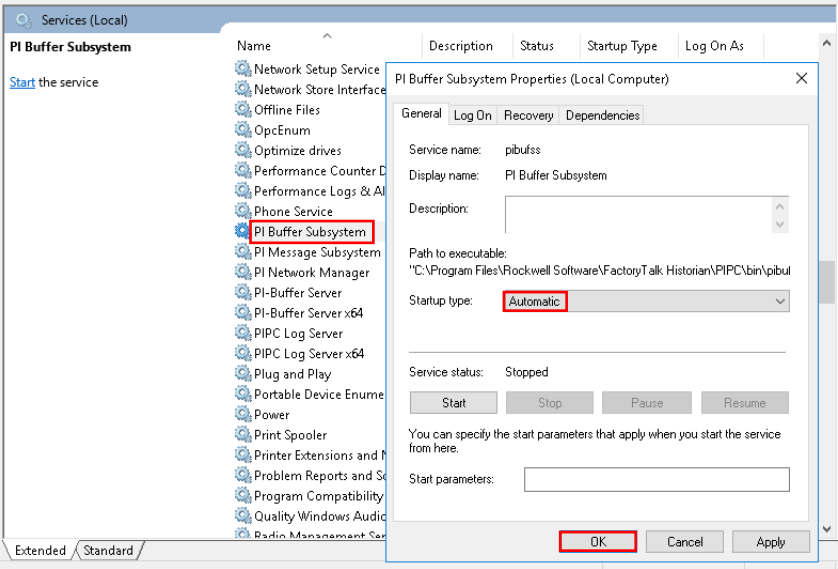
## 3. Create the Health Points for PIPerfMon.Heartbeat.

4. Go to Service and complete the following information.

From this Section	Action
Installed Services	Move pibufss to Dependencies
Service Configuration	Select Log on as: Domain\Username
UserName	Enter the same user name and password that you initially created for the service. <a href="#">See Create Domain User for PIPerfMon Service on page 196</a>
Password	

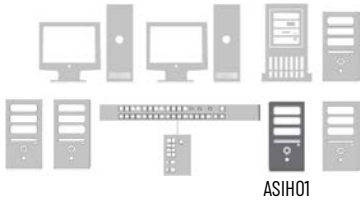


5. Go to Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Services.
6. Select PI Buffer Subsystem, and set the Startup type to Automatic.



7. Restart the interface service from the dialog box.

### Test the PIPerfMon Interface

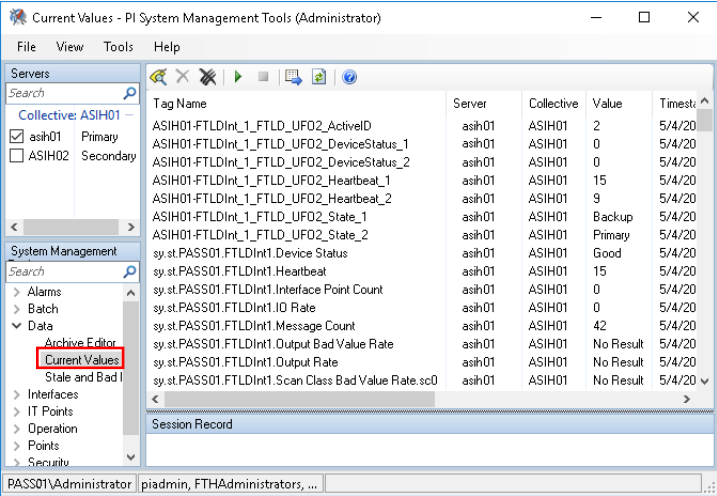


From the primary Historian sever, verify that the PIPerfMon interface has a good working status.

- Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Historian SE > System Management Tools.
- In the left, top pane, select the appropriate server with the interface.
- In the lower, left pane, go to Data folder > Current Values.

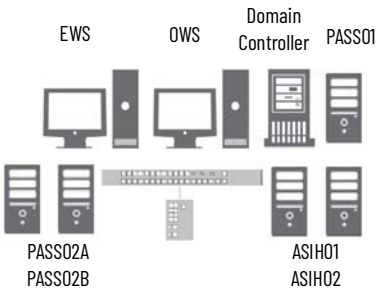


After you search for tags you need, the Value category displays the health state of the interface and the number of seconds between the heartbeat counts.



### Enable the PIPerfMon Interface on other Computers

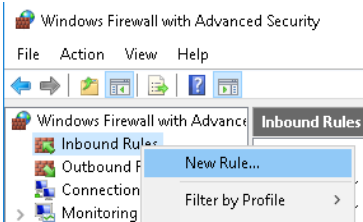
After the PIPerfMon interface is verified to work correctly on the Historian server, you can configure the other servers and workstations that you're collecting data. This requires the domain account to allow PIPerfMon to be added, create a Windows Firewall rule for access and enable the Performance Counter DLL Host service.



1. Go to Control Panel > User Accounts and define this information.

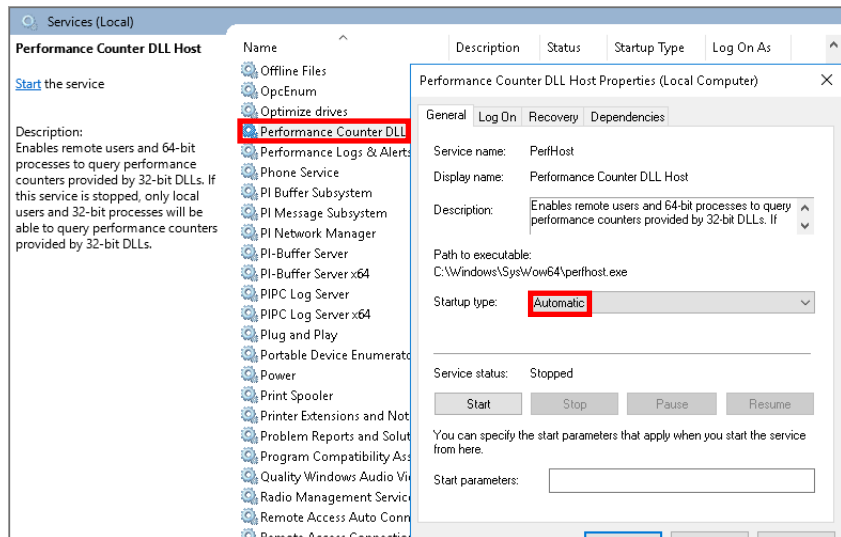
From this Page	Action
Control Panel\User Accounts	Select Manage User Accounts
User Accounts	Select Add
Add a User	Enter the same user name and Domain that you did to grant system access for the PerfMon service. <a href="#">See step 4 on page 200</a>
What level of access do you want to grant this user?	Select Other and choose Performance Monitor Users from the pull-down.

2. Go to the Control Panel > Windows Firewall and define this information.

From this Page	Action
Control Panel\Windows Firewall	Select Advanced settings
Advanced Settings	<p>Create a new inbound rule.</p> 
New Inbound Rule Wizard: File Type	Select Port
New Inbound Rule Wizard: Protocol and Ports	Select TCP and enter the Specific local ports: 135 and 445
New Inbound Rule Wizard: Action	Select Allow the connection
New Inbound Rule Wizard: Profile	The rule applies to Domain, Private, and Public.
New Inbound Rule Wizard: Name	Enter a name for the rule. For example, Perfmon Connection

3. Go to Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Services and find Performance Counter DLL Host.

## 4. Right-click Performance Counter DLL Host and select Properties.



## 5. Select Automatic as the Startup type.

## Configure PI Buffering

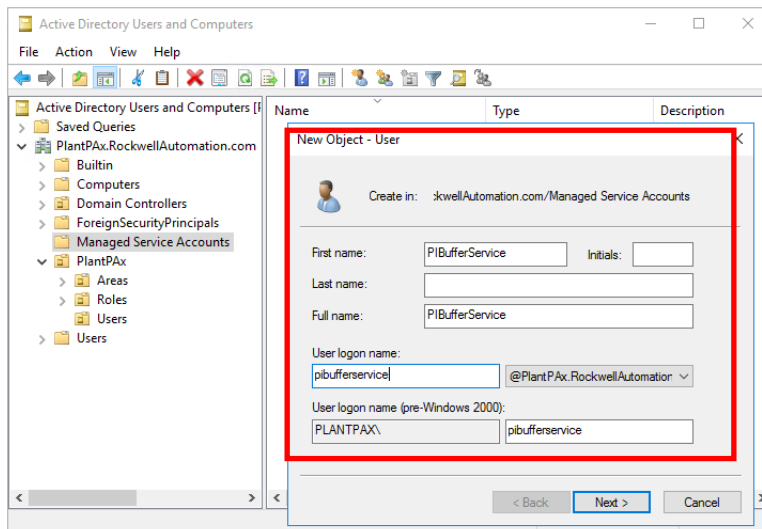
PI Buffering helps to protect local data in the event a client loses connection to the Collective.

### Create Domain User for PI Buffer Service

The PI Buffer service defaults to running in a local account. For PlantPax systems with a domain, it's **recommended** running the PI Buffer service in a **domain account**. This enhances security and provides access among other domain computers.

The domain user account for PI Buffer service must be created on the domain controller. It's a user account with privileges to run the service on other computers within the domain.

1. From the Server Manager, click Tools and choose Active Directory Users and Computers.
2. Expand your domain folder, right-click Managed Service Accounts and choose New>User.
3. Complete the User text boxes.



Item	Description
First name	Type a name for the PI buffering service. <b>IMPORTANT:</b> The 'PI' preface is the name of the OSIsoft product.
Initials	Optional; you can leave blank.
Full name	Type the same name for the PI buffering service.
User login name	Type the same name for the PI buffering service and click the pull-down menu to select your domain folder.
User logon name (pre-Windows 2000)	Use the SYSTEM\ default and type the same name for the PI buffering service.

**IMPORTANT** The logon password creates a service user, not a person. The service user grants access to system computers for placing data into memory (buffer).

4. Type your password twice.

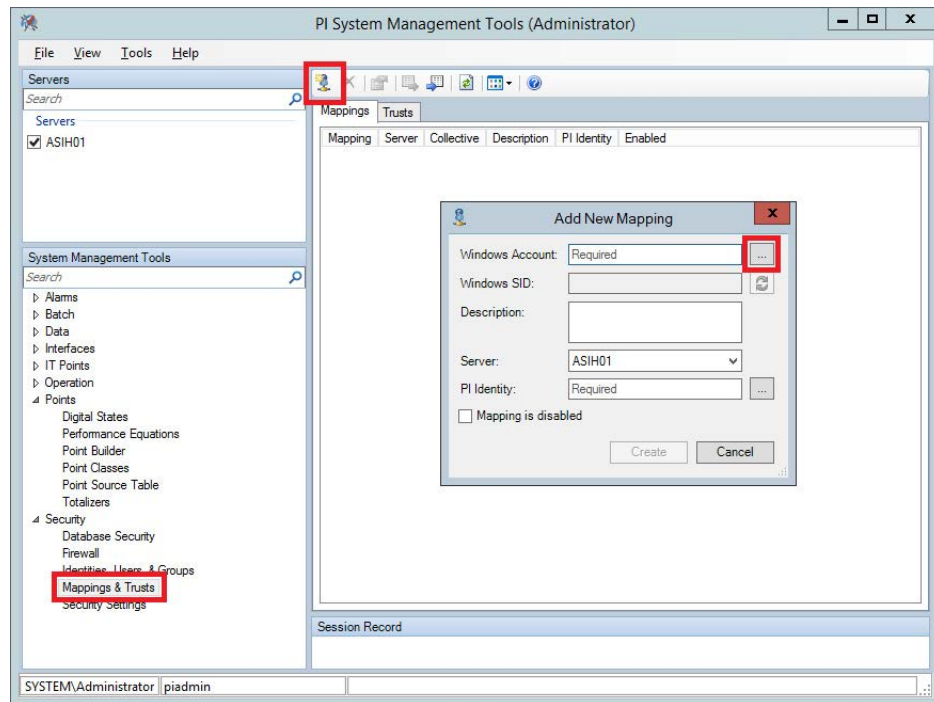
5. Make sure that the following boxes are checked:

- User cannot change password
- Password never expires (indefinite service for system access)

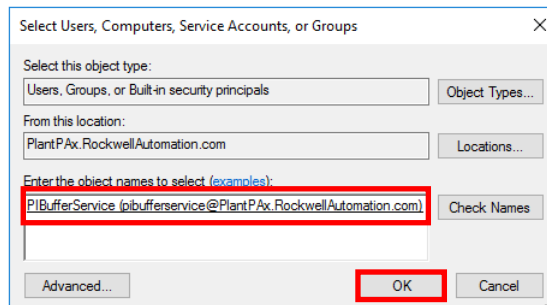
## Create Security Mappings

On the Historian server, associate the service user identity with the Historian mapping and trusts.

1. Go to Rockwell Software>FactoryTalk Historian SE>System Management Tools.  
The PI System Management Tools window appears.

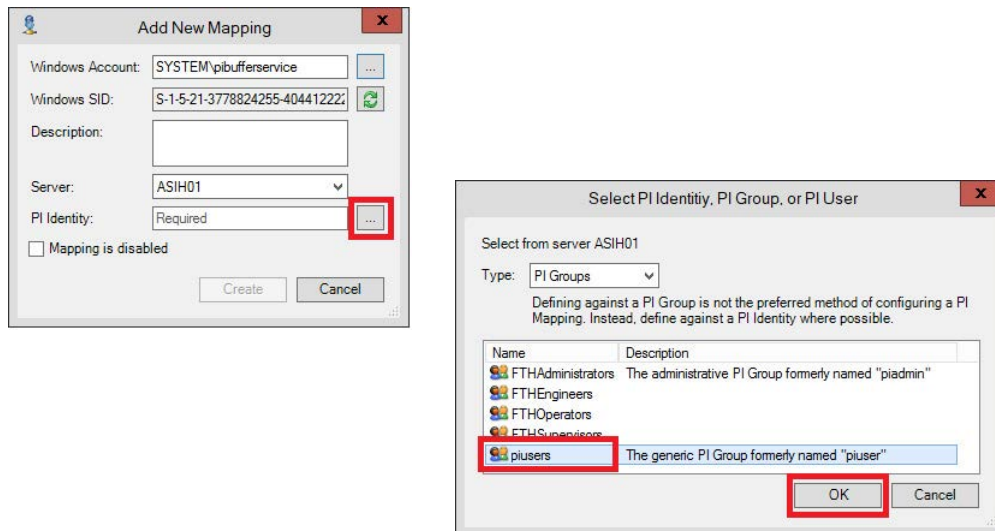


2. Do the following:
  - Under Servers, check the server that you want to set the security settings
  - Under System Management Tools, choose Mappings & Trusts
  - Click Add Mapping icon
  - From the Add New Mapping dialog box (right pane), click Browse (ellipsis '...')
3. Select the PIBufferService user that you created earlier.



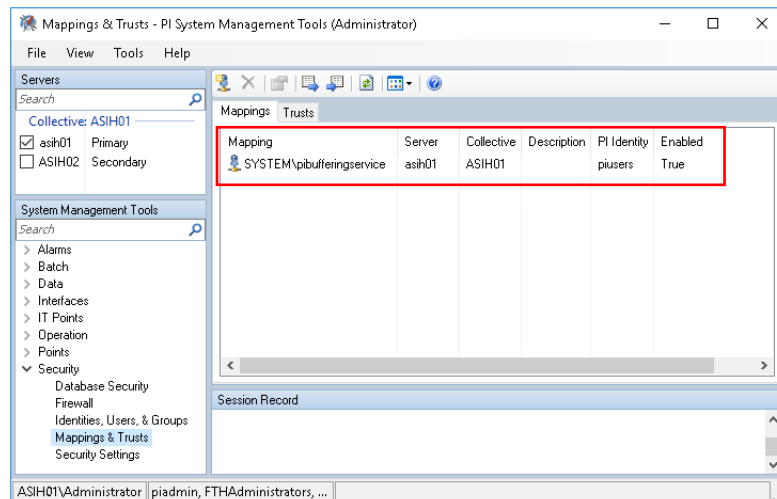
4. On the Add New Mapping dialog box, click Browse and select a group from the Type pull-down menu.

## 5. Select a desired identity.



## 6. Click Create.

Your security mapping should look similar to the example.

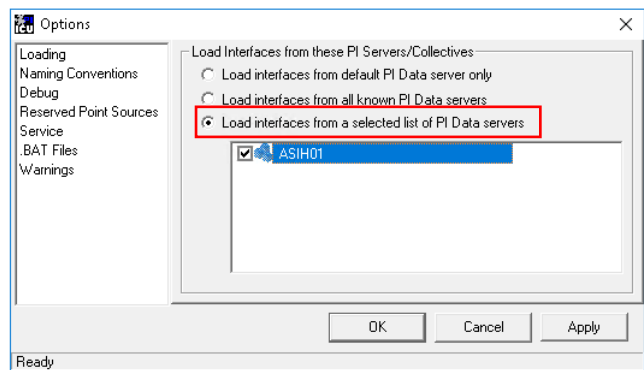


## Configure the Buffering Interface

Configure buffering for the server that you're connected, such as PASS02A and PASS02B.

1. Go to Rockwell Software>FactoryTalk Historian SE>Interface Configuration Utility.  
The PI Interface Configuration Utility dialog box appears.
2. From the Tools menu, choose Options.

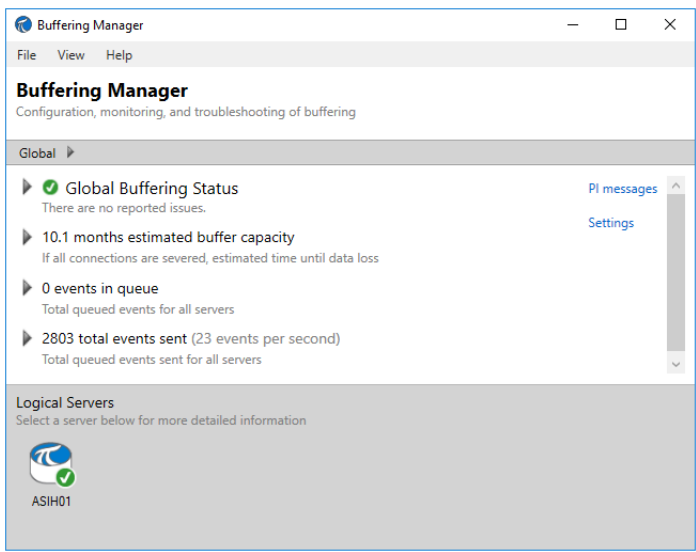
3. Click 'Load interfaces from a selected list of PI Data servers'.



4. Select a server box.
5. From the Tools menu, choose Buffering.
6. Message windows appear.
7. Click Yes, and then 'Continue with configuration' to initiate the Buffering Manager wizard.
8. Complete the Buffering Manager wizard.

Item	Description
Detected PI Interfaces	Select the PI interfaces that you're buffering and click Next.
PI Data Archive security	Click Change, and enter the user name and password that you created earlier. Click Next.
	Click Next twice, and then 'Exit new installation wizard'.
Buffering Manager message windows	Click Yes and OK to confirm PI ICU dependency.

9. From the PI Interface Configuration Utility dialog box, click Tools menu and choose Buffering.
10. Verify that your information matches the dialog box example.



11. Close the Buffering Manager dialog box.
12. From the PI Interface Configuration Utility dialog box, click Tools menu and choose Options.
13. From the Options dialog box, check 'Load interfaces from a selected list of PI servers' and make sure that the server is checked.

## Configure the PI Buffer Service Logon

The following procedure applies only if the Change Option wasn't available on the New Install Wizard dialog box.

1. On the PASS server, right-click Start menu and choose Computer Management.
2. Complete the New Install Wizard dialog box.

Item	Description
Local User and Group (left pane)	Open Local Users and Groups, right-click Groups and choose Administrators.
Add name	Click Add and type SYSTEM\pibufferservice.
	Click Check Names, and click OK.
Assign log on service account	From the Start menu, click Programs and choose Administrative Tools>Services.
	Right-click PIBuffer Subsystem and choose Properties.
	On the Log On tab, click Browse.
	Click Locations, choose 'Entire Directory', and click OK.
	Enter SYSTEM\pibufferservice and click Check Names.
	Click OK.

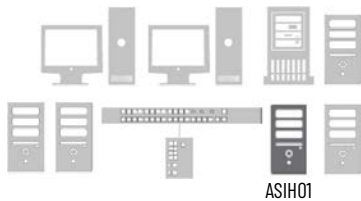
## Configure Historian Data Collection

The procedures in this section use the 'System Management Tool' and PI System Explorer within FactoryTalk Historian software. The tool is available for Historian Asset Framework management computers, such as server, node interface, and EWS.

Microsoft® Excel® software is required to enable the bulk editing capability. An additional license is required to use PI Datalink.

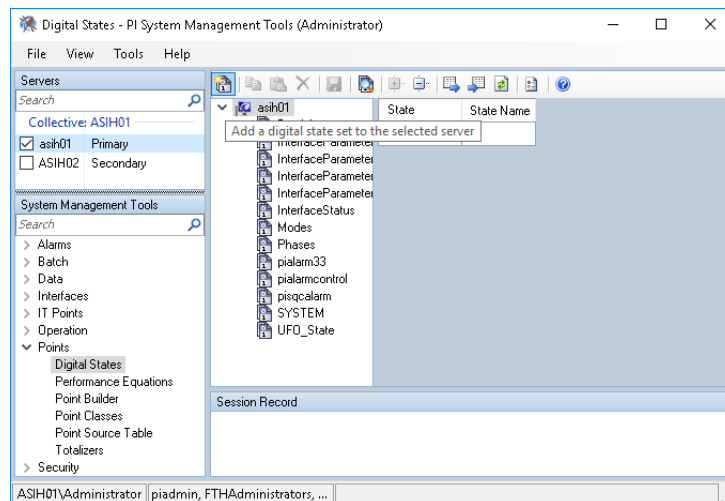
We also document how to manually create Historian tags, digital states, and Asset Framework. We recommend using the section [“Configure Asset Framework Databases with the PlantPax Configuration Tool” on page 220](#) for creating bulk tags for large process systems.

## Create Digital States



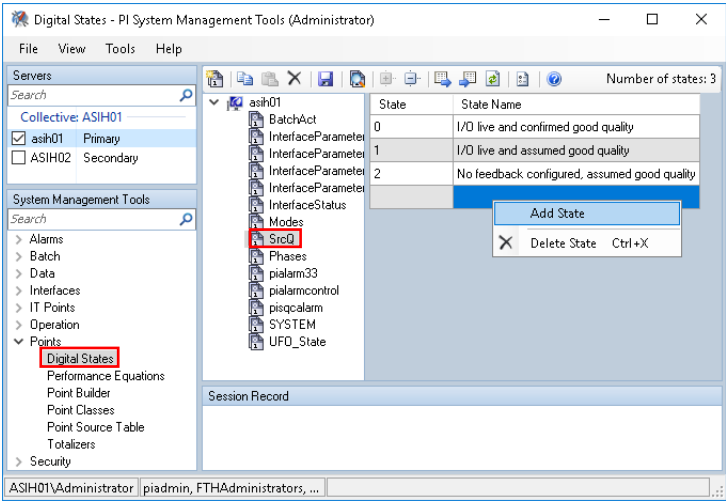
Historian points can be defined as analog or digital. Digital points can be used to enumerate the process states, thus creating a relationship between the value and the text state name. For example: 1 = Good.

1. Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Historian SE > System Management Tools and select Points > Digital States
2. Add a Digital State Set to the server.

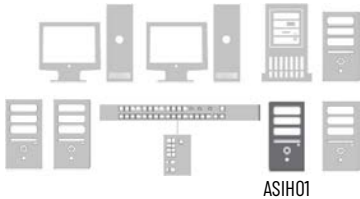


Source Quality Data Examples

Parameter	Data Type	Description
SrcQ	SINT	Final PV source and quality.
		GOOD     0 = I/O live and confirmed good quality
		1 = I/O live and assumed good quality
		2 = No feedback configured, assumed good quality
		TEST     8 = Device simulated
		9 = Device loopback simulation
		10 = Manually entered value
		UNCERTAIN 16 = Live input, off-specification
		17 = Value substituted at device/bus
		18 = Value substituted by maintenance (Has and not Use)
		19 = Shed, using last good value
		20 = Shed, using replacement value
		BAD     32 = Signal failure (out-of-range, NaN, invalid combination)
		33 = I/O channel fault
		34 = I/O module fault
		35 = Bad I/O configuration (for example, scaling parameters)



Import Digital Sets and States



To save time entering common Digital Sets and States, templates are available to import.

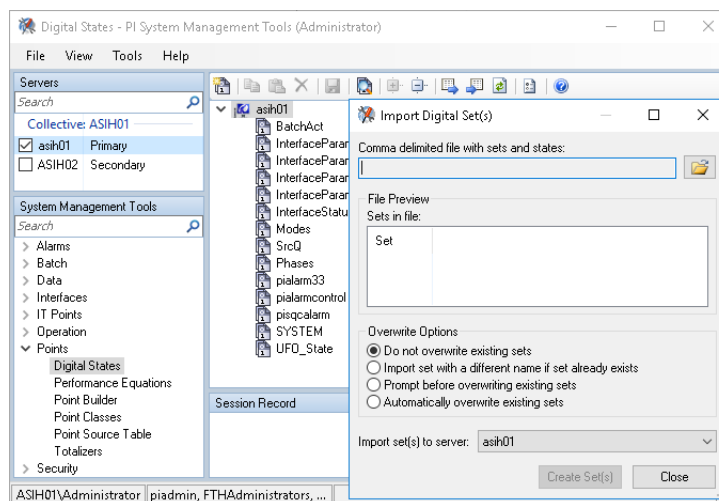
A Process Objects Digital Set is available from the PlantPAx Process Library. After downloading the library, the Templates folder contains Historian files.

The PIPermon Digital States are available from a local template in the installation directory.

1. Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Historian SE > System Management Tools and select Points > Digital States

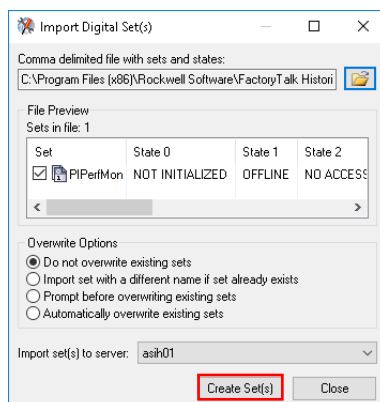


## 2. Select Import.



3. Select the PI\_Plperfmon\_DS.csv file for the Comma delimited file with sets and states. The file is located in C:\Program Files (x86)\Rockwell Software\FactoryTalk Historian\PIPC\Interfaces\PIPerfMon.
4. Select Create the Set(s).

A minimum number of the recommended Digital Sets is created. This procedure does not create the basic Digital Set file for all Process Objects digital states.



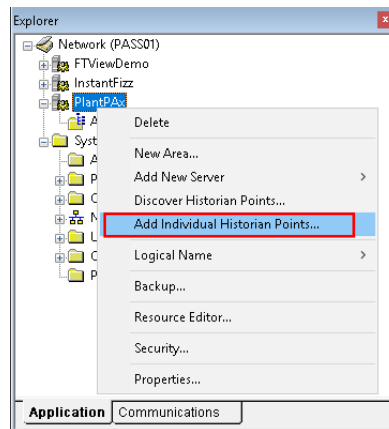
## Create Individual Historian Points



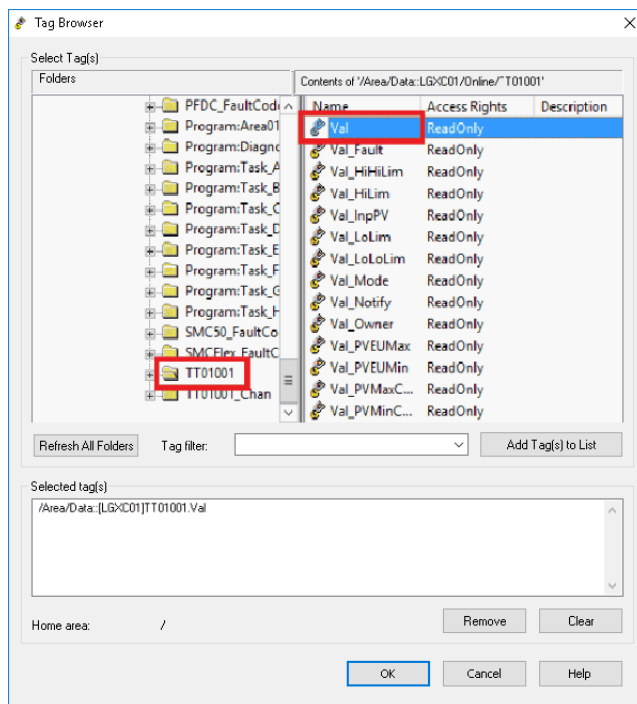
You can create historian points by using the FactoryTalk® Administration Console. Define these points from an engineering workstation or an Historian server. The following is one example.

1. Go to Rockwell Automation Software > FactoryTalk Administration Console and select the network for the type of FactoryTalk directory.

- In the Explorer pane, select an application (PlantPAX is our example) and choose Add Individual Historian Points.

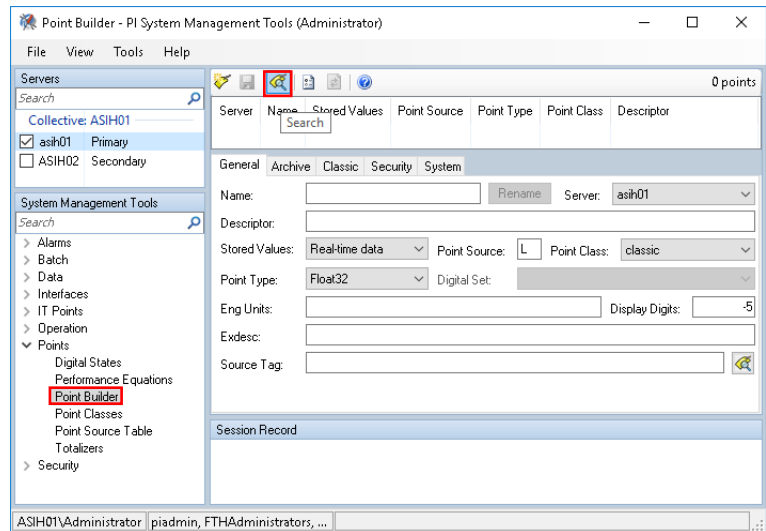


- On the Add Historian Points dialog box, select Browse Tags.
- In the Tag Browser window, select an object tag (TT01001 in the example) in the Folders pane on the left side of the window.



- In the pane on the right side of the Tag Browser window, double-click the tag to configure as a Historian Point.  
Val (Process Variable Value) is the example.
- Select Add Tags to List and OK to accept the tags in the list.
- Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Historian SE > System Management Tools.
- In the Servers Pane (or the Servers and Collectives pane if you've a collective), select the historian server.

## 9. Select Point Builder and search for tags.



## 10. In the Tag Search window, type the Tag Mask and select Search.

You can use an asterisk (\*) for a wildcard. The point name and entire path appear on the Point Builder window.

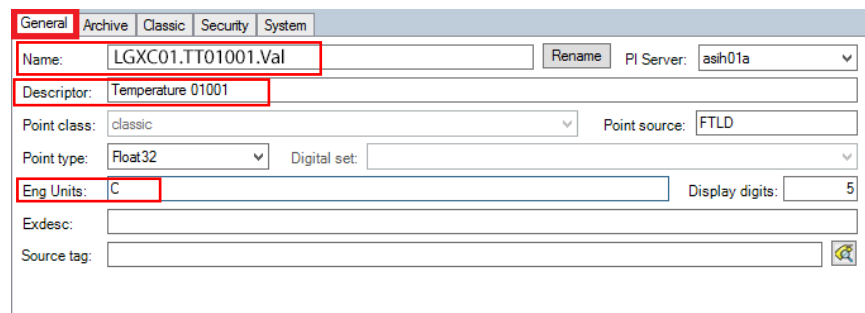
## 11. Select the tag and select OK.

## 12. Select the tag and select Rename.

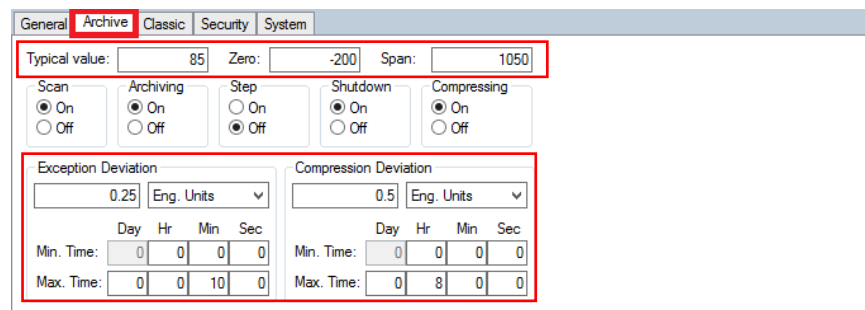
## 13. Enter a new name in the Rename PI Point dialog box.

The name must be modified as **OPCTopic.Backingtag.parameter** in order to populate a historical trend in the PlantPax faceplate. In the following example it is LGXC01.TT01001.Val.

## 14. In the General tab of the Point Builder dialog box, enter a tag description and engineering units.



## 15. In the Archive tab, configure the range (Zero and Span), typical value, and all exception and compression data for the historical point.

**IMPORTANT**

Usually, Minimum Range Value = Zero, Span = Maximum Range Value minus Minimum Range Value. The Typical Value is between the Minimum Range Value and the Maximum Range Value.

16. Select the Classic tab, to view the historical tag path (instrument tag) that includes the Data server name.

This example shows the FactoryTalk® Linx name, PlantPAx\_DAT.

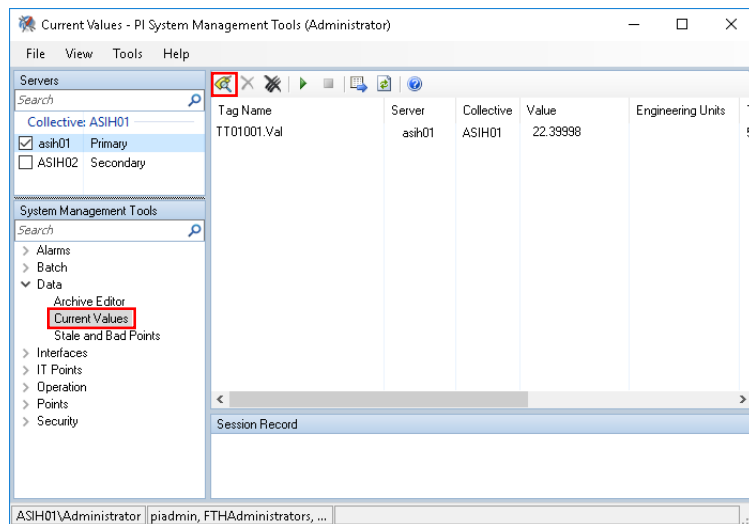
The historical point link is broken if any change is made to the FactoryTalk® Linx application name.

The screenshot shows the 'Classic' tab of the PI System Management Tools. It contains several input fields for configuration: Location1 through Location5, Conversion factor, Filter code, Square root code, Total code, UserInt1 through UserInt2, and UserReal1 through UserReal2. The 'Instrument tag' field at the bottom is populated with the text 'PlantPAx/Area/Data:PlantPAx\_DAT:[LGXC01]TT01001.Val'.

## Monitor Historical Data

From the primary Historian server, use the PI System Management Tool to verify Historical data has good values.

1. Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Historian SE > System Management Tools and select Current Values and select the search button.

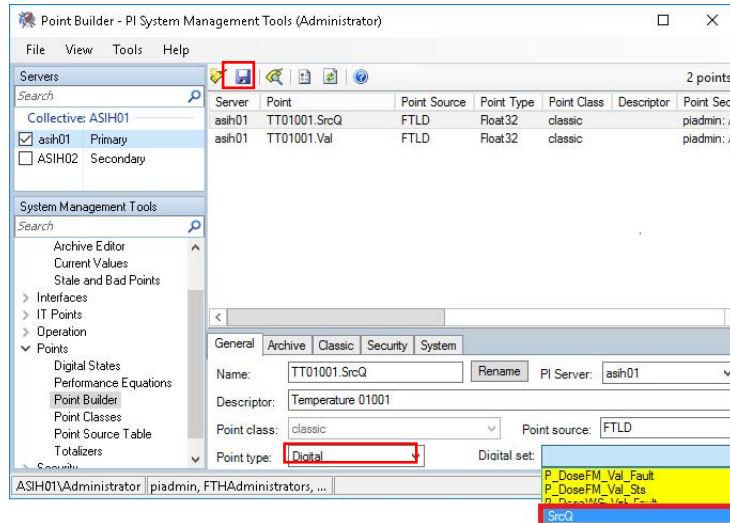


2. Enter a tag mask or an asterisk (\*) for all tags.
3. Select any tags that you wish to monitor.
4. To see values change as they periodically refresh, select the Play button.

## Define Digital Historical Points

The digital set is available only to a digital points type. The FactoryTalk Administration Console automatically creates a Float32 (Real) point type for each new point.

1. Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Historian SE > System Management Tools
2. To be able to change the digital set, select Digital for the Point type and then select a Digital Set (SrcQ in the example).



3. Select the Save icon to store the Historian point.

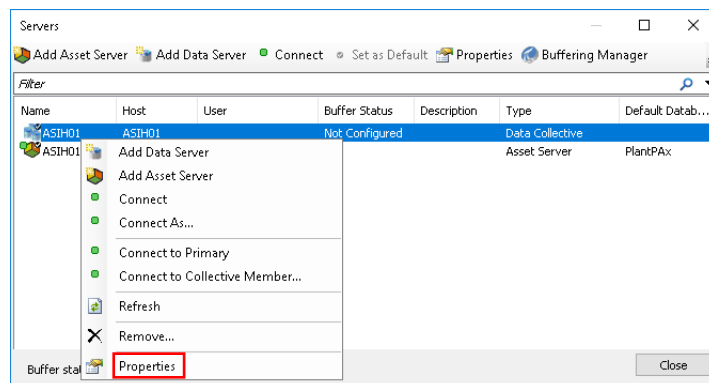
## Historian Asset Framework

Use the FactoryTalk Historian Asset Framework to build and deliver model-driven analysis and reporting solutions.

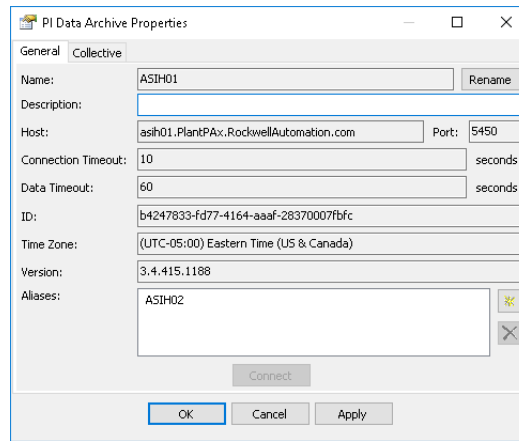
### Configure the Connections to the Servers

When a Historian Collective is used, the Asset Framework server and PI Analysis Service must be installed on a separate computer, such as a dedicated SQL server.

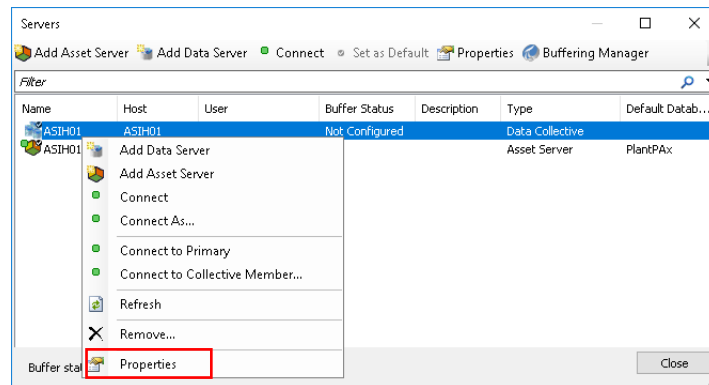
1. Go to Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Historian SE > System Explorer (64-bit) and select File to choose Connections.
2. Select the data collective (ASIH01) and choose Properties.



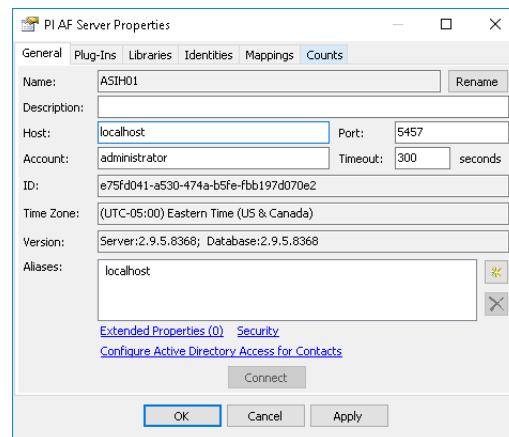
3. Rename or configure this connection as necessary for your system.



4. Select the Asset Server (ASIS01) and choose Properties.



5. Rename or configure this connection as necessary for your system.



## Import Asset Framework Templates

An asset framework provides a means to organize your process equipment assets. Asset Framework Templates are provided in the process library. This download is available online from the Product Comparability and Download Center ([PCDC](#)).

1. Go to Programs > Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Historian SE > System Explorer (64-bit).

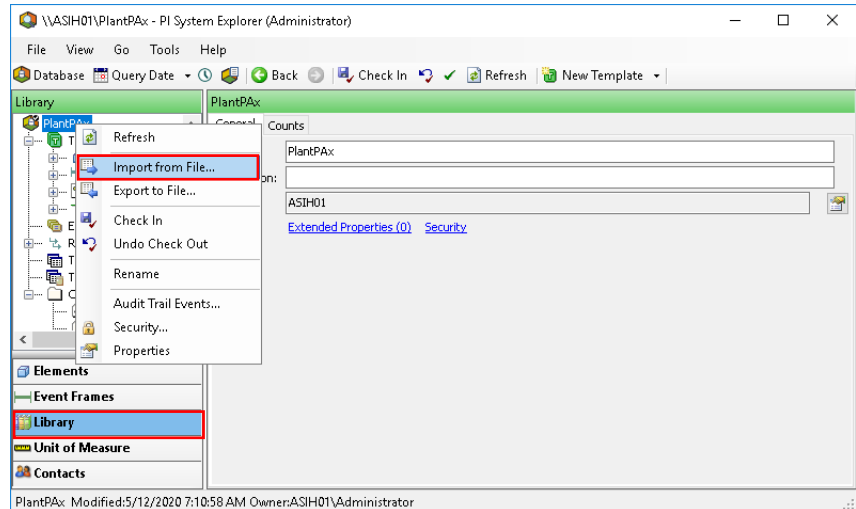
---

**IMPORTANT** Steps 2 and 3 are only performed the first time that you name the database.

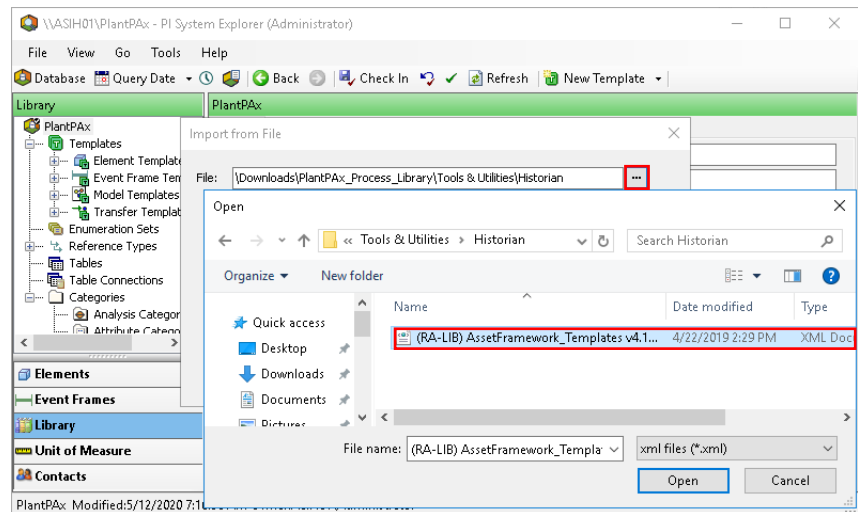
---

2. Select Yes from the Create Database dialog box to create a user database.
3. Enter the name of the user database.

4. Select Library in the lower, left pane, select the database name and choose Import from File.



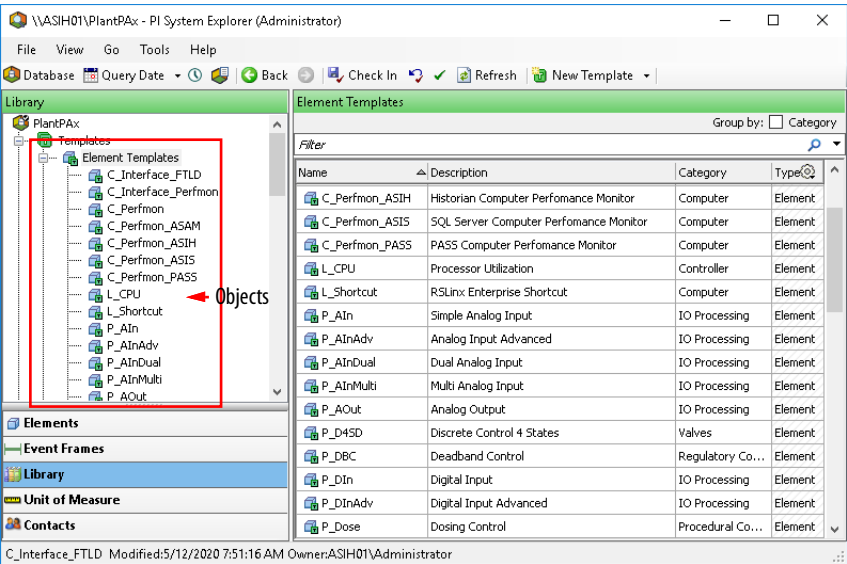
5. Browse in your system files to the (RA-LIB) AssetFramework\_Templates .xml file and open the file.



There are these template files:

- Base Asset Framework Template File for standard Asset Framework functionality for the process library, release 4.1 and 5.0.
  - Advanced Asset Framework Template File for use with SQL Server Reporting Services reports. These objects use the base template, with additional parameters to enable reporting functionality.
6. Accept the default import options.

The database now contains the Library object templates.

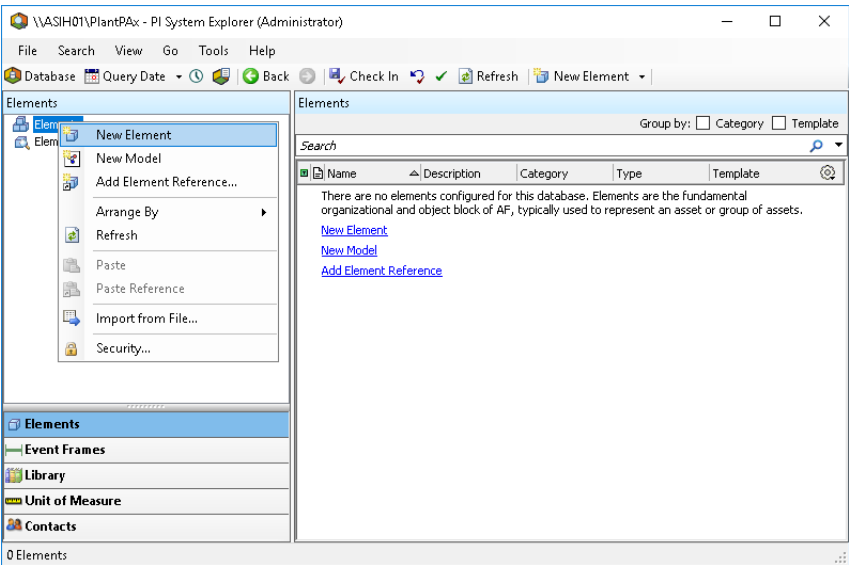


### Configure Asset Framework Elements

Associate the tags with historian elements, which are the Process object templates

The term 'element' is used in the Asset Framework software. For PlantPAx system purposes, 'element' can be considered synonymous with 'objects' in the process library.

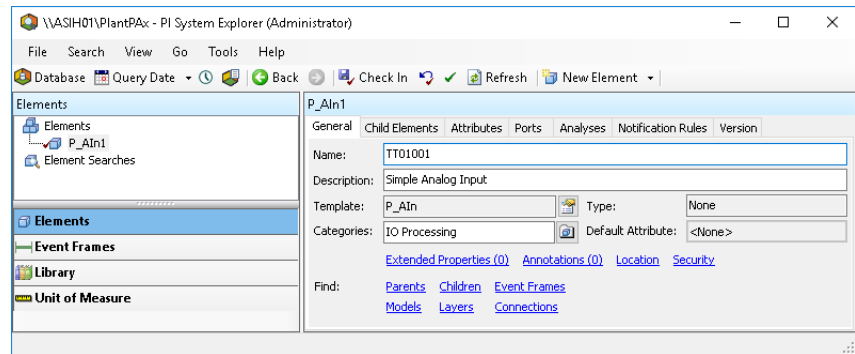
1. Go to Programs > Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Historian SE > System Explorer (64-bit).
2. Select Elements in the lower, left pane, select Element and create a New Element.



3. Select P\_AIn in the Choose Element Template dialog box.



4. Type the tag name that is being assigned to the object and check it in.

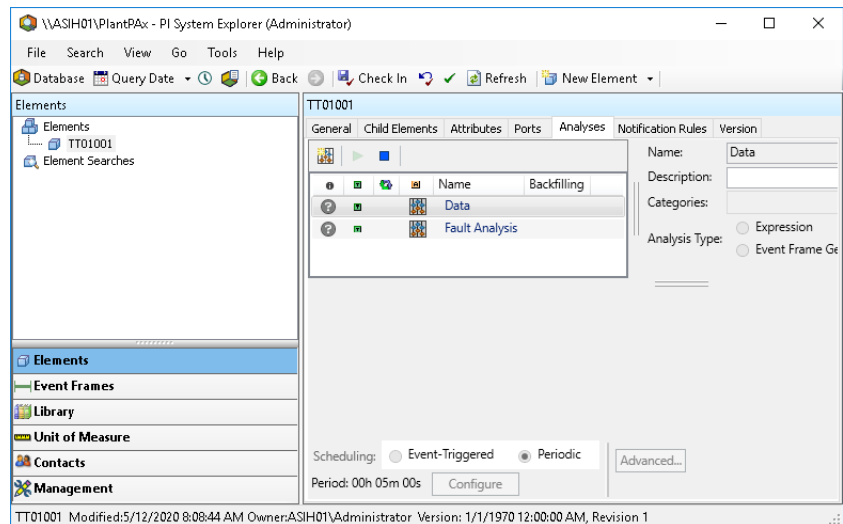


5. Confirm the settings and Check In again to complete the check in process.
6. The current historical value is accessed by selecting the Attributes tab and refreshing.

## Search Event Frames

You can search for event frames, for example, if you want to find abnormal conditions that triggered an event.

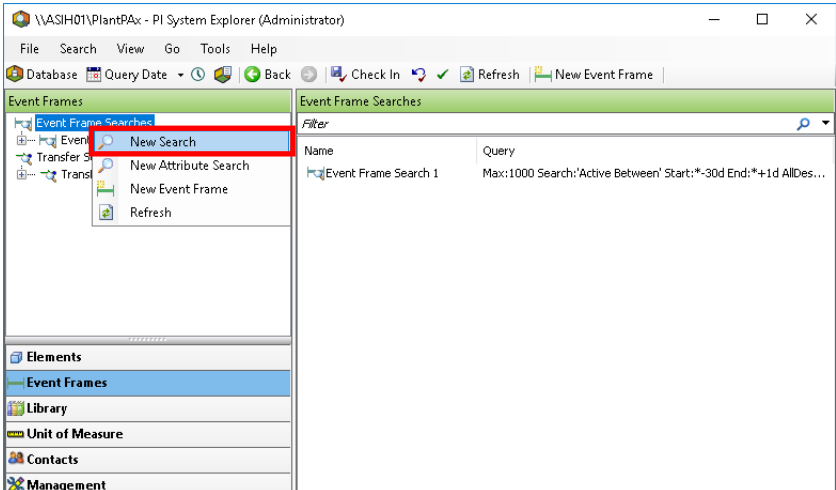
1. Go to Programs > Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Historian SE > System Explorer (64-bit)
2. Select Elements in the lower, left pane of the PI System Explorer dialog box and then select the Analyses tab.



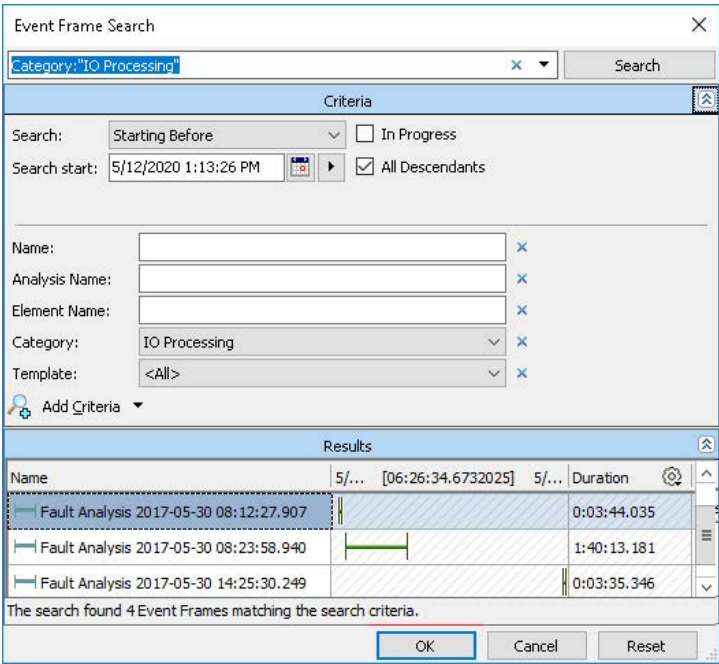
## Finding Faults for Analysis

You can also search event frames to assess faults.

1. Go to Programs > Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Historian SE > System Explorer (64-bit)
2. Select Event Frames in the lower, left pane, select Event Frame Searches and choose New Search.

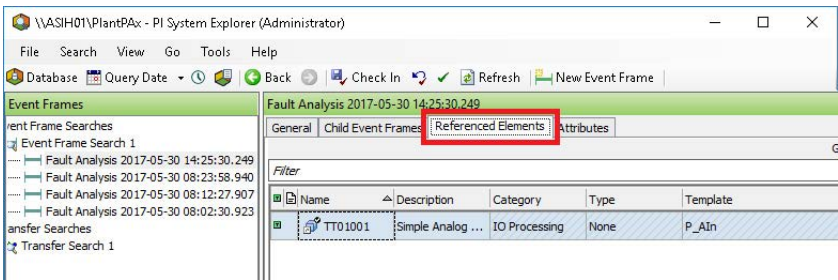


3. Select the desired search criteria and any filters.  
The search results for the selected criteria appear at the bottom of the dialog box.



4. To view elements (tags) that are associated with the fault for the selected search criteria, double-click a fault.
5. Select the Referenced Elements tab.

Each tag (and description) that is assigned to the element appears.



6. To view a description of the abnormal condition, select the Attributes tab.

## Tools for Creating Historian Tags

Depending upon how far along you are in your process application build, these can help create tags and other bulk code:

- Application Code Manager software
- PlantPAx Configuration tool
- PI Builder Add-in for Microsoft Excel

### Application Code Manager

Application Code Manager (ACM) software supports a historian library to assist with creating historian tags.

Use ACM to create the historian tags when your control strategies in ACM are in the final stages and ready to generate a Logix 5000 Controller .ACD file.

See [Chapter 6, Use ACM to Create an Application](#) for specific details on ACM.

After ACM generates historian tags, the .CSV file needs to be copied to the computer that has PI Builder Add-in for Microsoft Excel installed to publish the tags into the historian database.

---

**IMPORTANT** If additional control strategies are created using the Logix Designer application, then ACM won't be able to generate the new historian tags. In this scenario, the PlantPAx Configuration Tool may be considered to create the historian tags.

---

### PI Builder Add-in for Microsoft Excel

PI Builder is a Microsoft Excel add-in that lets you use Excel to create, view and modify PI points and Asset Framework objects in your Historian database. With PI Builder you can make bulk tag edits by importing and exporting your spreadsheet.

All functionality of the prior PI Tag Configurator has been replaced with PI Builder, which is included with the PI SMT and PI Data Archive setup kits (as part of the PI AF Client installer).

---

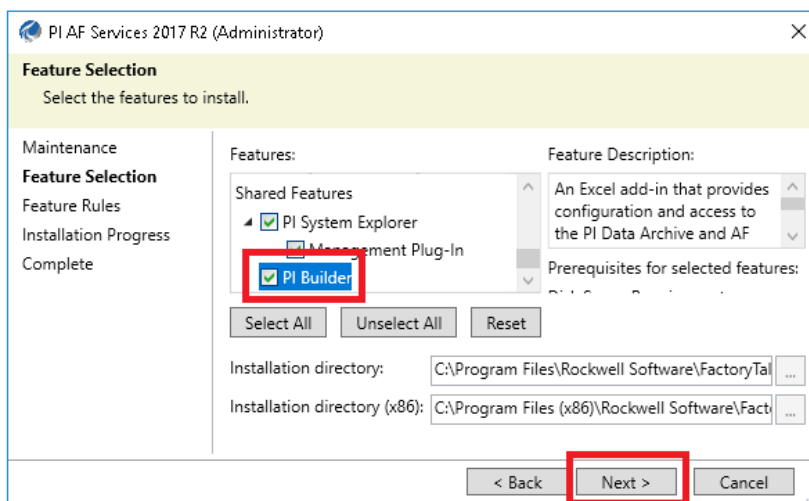
**IMPORTANT** Microsoft Excel 32-bit software must be installed for these procedures.  
This section uses Microsoft Excel 2013. Your version could be different.

---

If Microsoft Excel was installed after the Historian software, the PI AF Services will need to be modified to include the PI Builder feature.

1. To start the modification, run file named <PI-AF-Services\_2017-R2A...exe> located in the \Redist\PIAFSetup\ directory of the Historian SE software installation media.  
A maintenance dialog prompts to modify, repair, or uninstall the PI AF Services 2017 R2 installation.

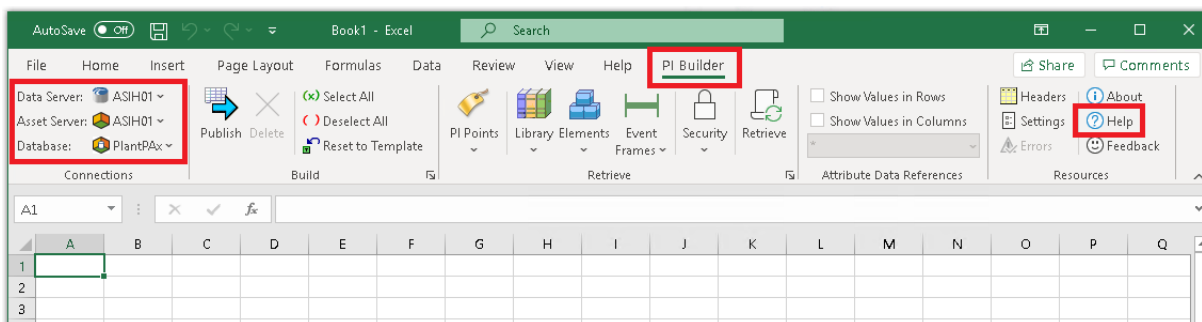
2. Choose to Modify the installation and click Next.
3. Select PI Builder from the list of Features and click Next.



4. Restart the computer after the installation is complete.

To retrieve and publish PI AF objects, PI Builder must connect to a PI AF database and for PI points a PI Data Archiver server.

1. Open your version of Microsoft Excel and click the PI Builder tab.
2. In the Connections group on the upper left corner. Select your Data Server, Asset Server, and Database as available.



For information on how to publish your historian tags to the historian database, see the PI Builder add-on Help section.

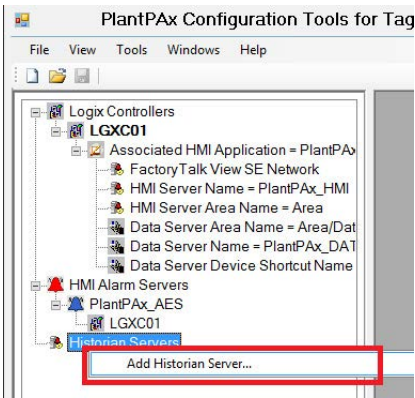
## Configure Asset Framework Databases with the PlantPax Configuration Tool

Use the PlantPax Configuration tool to configure Asset Framework databases with Logix tag elements. This includes the automatic configuration of related PI points in the FactoryTalk Historian data server (PI data server).

This procedure assumes that the controller, HMI server, and the alarm server are configured for using the PlantPax Configuration Tool.

1. Open the PlantPax Configuration Tool.

2. Add the Historian Server.



From this Page	Action
Add Historian Server	Type the name of the historian server.
Select Controllers for Building Data Points in Historian Server	Enter the server collective name and select the applicable controllers.

Select Controllers for Building Data Points in Historian Server

Name: Production Historian

Description:

FTLD Interface Number: 1

Server or Collective Name: ASIH01

Point Source Name: FTLD

Select Controllers and Enter Data Server Information

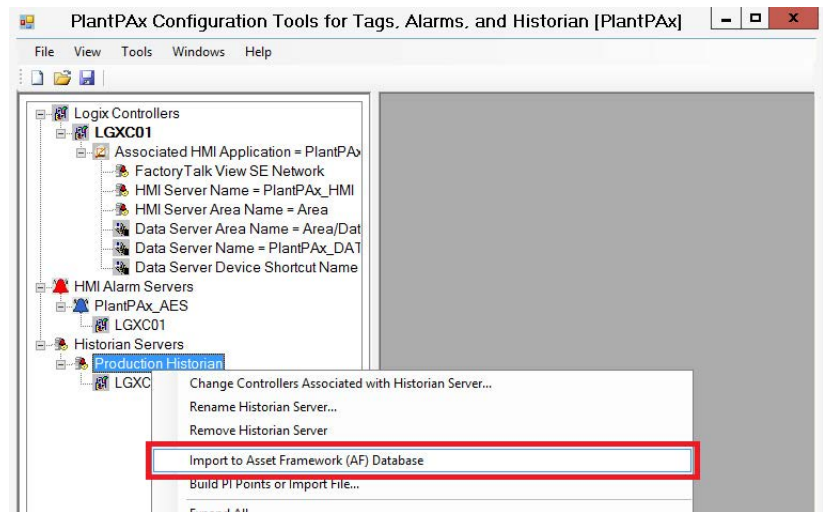
Select	Controller	Application Name	Data Area Full Path	Data Server Name	Device Shortcut Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	LGXC01	PlantPax	Area/Data	PlantPax_DAT	LGXC01

FactoryTalk Application Name, Data Server Name and Device Shortcut Name must be provided when using FTLD point source.  
Data Server Name is not required when point source is not FTLD.  
The default data server name used by FactoryTalk is "RSlinx Enterprise".  
(Data Area Full Path example: "NorthPlant/Data1")

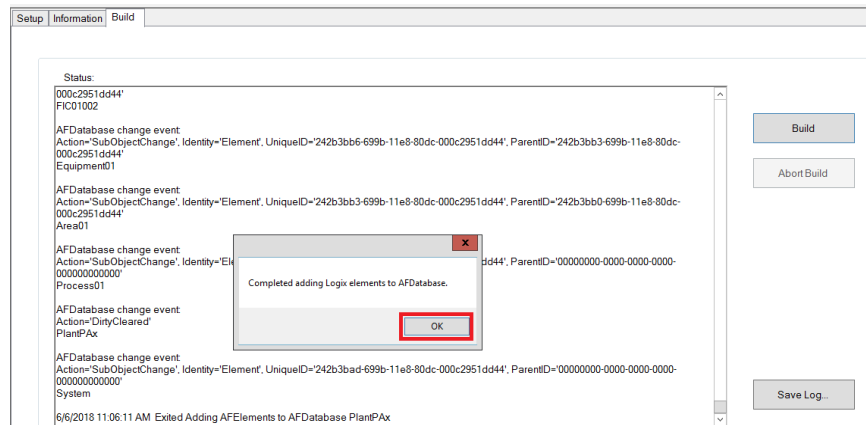
OK

Cancel

3. Select the Historian server that you just created (Production Historian in our example), and select to Import to Asset Framework (AF) Database



From this Location	Action
Build Tags: Setup Tab	Select Connect
Connect dialog Box	Set the PI Server, AF Server, and AF Database
OK Connected dialog box	Verify that you're connected to the PI Server, AF Server, and AF Database
Build Tags: Setup Tab	Select PI Point Builder Options
FactoryTalk Historian Import File Builder Options dialog box: Naming tab	Use the controller name as a prefix to Historian tags. For example, LGXC01.<tagname>
Build Tags: Information Tab	Review and verify the information
Build Tags: Build Tab	Select Build

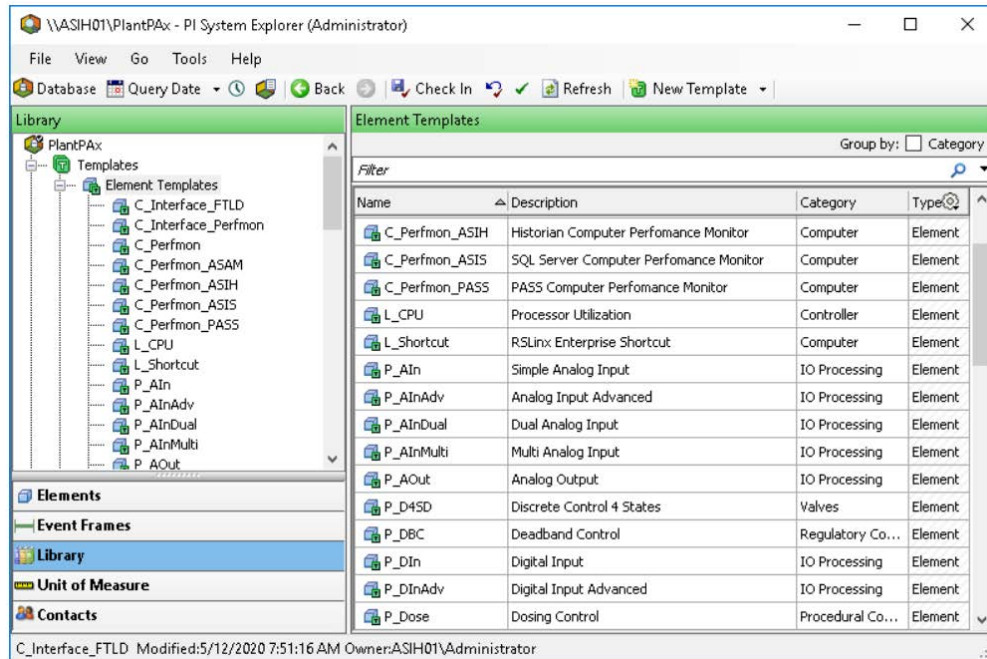


### Verify Asset Framework Library and Elements

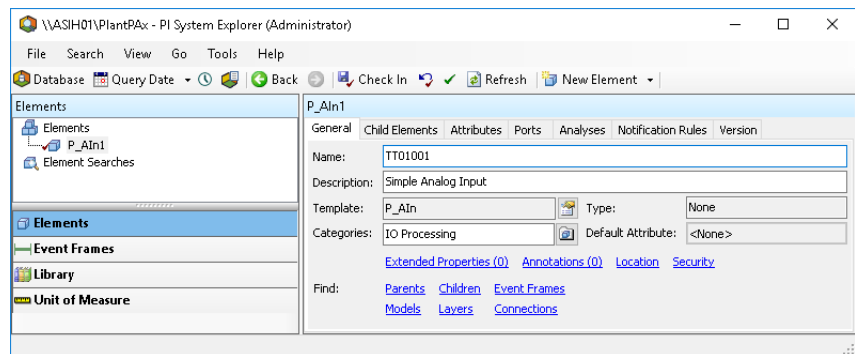
After using the PlantPAx Configuration Tool, you must verify that the asset framework library and elements are properly imported into the Asset Framework database.

1. Go to Programs > Rockwell Software > FactoryTalk Historian SE > System Explorer (64-bit).

2. Select Library in the bottom left of the system explorer and verify the contents of the library.



3. Select Elements in the bottom left of the system explorer and verify the elements.



**Notes:**



## Batch Management

PlantPax® systems support scalable options for batch management that are based on ISA88 standards and can help:

- Automate sequences to reduce time-to-market
- Manage recipes and procedures to focus on yield, throughput, and quality
- Provide models to improve traceability, reporting, and approval controls.

### Select the Batch Solution

Scalable offerings and tools range from controller-based to enterprise-wide solutions.

Feature	Logix Batch & Sequence Manager	SequenceManager	FactoryTalk Batch
Deployment	Logix controller code	Firmware-based controller feature	Server-based application
Supported controllers	ControlLogix® 5580 CompactLogix™ 5380 ControlLogix 5570 CompactLogix 5370	ControlLogix 5570 CompactLogix 5370 ControlLogix 5580 CompactLogix 5380	ControlLogix 5580 CompactLogix 5380 ControlLogix 5570 CompactLogix 5370
Units	Single unit recipes	Single unit recipes	Multiple unit recipes
Phase construction	PhaseManager™ programs	PhaseManager programs	PhaseManager programs
Phase interface	Phase and bit logic	Dropdown menu	Dropdown menu
Max recipes/steps/phases	32	Limited by memory or resources	Limited by memory or resources
Max input/report parameters	4	No max	No max
Parameter expressions	No	Yes	Yes
Parameter data types	BOOL REAL	BOOL INT, INT, DINT REAL	BOOL SINT, INT, DINT REAL
Procedural structure	Sequential Concurrent	Sequential Concurrent Divergent Recurrent	Sequential Concurrent Divergent Recurrent
Recipe design	Tabular HMI configured	SFC like	SFC like
Recipe editing	Runtime via HMI	Import only at runtime	Runtime editing via Recipe Editor
HMI integration	Faceplates	3 Active X	4 Active X API
Batch reporting	Queue controller services	Event client and archive services	Event client and archive services
FactoryTalk Batch integration	No	Yes	—
Dynamic unit binding	No	No	Yes
Unit arbitration	No	No	Yes

### Logix Batch and SequenceManager Requirements

The Logix Batch and SequenceManager™ option consists of controller code and visualization elements. You need:

- Logix 5000® controller
- FactoryTalk® View Studio software
- Logix Batch and Sequence Manager files

For more information, see Logix Batch and Sequence Manager.

### SequenceManager Requirements

SequenceManager controls direct PhaseManager programs in this controller-based option. You need:

- Logix 5000 controller
- FactoryTalk View Studio software
- SequenceManager software

For more information, see SequenceManager Controls.

### FactoryTalk Batch Requirements

A FactoryTalk Batch application is a server-based option.

AppServ-Batch application server with:

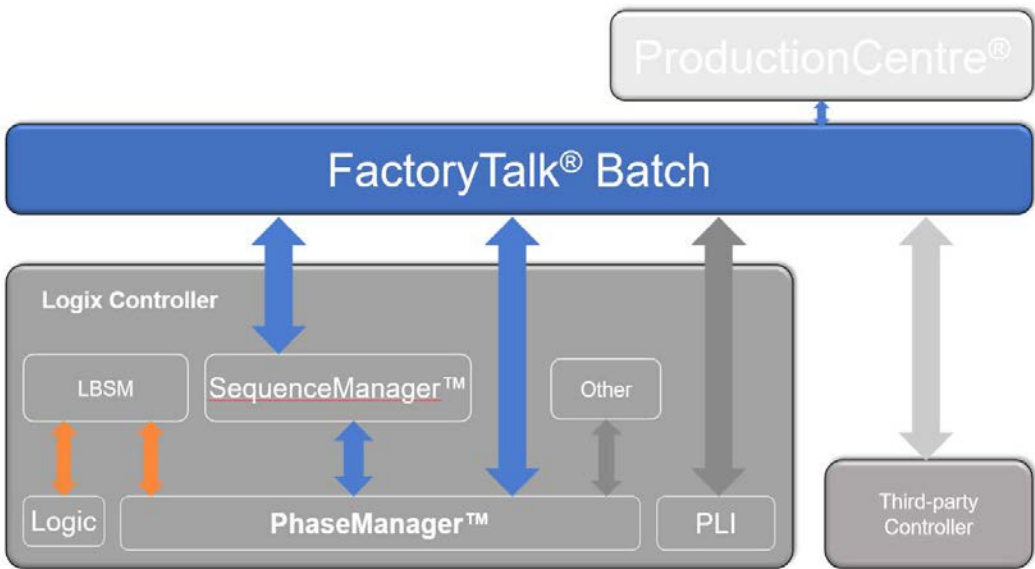
- FactoryTalk Batch server
- FactoryTalk® eProcedure® server
- FactoryTalk® Event Archiver database

AppServ-Info SQL server with:

- SQL server
- FactoryTalk Batch Material server
- Master Recipe storage

For more information, see [Factory Talk Batch Application on page 228](#)

The batch solutions work with each other to provide a comprehensive solution.



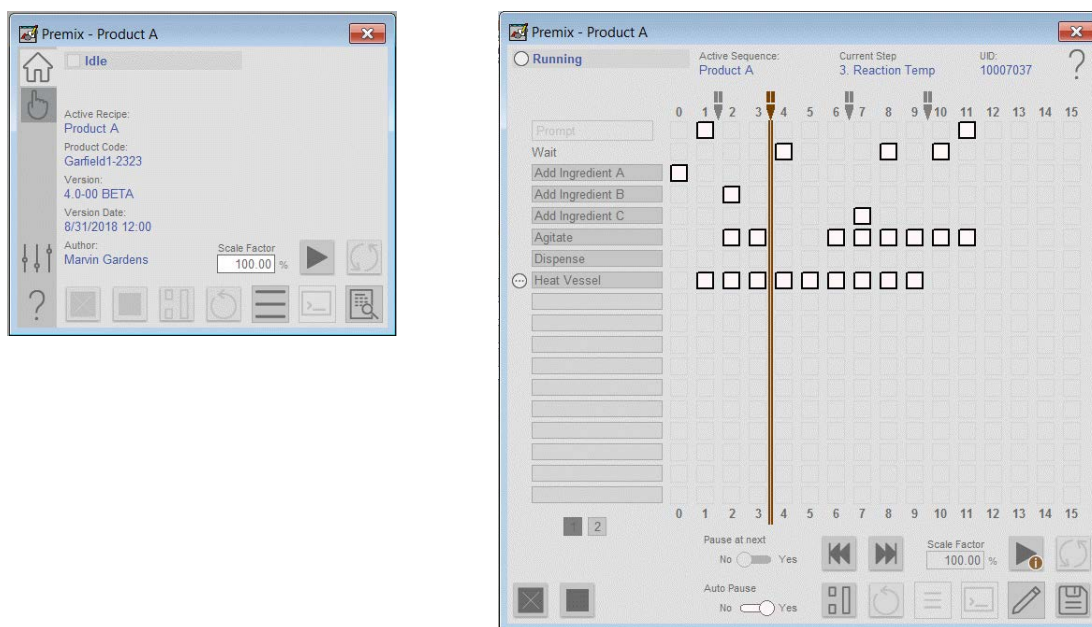
For more information, see these additional resources.

Resource	Description
PlantPAx Logix Batch and Sequence Manager Reference Manual, publication <a href="#">PROCES-RM007</a>	Provides procedures on how to use LBSM to store recipes and sequences equipment and phases to make products.
SequenceManager Controller Reference Manual, publication <a href="#">1756-RM101</a>	Describes how to install, configure, and run SequenceManager Controls.
FactoryTalk Batch User Manual, publication <a href="#">BATCH-UM011</a>	Contains instructions for configuring security and services, and implementing components, such as the FactoryTalk Batch server, simulator, and performance chart.

Resource	Description
PlantPax Batch Design Considerations Reference Manual, publication <a href="#">PROCES-RM008</a>	Provides guidance on selected batch implementation topics in a PlantPax system.
Batch Application Toolkit Quick Start, publication <a href="#">IASIMP-QS042</a>	Provides a framework for how to use the tasks to complete the components of the Toolkit.
PhaseManager User Manual, publication <a href="#">LOGIX-UM001</a>	Provides instructions on how to configure and use a Logix 5000 controller with equipment phases.
FactoryTalk Batch PhaseManager User Manual, <a href="#">BATCHX-UM011</a>	Provide instructions on how to use phase logic to integrate FactoryTalk Batch software with a Logix Designer application.

## Logix Batch and Sequence Manager

The Logix Batch and Sequence Manager application is controller-resident batch execution for single-unit or multiple-independent unit operations.



An LBSM application is best for:

- Single-unit batch processes, with 5...10 recipes, that can be defined with four real and four Boolean parameters per phase
- Processes that need frequent recipe changes
- Systems where recipe changes must be made through an HMI
- Process skids
- Pilot plants

### LBSM Details

The LBSM application provides controller logic and HMI objects.

An LBSM application supports:

- PhaseManager programs and custom sequences
- Maximum of 32 recipes per controller
- Maximum of 32 steps per recipe
- Maximum of 4 real and 4 Boolean Parameters/phase
- Recipe changes are made from the HMI

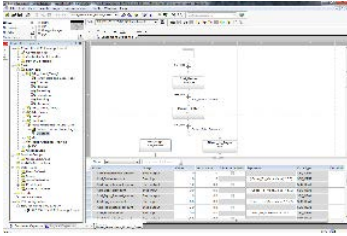
For more information, see PlantPax Logix Batch and Sequence Manager Reference Manual, publication [PROCES-RM007](#).

## SequenceManager Controls

SequenceManager is a firmware-based feature that directs PhaseManager programs inside a Logix 5000 controller in an ordered sequence.

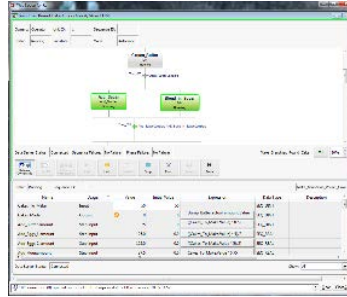
### Editor – Logix Designer application

Define a procedural sequence that coordinates the execution of equipment phases



### Operator – FTView SE

Monitor and interact with a running procedural sequence in the HMI



### Data Collection & Reporting Services

Generate events used to produce batch reports and procedural analysis



A SequenceManager application is best for:

- Small batch systems (single unit)
- Systems with no server connectivity
- Process skids
- Modular systems connected into larger FactoryTalk Batch processes
- Fast processes

## SequenceManager Details

The Logix controller must have firmware support to implement a SequenceManager application. Not all controllers support the SequenceManager application.

Use the SequenceManager to model and execute sequential manufacturing processes using the ControlLogix features described in the following tasks:

- Configure the coordination of Equipment Phase execution using the Equipment Sequence Editor.
- Execute Equipment Sequence programs using ControlLogix.
- Monitor and manage running Equipment Sequences using the Logix Designer application.
- Enable operators to monitor and manage running Equipment Sequences and Equipment Phases by adding SequenceManager ActiveX controls to FactoryTalk® View SE displays.
- Subscribe and collect generated sequence events using SequenceManager Event Client Service and SequenceManager Event Archiving Service.

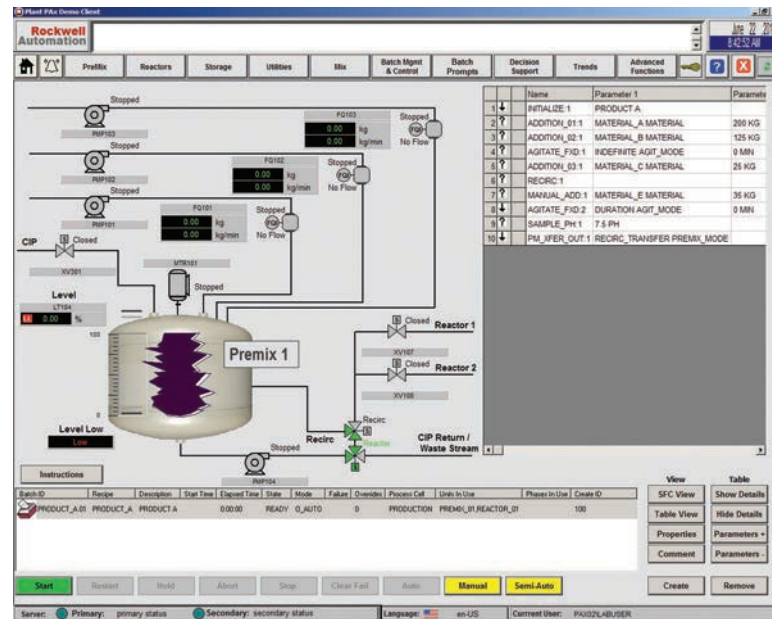
For more information, see SequenceManager Quick Start Guide, publication [1756-QS109](#).

## Factory Talk Batch Application

A FactoryTalk Batch application is a server-based, comprehensive approach to batch management.

- Handles complex unit coordination, resource arbitration, and optimization of routes
- Manages recipes including formulations, scaling, secure approvals, and versioning

- Includes integrated visualization and reporting



A FactoryTalk Batch application is best for:

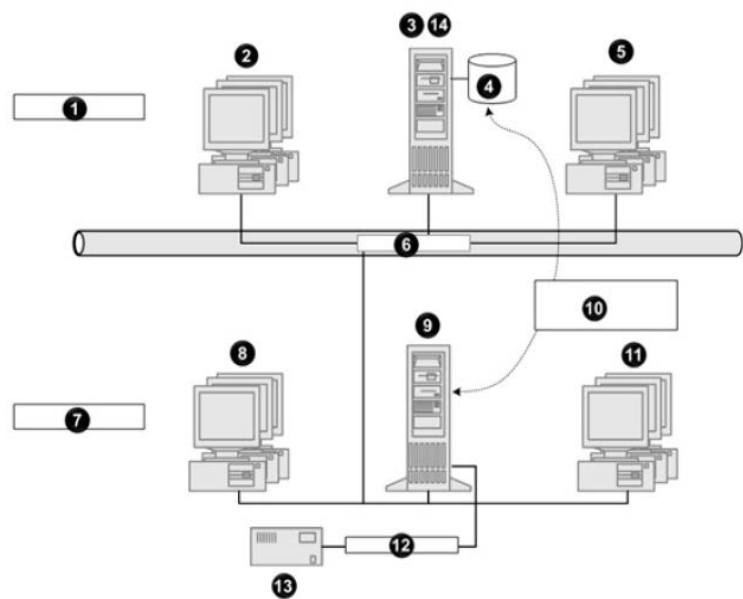
- Multi-unit batch control
- Integration of process skids
- Integration with third-party systems

## FactoryTalk Batch Details

A maximum of 10 FactoryTalk Batch servers can exist in a PlantPAx DCS. Follow these guidelines when you install FactoryTalk Batch on the AppServ-Batch server:

- Install the FactoryTalk® eProcedure® server on the same computer as the FactoryTalk Batch server.
- Install the FactoryTalk Batch Material server on a computer with the SQL server. The computer must be different than the computer that hosts the FactoryTalk Batch server.
- Install the FactoryTalk Event Archiver Database and Management Tool on another server from the FactoryTalk Batch server.

Example FactoryTalk Batch Network



No.	Description	No.	Description
1	Site level	8	FactoryTalk eProcedure clients
2	FactoryTalk Batch Material Manager clients	9	FactoryTalk Batch server (1...10) and FactoryTalk eProcedure server
3, 14	FactoryTalk Batch Material server; FactoryTalk Event Archiver database	10	FactoryTalk Batch server connects to SQL server for Master Recipe storage
4	SQL server	11	FactoryTalk Batch View clients
5	FactoryTalk Batch clients	12	Proprietary network
6	TCP/IP	13	Process-connected device
7	Plant floor		

For more information, see:

- PlantPAx Batch Design Considerations Reference Manual, publication [PROCES-RM008](#)
- FactoryTalk Batch User Guide, publication [BATCH-UM011](#)

FactoryTalk Batch Server with Redundant Controllers

Using a FactoryTalk Batch server with redundant controllers requires an understanding of the batch server hold/failure propagation behaviors.

Redundant ControlLogix 5580 controllers do not support ControlNet® communications. This means a FactoryTalk Batch application with active phases isn't a bumpless event when a switchover from primary to secondary controllers occurs.

The phases switch over and remain in their respective state and code executes as expected, but the FactoryTalk Batch server observes a brief momentary communication loss over the EtherNet/IP™ network.

This communication loss is enough for the batch server to issue Hold propagation on all recipes with phase actively running in the controller than switched over. In this circumstance, the transitions in the recipe Held while the phases in the controller are still running.

Hold Propagation

The Hold Propagation area lets you indicate the hold propagation type to use when the FactoryTalk Batch server detects a failure that is caused by a watchdog timeout, a handshake timeout, or a phase failure (PHASE\_F > 0).

Hold propagation is a configurable selection that defines how the batch server reacts to failures that affect an active control recipe. Configure the selection in the Equipment Editor, which stores the value in the BATCHSVR.INI.

The screenshot shows the 'Server Options' dialog box with the following configuration:

- Hold Propagation:** ☒ Batch, ☐ Unit, ☐ Operation, ☐ Phase, ☐ None
- Miscellaneous:**
  - Maximum Log File Size: 1000000 Bytes
  - Minimum Disk Space: 1000000 Bytes
  - Default Batch ID: BATCH\_ID
  - ☐ Enable Event Journal Signatures
- OPC Communications Timeout:**
  - Period (msec): 10000
  - Allowable Failures: 5

A Hold command that is associated with a failure propagates up through the recipe hierarchy as high as the mode and selected option allows.

Hold Propagation Option	Description
None	The batch server does not issue a Hold command to any level of the running procedure for any phase failure. Therefore, the phase logic is solely responsible for putting a failed phase into Hold.
Phase	The batch server issues a Hold command to only the phase in which the phase failure occurred. This includes only the active step within the operation that experienced the failure, and not the active transition that belongs to the operation. Therefore, only the failed phase is commanded to Hold by the batch server and any other level of the batch remains unaffected such as, any running phase, operation, unit procedure, and the procedure itself
Operation	The batch server issues a Hold command to the running operation in which the phase failure occurred. This includes all active steps and transitions within the operation level of the batch. Therefore, all running phases within this operation, and the active operation transitions are commanded to Hold by the batch server. Any other running operation, unit procedure, and the procedure itself aren't affected by the Hold command; the batch server does not propagate the Hold command to these other levels of the batch.
Unit	The batch server issues a Hold command to the running unit procedure in which the phase failure occurred. All running phases and operations within this unit procedure, and the unit procedure itself, are commanded to Hold by the batch server. This includes all active steps and transitions within these specific levels of the batch operations and the unit procedure. Any other running unit procedure and procedure itself aren't affected by the Hold propagation; the batch server does not propagate the Hold command to these other levels of the batch.
Batch	The batch server issues a Hold command to the entire running procedure in which the phase failure occurred. All running phases, operations, unit procedures, and the procedure itself, are commanded to Hold. This includes all active steps and transitions within all levels of the batch.

The most common event to trigger Hold propagation is an abnormal process condition being continually monitored by the controller.

When an abnormal process event occurs in the system, the controller logic sets phase failure for the appropriate phases actively running in the unit, or units. As a result, the phase failure tags are set with a value greater than zero value by the controller logic. The value corresponds with a known failure condition in the process. The batch server can display the failure to the operators and record the appropriate phase failure event.

## State Composite Evaluation

The Hold propagation configuration determines the highest procedure level within the running recipe for which the Hold command from the batch server is issued when a failure is detected.



The state of each batch level (such as procedure, unit procedure, operation) is continually evaluated by the batch server. Each batch level state is based on the composite states of its underlying steps and transitions.

- In the case of an operation, the composite state is based on the state of all active phases and the state of their underlying active phases transitions.
- In the case of the unit procedure, the composite state is based on the state of all active operation steps and the state of their underlying active operation transitions.
- In the case of the procedure, the composite state is based on the state of all active unit procedure steps and the state of their underlying active unit procedure transitions.

### Order of Precedence for Batch States

State	Element Type	Priority
RESTARTING	Step'	12 (highest)
HOLDING	Step	11
ABORTING	Step	
RUNNING	Step	9
ARMING	Transition	9
ARMED	Transition	9
FIRING	Transition	9
STARTING	Step	8
STOPPING	Step	8
HELD	Step	6
HELD	Transition	6
IDLE	Step	5
ABORTED	Transition	4
ABORTED	Transition	4
STOPPED	Step	3
STOPPED	Transition	3
COMPLETE	Step	2
NOTCONNECTED	Step	1
UNKNOWN	Step	0 (lowest)

If the owner of the step (a phase) is EXTERNAL, then the step isn't considered in the calculation.

The determining state for any procedure level (procedure, unit procedure, or operation) is based on the states of the active recipe elements it contains – both, steps and transitions. All these S88 procedure levels are virtual to the PC memory in the batch server, except for SequenceManager operations which reside in the controller, much like most phases.

When a procedure level of a control recipe is connected and commanded by the batch server, the state of each of its procedure levels is derived by a composite state analysis to determine a final state for each procedure level. As the path of recipe execution proceeds through a control recipe, the state of each recipe element object is dynamic, and is continuously updated. The state with the highest priority becomes the state of the procedure level for an operation, unit procedure or procedure.

- In the case of an Operation procedure level, the composite state is based on the state of all active phases e active transitions within the operation.
- In the case of the Unit Procedure level, the composite state is based on the state of all active operation steps and active transitions within the unit procedure.
- In the case of the Procedure level, the composite state is based on the state of all active unit procedure steps and active transitions in the procedure.

### Types of Failures

The batch server translates a phase failure value to an enumeration string that presents an actionable string of text to the operators for the type of failure. A phase failure is the most



common type of failure. Other types of failures may occur in the batch system such as, a parameter download failure, a report upload failure, a failed phase request, a request timeout, a command timeout, a quality tag status other than good, a watchdog failure, or a communication failure.

In most cases, the batch server reacts to these failures just as it does for the phase failure event with Hold propagation. An exception occurs whenever the batch server experiences a communication failure to a controller, a data server, or a phase.

When communication to the controller or phase is compromised, the Hold propagation only acts on the components of the control recipe that are without risk, or internal to the batch server memory (procedure, unit procedure, operation). In this case, the risk pertains to those components where the phases or SequenceManager operations reside, so Hold propagation isn't executed to the phase level or SequenceManager operations.

If communications are restored quickly so the watchdog in the controller does not time out and place the running phases into a Held state, running phases stay running as if nothing occurred. If communications are restored quickly and the controller phases aren't configured to Hold upon communication loss, then running phases also stay running as if nothing occurred.

This momentary communication blip where phases remain running can cause a dynamic when all other levels (procedure, unit procedure, operation) are sent Hold commands upon failure according to the Hold propagation configuration. As a result, these procedure levels are Held but the composite state of a running phase and Held transition is running state for the operation. This traverses up the control recipe where a running operation step and a Held unit procedure transition evaluates as a running state for the unit procedure, and so on one more level to the procedure. With transitions Held, the recipe can't move transition to other steps, and the recipe could act to an untrained operator as though it's hung, or unresponsive. One solution is to issue a Hold command to the control recipe, then a restart to the control recipe to get all steps and transitions in an active and running state as expected.

In the case of redundant systems with newer ControlLogix firmware revisions that do not use ControlNet communication, the switchover of the controllers where active phases are being run by the FactoryTalk Batch application isn't a bumpless event. The phases switch over and remain in their perspective state and code executes as expected, but the FactoryTalk batch server observes a brief momentary communication loss. This loss is enough for the batch server to issue Hold propagation on all recipes with phase actively running in the controller than switched over. In this circumstance, you can find transitions in the recipe Held while the phases in the controller are still running.

**Notes:**

## Automatic Diagnostics

Automatic diagnostics is a system-level feature in devices that provides device diagnostics to HMIs and other clients, with zero programming. Devices that support automatic diagnostics have the feature enabled by default.

You can deactivate and activate the whole feature while online or offline from the Controller Properties dialog box. You can also deactivate automatic diagnostics for a specific device in the module properties.

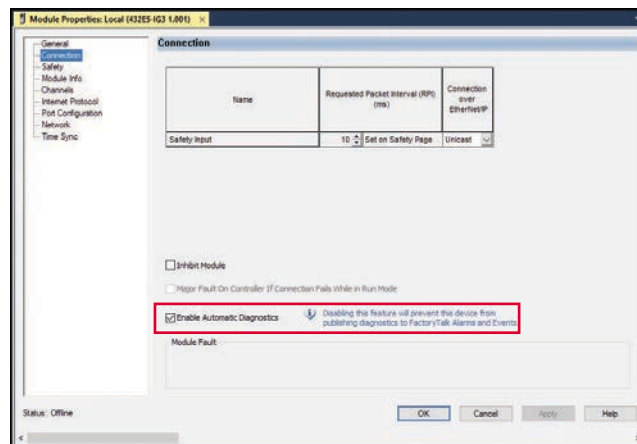
### Configure Automatic Diagnostics

On the Controller properties Advanced tab, Enable Automatic Diagnostics is a new feature that was added with the process controllers, firmware revision 33. When enabled, it sends analog I/O modules diagnostic information to the Automatic Diagnostics Event Summary object.



If deactivated, you only see Mode changes and loss on communication with controllers in the Automatic Diagnostics Event Summary object.

The automatic diagnostics feature is enabled by default in the Logix Designer application. The deactivation of automatic diagnostics at the device level deactivates all device-driven diagnostics. You still get device faulted/communication loss diagnostics as the controller drives these diagnostics.



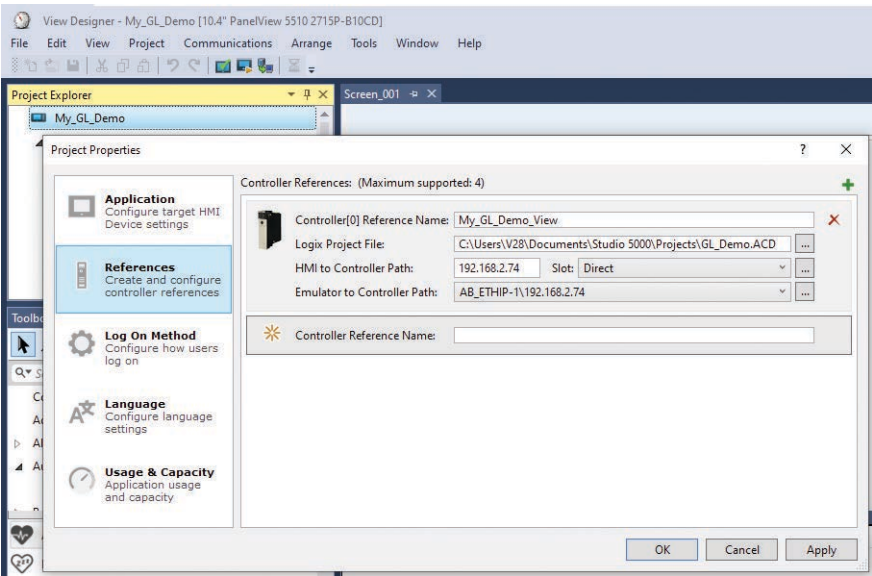
### Automatic Diagnostics on PanelView 5000 Display

Automatic diagnostics are enabled by default on all devices. When you use a PanelView 5000 display with firmware revision 8 or later, the automatic diagnostic messages from the device display automatically. For more information, see the Automatic Diagnostics chapter in publication [9324-GR001](#).

When specific events occur, messages automatically report because the controller links to the PanelView 5000 display. In your View Designer project properties, set the Controller References to the controller of the 432ES network interface module:

- Logix project File
- HMI to controller
- Emulator to controller path

Figure 14 - Bind Controller to PanelView Project

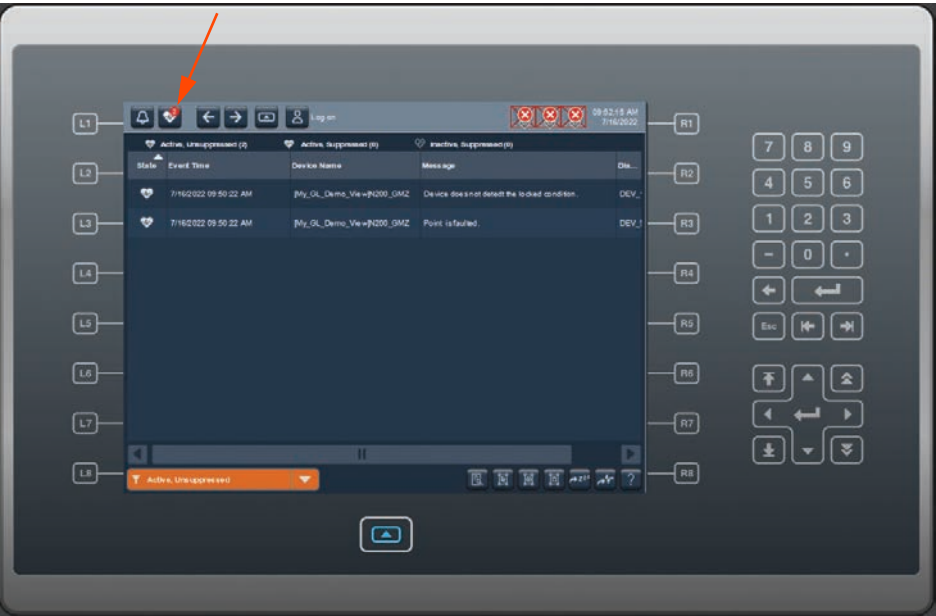


When an event occurs, the diagnostic icon shows the number of active and unsuppressed diagnostic events. Each line entry shows:

- State: Active, inactive, or suppressed
- Event Time: Date and time when the event occurred
- Device Name: Path to the device and the device name
- Message: Preprogrammed message for the diagnostic code
- Diagnostic Code: The diagnostic code that applies to the event

**IMPORTANT** You can rearrange and configure additional columns. See Studio 5000 View Designer® help for more information.

Figure 15 - Diagnostics Page on PanelView 5510



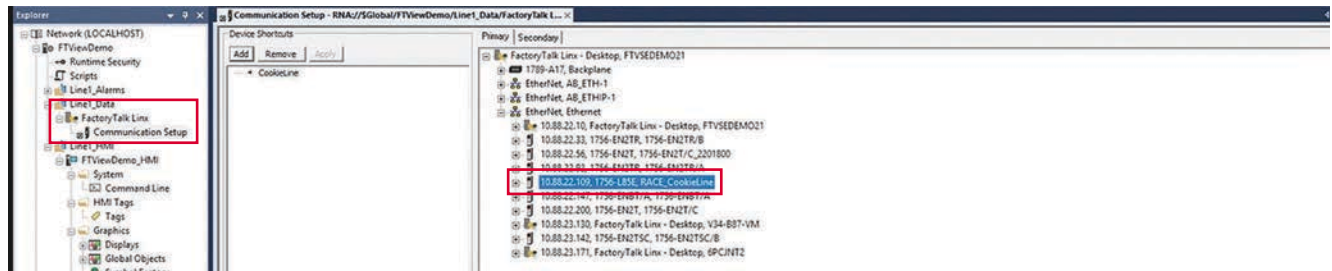
# Automatic Diagnostics on FactoryTalk View SE

**IMPORTANT** Verify that FactoryTalk Alarms and Events is installed and configured before attempting to view automatic diagnostics. For more information, see publication [FTAE-RM001](#).

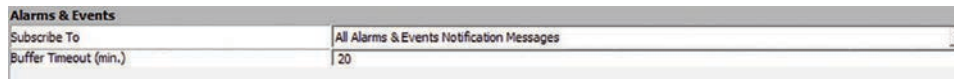
You can use the Subscribe To setting under FactoryTalk Alarms and Events in FactoryTalk Linx to activate or deactivate diagnostic information that is sent to the Automatic Diagnostics Event Summary object.

## Subscribe To

1. To adjust your automatic diagnostics, access the Communication setup and select your device.



2. To receive all notifications from your devices, set the Subscribe To setting to All Alarms & Events Notification Messages.



If the Subscribe To is set to Only Alarms Notification Messages, then the Automatic Diagnostics Event Summary object is blank.

## View Automatic Diagnostic Messages

**IMPORTANT** After Logix version 33 release, any device can participate in automatic diagnostics with an AOP update.

Events are delivered through FactoryTalk® Alarms and Events (FTAE) with FactoryTalk View Site Edition (SE) v12 and greater as a Display Client™.

Figure 16 - FTView SE v12.0 Automatic Diagnostics Example

State	Ass...	Event Time	Area	Device Name	Catalog	Product Type	Message
<all>	<all>	<all>	<all>	<all>	<all>	<all>	<all>
✖		4/13/2020 10:16:17 AM	[AD_Demo]Remote_DLR	1756-EN2TR	Communications Adapter	Connection Lost with Device	
✖		4/13/2020 10:16:22 AM	[AD_Demo]OB16D	1756-OB16D/A	General Purpose Discrete I/O	Point 1, No Load - The wire is disconnected from the module.	
✖		4/13/2020 10:16:22 AM	[AD_Demo]OB16D	1756-OB16D/A	General Purpose Discrete I/O	Point 2, No Load - The wire is disconnected from the module.	
✖		4/13/2020 10:16:22 AM	[AD_Demo]OB16D	1756-OB16D/A	General Purpose Discrete I/O	Point 4, No Load - The wire is disconnected from the module.	
✖		4/13/2020 10:16:22 AM	[AD_Demo]OB16D	1756-OB16D/A	General Purpose Discrete I/O	Point 5, No Load - The wire is disconnected from the module.	
✖		4/13/2020 10:16:22 AM	[AD_Demo]OB16D	1756-OB16D/A	General Purpose Discrete I/O	Point 10, No Load - The wire is disconnected from the module.	
✖		4/13/2020 10:16:22 AM	[AD_Demo]OB16D	1756-OB16D/A	General Purpose Discrete I/O	Point 12, No Load - The wire is disconnected from the module.	
✖		4/13/2020 10:16:22 AM	[AD_Demo]OB16D	1756-OB16D/A	General Purpose Discrete I/O	Point 14, No Load - The wire is disconnected from the module.	
✖		4/13/2020 10:16:22 AM	[AD_Demo]OB16D	1756-OB16D/A	General Purpose Discrete I/O	Point 15, No Load - The wire is disconnected from the module.	
✖		4/13/2020 10:21:36 AM	[AD_Demo]AutomaticDiagnostics_v33_Demo	1756-L83E	Programmable Logic Controller	ajor Fault T04:C34 - Program Fault: A timer instruction had a negative value for its PRE or ACC	

To view these diagnostic messages, you need:

- FactoryTalk Alarms and Events, version 6.20 and greater
- FactoryTalk View SE, version 12 and greater

Automatic diagnostics are enabled by default. Check the configuration of your device to see whether the firmware supports automatic diagnostics.

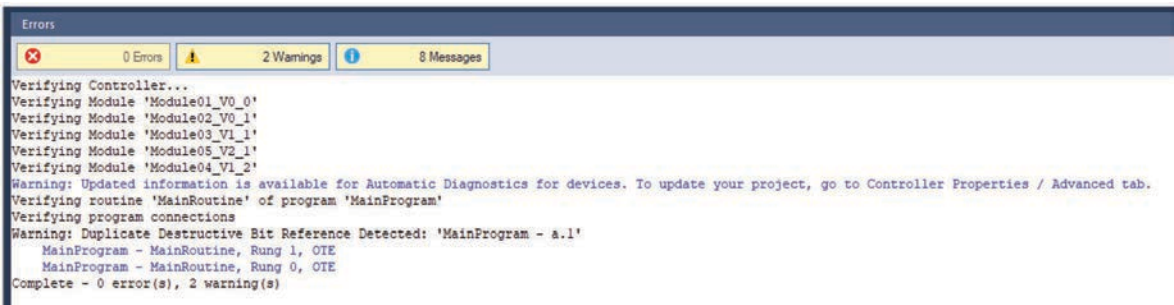
# Automatic Diagnostics History

FactoryTalk Alarms and Events (FTAE) keeps a historical log all Automatic Diagnostics activity. The historical log is stored in the same SQL database as the FTAE alarms. FTLinx must be configured to log alarm and event historical information into the SQL database. In the FTView SE application, the historical log is viewed using the data grid control. From the data grid, you can export to CSV.

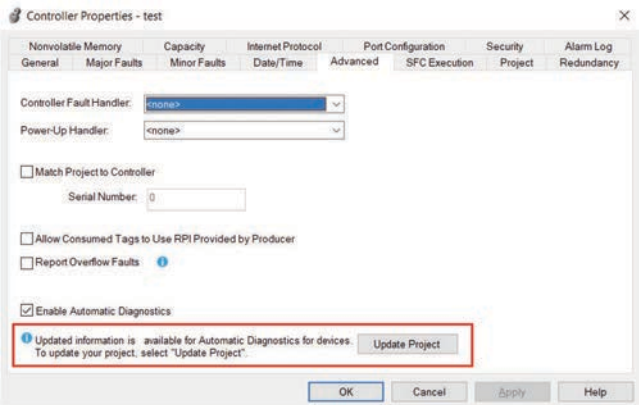
Automatic Diagnostics Log								
Message	ServerName	State	Catalog	MajorRev	MinorRev	EventType	SourcePath	MessageCode
Connection Lost with Device	FactoryTalk L...	1	1756-IA16/A	3	1	2	RNA://\$Global...	
Minor Fault: T04:C06 - Program Fault: GSV/SSV operand invalid.	FactoryTalk L...	1	1756-L85E	33	11	2	RNA://\$Global...	
Connection to controller is normal.	FactoryTalk L...	0		0	0	2	RNA://\$Global...	
Connection to controller is normal.	FactoryTalk L...	0		0	0	2	RNA://\$Global...	
Connection to controller has been lost.	FactoryTalk L...	1	1756-L85E	33	11	2	RNA://\$Global...	
Connection to controller is normal.	FactoryTalk L...	0	1756-L85E	33	11	2	RNA://\$Global...	
Connection to controller has been lost.	FactoryTalk L...	1	1756-L85E	33	11	2	RNA://\$Global...	
Connection to controller is normal.	FactoryTalk L...	0	1756-L85E	33	11	2	RNA://\$Global...	

# Online Updates of Device Additional Diagnostics

- Additional device diagnostics are distributed with updated AOPs
- These additional device diagnostics can be added while online to a running controller
- You are notified that updates are available in the following ways:
  - Project verification warning



- Information message in the controller Properties (Advanced tab)



Additional diagnostics can be downloaded to the controller by pressing the Update Project button.

## PlantPax Security Certification

The PlantPax® architecture supports IEC-62443-3-3 SL 1 security requirements. To help meet these requirements, reference these publications:

For this information	See
Guidance on how to conduct security assessments, implement Rockwell Automation products in a secure system, harden the control system, manage user access, and dispose of equipment.	System Security Design Guidelines Reference Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-RM001</a>
Network architecture recommendations	Converged Plantwide Ethernet (CPwE) Design and Implementation Guide, publication <a href="#">ENET-TD001</a>
Windows® infrastructure recommendations How to configure and use these Rockwell Automation products: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• FactoryTalk® Directory</li> <li>• FactoryTalk® Activation Manager</li> <li>• FactoryTalk® Security</li> <li>• FactoryTalk® AssetCentre</li> </ul>	Security Configuration User Manual, publication <a href="#">SECURE-UM001</a> .
How to configure and use CIP Security™ with Rockwell Automation products to improve the security of your industrial automation system	CIP Security™ with Rockwell Automation Products Application Technique, publication <a href="#">SECURE-AT001</a>

### PlantPax Security Architecture

Integrating industrial automation and control systems (IACS) with enterprise-level systems enables better visibility and collaboration, which helps improve efficiency, production, and profitability. But greater connectivity also exposes control systems to additional cybersecurity risks. Availability is the most crucial aspect of a secure IACS. To meet the needs of industrial environments, Rockwell Automation aligns PlantPax systems that are developed on our technology with the international standard ISA-99/IEC 62443-3-3. This standard is designed specifically for Industrial Automation and Control Systems and defines procedures to implement an electronically secure system.

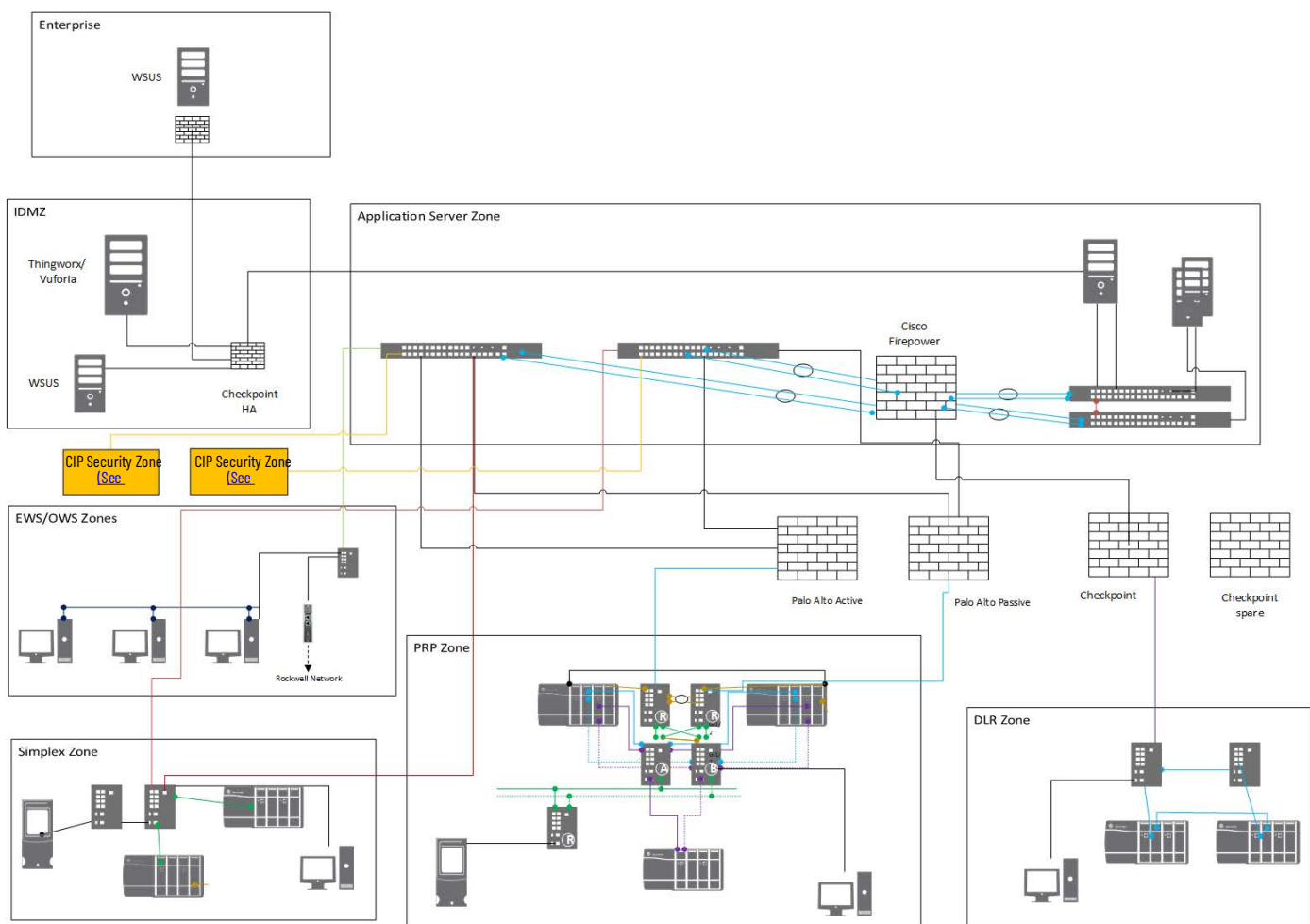
ISA-99/IEC 62443 is based on seven foundational requirements that cover a defense-in-depth approach that is suited for an IACS. These foundational requirements are:

- FR1: Identification and authentication control (IAC)
- FR2: Use control (UC)
- FR3: System integrity (SI)
- FR4: Data confidentiality (DC)
- FR5: Restricted data flow (RDF)
- FR6: Timely response to events (TRE)
- FR7: Resource availability (RA)

The guidelines and checklists in this appendix present the collective strategy to meet the ISA-99/IEC 62443-3-3 SL1 requirements in conformant PlantPax systems. The intent of a certified architecture is to demonstrate security competency, as well as to provide a standard, prescriptive reference design.



The certified PlantPax architecture relies on zones to segment the system.





Zone	Description
IDMZ	An IDMZ is required to connect to the corporate network. This zone contains a firewall stack, a pivot host, SEP Server and WSUS host. Additional hosts can be added, as needed. Configure the IDMZ to separate untrusted (public) zones from the trusted (private) zones. Communication outside of the IDMZ is considered untrusted.
Application Server	The Application Server zone houses all application servers. Each server is deployed on a separate VM. The following mandatory nodes must be deployed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• FactoryTalk Directory server</li> <li>• FactoryTalk® View SE HMI server</li> <li>• FactoryTalk View Data server</li> </ul> Other optional servers include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• FactoryTalk® Historian server</li> <li>• FactoryTalk® AssetCentre server</li> <li>• SQL server</li> </ul>
EWS/OWS	This zone contains the engineering workstations to provide programmer access and the operator workstations to provide operator access. Each workstation has the necessary software to program or interact with the system. Workstations can be virtualized or they can be ThinManager® clients.  Each EWS has: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Studio 5000® environment</li> <li>• FactoryTalk View Enterprise Edition</li> <li>• RSLinx® Classic</li> <li>• FactoryTalk AssetCentre client</li> </ul> Additional software includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Studio 5000 Application Code Manager,</li> <li>• Microsoft® Office</li> <li>• PuTTY</li> </ul> Each OWS has the FactoryTalk View runtime client. Additional software includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• FactoryTalk Historian client</li> <li>• FactoryTalk AssetCentre client</li> <li>• Microsoft Office</li> </ul>
PRP	The control system is segmented into process areas. Each process area contains the hardware necessary to run and operate that area. The topology of each area can be: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PRP</li> <li>• DLR</li> <li>• Simplex</li> </ul>
DLR	
Simplex	

## Trusted Zones

ISA-99/IEC 62443-3-3 SL1 requires the capability to separate trusted and untrusted zones. You can use a standard firewall implementation to separate trusted traffic and untrusted traffic. Standard implementation creates two basic security zones that are known as inside and outside. The inside, or trusted zone, is also referred to as the private zone. The outside, or untrusted zone, is also known as the public zone. The public zone is outside the control of an organization and can be thought of as simply the public Internet.

Rockwell Automation recommends a risk assessment for network security zoning. Your risk assessment and risk posture help determine the trust level of each zone. You can have multiple levels of trust on inside zones with different types of access. For further guidance on risk assessments, see the ISA-99/IEC 62443-3-2 standard.

## Certificate Authority

A trusted certificate authority, also known as a commercial certificate authority, is a third-party entity that issues certificates for organizations that request them. They aren't controlled in any way by the person or organization that requests a certificate from them. A trusted CA issues publicly trusted digital certificates that meet at least the minimum regulatory standards (baseline requirements) that are outlined by the CA/Browser Forum (CA/B Forum).

A private certificate authority, also known as private PKI, is an internal CA that exists within a larger organization (typically an enterprise) that issues its own certificates.

- A private CA functions like its public counterparts, but a private CA's certificates are trusted only by its internal users, clients, and IT systems.
- A private CA issues certificates that restrict access to a select group of users.
- You must configure and host the private CA yourself.

For more information about CAs, see Microsoft [Server Certificate Deployment Planning](#) information or the Microsoft documentation for your operating system.

## System Security Feature Checklists

Use the following checklists to secure your system.

Identify and authenticate all users.

### Requirements for Identification and Authentication Control

✓	Product	Required to Meet IEC-62443-3-3 SL 1	Details
	Windows® infrastructure	Yes	<p>Configure and use the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Create Active Directory groups and unique users for each zone</li> <li>• Enable 802.1X authentication on all switchports</li> <li>• Implement encryption algorithms for wireless access (such as WPA2 Enterprise, TLS, or IPSEC)</li> <li>• Implement public key infrastructure (PKI) certificates</li> <li>• Authenticate Group membership via a RADIUS server</li> <li>• Enable system notifications</li> <li>• Configure Kerberos</li> <li>• Configure an interactive login policy</li> <li>• Monitor unsuccessful login attempts</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Configure System Security Features User Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-UM001</a></li> <li>• System Security Design Guidelines Reference Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-RM001</a></li> <li>• Deploying 802.11 Wireless LAN Technology within a Converged Plantwide Ethernet Architecture Design and Implementation Guide, <a href="#">ENET-TD006</a></li> <li>• Deploying Identity and Mobility Services within a Converged Plantwide Ethernet Architecture Design and Implementation Guide, <a href="#">ENET-TD008</a></li> <li>• Site-to-Site VPN to a Converged Plantwide Ethernet Architecture Design and Implementation Guide, <a href="#">ENET-TD012</a></li> </ul>
	Password strength and recommendations	Yes	<p>Follow standard guidelines for password strength and recommendations</p> <p>For more information, see:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">NIST Special Publication 800-63B Digital Identity Guidelines</a></li> <li>• Configure System Security Features User Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-UM001</a></li> <li>• System Security Design Guidelines Reference Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-RM001</a></li> </ul>
	Windows domain	Yes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Configure the PlantPax domain controller.</li> <li>• Configure all operating system clients as domain members</li> <li>• Enable multi-factor authentication on the domain controller</li> <li>• Create and manage all accounts in the Active Directory</li> <li>• Require administrative credentials to manage account activities</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Chapter 2 Domain or Workgroup</a></li> <li>• System Security Design Guidelines Reference Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-RM001</a></li> </ul>

## Requirements for Identification and Authentication Control

✓	Product	Required to Meet IEC-62443-3-3 SL 1	Details
	FactoryTalk Directory software FactoryTalk Security software	Yes	<p>Configure appropriate:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Users, groups, roles</li> <li>• Security policies</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Configure System Security Features User Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-UM001</a>.</li> <li>• System Security Design Guidelines Reference Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-RM001</a></li> </ul>
	Wireless access	Optional	<p>Configure and use the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Implement encryption algorithms for wireless access (such as WPA2 Enterprise, AES Encryption TLS, or IPSEC)</li> <li>• Obtain access to the IACS from an untrusted network through the IDMZ with multi-factor authentication and certification-base authentication</li> <li>• Use encryption tunnels (such as VPN and IPSEC) between VLANs</li> <li>• Allow remote access only when necessary to authorized users in the Active Directory</li> </ul> <p><b>Important:</b> Hardwired connections are always preferred. Never use wireless connections for safety functions.</p> <p>For more information, see:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• System Security Design Guidelines Reference Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-RM001</a></li> </ul>
	FactoryTalk Secure Remote Access	Optional (Required if access via untrusted networks is desired)	<p>Configure appropriate:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Users, groups, roles</li> <li>• Security policies</li> <li>• Logging</li> </ul> <p>By default, MFA is enforced for all users Traffic is encrypted</p> <p>For more information, see:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Stratix 4300 Remote Access Routers user manual, <a href="#">1783-UM014A-EN-P</a></li> </ul>

Define control policies to control the use between users and assets.

## Requirements for Use Control

✓	Product	Required to Meet IEC-62443-3-3 SL 1	Details
	Windows infrastructure	Yes	<p>Configure and use the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Active Directory Groups for each zone</li> <li>• Group membership authentication via RADIUS server</li> <li>• 802.1X authentication on all switchports</li> <li>• Session lock</li> <li>• Remote session termination</li> <li>• Concurrent session control</li> <li>• Interactive login policy</li> <li>• Notifications for unsuccessful login attempts</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Configure System Security Features User Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-UM001</a></li> <li>• System Security Design Guidelines Reference Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-RM001</a></li> <li>• Deploying 802.11 Wireless LAN Technology within a Converged Plantwide Ethernet Architecture Design and Implementation Guide, <a href="#">ENET-TD006</a></li> <li>• Deploying Identity and Mobility Services within a Converged Plantwide Ethernet Architecture Design and Implementation Guide, <a href="#">ENET-TD008</a></li> </ul>
	Windows domain	Yes	<p>Configure all operating system clients as domain members</p> <p>For more information, see:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Chapter 2 Domain or Workgroup</a></li> </ul>
	FactoryTalk Directory software FactoryTalk Security software	Yes	<p>Configure appropriate User Groups in each Area to support the segregation of duties and least privilege</p> <p>For more information, see:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Configure System Security Features User Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-UM001</a>.</li> </ul>

## Requirements for Use Control

✓	Product	Required to Meet IEC-62443-3-3 SL 1	Details
	ThinManager software	Recommended	<p>Manage mobile and portable device access via a ThinManager server and route through the IDMZ. The ThinManager server limits mobile applications to view only.</p> <p>For more information, see"</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ThinManager and FactoryTalk View SE Deployment Guide, <a href="#">TM-AT001</a></li> <li>ThinManager User Manual, <a href="#">TM-UM001</a></li> </ul>
	FactoryTalk AssetCentre software	Yes	<p>Configure and use the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Auditable events</li> <li>Audit storage capacity</li> <li>Diagnostics and health log</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>System Security Design Guidelines Reference Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-RM001</a></li> </ul>

Protect the integrity of transmitted data. Recognize changes to information during communication.

## Requirements for System Integrity

✓	Product	Required to Meet IEC-62443-3-3 SL 1	Details
	Windows infrastructure	Yes	<p>Configure and use the Active Directory and domain structure to handle authorization.</p> <p>For more information, see:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>System Security Design Guidelines Reference Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-RM001</a></li> </ul>
	Converged Plantwide Ethernet architecture (CPwE)	Yes	<p>Configure the Industrial Demilitarized Zone (IDMZ) with appropriate firewalls. Use TCP/IP connections between zones.</p> <p>For more information, see:</p> <p>Converged Plantwide Ethernet (CPwE) Design and Implementation Guide, <a href="#">ENET-TD001</a></p>
	Antivirus software	Yes	<p>Use antivirus and anti-malware software to harden workstations.</p> <p><b>Important:</b> Confirm that antivirus software does not affect control system processing.</p> <p>For more information, see:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>System Security Design Guidelines Reference Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-RM001</a></li> </ul>
	CIP Security™	Recommended	<p>Use FactoryTalk® Policy Manager software (installed on the FactoryTalk Directory Server) to define communication between zones.</p> <p>For more information, see:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>CIP Security with Rockwell Automation Products Application Technique, <a href="#">SECURE-AT001</a></li> <li>Deploying CIP Security within a Converged Plantwide Ethernet Architecture, <a href="#">ENET-TD022</a></li> <li>FactoryTalk Policy Manager Getting Results Guide, <a href="#">FTALK-GR001</a></li> </ul>
	FactoryTalk AssetCentre software	Yes	<p>Configure and use the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Change detection and reporting</li> <li>Scheduled backups</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure System Security Features User Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-UM001</a></li> <li>System Security Design Guidelines Reference Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-RM001</a></li> </ul>
	PlantPAx process instructions and object library	Recommended	<p>The process instructions and library objects are designed to work with Rockwell Automation products to provide:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Input validation</li> <li>Deterministic output</li> <li>Alarms and error handling</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">PROCES-RM200</a></p>

Protect the confidentiality of communication and data to help prevent unauthorized disclosure.

### Requirements for Data Confidentiality

✓	Product	Required to Meet IEC-62443-3-3 SL 1	Details
	Converged Plantwide Ethernet architecture (CPwE)	Yes	<p>Segment the network into the required zones and use firewalls. Use conduits to zone-to-zone connections. Use encrypted hard disk drives in computers. If necessary, use cryptographic algorithms according to industry practices.</p> <p>For more information, see:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Converged Plantwide Ethernet (CPwE) Design and Implementation Guide, <a href="#">ENET-TD001</a></li> <li>Deploying Industrial Firewalls within a Converged Plantwide Ethernet Architecture, <a href="#">ENET-TD002</a></li> </ul>
	CIP Security	Recommended	<p>Use FactoryTalk Policy Manager software (installed on the FactoryTalk Directory Server) to define communication between zones.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Integrity only does not provide confidentiality. Use CIP Security confidentiality profile if confidentiality is desired.</p> <p>For more information, see:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>CIP Security with Rockwell Automation Products Application Technique, <a href="#">SECURE-AT001</a></li> <li>Deploying CIP Security within a Converged Plantwide Ethernet Architecture, <a href="#">ENET-TD022</a></li> <li>FactoryTalk Policy Manager Getting Results Guide, <a href="#">FTALK-GR001</a></li> </ul>
	Wireless access	Recommended	<p>Configure and use the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Implement encryption algorithms for wireless access (such as WPA2 Enterprise, AES Encryption TLS, or IPSEC)</li> <li>Implement the PKI infrastructure to aid device authentication</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>System Security Design Guidelines Reference Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-RM001</a></li> </ul>

Segment the network into zones and conduits to manage the flow of data.

### Requirements for Restricted Data Flow

✓	Product	Required to Meet IEC-62443-3-3 SL 1	Details
	Converged Plantwide Ethernet architecture (CPwE)	Yes	<p>Segment the network into the required zones.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use a separate VLAN for each zone.</li> <li>Firewalls provide additional protection</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Converged Plantwide Ethernet (CPwE) Design and Implementation Guide, <a href="#">ENET-TD001</a></li> <li>System Security Design Guidelines Reference Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-RM001</a></li> </ul>
	Virtualization	Recommended	<p>For more information, see:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><a href="#">Virtualization on page 247.</a></li> </ul>
	CIP Security	Recommended	<p>Use FactoryTalk Policy Manager software (installed on the FactoryTalk Directory Server) to define conduits.</p> <p>For more information, see:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>CIP Security with Rockwell Automation Products Application Technique, <a href="#">SECURE-AT001</a></li> <li>Deploying CIP Security within a Converged Plantwide Ethernet Architecture, <a href="#">ENET-TD022</a></li> <li>FactoryTalk Policy Manager Getting Results Guide, <a href="#">FTALK-GR001</a></li> </ul>
	Network Attached Storage (NAS)	Recommended	<p>Use Network Attached Storage (NAS) in a segmented location to store backups of virtual images, system documentation, and related files where a FactoryTalk AssetCentre application isn't appropriate.</p>

Collect and access security logs.

**Requirements for Timely Response to Events**

✓	Product	Required to Meet IEC-62443-3-3 SL 1	Details
	FactoryTalk AssetCentre software	Yes	Configure and use the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Audit log accessibility</li> <li>• Continuous monitoring</li> </ul> For more information, see: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Configure System Security Features User Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-UM001</a>.</li> <li>• System Security Design Guidelines Reference Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-RM001</a></li> </ul>
	FactoryTalk Secure Remote Access Software	Optional (Required if access via untrusted networks is desired)	For more information, see <a href="#">Remote Access on page 248</a>
	Individual products in the system	Yes	Protect the internally stored audit logs in individual products in the system. Configure the FactoryTalk AssetCentre audit log to collect these individual audit logs.  For more information, see the user documentation for the individual products.
	Threat Detection managed service	Recommended	Monitor the detection service dashboard for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Risk &amp; Vulnerabilities</li> <li>• Alerts</li> <li>• Events</li> <li>• Unknown devices</li> </ul> PlantPAx recommends the use of threat detection services. Claroty CTD was tested on a PlantPAx Distributed Control System and no adverse impact was observed on the system.

Maintain the availability of the system against the denial-of-service events.

**Requirements for Resource Availability**

✓	Product	Required to Meet IEC-62443-3-3 SL 1	Details
	Windows infrastructure	Yes	Configure the operating system to prioritize control system functionality over antivirus checks and patching. Network redundancy is highly recommended. Configure virtualization software to manage service limitation. Download software patches from trusted sources.  For more information, see: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• System Security Design Guidelines Reference Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-RM001</a></li> </ul>
	Managed switches	Yes	Configure managed switches for both distribution and access functions. Use QoS and ACLs to configure proper segmentation.  For more information, see: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Chapter 4 Network Infrastructure</a></li> <li>• Converged Plantwide Ethernet (CPwE) Design and Implementation Guide, <a href="#">ENET-TD001</a></li> </ul>
	FactoryTalk AssetCentre software	Yes	Configure and use the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Asset inventory</li> <li>• Control system backup</li> <li>• Disaster recovery</li> </ul> For more information, see Configure System Security Features User Manual, <a href="#">SECURE-UM001</a> .
	UPS	Yes	Provide your own UPS with separate battery unit and redundant power supplies. Size the UPS so that it correctly supports the system and provides enough power to properly shut down servers and workstations.

## Virtualization

The PlantPAx architecture uses virtual machines, VLANs, and zones to support partitioning data, applications, and services. Virtualization is preferred for all server and client operating systems.

## VLAN Recommendations

Zone		VLAN	IP Address	Gateway	Subnet Mask
PRP	Management	500	192.168.10.0/26	192.168.10.1	255.255.255.192
	Controller	501	192.168.10.64/26	192.168.10.65	255.255.255.192
	Operator	510	192.168.10.128/26	192.168.10.129	255.255.255.192
	Engineering	511	192.168.10.192/36	192.168.10.193	255.255.255.192
DLR	Management	400	192.168.11.0/26	192.168.11.1	255.255.255.192
	Controller	401	192.168.11.64/26	192.168.11.65	255.255.255.192
	Operator	410	192.168.11.128/26	192.168.11.129	255.255.255.192
	Engineering	411	192.168.11.192/36	192.168.11.193	255.255.255.192
Simplex	Management	300	192.168.12.0/26	192.168.12.1	255.255.255.192
	Controller	301	192.168.12.64/26	192.168.12.65	255.255.255.192
	Operator	310	192.168.12.128/26	192.168.12.129	255.255.255.192
	Engineering	311	192.168.12.192/36	192.168.12.193	255.255.255.192
Server	Management	600	192.168.53.0/24	192.168.53.1	255.255.255.0
	Application	601	192.168.52.0/24	192.168.52.1	255.255.255.0
OWS/EWS	OWS	610	192.168.50.0/24	192.168.50.1	255.255.255.0
	EWS	611	192.168.51.0/24	192.168.51.1	255.255.255.0
IDMZ	Management	700	192.168.105.0/24	192.168.105.1	255.255.255.0
	Wireless	702	192.168.104.0/24	192.168.104.1	255.255.255.0
	IDMZ	703	192.168.100.0/24	192.168.100.1	255.255.255.0
	IDMZ	704	192.168.101.0/24	192.168.101.1	255.255.255.0
	IDMZ	705	192.168.102.0/24	192.168.102.1	255.255.255.0
	IDMZ	706	192.168.103.0/24	192.168.103.1	255.255.255.0
CIP Security Zones	Management	200	192.168.13.0/27	192.168.13.1	255.255.255.224
	Rapid Mix	201	192.168.13.96/27	192.168.13.97	255.255.255.224
	OEM	202	192.168.13.128/27	192.168.13.129	255.255.255.224
	Blend Fill	203	192.168.13.160/27	192.168.13.161	255.255.255.224
	Clean Place	204	192.168.13.192/27	192.168.13.193	255.255.255.224
	Safety	205	192.168.13.224/27	192.168.13.225	255.255.255.224
	Operator	210	192.168.13.32/27	192.168.13.33	255.255.255.224
	Engineering	211	192.168.13.64/27	192.168.13.65	255.255.255.224

- Network Devices first 10 IP addresses start at .2
- Host IP addresses start at .12
- PRP zone devices (10.2...10.11) and hosts (10.12...10.63)

## Remote Access

Follow the best practices referred to in Stratix 4300 Remote Access Routers, Publication [1783-um014](#).

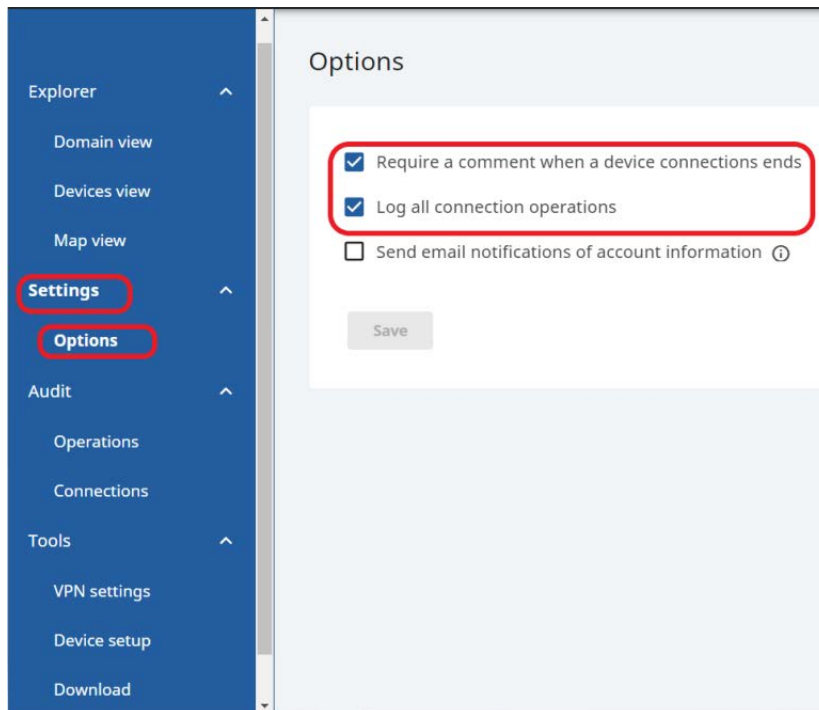
It's required that the following setting be implemented:

- Log all connection operations

It's recommended to require a comment when a device connection ends.

These settings can be enabled by:

1. Log in to the FactoryTalk Remote Access service (via FT Hub)
2. Navigate to Settings > Options >
3. Select the settings and save



## CIP Security

CIP Security™ is a standard, open-source communication mechanism that helps to provide a secure data transport across an EtherNet/IP™ network. CIP Security lets CIP™-connected devices authenticate each other before transmitting and receiving data.

CIP Security uses the following security properties to help devices protect themselves from malicious communication:

- Device Identity and Authentication
- Data Integrity and Authentication
- Data Confidentiality

Rockwell Automation uses the following products to implement CIP Security:

- FactoryTalk® Policy Manager software (includes FactoryTalk System Services, version 6.20 or later)
- FactoryTalk Linx software, version 6.11 or later (lets workstation software communicate securely using CIP Security)
- Studio 5000 Logix Designer® application, version 31.00.00 or later

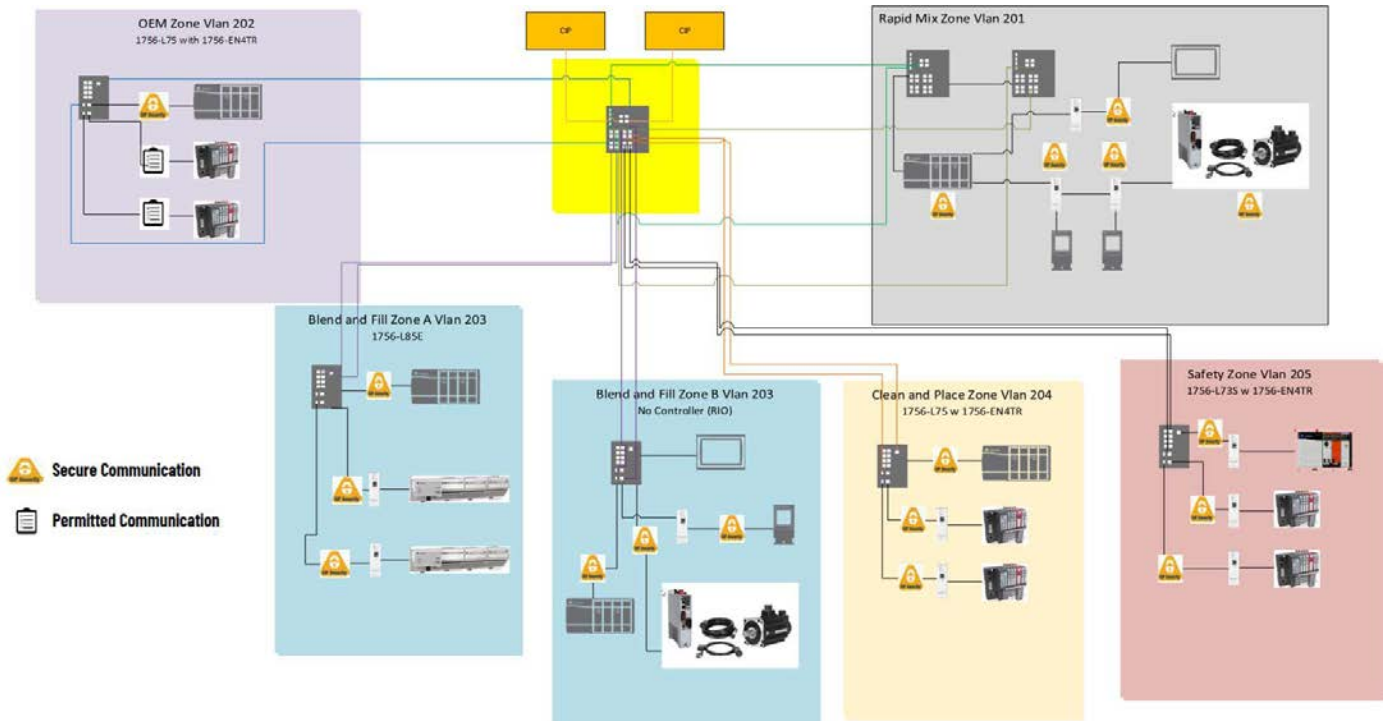
This application is required to interface with CIP Security-enabled Logix controllers. The minimum application version varies by controller product family.



For more information on CIP Security, for example, a list of CIP Security-capable products and publications that describe how to use the products, including limitations and considerations, see the following:

- <https://www.rockwellautomation.com/en-us/capabilities/industrial-security/security-products/cip-security.html>
- CIP Security with Rockwell Automation Products Application Technique, publication [SECURE-AT001](#)

### CIP Security Architecture



**Notes:**

## Firewall Configurations

### Common Ports

[Table 9](#) shows the most common ports that must be considered during the firewall configuration.

**Table 9 - Common Firewall Port Descriptions**

Port	Type	Usage
25	TCP	SMTP mail
80	TCP	Standard WWW port
123	UDP	Network Time Protocol
135	TCP	Remote process calls
137	UDP	File and printer sharing
138	UDP	
139	TCP	
445	TCP	Use in the Collective configuration and file and print sharing
1433	TCP	Communication to SQL server
1434	UDP	Browsing for SQL server
21060	UDP	Rockwell Automation® trace diagnostics
21061	UDP	

### Rockwell Automation TCP/UDP Ports

[Table 10](#) shows the TCP/UDP ports for Rockwell Automation® firmware and software products.

**Table 10 - TCP/UDP Port Descriptions**

Port	Type	Protocol	Products	Comments
23	TCP	Telnet	Trusted® AADvance® before release 1.3	Diagnostic command-line interface (see also 55555)
25	TCP	SMTP	1769-L35E, 1769-L32E, 1756-ENBT, 1756-EN2T, 1756-EWEB, 1768-ENBT, 1768-EWEB, 1788-ENBT, 1763-L16x, 1766-L32x, FactoryTalk® AssetCentre, FactoryTalk® Transaction Manager, FactoryTalk® Integrator	Outbound email only
67...68	UDP	DHCP/BOOTP	1756-ENET, 1756-ENBT, 1756-EWEB, 1756-EN2T, 1794-AENT, 1734-AENT, 1769-L35E, 1769-L32E, 1788-ENBT, 1761-NET-ENI, 1785-LXXE, 1785-ENET, 1791ES, 1763-L16x, 1766-L32x, PowerFlex® Drives, PowerMonitor™ 3000, PanelView™	Client only
69	UDP	TFTP	5820-EI	For binary download, used in conjunction with BOOTP
80	TCP	HTTP	1756-ENET, 1756-ENBT, 1756-EWEB, 1794-AENT, 1734-AENT, 1769-L35E, 1769-L32E, 1788-ENBT, 1761-NET-ENI, 1785-LXXE, 1785-ENET, 1747-L55x, 1763-L16x, 1766-L32x, PowerFlex Drives, PowerMonitor 3000, PanelView, FactoryTalk® View SE, ,FactoryTalk® ViewPoint	FactoryTalk ViewPoint can use any other custom assigned port
123	UDP	NTP	PowerMonitor 3000, AADvance	Network Time Protocol
135	TCP	RPC/Endpoint Mapper	FactoryTalk, RSMACC™	DCOM endpoint mapper
161	UDP	SNMP	1756-ENET, 1756-ENBT, 1794-AENT, 1734-AENT, 1769-L35E, 1769-L32E, 1788-ENBT, 1761-NET-ENI, 1785-LXXE, 1785-ENET, 1747-L55x, 1766-L32x, 5820-EI, PowerFlex Drives, PowerMonitor 3000, PanelView	
300...400	UDP	Proprietary	PowerMonitor 3000	Master/slave configuration

Table 10 - TCP/UDP Port Descriptions

Port	Type	Protocol	Products	Comments
400...402	TCP	RPC	FactoryTalk Transaction Manager	Transaction manager, compression server, and configuration server
443	TCP	HTTPS	FactoryTalk ViewPoint	When using web server with secure certificate
502	TCP	ModbusTCP	AADvance, Trusted®	Master or slave (AADvance), Slave only (Trusted)
1001...1009	UDP	Proprietary	1426 PowerMonitor 5000	Waveform synchronized broadcast
Dynamic (1024...65535+)	TCP	DCOM	FactoryTalk	DCOM dynamic ports
1089	TCP/UDP	ff-annunc	1788-EN2FFR	FOUNDATION Fieldbus
1090		ff-fmx		
1091		ff-sm		
1132	TCP	SNCP	AADvance	Safety Network Control Protocol, used by OPC, workbench debugger, and binding networks
1330	TCP	rnaprpc	FactoryTalk	Object RPC
1331	TCP	rnaserv	FactoryTalk	Service control
1332	TCP	rnaserveping	FactoryTalk	Server health
1433	TCP	N/A	FactoryTalk® AssetCentre (server),	SQL server communication (default port)
1434	UDP	N/A	FactoryTalk AssetCentre (server),	Recommended static destination port for MSSQL to minimize the number of ports open on a firewall. See the Knowledgebase Answer ID 287932 at <a href="http://www.rockwellautomation.custhelp.com">http://www.rockwellautomation.custhelp.com</a>
1947	TCP/UDP	N/A	SafeNet Sentinel Local License Manager	Windows® Service installed by Sentinel USB HASP driver. This service isn't required for USB dongle to function. See the Knowledgebase Answer ID 570831 at <a href="http://www.rockwellautomation.custhelp.com">http://www.rockwellautomation.custhelp.com</a>
2000	TCP	Modbus RTU	AADvance (Slave only), Trusted (Master or slave, used for OPC and SOE)	RTU packaged in serial stream. Other ports can be assigned
2010...2011	UDP	Discover tool	AADvance	Used to configure systems. The tool sends broadcast to 2010 and systems reply to port 2011
2222	UDP	EtherNet/IP™	1756-ENBT, 1794-AENT, 1734-AENT, 1769-L35E, 1769-L32E, 1788-ENBT	I/O communication that is used by products that only support I/O over EtherNet/IP
2222	TCP	CSP	1785-Lxxe, 1785-ENET, 1771-DMC(x), 1747-L55x, 5820-EI, PowerMonitor II, RSLink® Classic	This is the source port for connections
3060	TCP	rnadirft	FactoryTalk	Directory server file transfer
3622	TCP/UDP	ff-lr-port	1788-EN2FFR	FOUNDATION Fieldbus
4000	UDP	Peer-to-peer	Trusted	Original simplex protocol
4120	TCP	RPC	RSBizWare™	Production server
4121				Server manager
4122				PlantMetrics™ server
4123				Task manager
4124				Scheduler server
4125				Scheduler CTP server
4446	TCP	TCP/IP	FactoryTalk® Diagnostics (CPR SR3)	See the Knowledgebase Answer ID 68260 at <a href="http://www.rockwellautomation.custhelp.com">http://www.rockwellautomation.custhelp.com</a>
5000	UDP	Peer-to-peer	Trusted, AADvance	Enhanced (new) protocol
5241	TCP	TCP/IP	FactoryTalk Diagnostics (CPR9 SR4 and greater)	See the Knowledgebase Answer ID 68260 at <a href="http://www.rockwellautomation.custhelp.com">http://www.rockwellautomation.custhelp.com</a>
5450	TCP		FactoryTalk® Historian Site Edition	PI network manager
5454				Analysis Framework v1.x
5455				ACE 2 scheduler
5456				Asset Framework server
5457				PI notifications
5458				Asset Framework to OLEDB Enterprise
5459				
6000	TCP	Workbench	Trusted	Online debugger

Table 10 - TCP/UDP Port Descriptions

Port	Type	Protocol	Products	Comments
6543	TCP	rnaalarming	FactoryTalk	Alarming server
7002...7004	TCP		FactoryTalk AssetCentre (default)	FactoryTalk AssetCentre services
7600	TCP		FactoryTalk	Event multiplexor
7700				Event server
7710				Directory server
7720	TCP		FactoryTalk® View SE	HMI server
7721				Server Framework
7722				HMI activation
7723				Historical Data Log reader
8080	TCP	HTTP	RSBizWare	Production server, reports
8081				Server manager
8083	TCP	HTTP	CTP Server	
10001...10006	TCP	Serial data	AADvance	Transparent communication interface, where an Ethernet host can talk through AADvance to a serial port
27000...27009	TCP	TCP/IP	FactoryTalk® Activation Server, FactoryTalk Activation Manager	Four more application required to run FLEXSVR.exe. and LMGRD.exe, see the Knowledgebase Answer ID 35717 and 184922 at <a href="http://www.rockwellautomation.custhelp.com">http://www.rockwellautomation.custhelp.com</a>
44818	TCP/UDP	EtherNet/IP	1756-ENET,1756-ENBT,1756-EWEB, 1794-AENT,1734-AENT,1769-L35E, 1769-L32E,1788-ENBT,1761-NET- ENI, 1785-LXXE,1785-ENET,1747- L55x, 1763-L16x,1766-L32x, PowerMonitor3000, PanelView, RSLinx Classic, FactoryTalk Linx	Messaging, data transfer, upload/download, peer messaging, and so forth; used mainly by RSLinx
49281	TCP	TCP/IP	FactoryTalk® Live Data, FactoryTalk View SE HMI tag server	HMI tag server
55555	TCP	Telnet	AADvance from release 1.3	Diagnostic command-line interface
60093	TCP	TCP/IP	FactoryTalk Diagnostics (CPR9 SR2 and earlier)	See the Knowledgebase Answer ID 68260 at <a href="http://www.rockwellautomation.custhelp.com">http://www.rockwellautomation.custhelp.com</a>

**Notes:**

## PlantPax Deployment Recommendations and Verification Tool

The PlantPax® verification tool is a Microsoft® Excel® spreadsheet (.xlsx) that helps verify that functionality complies with PlantPax deployment recommendations.



[PROCES-RD101](#) contains the PlantPax checklist spreadsheet. Download the spreadsheet from this public article and use the tab that is referenced in each step.

Use the spreadsheet (.xlsx) file as is. There are formulas that correspond to recommended PlantPax settings. Any edits that you make can affect the validity of the results.

Each section in this appendix contains a checklist that corresponds to a tab in the verification tool. Each item (row) in a checklist corresponds to a row in the verification tool.

Checklist	Description
<a href="#">Design Recommendations Tab</a>	System design considerations and best practices
<a href="#">System Infrastructure Tab</a>	System infrastructure elements that are shared across all servers and workstations
<a href="#">Server or Workstation Tab</a>	Loading and configuration of each individual server and workstation
<a href="#">System Architecture Tab</a>	Design and configuration of your system components
<a href="#">PASS Tab</a>	Design and configuration of the applications that PASS servers host
	Application and load on a ControlLogix® 5580 or CompactLogix™ 5380 controller
<a href="#">Controller 5x70 Tab</a>	Application and load on a ControlLogix 5570 or CompactLogix 5370 controller

### Design Recommendations Tab

The Design Recommendations tab lists best practices to follow when you design a PlantPax system.

#### System ID

##### Design Recommendation Tab: Overall Considerations

Row	Guidelines	Description
4	PlantPax Core Software bundle	Catalog number of the PlantPax Core Software bundle
5	Inventory agent	The System Integrator generated the .raai file via the FactoryTalk® AssetCentre inventory agent The .raai file contains the System ID serial number There could be multiple .raai files, for example, one for each subnet accessible by the FactoryTalk AssetCentre server
6	MyEquipment portal	The System Integrator registered to the system, and provided directions on how to access the MyEquipment portal

The PlantPax System ID is a unique identifier that helps simplify the management of your application over its lifecycle. The System ID creates a record of the installed hardware and software in the system and provides a dashboard that shows the hardware lifecycle status, notifications of updates and patches, and compatibility information.

The System Integrator uses an Asset Inventory Agent in a FactoryTalk AssetCentre project to generate the System ID and .raai file. The System Integrator registers your System ID with Rockwell Automation and provides you directions on how to access your MyEquipment portal.

## Controller Considerations

### Design Recommendation Tab: Controller Considerations

Row	Guidelines	Description
7	Controller name	Keep the shortcut, ACD file name, and controller name similar (intuitive). Follow a systematic naming structure to help identify each controller in all system components. Inconsistent naming can create confusion in a production environment.
8	Routine / Tag Names	Follow ISA standards for control strategy and instrument naming schemes. Keep in mind devices that are already labeled in the field and the wire/cable numbers that are in place. Existing names can mean less flexibility for future field device names. ISA tag naming is an industry standard which design firms often follow when developing P&IDs. Link tags in the controller to the P&IDs to help link the process (P&IDs) to the programming within the control system.
9	Controller Organizer	Organize control programs to contain logic based on required execution rates. Organize code in a program within the desired task that aligns with the process area. If code for a given process area must execute at different rates, create multiple programs in different tasks that are related to the same process area. Program names should be the same in the different tasks but with an indication that is embedded within the program name that indicates the task. This helps identify which task the program resides in when the programs are organized in the Logical Organizer.
10	Logical Organizer	In the Logical Organizer, folder names should be the same as the primary graphic display names. The Logical Organizer contains folders which contain the programs for specific process areas. Each folder contains the code that supports the HMI display for a single process area and is aligned with alarm groups. The alarm groups provide navigation to identify which HMI displays contain active alarms.  The folders in the Logical Organizer should match the graphical hierarchy (L1, L2 & L3) so that the alarm builder tool creates alarms in the appropriate alarm groups and populates the navigation bars correctly.
11...14	Controller Routines	Have one routine per device to help ensure that online edits only affect that specific device. Name each routine the same as the device name to help identify routines and their devices in the Controller Organizer. Each device (such as motor, valve, PID) should use a standard PlantPax control strategy that is programmed in function block diagram. Keep supervisory or device control logic external to the device control strategies. This reduces variability among strategies and minimizes the risk of replicating modified control strategies.
15	Controller Programs	Align programs with graphic displays (typically L3 displays) so that the routines in a program have the same primary HMI display. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alarm annunciation breadcrumbs highlight the associated navigation bar button.</li> <li>If you add a device to a display, the device is also added to the associated program and alarm group.</li> </ul>

## Library Considerations

### Design Recommendation Tab: Library Considerations

Row	Guidelines	Description
16	Process Library Objects	Do not modify process library Add-On Instructions or graphic objects.

## Alarm Considerations

### Design Recommendation Tab: Alarm Considerations

Row	Guidelines	Description
17	Standards	Follow ISA 18.2 standards for alarm management
18	ALMA / ALMD Alarm Instructions	Avoid extensive use of ALMA and ALMD instructions. These instructions provide a high-resolution time stamp, but they also use considerable data server bandwidth. Minimize ALMA and ALMD use to only those alarms that require high-resolution time stamps. Instead use tag-based alarms and FactoryTalk® Alarms and Events alarms.

## I/O Considerations

### Design Recommendation Tab: I/O Considerations

Row	Guidelines	Description
19	RPI	Ideally, the I/O RPI equals half of the task execution time ( $0.5 * \text{associated task period}$ ). The I/O update sampling frequency should be twice the frequency of the logic execution. More frequent sampling over uses I/O communication bandwidth. Less frequent I/O sampling can result in poor control.
20	Consistent I/O Methodology	Select an I/O connection method: I/O mapping, direct I/O connection, aliasing, or program parameters. Choose a method that works best for your installation and consistently apply this method throughout your application.



## HMI Considerations

### Design Recommendation Tab: HMI Considerations

Row	Guidelines	Description
21	Graphical Framework	Use the Graphic Framework that comes with the process library. This framework helps achieve a consistent delivery of HMI displays.
22	Follow ISA 101 Style Guide	The standards help achieve a consistent delivery of HMI displays. The standards also help draw attention to information that requires attention.
23	Naming Conventions	The naming of graphic displays follows the Logical Organizer hierarchy. This alignment helps locate associated programming for future additions and changes.
24	Design for the Future	Name applications and Areas with future development in mind.

## User Security Considerations

### Design Recommendation Tab: User Security Considerations

Row	Guidelines	Description
25	User / Group Configuration follows FactoryTalk Security SECURE-ATO02	Design and implementation follows FactoryTalk Security Application Technique.

## System Infrastructure Tab

The System Infrastructure checklist assumes:

- Your PlantPAx system is operable (for example, the HMI application is running and the latest operating system patches are installed).

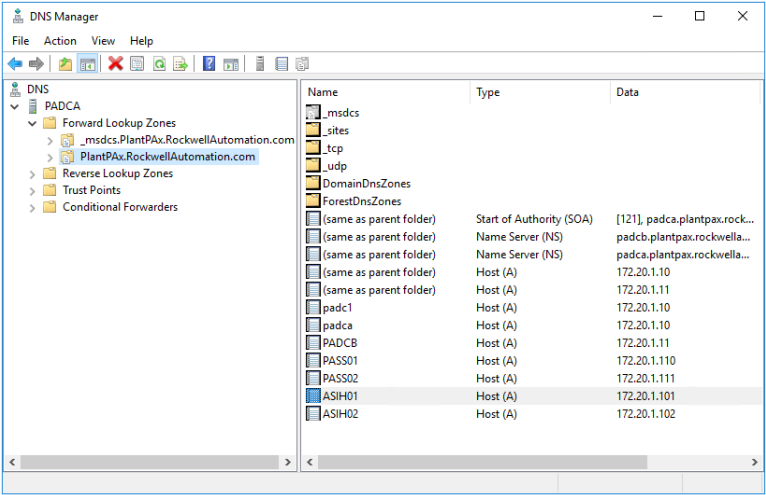
Your system infrastructure has been configured such that:

- You've defined a range of IP addresses for the DHCP server in the domain, if applicable for your system.
- You have created groups and assigned users in the domain controller.

### System Infrastructure Tab

Row	Guidelines	Description
4	Hardware	BIOS Power-Saving Options Disabled? From the computer BIOS, specify whether the BIOS power-saving options are disabled. Power-saving options reduce computer resources for your system elements.
5	Virtualization	Using Virtualization? Specify whether your system uses virtualization.
6-13	Hypervisors	If you're using virtualization, enter the percentage of CPU use and memory use for each computer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>CPU use recommended to be within 50% of resources</li> <li>Memory use recommended to be within 50% of resources</li> </ul>

System Infrastructure Tab

Row	Guidelines	Description
14	Domain	<p>All servers and workstations are in the same domain Specify whether all servers and workstations are on a Windows® Domain.</p> <p>On the domain controller, go to Server Manager &gt; Tools &gt; DNS and verify that all servers and workstations are listed in the DNS Manager dialog box.</p>  <p>In the Notes, document any clients that aren't in the domain and why.</p>

## Network

To collect the network data, collect the network data manually from the webpages of each switch.

See [Chapter 4, Network Infrastructure](#) for details.

Information can also be collected using the Network Device Library if implemented in the system. See the [Network Device Library](#) section for more information.

### System Infrastructure Tab: Network

Row	Guidelines	Description
15	Bandwidth Utilization %	Verify bandwidth < 50%. • If using a Stratix® 5200 or 5800 switch, navigate to Administration -> Command Line Interface. Enter SHOW CONTROLLERS UTILIZATION in the CLI to access bandwidth information.
16	Packet Error Rate	Verify that there are no packet errors.
17	Temperature OK	Verify that all devices aren't reporting high temperature readings.
18	CPU Utilization %	Verify CPU use ≤ 50%.
19	Memory Utilization %	Verify memory use ≤ 50%.

## Servers and Workstations

List the following for each server and workstation in the system (rows 20...93). The Server or Workstation tab is where you record data regarding each server and workstation:

- Computer name
- System role (select from dropdown)

### Server or Workstation Tab

The Server or Workstation Name checklist assumes:

- Your PlantPAx system is operable (for example, the HMI application is running and the latest operating system patches are installed).
- The Performance Monitor (PerfMon) utility is connected to the servers and workstations that are being verified

---

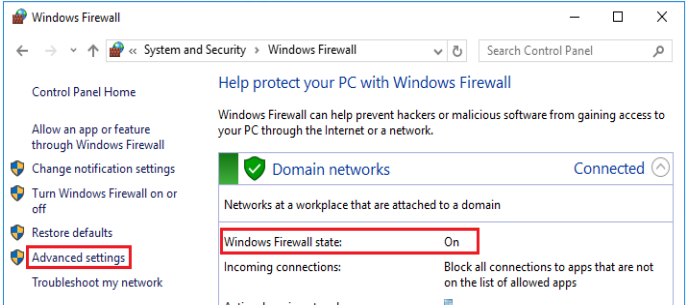
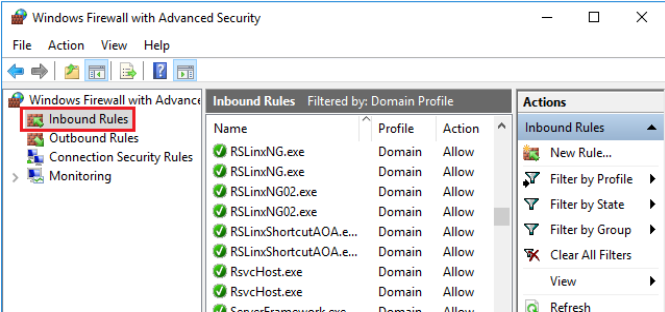
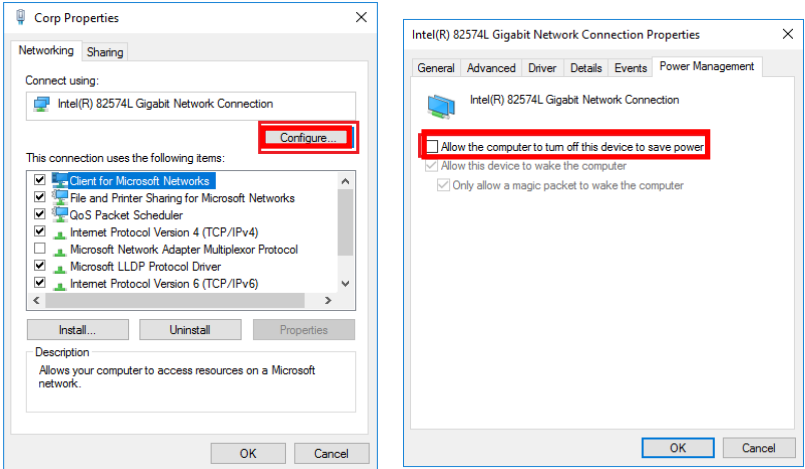
**IMPORTANT** Make a copy of this worksheet for each computer (server or workstation) in your system.

---

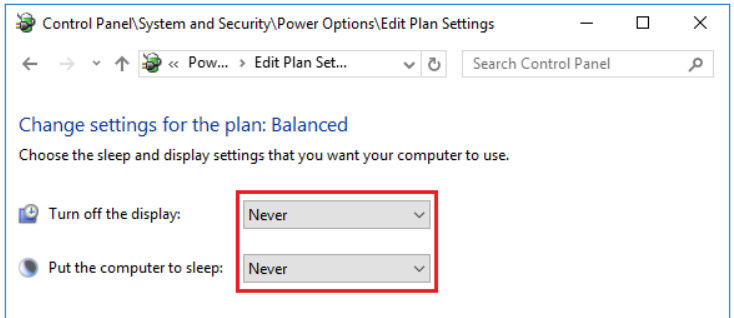
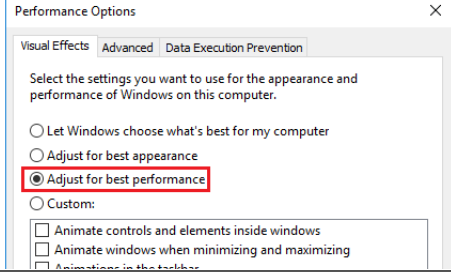
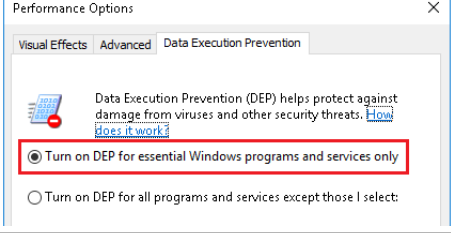
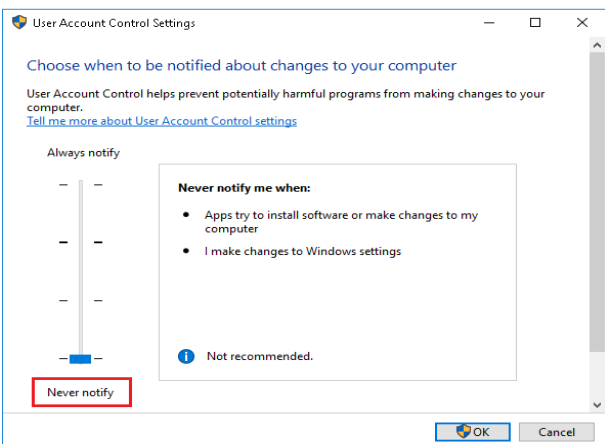
## Operating System

Verify these operating system requirements.


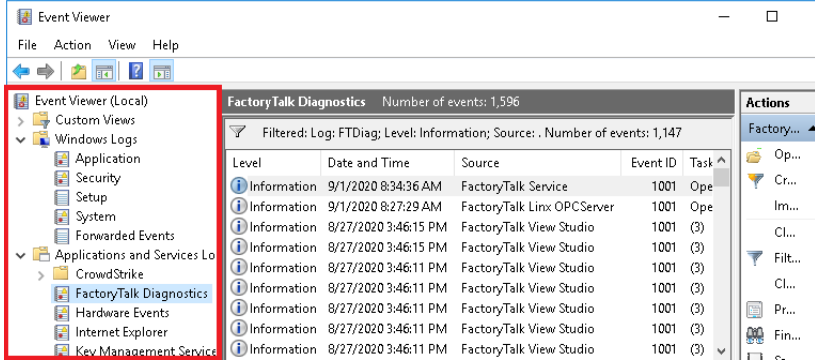
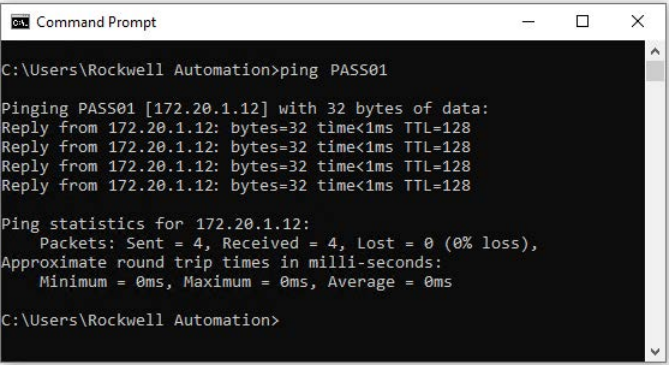
## Server or Workstation Tab: Operating System

Row	Guidelines	Description
4	Windows Firewall Being Used	<p>Specify whether the Windows firewall is enabled. For each computer, go to Control Panel &gt; Windows Firewall &gt; Advanced Settings.</p>  <p>Inbound rules allow or block inbound network traffic. Verify that Rockwell Automation software is allowed so that data and information isn't blocked between application servers.</p> 
5	Operating System Valid	<p>Specify whether the server or workstation operating system that you're using matches PlantPax system recommendations. See the PlantPax Distributed Control System Selection Guide, <a href="#">PROCES-SG001</a>.</p>
6	Rockwell Software® Patches Applied	<p>Specify whether you installed the latest software patches for the Rockwell Automation software that is in the PlantPax system. All servers and clients in the system must have the same FactoryTalk® patch updates to avoid unexpected results.</p>
7	NIC Power-Saving Options Disabled	<p>Specify whether you disabled power-saving for the Network Interface Card (NIC). For each computer, go to Control Panel &gt; Network and Sharing Center &gt; Properties &gt; Power Management.</p> <p>Make sure the 'Allow the computer to turn off this device to save power' is disabled (no check mark).</p> 

## Server or Workstation Tab: Operating System

Row	Guidelines	Description
8	Windows Power-saving Options Disabled	<p>Specify whether you disabled power-saving for the Windows operating system. For each computer, go to Control Panel &gt; Power Options and verify the Change when computer sleeps field is set to Never.</p> 
9	Desktop Experience Enabled in RDS Servers	<p>Windows Server 2016 and newer have Remote Desktop Server (RDS) functionality that is enabled by default. Windows Server 2012 and prior, RDS is disabled by default and you must enable the functionality. For each computer, go to Server Manager &gt; Local Server and review the Roles and Features listings.</p>
10	Adjust for Best Performance Is Selected	<p>Specify whether Windows settings are enabled for best performance. When Adjust for Best Performance is selected, enhanced features that aren't used are turned off, which yields more memory and performance for the system. For each computer, go to Control Panel &gt; System &gt; Advanced System Settings &gt; Advanced tab &gt; Settings and on the Visual Effects tab, make sure Adjust for best performance is enabled.</p> 
11	Data Execution Prevention Windows Only	<p>Specify whether Data Execution Prevention is enabled for essential Windows programs and services. For each computer, go to Control Panel &gt; System &gt; Advanced System Settings &gt; Advanced tab &gt; Settings and on the Data Execution Prevention tab, make sure 'Turn on DEP ...' is enabled.</p> 
12	User Account Control Never Notify	<p>Specify whether a user is never notified by the User Account Control. For each computer, open the User Account Control settings and make sure Never Notify is enabled.</p> 

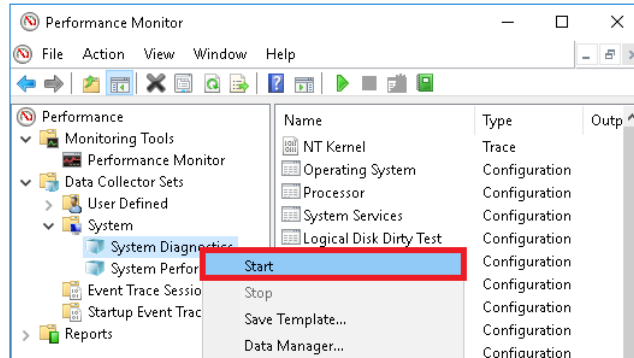
## Server or Workstation Tab: Operating System

Row	Guidelines	Description
13	Windows Automatic Update Is Disabled	<p>This step is for computers that are not internally managed by a Windows System Update Server (WSUS). Verify that Windows automatic update is disabled. Disabling this functionality helps prevent updates that haven't been qualified by Rockwell Automation from being installed on the workstation or server.</p> <p>For Windows 10/11, Windows Server 2016 and later operating systems:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Open the Run command (Win + R) and enter: services.msc</li> <li>2. Select the Windows Update service from the Services list.</li> <li>3. On the General tab and change the Startup Type to Disabled.</li> <li>4. Restart the computer.</li> </ol> <p>For Windows Server 2012 and prior:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. For each computer, go to Control Panel &gt; Windows Update and make sure that the update option is disabled.</li> <li>2. Restart the computer.</li> </ol> 
14	Event Viewer Is Not Presenting Errors	<p>Verify that the Event Viewer is not showing errors in the logs. For each computer, go to Administrative Tools &gt; Event Viewer and verify that each log does not contain errors.</p> 
15	NSLookup Resolved	<p>Verify the mappings of IP addresses to host names</p> 

## Performance

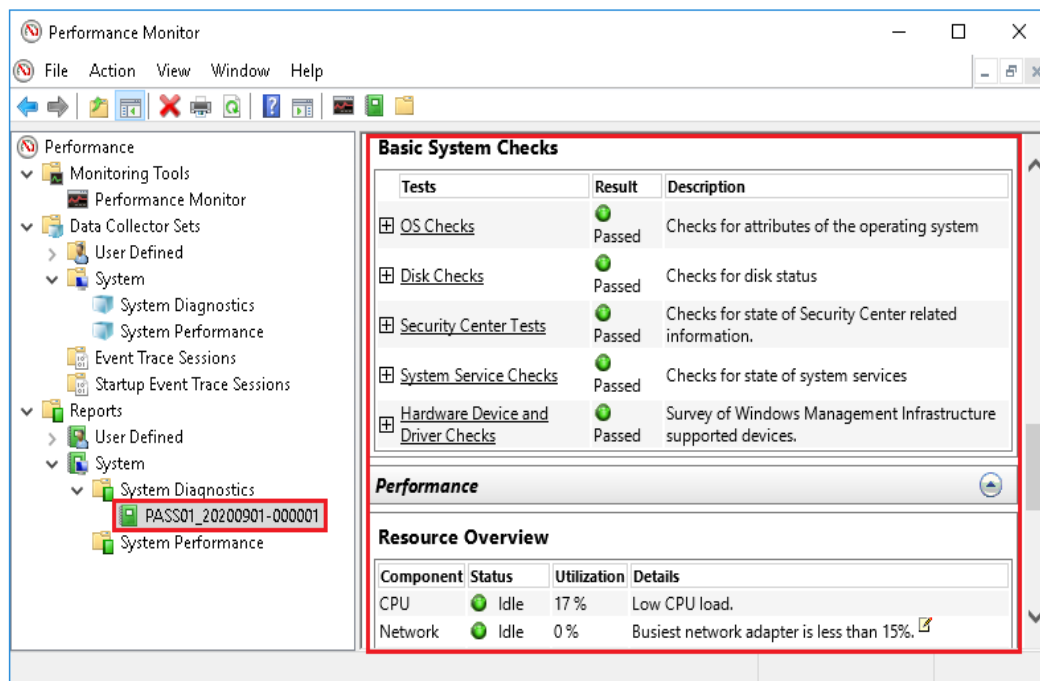
The Windows Performance Monitor (PerfMon) utility provides a snapshot of the current performance of a computer. To generate a performance report, do the following for each server and workstation:

1. From the Performance Monitor utility, go to Data Collector Sets > System > System Diagnostics and select Start.



The system diagnostics procedure takes about 1 minute.

2. To view the report, go to Reports > System > System Diagnostics.



## Basic System Checks

Use the performance report from the Performance Monitor utility to verify the basic system checks.

### Server or Workstation Tab: Basic System Checks

Row	Guidelines	Description
17	Operating Systems Checks	Verify that the attributes of the operating system conform to PlantPax system recommendations. Use of not-recommended operating systems can affect system performance.
18	Disk Checks	Verify the status of the disks in the operating system.

## Server or Workstation Tab: Basic System Checks

Row	Guidelines	Description
19	Security Center Tests	Verify system security-related information.
20	System Service Checks	Verify the state of system services.
21	Hardware Device Driver Checks	Verify the Windows management of supported devices in your PlantPAx system.

## Resource Overview

Use the performance report from the Performance Monitor utility to verify the resources.

## Server or Workstation Tab: Resource Overview

Row	Guidelines	Description
22	CPU (%)	Verify that the CPU load complies with PlantPAx system recommendations. In a virtual system, the chip set on the host machine (server) can affect CPU capacity.
23	Network (%)	Verify that the busiest network adapter is < 50%.
24	Disk (/sec)	Verify the operations per second performed by the hard drive.
25	Memory (%)	Verify the memory capacity of the server or workstation.

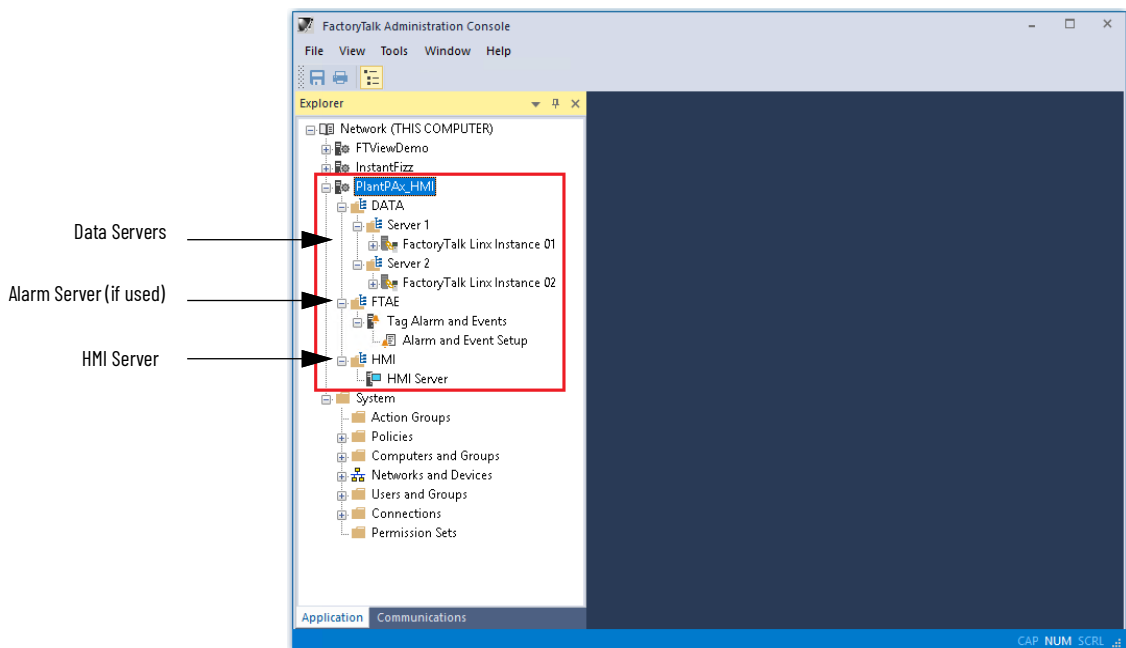
## System Architecture Tab

The System Architecture checklist assumes:

- Your PlantPAx system was based on sizing recommendations from a PlantPAx System Estimator project.  
See [Chapter 1, System Workflow](#).
- Your PlantPAx system is operable (for example, the HMI application is running and the latest operating system patches are installed).
- You have configured the following FactoryTalk software that you need for your application servers.

## FactoryTalk View Application Design

To verify these attributes, use the FactoryTalk® Administration Console or the FactoryTalk® View Studio software.





Server segregation helps optimize performance. To help prevent unpredictable search results, do **not** insert a server into the application root path.

---

**IMPORTANT** Each server must be in its own area. This creates a unique path for each server so that clients don't need to examine every server.

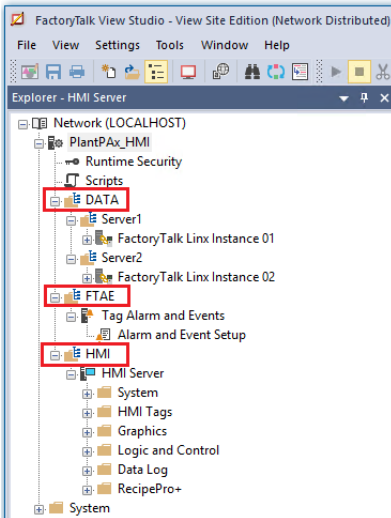
---

Design the system with of future growth in mind. Future growth can affect area names and how you segregate server by controllers within an area.

To improve performance, place:

- Data servers, alarm servers (if used), and Historian interface connectors on the same image
- HMI and other application servers on separate images

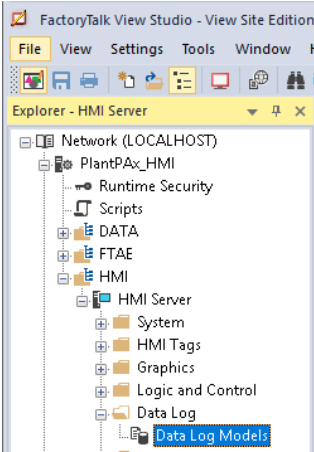
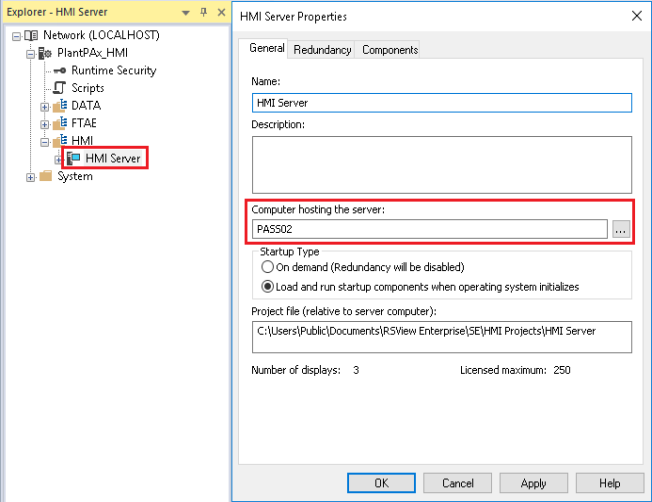
### System Architecture Tab: FactoryTalk View Application Design

Row	Guidelines	Description
4	Number of HMI Servers	<p>The system supports 10 HMI servers, whether they're redundant or not (you can have 10 redundant pairs).</p> <p>The number of servers and how they're configured can impact the speed of system communication. Use the application tree in the FactoryTalk Administration Console and select the project to be analyzed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reference, identify, and count all HMI servers in your system.</li> <li>• If a server is secondary, do <b>not</b> add the secondary HMI server to the count.</li> </ul>
5	Number of Alarms Servers	<p>The system supports 10 Tag Alarm and Event servers, whether they're redundant or not (you can have 10 redundant pairs).</p> <p>Use the application tree in the FactoryTalk Administration Console and select the project to be analyzed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reference, identify, and count all Tag Alarm and Event servers in your system.</li> </ul>
6	Number of Data Servers	<p>The system supports 10 data servers, whether they're redundant or not (you can have 10 redundant pairs). Both FactoryTalk Linx and OPC UA data servers count towards the limit.</p> <p>Use the application tree in the FactoryTalk Administration Console and select the project to be analyzed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reference, identify, and count all FactoryTalk Linx and OPC UA data servers in your system.</li> </ul>
7	Each Server Is In Its Own Area	<p>Each server must be in its own area. This creates a unique path for each server so that clients don't need to examine every server before they find the data they need.</p> <p>Server segregation helps optimize performance. To help prevent unpredictable search results, do <b>not</b> insert a server into the application root path.</p>  <p>For more information see, Knowledgebase Technote <a href="#">FactoryTalk View SE Area Best Practices</a>.</p>

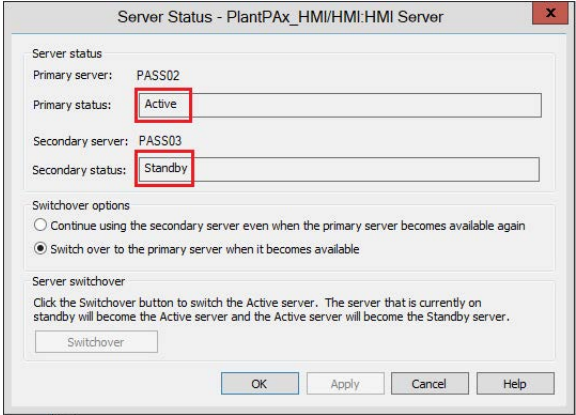
FactoryTalk View HMI Servers

Verify that the HMI servers on the PASS comply with system recommendations.

System Architecture Tab: FactoryTalk View HMI Servers (PASS)

Row	Guidelines	Description
8	Uses Data Logging	<p>We recommend the use of FactoryTalk® Historian software rather than FactoryTalk View SE data logs to collect and analyze system data.</p> <p>To check if data logs are used in a FactoryTalk View SE project, open a Data Log folder in the HMI server.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This guideline applies to standard Data Log Models only. DataLogPro is supported for PlantPax.</p> 
9	Dedicated Servers	<p>You can have only 1 HMI server per computer.</p> <p>In FactoryTalk® View Studio software, open Properties for each server and confirm the computer host name.</p> 

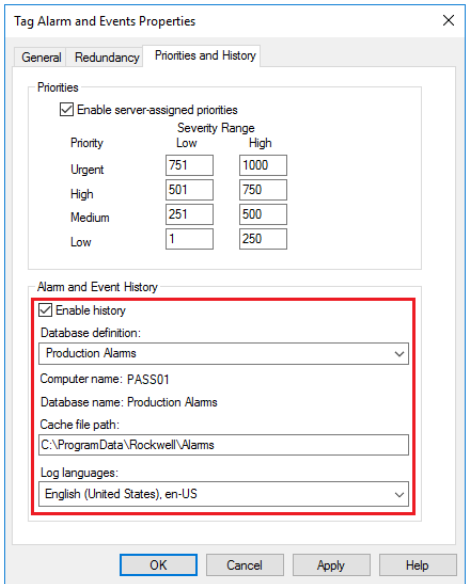
## System Architecture Tab: FactoryTalk View HMI Servers (PASS)

Row	Guidelines	Description
10	Redundancy Status	<p>In the FactoryTalk Administration Console, select the HMI server &gt; Server Status.</p>  <p>In the verification tool:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the status for one server is 'Active' and the other server is 'Standby', record Synched.</li> <li>• If you have different results, choose 'Not Synched' and identify the servers that are 'Not Synched' in the Notes.</li> </ul>

## FactoryTalk Alarm and Event Servers

Verify that the alarm servers on the PASS comply with system recommendations.

## System Architecture Tab: FactoryTalk Alarm and Event Servers (PASS)

Row	Guidelines	Description
11	Dedicated Servers	<p>You can have only 1 alarm server per computer.</p> <p>In FactoryTalk View Studio software, open Properties for each server and confirm the computer host name.</p>
12	Redundancy Status	<p>Use the FactoryTalk Administration Console to select the alarm server &gt; Server Status.</p> <p>In the verification tool:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the status for one server is 'Active' and the other server is 'Standby', record Synched.</li> <li>• If you have different results, choose 'Not Synched' and identify the servers that are 'Not Synched' in the Notes</li> </ul>
13	Alarm & Event History	<p>In the FactoryTalk Administration Console, open the Properties for the alarm server and check Enable History to log alarm history.</p> 

FactoryTalk View Data Servers

Verify that the data servers on the PASS comply with system recommendations.

System Architecture Tab: FactoryTalk View Data Servers

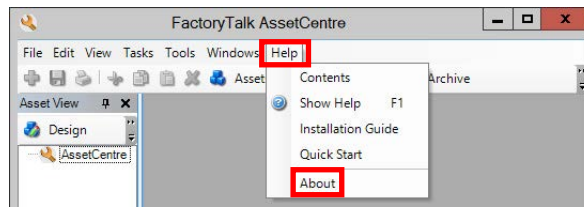
Row	Guidelines	Description																																						
14	Max Number of FTLinx Instances on any PASS	FactoryTalk Linx supports 2 data server instances on one computer. In FactoryTalk View Studio software, open Properties for each server and confirm the computer host name.																																						
15	Dedicated Server for OPC UA	UPC UA data servers should be hosted on a dedicated computer. No additional Data, Alarm or HMI servers should be hosted on the same computer with an OPC UA data server.																																						
16	Redundancy Status	Use the FactoryTalk Administration Console to select the data server > Server Status. For OPC UA, select Properties > Redundancy. In the verification tool: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If the status for one server is 'Active' and the other server is 'Standby', record Synched.</li><li>• If you have different results, choose 'Not Synched' and identify the servers that are 'Not Synched' in the Notes</li></ul>																																						
17	Alarm & Event History	In the FactoryTalk Administration Console, open the Properties for the data server and check Enable History to log alarm history. <div><div><p>FactoryTalk Linx Server Properties</p><p>General Redundancy Alarms and Events</p><p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable alarm and event support</p><p>Priorities</p><p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable server-assigned priorities</p><table><tr><th>Priority</th><th>Low</th><th>High</th></tr><tr><td>Urgent</td><td>751</td><td>1000</td></tr><tr><td>High</td><td>501</td><td>750</td></tr><tr><td>Medium</td><td>251</td><td>500</td></tr><tr><td>Low</td><td>1</td><td>250</td></tr></table><p>Alarm and Event History</p><p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable history</p><p>Database definition:</p><p>FTAE</p><p>Computer name: 510-SQL</p><p>Database name: PlantPAx</p><p>Cache file path:</p><p>C:\ProgramData\Rockwell\Alarms</p><p>Log language:</p><p>English (United States), en-US</p><p>OK Cancel Apply Help</p></div><div><p>FactoryTalk Linx OPC UA Connector</p><p>Connector Settings</p><p>Redundancy</p><p>OPC UA Servers</p><table><tr><th>Name</th><th>Location</th></tr><tr><td>UNIQ01</td><td>opc.tcp://opcam1.59100</td></tr><tr><td>UNIQ02</td><td>opc.tcp://opcam2.59100</td></tr><tr><td>UNIQ03</td><td>opc.tcp://opcam3.59100</td></tr></table><p>Add Delete</p><p>Alarms Settings</p><p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable alarm and event support</p><p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Communicating with server</p><p>Priorities</p><p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable server-assigned priorities</p><table><tr><th>Priority</th><th>Low</th><th>High</th></tr><tr><td>Urgent</td><td>751</td><td>1000</td></tr><tr><td>High</td><td>501</td><td>750</td></tr><tr><td>Medium</td><td>251</td><td>500</td></tr><tr><td>Low</td><td>1</td><td>250</td></tr></table><p>History</p><p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable history</p><p>Database definition</p><p>FTAE</p><p>Computer Name 510-SQL</p><p>Database name PlantPAx</p><p>Cache file path:</p><p>C:\ProgramData\Rockwell\Alarms</p><p>Diagnostic Logging</p><p>OK Apply Cancel</p></div></div>	Priority	Low	High	Urgent	751	1000	High	501	750	Medium	251	500	Low	1	250	Name	Location	UNIQ01	opc.tcp://opcam1.59100	UNIQ02	opc.tcp://opcam2.59100	UNIQ03	opc.tcp://opcam3.59100	Priority	Low	High	Urgent	751	1000	High	501	750	Medium	251	500	Low	1	250
Priority	Low	High																																						
Urgent	751	1000																																						
High	501	750																																						
Medium	251	500																																						
Low	1	250																																						
Name	Location																																							
UNIQ01	opc.tcp://opcam1.59100																																							
UNIQ02	opc.tcp://opcam2.59100																																							
UNIQ03	opc.tcp://opcam3.59100																																							
Priority	Low	High																																						
Urgent	751	1000																																						
High	501	750																																						
Medium	251	500																																						
Low	1	250																																						

## FactoryTalk AssetCentre Configuration

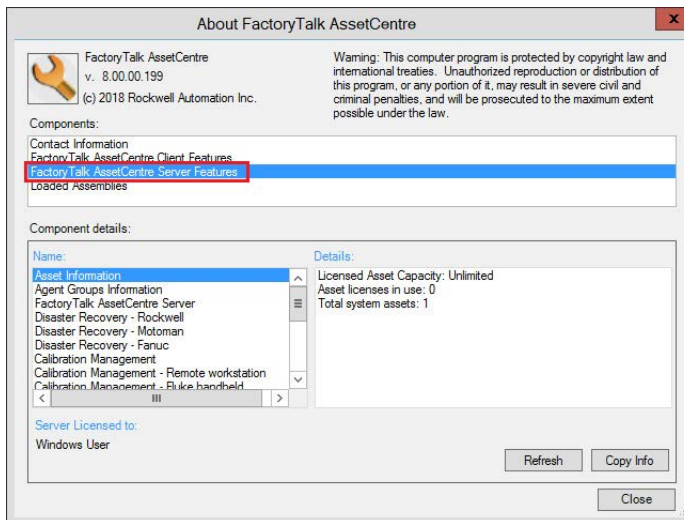
As a rule, do not to exceed 100 assets over a 12-hour period per agent.

To verify the FactoryTalk AssetCentre configuration:

1. On the AssetCentre menu bar, select Help > About.



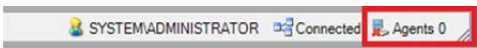
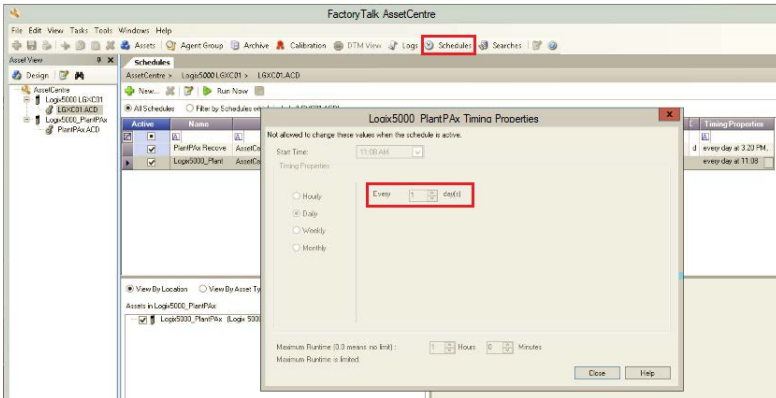
2. In the Components box, select FactoryTalk AssetCentre Server Features.



### System Architecture Tab: FactoryTalk AssetCentre (AppServ-Asset Mgmt)

Row	Guidelines	Description
18	Number of Assets	Licensing determines the allowable number of assets. A base license includes 10 assets. From the Details pane of the FactoryTalk AssetCentre dialog box, verify the number of total system assets.

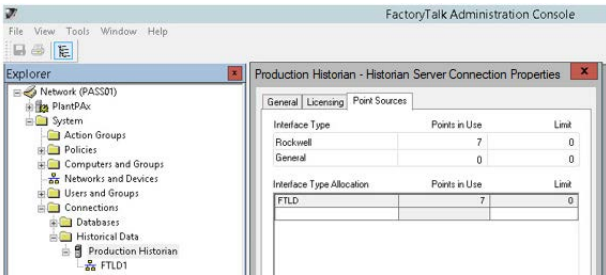
## System Architecture Tab: FactoryTalk AssetCentre (AppServ-Asset Mgmt)

Row	Guidelines	Description
19	Number of Disaster Recovery (DR) Assets	Specify the number of controllers that are configured for Disaster Recovery (requires a Disaster Recovery license). Select Disaster Recovery - Rockwell in the FactoryTalk AssetCentre dialog box.
20	Number of Agents	Agents are programs that communicate with the FactoryTalk AssetCentre server and perform server tasks, such as disaster recovery. By using agents, work is distributed and shared among computers to help spread processing load. View the number of agents in the bottom-right corner of the FactoryTalk AssetCentre dialog box. 
21	How Often DR Assets Configured to Upload	Determine the frequency that the assets are scheduled to upload. Enter the number of days between asset uploads from the Schedules > Timing properties dialog box. 

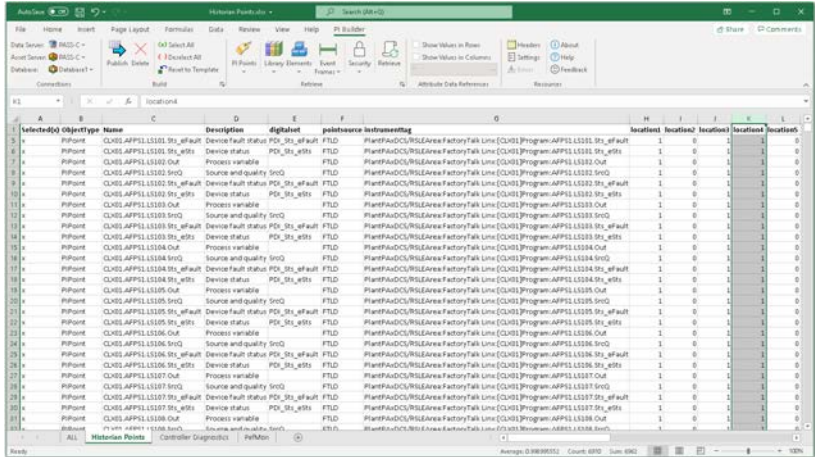
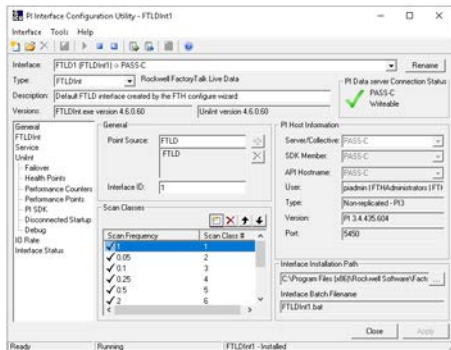
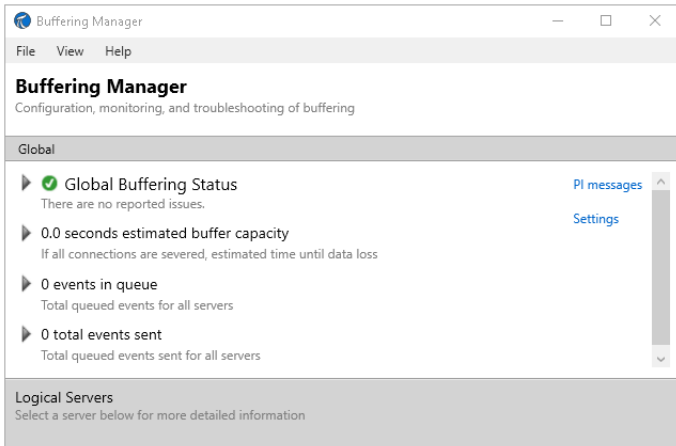
## FactoryTalk Historian SE Configuration

Verify that the following FactoryTalk View Historian SE design attributes comply with system recommendations.

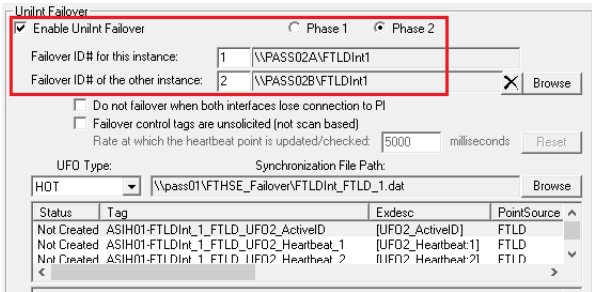
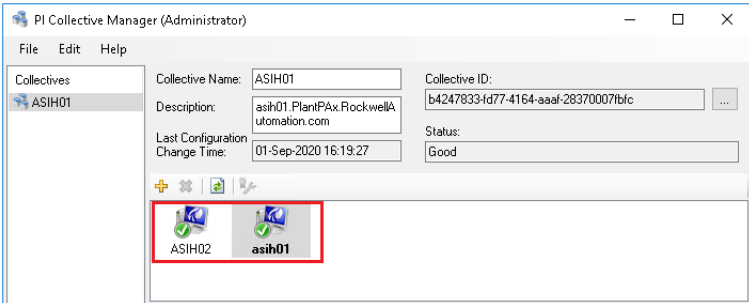
## System Architecture Tab: FactoryTalk Historian SE (AppServ-Info)

Row	Guidelines	Description
22	Points In Use	Verify the number of points that are in use. To view the number of points on the FactoryTalk Administration Console dialog box, go to System > Connections > Historical Data and select the Historian SE server. 
23	Points Limit	The limit depends on the points in use and the license limit. This value sets a benchmark that can be compared to future server results. The comparison can identify a potential issue with too many points per license.

## System Architecture Tab: FactoryTalk Historian SE (AppServ-Info)

Row	Guidelines	Description
24	Fastest Scan Class	<p>Verify the scan rate that is used in FactoryTalk Live Data to send controller information to the Historian server. This information can be viewed with Point Builder in PI System Management Tools or using the FactoryTalk Historian SE Excel Add-in tool.</p> <p>From Excel, on the PI Builder tab, select PI Points &gt; All Points and select all columns. The column that is labeled Location 4 is an integer that is used by many interfaces to specify the scan class of the PI Point.</p>  <p>The PI Interface Configuration Utility defines time period of each class number. For example, the FTLD1 interface contains 10 scan classes in terms of seconds.</p>  <p>Typically, a scan class of 1 second is sufficient. Some tags can require a scan class of 0.5 seconds. Exception reporting and compression reporting for tuning parameters are important for data collection and server loading.</p>
25	Number of Interfaces	<p>Specify the number of FactoryTalk Live Data interfaces in your Historian configuration.</p> <p>Buffering is recommended to maintain data collection in the event the connection to the server is lost.</p>
26	Buffering Enabled and Running	

System Architecture Tab: FactoryTalk Historian SE (AppServ-Info)

Row	Guidelines	Description
27	Unit Fail Over Enabled and Running	<p>On the Interface Configuration Utility, verify that failover is configured properly.</p> 
28	Collective Enabled and Running	<p>Verify that a collective is properly configured in a redundant Historian systems</p> 

PASS Tab

The PASS tab records details about the HMI elements in your application.

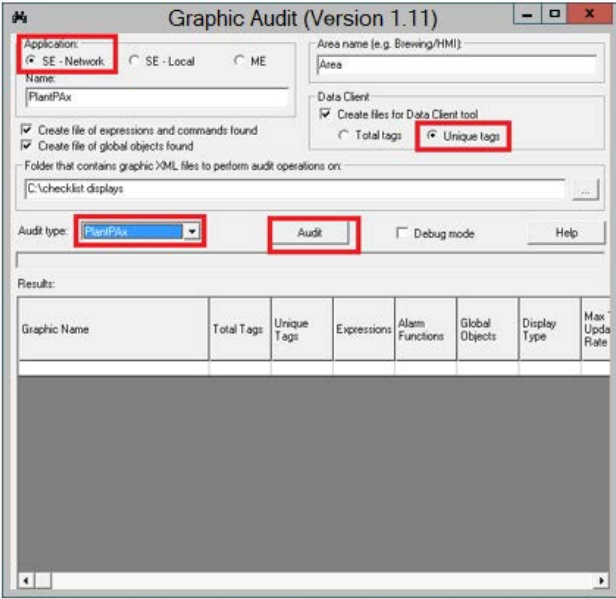
**IMPORTANT** Make a copy of this worksheet for each PASS in your system.

To verify your FactoryTalk® View Site Edition (SE) HMI design elements, use the Rockwell Automation Graphic Audit Tool. The audit tool analyzes exported HMI displays. The PlantPax Graphic Audit Tool can be found from the Product Compatibility and Download Center at [rok.auto/pcdc](http://rok.auto/pcdc) under the PlantPax Tools release, specifically for the PlantPax Verification Checklist Tools download.

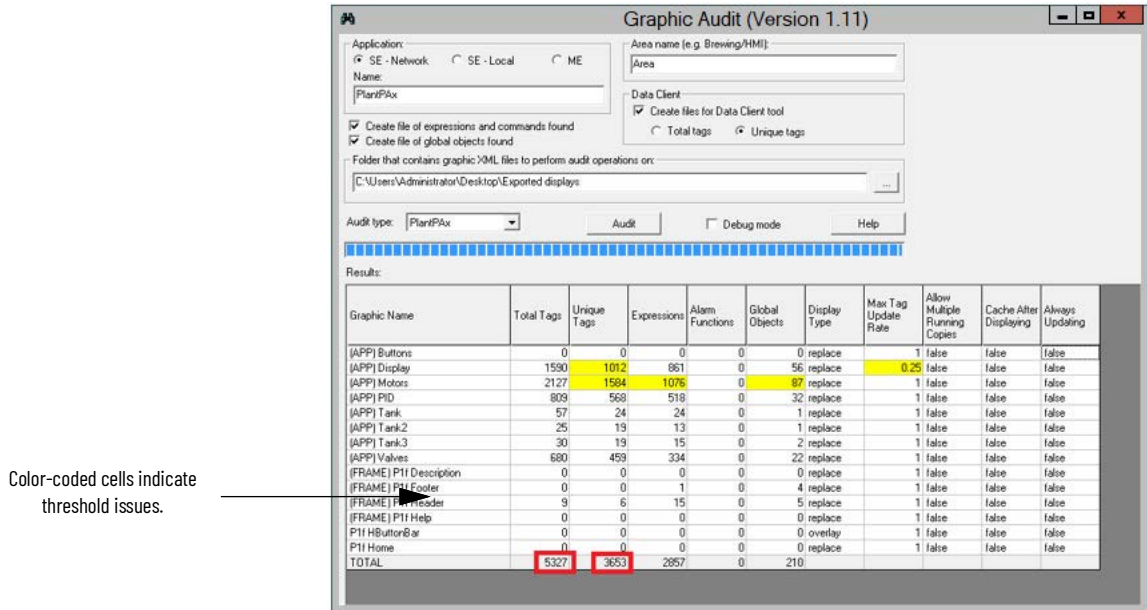
Before you run the audit tool, export the HMI application graphic files to an XML format. Then run the audit tool on the XML file.

Field Description	Application
SE - Network SE - Local ME	Click SE - Network
Name	The Name and Area Name are used only to generate Data Client XML files and are not used in the audit operation. See Graphic Audit Tool Help.rtf file in the zip file for more details.
Area Name (for example, Brewing/HMI)	
Create file of expressions and commands found Create file of global objects found	To create the respective files, check the boxes.
Data Client Create files for Data Client tool Total tags Unique tags	To enable Create files for Data Client, check the box, and then select Unique tags.
Folder that contains graphic XML files to perform audit operations on	Click Browse ('...' ellipsis) to select the directory path where you exported your graphic XML files.
Audit type	Choose PlantPax from the dropdown menu. This choice uses rules that are specific to the PlantPax system.





The process displays are listed in the Results pane.



These guidelines apply to HMI applications developed via FactoryTalk View SE software. Make sure:

- The FactoryTalk View SE system is correctly installed and configured (software version, operating system, computer requirements) according to the PlantPAx system characterized architecture.
- Design the FactoryTalk View SE system to accommodate future additions.
- Develop your HMI displays according to ISA 101 standards

## FactoryTalk View SE System

Verify that the HMI server attributes comply with these recommendations.

### PASS Tab: FactoryTalk View SE (HMI)

Row	Guidelines	Description
4	Number of Displays	The total number of displays does not exceed the display license.
5-10	Total Tags on Server Unique Tags Expressions Global Objects	Verify that there are no warnings or errors from the Graphic Audit Tool. Consider simplifying any displays with warnings or errors.
11-15	Display Settings Display Type Display Cache Always Updating Graphic Update Rate	For display settings, specify: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Display Type = Replace</li> <li>Display Cache = No</li> <li>Always Updating + not checked</li> </ul> Verify that the update rate is within recommendation of 0.5 seconds. Any faster rate has a possible impact on the server and controller.

## FactoryTalk Alarms and Events Server

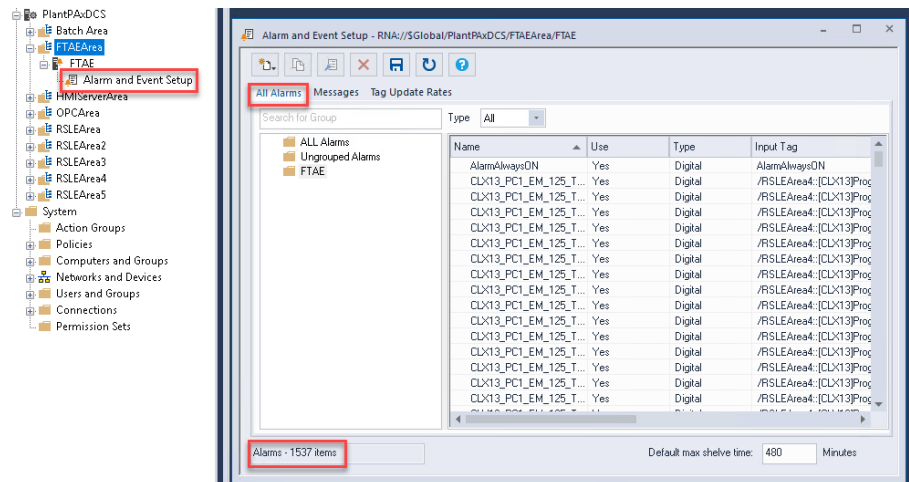
There are two possible types of alarms on the PASS:

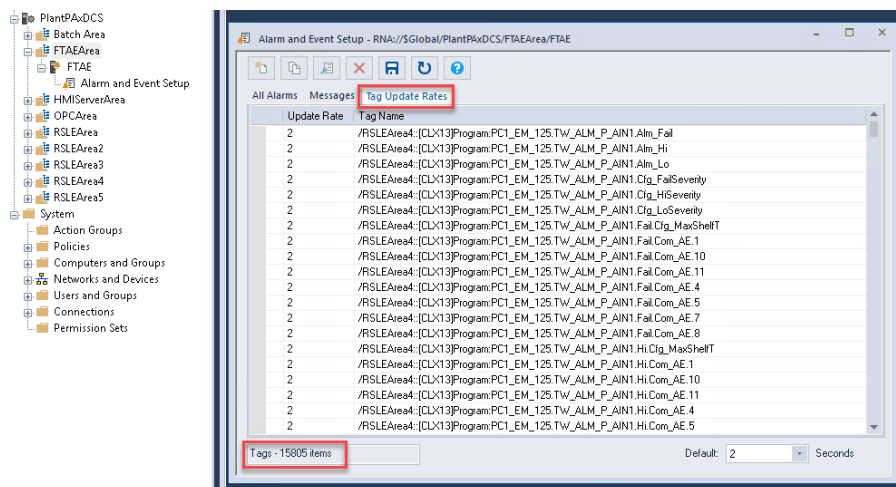
- Server Tag-based alarms
- Logix Tag-based alarms

### Server Tag-based Alarms

Server Tag-based alarms that are defined within the FactoryTalk Alarms and Events server (default for 4.6 or earlier PlantPax system releases that are using the 4.1 or earlier Library of Process objects.)

The FactoryTalk Alarm and Event Setup dialog box provides the data.



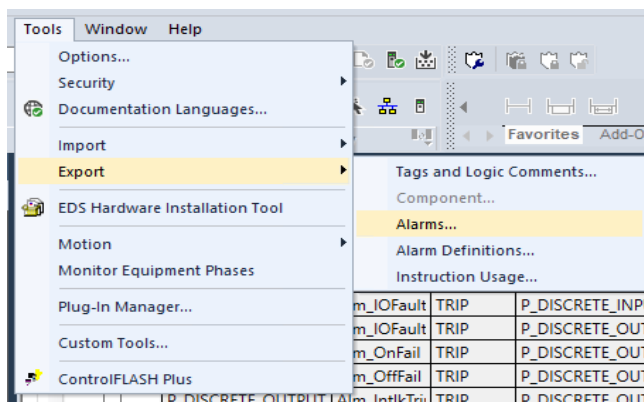


### Logix Tag-based Alarms

Logix Tag-based alarms are configured in the Logix Designer software and stored in controller memory. They are processed directly by the FactoryTalk Linx data server and do not require a Tag Alarms and Events server. This alarm type is used by version 5.0 and later of the Process Objects Library.

To determine the number of Logix tag-based alarms:

1. In Logix Designer, export the alarms for each of the controllers with a defined shortcut on the FactoryTalk Linx (Instance 01) data server.
2. Open the export file in Excel and filter on Use = True to total the number of in-use alarms. Record this value in the appropriate row in the Checklist spreadsheet. Repeat these steps for FactoryTalk Linx (Instance 02) if necessary.



3. Verify that the alarm server attributes comply with these recommendations.

### PASS Tab: FactoryTalk Alarms and Events

Row	Guidelines	Description
16	Number of Server Tag-based Alarms (FactoryTalk Alarms and Events)	The FactoryTalk Alarms and Events server supports 20,000 Server Tag-based alarms
17	Total Items (Server Tag-based alarms only)	Informational field provides a total number of items on the Tag Update Rates of the FactoryTalk Alarm and Event Setup dialog box
18	Fastest Update Rate (Server Tag-based alarms only)	Update rate recommendation is greater than or equal to 1 second. Default is 2 seconds to help reduce load on the system.
19	All tags associated with Server Tag-based alarms are from a data server that is hosted on the same PASS as the alarm server.	The alarm server references the data server that is hosted on the same computer. Move non-compliant alarms to the appropriate alarm server associated with the data server.

**PASS Tab: FactoryTalk Alarms and Events**

Row	Guidelines	Description
20	Number of Logix Tag-based Alarms (FactoryTalk Linx Instance 1)	FactoryTalk Linx instance 1 supports 15,000 Logix Tag-based alarms
20	Number of Logix Tag-based Alarms (FactoryTalk Linx Instance 2)	FactoryTalk Linx instance 2 supports 15,000 Logix Tag-based alarms
22	Total Alarms (Server Tag-based + Logix Tag-based; sum total of previous 3 rows)	The total number of alarms does not exceed 30,000 per PASS

**Generate the FactoryTalk View Report**

The FactoryTalk View Report can automatically generate some of the required data for the PASS and Controller worksheets. Use the following steps to configure and generate the report.

**IMPORTANT**

The provided global object, display files, and images in the checklist file must be installed in the HMI before printing the report. The display files include the following:

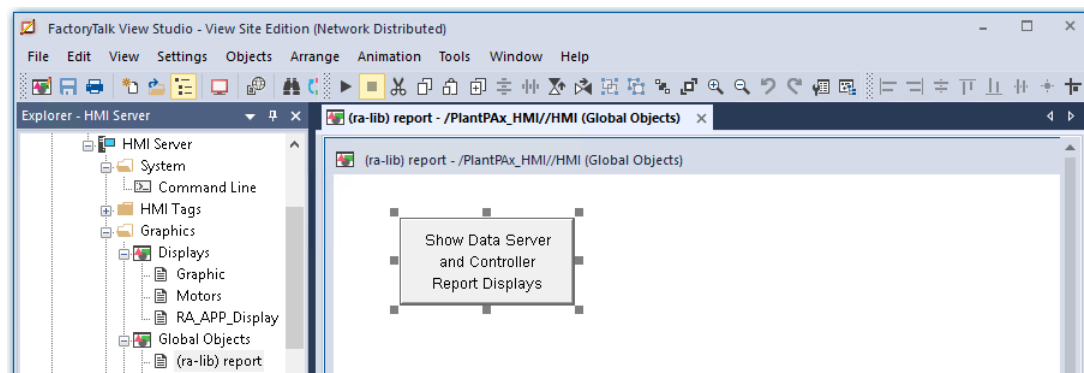
Images: icon\_gray.png, icon\_green.png, icon\_yellow.png, icon\_red.png

Global object: (RA-LIB) Report.ggfx

Displays: (RA-LIB) Report RSLinxE.gfx, (RA-LIB) Report Controller.gfx, (RA-LIB) Report Controller 5x80.gfx

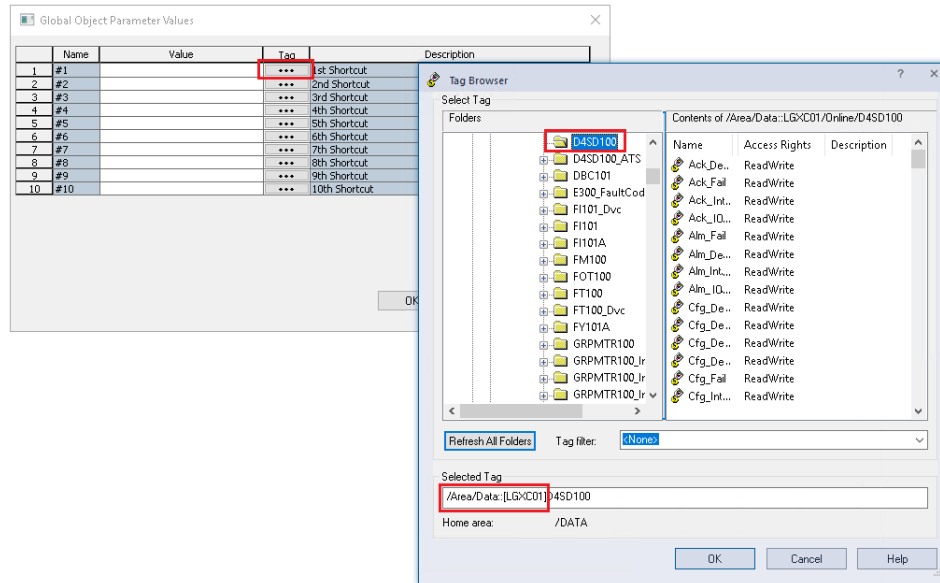
The files needed to generate the report can be found in the Product Compatibility and Download Center at [rok.auto/pcdc](http://rok.auto/pcdc) under the PlantPax Tools release, specifically for the PlantPax Verification Checklist Tools download.

- For each controller, select the appropriate diagnostic Add-On Instruction. Diagnostic Add-On Instructions are available in the Library of Process Objects. This library can be downloaded from the Product Compatibility and Download Center at [rok.auto/pcdc](http://rok.auto/pcdc).  
Use the following guidelines to determine which instruction to use.
  - If the controller is from the 5x70 family, use the L\_CPU instruction.
  - If the controller is from the 5x80 family, use either the L\_CPU\_5X80 instruction (4.1 library and earlier) or the raP\_Dvc\_LgxCPU\_5X80 (5.0 library and later).
- For each controller, import and configure the appropriate Add-On Instruction. Verify that the instruction's tag is controller-scoped and named "L\_CPU" for the L\_CPU or L\_CPU\_5X80. If the raP\_Dvc\_LgxCPU\_5X80 is used the tag name must be "raP\_Dvc\_LgxCPU".
- The instruction must have Data Collection enabled from the maintenance tab on the faceplate.  
See Rockwell Automation Library of Logix Diagnostic Objects, publication [PROCES-RM003](#) for more information on the L\_CPU and L\_CPU\_5X80 Add-On Instructions.  
See Rockwell Automation Library of Process Objects, publication [PROCES-RM200](#) for more information on raP\_Dvc\_LgxCPU\_5x80 Add-On Instruction.
- In FactoryTalk View Studio, go to Global Objects file (RA-LIB) Report and select the Show Data Server and Controller Report Displays button.

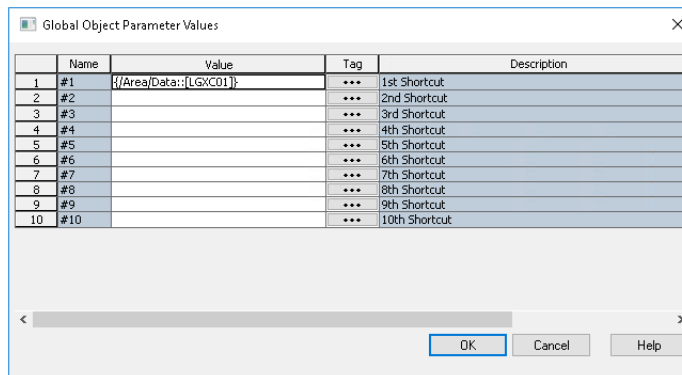


- Copy the Global Object button and paste on to desired display.

6. Select the button and open the Global Object Parameter Values.
7. Under Tag on the Global Objects Parameter Values dialog box, click Browse (ellipsis '...') browse to select a controller shortcut.



8. Enter a shortcut path. Use the syntax {/Area/Server::[Shortcut]}. Repeat until all shortcuts from FactoryTalk Linx Instance 01 are added. Add a new button and repeat process for FactoryTalk Linx Instance 02 if necessary.



- Run a FactoryTalk View Client session and click the Show Data Server and Controller Report Displays button to generate a report.

The screenshot displays two tables from the RSLogix software interface.

**Data Servers**

Controller Shortcut	Controller Path	Press to Show Shortcut Report Display	Notes
/Area/Data::[LGXC01]	RSLogix 5000 Emulator in slot 2 of the virtual backplane	[...]	
/Area/Data::[PlantPAx]	RSLogix 5000 Emulator in slot 3 of the virtual backplane	[...]	
/Area/Data::[LGXC01B]	RSLogix 5000 Emulator in slot 4 of the virtual backplane	[...]	
/Area/Data::[PlantPAxB]	RSLogix 5000 Emulator in slot 5 of the virtual backplane	[...]	

**Virtual Memory**      559172

Controller Shortcut	# Pooled Data Items	Avg Packets per Second	Avg Packet Response Time	Results	Notes
/Area/Data::[LGXC01]	3	9	0	✓	
/Area/Data::[PlantPAx]	25233	75	2	✓	
/Area/Data::[LGXC01B]	0	0	0	✓	
/Area/Data::[PlantPAxB]	25230	0	0	✓	

**Summary Totals:**

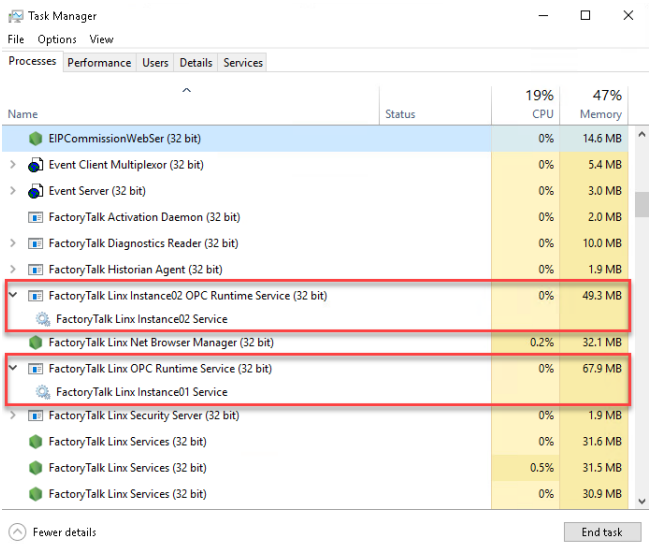
Press to Refresh Totals	50466	43	2		
-------------------------	-------	----	---	--	--

**Name:** \_\_\_\_\_ **Signature:** \_\_\_\_\_ **Date:** \_\_\_\_\_

## FactoryTalk Linx Data Server

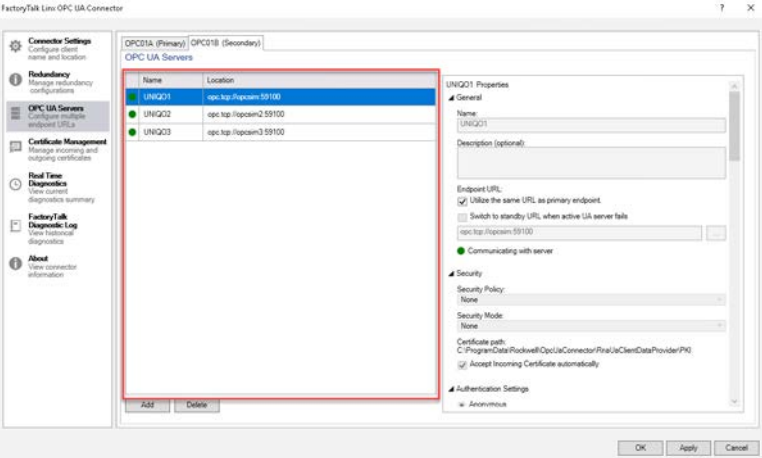
For each shortcut, verify:

### PASS Tab: Data Server (FactoryTalk Linx Instance 1 and Instance 2)

Row	Guidelines	Description
23 & 37	Memory Usage	<p>Select Yes or No to indicate if the Data Server is in use. If yes, then record the memory usage (MB) from the computer's task manager. PlantPAx recommends the memory usage of each instance of FactoryTalk Linx not exceed 3,000 MB.</p> 
24-50	Number of Polled Data Items	The number of tags that are polled from the controller.
24-50	Average packets per Second	If your controller consistently exceeds the recommended maximum average packets per second, it's possible your controller is overloaded. Consider reducing the number of HMI data points that are referenced by your HMI displays from that controller. You can also change the display update rate if you're experiencing performance issues.
24-50	Average Packet Response Time	<p>The average packet response time of messages to the controller.</p> <p>If your average packet response time consistently exceeds 200 milliseconds, then it's possible that your communication adapter has a potential bottleneck. Consider the following troubleshooting guidelines if your performance isn't satisfactory:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Examine your network architecture and network hardware. You could be exceeding your switch capacity or capabilities that can cause slow network performance.</li> <li>You could be using an outdated communication adapter in the path to your controller. Or, you could be exceeding the capabilities of the communication adapter.</li> </ul>

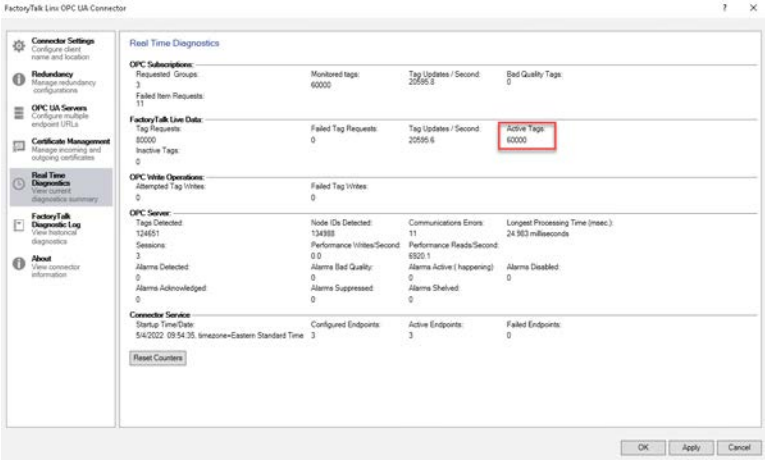
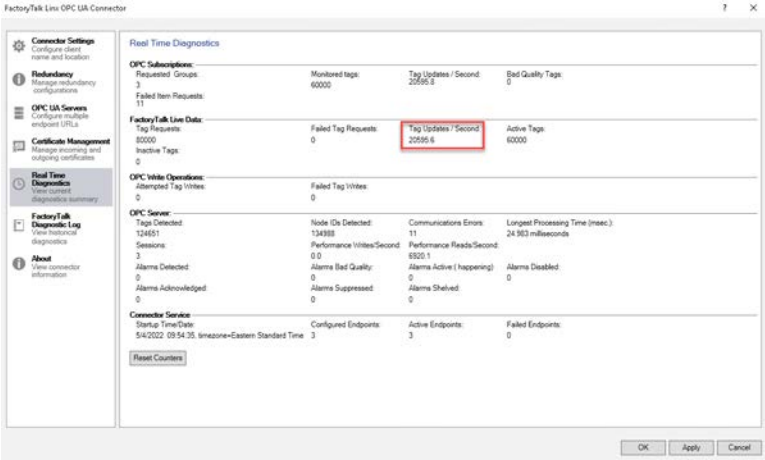
FactoryTalk Linx OPC UA Connector

PASS Tab: Data Server (OPC UA Connector)

Row	Guidelines	Description
51	Using OPC UA Connector	The OPC UA connector should be hosted on a dedicated computer with no other servers (HMI, Alarm, or Data) present.
52	Number of OPC UA connections	<div><p>The OPC UA server shouldn't have more than 20 OPC UA connections.</p></div>



## PASS Tab: Data Server (OPC UA Connector)

Row	Guidelines	Description
53	FactoryTalk Live Data Active Tags	<p>The OPC UA server shouldn't have more than 50,000 active tags.</p> 
54	FactoryTalk Live Data Active Tag Updates/sec	<p>The OPC UA server shouldn't have more than 50,000 tag updates per second.</p> 
55	Total OPC UA Alarms and Conditions	<p>Determining the number of Alarms and Conditions for each OPC UA server that is configured in the connector. Each connection that is counted in Row 52 must be reviewed individually as specific configurations of OPC UA servers can vary. The sum total of all alarms and conditions across all connected OPC UA servers shouldn't exceed 5000. Consider reducing the number of OPC UA alarms and conditions if there are more than 5000 total across all OPC UA servers.</p>

## Pass Tab: DataLogPro

Row	Guidelines	Description
56	Total DataLogPro tags	The total number of tags configured in DataLogPro should not exceed 50,000.





## Controller 5x80 Tab

The Controller tab records controller properties.

**IMPORTANT** Make a copy of this worksheet for each 5x80 controller in your system.

To gather information for the checklist, you can use the FactoryTalk View report, see [Generate the FactoryTalk View Report](#).

Select the button shown in the following display to view the Controller Report Display.

Controller Shortcut	Controller Path	Press to Show Shortcut Report Display
/Area/Data::[LGXC01]	RSLogix 5000 Emulator in slot 2 of the virtual backplane	
/Area/Data::[PlantPax]	RSLogix 5000 Emulator in slot 3 of the virtual backplane	
/Area/Data::[LGXC01B]	RSLogix 5000 Emulator in slot 4 of the virtual backplane	
/Area/Data::[PlantPaxB]	RSLogix 5000 Emulator in slot 5 of the virtual backplane	

## Controller Properties

Verify that the controller properties comply with these recommendations.

### Controller 5x80 Tab: Properties

Row	Guidelines	Description
4	Shortcut	Keep the shortcut, ACD file reference, and controller name similar (intuitive).
5	Firmware	Verify the firmware revision.
6	Module	The controller is indicated as available in the PSE. The controllers in the PSE have been characterized for use within a PlantPax system.
7	Redundancy	Indicate whether you're using a redundant controller (Yes/No).

## CPU Use

Verify that the CPU use complies with these recommendations.

### Controller 5x80 Tab: CPU Use

Row	Guidelines	Description
8	Logix Engine	At least 25% free for Redundant 5580 controllers. Non-redundant 5x80 controllers can utilize up to 100% of the Logix Engine.
9	Communications Core	At least 40% free.
10	Packet Processing Engine	At least 25% free.

## Faults

Verify that the fault handling complies with these recommendations.

### Controller 5x80 Tab: Faults

Row	Guidelines	Description
11	Minor Faults Count	Number of minor faults that have occurred within the controller. After clearing the minor faults, monitor for a period of time (at least several controller scans) before reverifying.
12	Task Overlap	Whether a task overlap occurs. A task overlap must be resolved. Use the predefined task model in the process controller or simplify the program. Lengthening the period or raising the relative priority of important tasks disables the predefined task model in a process controller.

## Capacity

Verify that the controller capacity complies with these recommendations.

To verify controller capacity, open the controller application file in Logix Designer. Go to Controller Properties > Capacity tab.

### Controller 5x80 Tab: Capacity

Row	Guidelines	Description
13 & 14	Program Memory (blocks)	Reserve at least 20%.
15 & 16	Nodes	Reserve at least 20%.

## Connections

Verify that the total number of connections is 75% or less of the controller maximum.

### Controller 5x80 Tab: Connections

Row	Guidelines	Description
17-25	Total I/O	Total number of connections includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I/O</li> <li>• Produced tags</li> <li>• Consumed tags</li> <li>• Messages</li> <li>• Incoming</li> <li>• Unconnected buffers</li> <li>• Message cache</li> </ul>

## Time Synchronization

Verify that the controller is configured for time synchronization.

### Controller 5x80 Tab: Time Synchronization

Row	Guidelines	Description
26	Controller is time synchronized	Denotes if the controller is configured for time synchronization (Yes/No).

## Task Structure

Verify that the controller program uses only periodic tasks.

### Controller 5x80 Tab: Task Structure

Row	Guidelines	Description
27	Only periodic task used	Use only periodic tasks and remove any unused tasks The process controller enforces 4 periodic tasks: Slow, Normal, Fast, and System.

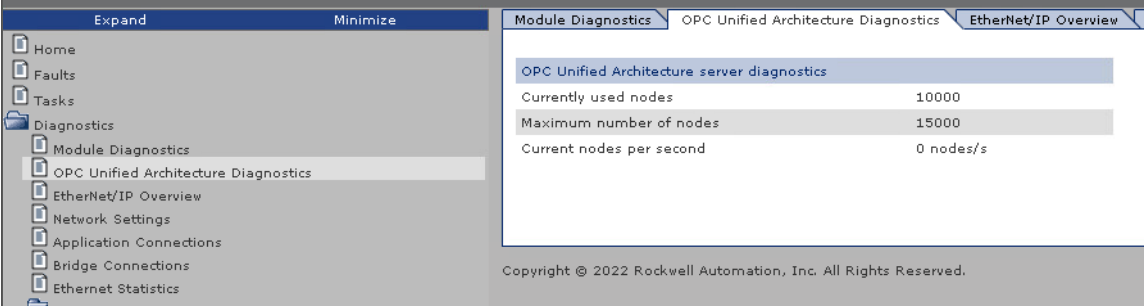
## Controller Alarms

Verify the number of controller alarms.

### Controller 5x80 Tab: Controller Alarms

Row	Guidelines	Description
28	Total number of Logix Tag-based alarms (both IN-USE and NOT)	The total number of Logix Tag-based alarms (both IN-USE and NOT) stored in a controller shouldn't exceed 10,000. See <a href="#">Logix Tag-based Alarms on page 275</a> to determine the number of alarms on a controller.
29	Total number of Logix Tag-based alarms (IN-USE only)	The total number of Logix Tag-based alarms (IN-USE only) stored in a controller shouldn't exceed 7,500. See <a href="#">Logix Tag-based Alarms on page 275</a> to determine the number of alarms on a controller.

### Controller 5x80 Tab: OPC UA

Row	Guidelines	Description
30	Total OPC UA nodes/sec	<p>The total number of OPC UA nodes/sec should not exceed 50,000. OPC UA nodes/sec diagnostic data is available via the controller webpage.</p> 





### Controller 5x70 Tab

The Controller tab records controller properties.

**IMPORTANT** Make a copy of this worksheet for each 5x70 controller in your system.

To gather information for the checklist, you can use the FactoryTalk View report, see [Generate the FactoryTalk View Report](#).

Select the button shown in the following display to view the Controller Report Display.

Controller Shortcut	Controller Path	Press to Show Shortcut Report Display
/Area/Data::[LGXC01]	RSLogix 5000 Emulator in slot 2 of the virtual backplane	
/Area/Data::[PlantPax]	RSLogix 5000 Emulator in slot 3 of the virtual backplane	
/Area/Data::[LGXC01B]	RSLogix 5000 Emulator in slot 4 of the virtual backplane	
/Area/Data::[PlantPaxB]	RSLogix 5000 Emulator in slot 5 of the virtual backplane	

### Controller Properties

Verify that the controller properties comply with these recommendations.

#### Controller 5x70 Tab: Properties

Row	Guidelines	Description
4	Shortcut	Keep the shortcut, ACD file reference, and controller name similar (intuitive).
5	Module	The controller is indicated as available in the PSE. The controllers in the PSE have been characterized for use within a PlantPax system.
6	Firmware	Verify the firmware revision.
7	Redundancy	Denotes if you're using a redundant controller (Yes/No).

### CPU Use

We recommend CPU load in a production environment to be 75% or less. Keep 25% CPU capacity as reserve to handle online edits, data server switchover, and so on.

Verify that the CPU use complies with these recommendations.

#### Controller 5x70 Tab: CPU Use

Row	Guidelines	Description
8	Free	At least 50% of free for redundant controllers At least 25% for simplex controllers.
9	Total Used	Total CPU utilization
10	Total Used: Periodic Tasks	The percentage of CPU use to run all application code in the controller. Periodic tasks are the only predictable task type on performance and utilization. Keep the number of tasks to 3 or 4 and do not use to organize code into process areas.
11	Total Used: Communication	The percentage of CPU use that is needed to respond to communication requests.
12	Total Used: Motion	The percentage of CPU use that is needed to execute motion.
13	Total Used: Messages	The percentage of CPU use that is needed to process messages.
14	Total Used: Safety	The percentage of CPU use that is needed to execute safety tasks.
15	Total Used: Redundancy	The percentage of CPU use that is needed to process redundancy.
16	Total Used: System	The percentage of system resources

## Faults

Verify that the fault handling complies with these recommendations.

#### Controller 5x70 Tab: Faults

Row	Guidelines	Description
17	Minor Faults Count	Number of minor faults that have occurred within the controller. After clearing the minor faults, monitor for a period of time (at least several controller scans) before reverifying.
18	Task Overlap	Whether a task overlap occurs. A task overlap must be resolved. Make changes such as simplifying programs, lengthening the period, or raising the relative priority of important tasks.

## Memory Use

The PlantPAx system requires the free I/O memory to be a minimum of 25% for simplex controllers. We recommend greater than 50% free memory for redundant controllers.

#### Controller 5x70 Tab: Memory Use

Row	Guidelines	Description
19 & 20	I/O Memory (bytes)	Reserve: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>At least 50% for redundant controllers</li> <li>At least 25% for simplex controllers</li> </ul> If the amount exceeds the recommendations, reduce the number of I/O modules that are scanned by this controller, make system changes.
21 & 22	Data and Logic (bytes)	Reserve: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>At least 50% for redundant controllers</li> <li>At least 25% for simplex controllers</li> </ul> If the amount exceeds the recommendations, upgrade controller for more memory or make changes to reduce load

## Connections

Verify that the total number of connections is 50% or less of the controller maximum.

### Controller 5x70 Tab: Connections

Row	Guidelines	Description
23-31	Total I/O	Total number of connections includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I/O</li> <li>• Produced tags</li> <li>• Consumed tags</li> <li>• Messages</li> <li>• Incoming</li> <li>• Unconnected buffers</li> <li>• Message cache</li> </ul>

## Time Synchronization

Verify that the controller is configured for time synchronization.

### Controller 5x70 Tab: Time Synchronization

Row	Guidelines	Description
32	Controller is time synchronized	Denotes if the controller is configured for time synchronization (Yes/No).

## Task Structure

Verify that the controller program uses only periodic tasks.

### Controller 5x70 Tab: Task Structure

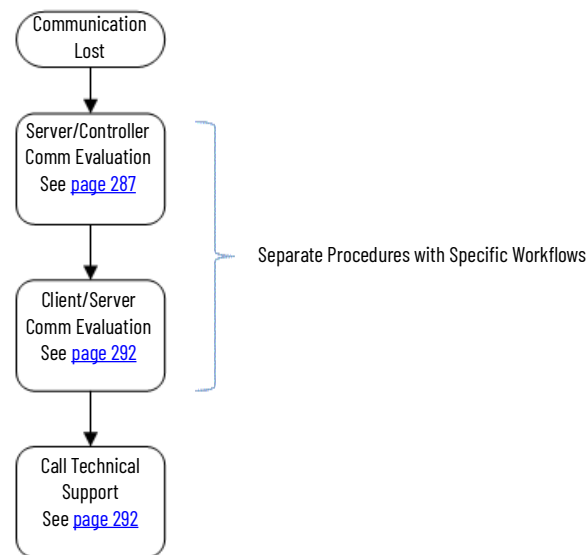
Row	Guidelines	Description
33	Only periodic task used	Use only periodic tasks and remove any unused tasks Use only 2-3 periodic tasks (slow, normal & fast) for logic and remove any unused tasks

## PlantPax Troubleshooting Scenarios

### HMI Communication Lost

[Figure 17](#) shows a basic workflow to correct lost communication. To target the root cause, follow this workflow:

**Figure 17 - Resolve Lost Communication**



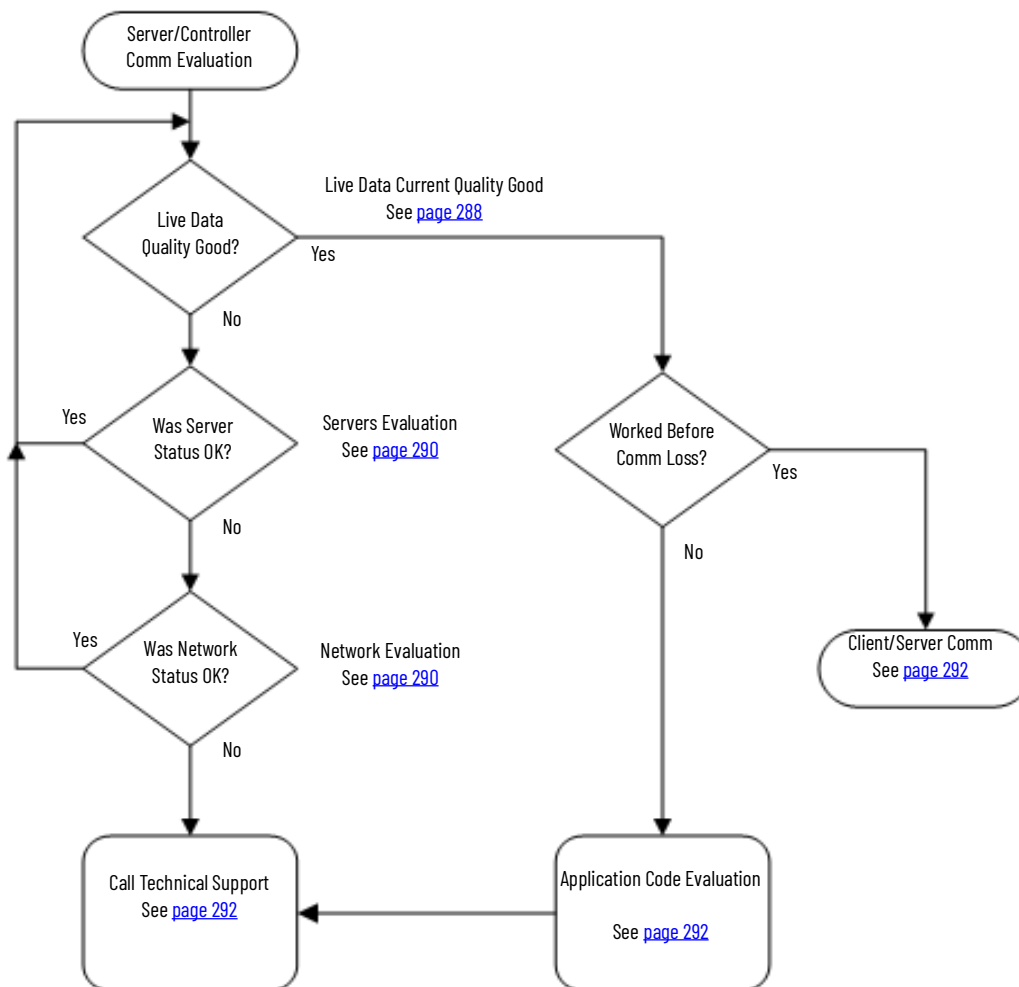
If you can't open a FactoryTalk® View SE client application on your OWS, go directly to the Client/Server Communication Evaluation section on [page 292](#).

### Server and Controller Communication Evaluation

[Figure 18](#) shows how to diagnose a loss of communication between the (PASS) server and the controller. Make sure that the server has good quality communication with the controller and follow down the workflow to rule out any network issues.

Click the link or go to the respective page for specific information on each topic. If the server checks out okay, then you have the option to go to the client computer for additional troubleshooting or to call Technical Support.

Figure 18 - Resolve Server to Controller Communication

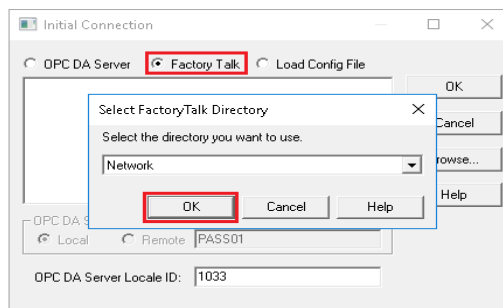


### *Live Data Current Quality Good*

This procedure examines whether the controller communication is available at the server level. If the current quality is 'good', then you can rule out that the server isn't talking to the controller.

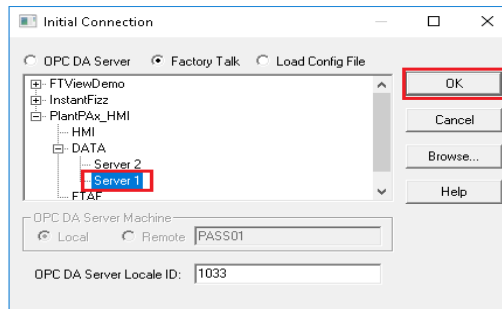
1. Go to FactoryTalk Tools > FactoryTalk Live Data Test Client and select FactoryTalk and Network as the Initial Connection.

The Initial Connection dialog box appears.

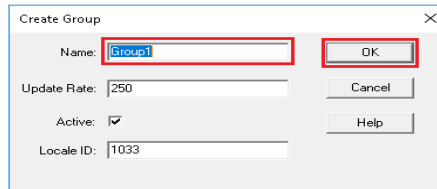




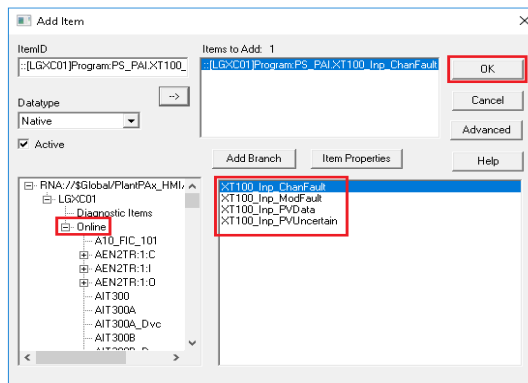
2. Browse to the data server area and click OK.



3. The Create Group dialog box appears.  
4. Use the default or type your own group name and click OK.

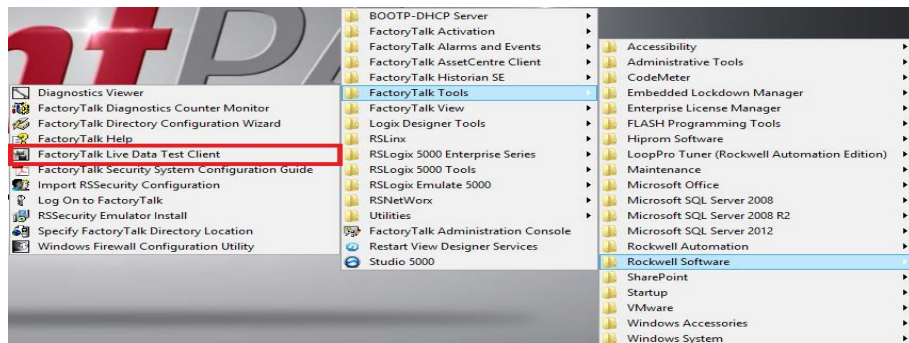


5. In the lower, left pane of the Add Item dialog box, browse to the controller, and select Online.



6. In the right pane, if no tags appear then proceed to [Servers Evaluation on page 290](#). Otherwise, click any tag in the controller and add the item.

The FactoryTalk® Live Data Test Client dialog box appears.



7. Check that the Current Quality is 'Good'.

The 'Good' status indicates that you have communication from the server to the controller.

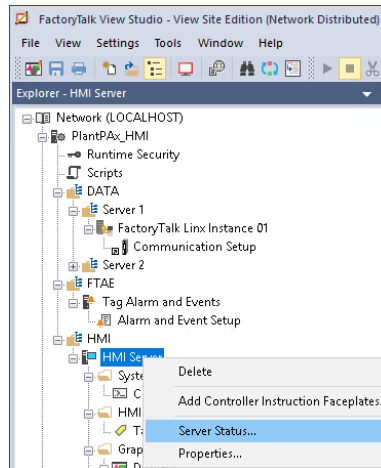
If the status is 'Bad', then proceed to [Servers Evaluation](#).

## Servers Evaluation

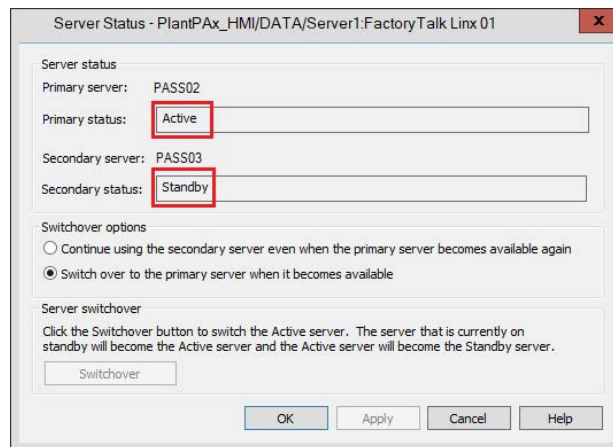
If using the FactoryTalk System Status Portal, open a web browser and enter `https://IPAddress/FTSystemStatus` (where "IPAddress" is the IP Address of the FactoryTalk Directory server). Verify the status of the system servers in this web portal. If not using the System Status Portal, follow the procedure below:

This procedure verifies that at least one server has active status. Complete these steps for the Data server and HMI server.

1. In the FactoryTalk® Administration Console or FactoryTalk View Studio, right-click the Data server and choose Server Status.



The Data server status dialog box appears.



2. Make sure that the status is 'Active' for at least one of the servers.
3. Repeat for the HMI server.

## Was Modification Made?

If you found an issue and made a correction, go back and redo the Live Data procedure. Reverify that communication has been established between the server and controller.

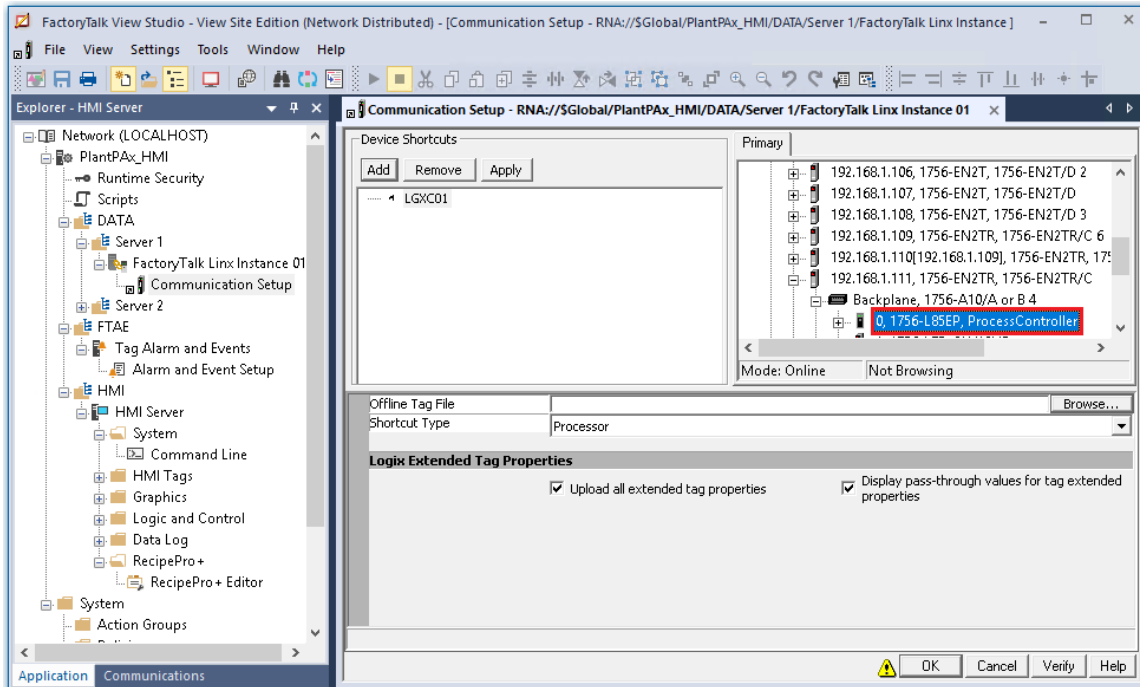
## Network Evaluation

Now you're analyzing whether the shortcut to the controller is valid. An incorrect path affects the controller communication to the server.



In a redundant system, perform these steps for the Primary and Secondary servers.

1. In the FactoryTalk Administration Console or FactoryTalk View Studio, open the Communications Setup.



2. Select the controller shortcut.  
If the shortcut does not highlight the correct controller, then select the correct controller and save the shortcut.
3. With the correct shortcut selected, expand the backplane.  
If you can browse, then you have communication to the controller. Proceed to [Was Modification Made? on page 292](#).  
If you can't browse, then try to ping the controller from the PASS.
4. To ping the controller, do the following:
  - a. Click Start and type CMD into the Search text box.  
A command prompt opens.
  - b. Type 'Ping xxx.yyy.zzz.aaa', where the letters represent the IP address of the communication adapter.
5. If the adapter responds, a similar display appears as shown.

```

ca. Command Prompt
Microsoft Windows [Version 10.0.14393]
(c) 2016 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

C:\Users\Rockwell Automation>ping 172.20.1.111

Pinging 172.20.1.111 with 32 bytes of data:
Reply from 172.20.1.111: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=128
Reply from 172.20.1.111: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=128
Reply from 172.20.1.111: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=128
Reply from 172.20.1.111: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=128

Ping statistics for 172.20.1.111:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms

C:\Users\Rockwell Automation>

```

6. If your device does not respond, a 'Request Timed Out' message appears.

If the ping is successful, proceed to the next diagnostic action.

7. Repeat steps 2...6 if you're using a redundant Data server.

### *Was Modification Made?*

If you found an issue and made a correction, go back and redo the Live Data procedure. Reverify that communication has been established between the server and controller.

### *Review Application Code Formatting*

If the server and controller are communicating and the problem still exists, we recommend that you check the project application code. Project components could be incorrectly configured.

Verify proper Live Data syntax for the following project elements:

- FactoryTalk View SE or FactoryTalk View ME:
  - Display parameter files
  - Display values, expressions, and animations
  - Global object parameters
  - Command buttons and macros
  - Data logger
  - Event detector
  - Derived tags

### *Contact Technical Support*

Call a Rockwell Automation Technical Support representative if the problem still exists after checking the following:

- Server communication status
- Controller shortcut
- Application code syntax

Email technical support the most recent data that is compiled from the PlantPAx® checklists.

---

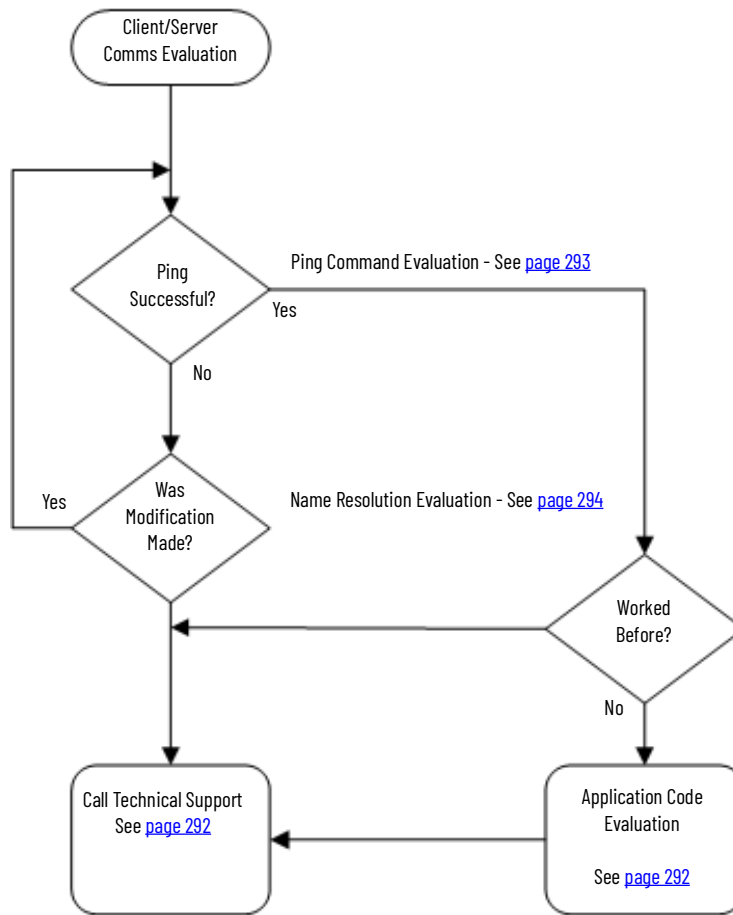
<b>IMPORTANT</b>	If the size of the information packet can't be sent via email, a technical support representative can help you post your information to the Rockwell Automation FTP site.
------------------	---

---

## **Client and Server Communication Evaluation**

[Figure 19](#) shows a workflow to resolve lost communication between a (PASS) server and a client. Work through the diagnostic activities until you identify an issue.

Click the link or go to the respective page for specific information on each topic. If the issue still exists, contact Technical Support with the details you have compiled to help with a resolution.

**Figure 19 - Resolve Server to Client Communication**

### *Ping Command Evaluation*

To check if the client computer is communicating with the server, start by pinging the computer.

Complete these steps.

1. Click Start and type CMD into the Search text box.  
A command prompt opens.
2. Type 'Ping (and server name)'.
3. If the controller responds, a display appears similar to the following:

```

Microsoft Windows [Version 10.0.14393]
(c) 2016 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

C:\Users\Rockwell Automation>ping PASS02

Pinging PASS02.PlantPax.RockwellAutomation.com [172.20.1.111] with
Reply from 172.20.1.111: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=128
Reply from 172.20.1.111: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=128
Reply from 172.20.1.111: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=128
Reply from 172.20.1.111: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=128

Ping statistics for 172.20.1.111:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms

C:\Users\Rockwell Automation>
  
```

4. If your device does not respond, a 'Request Timed Out' message appears.

If the ping is successful, check your application code for proper syntax. See [page 292](#).

Also, make sure that the firewall rules are not blocking the communication.

### Name Resolution Evaluation

This procedure verifies the mappings of IP addresses to host names. The steps apply if you're using a domain or a work group, with the latter explained last.

1. At the Command Prompt, type the NSLookup and server name and press Enter.
2. Type the name of the server that is being pinged.

If you receive the message 'DNS Request Timed Out', you typically do not have the Reverse Lookup Zone configured.

If the NSLookup ping provides the server name and IP address (as shown in the example), the server communication issue still exists.

```

C:\Users\Rockwell Automation>ping PASS01

Pinging PASS01 [172.20.1.12] with 32 bytes of data:
Reply from 172.20.1.12: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=128
Reply from 172.20.1.12: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=128
Reply from 172.20.1.12: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=128
Reply from 172.20.1.12: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=128

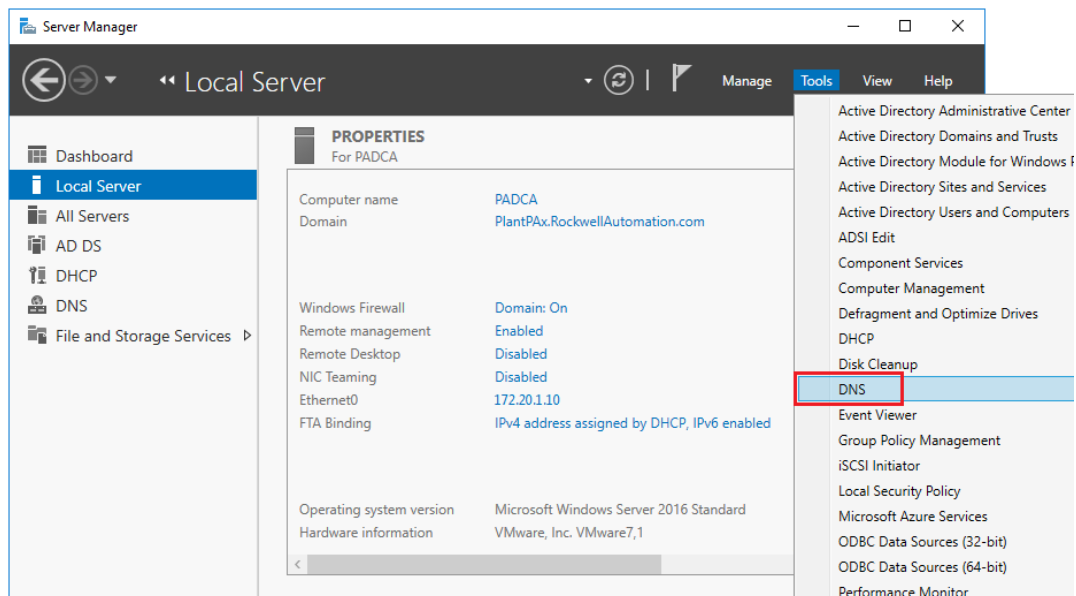
Ping statistics for 172.20.1.12:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 0ms, Average = 0ms

C:\Users\Rockwell Automation>
  
```

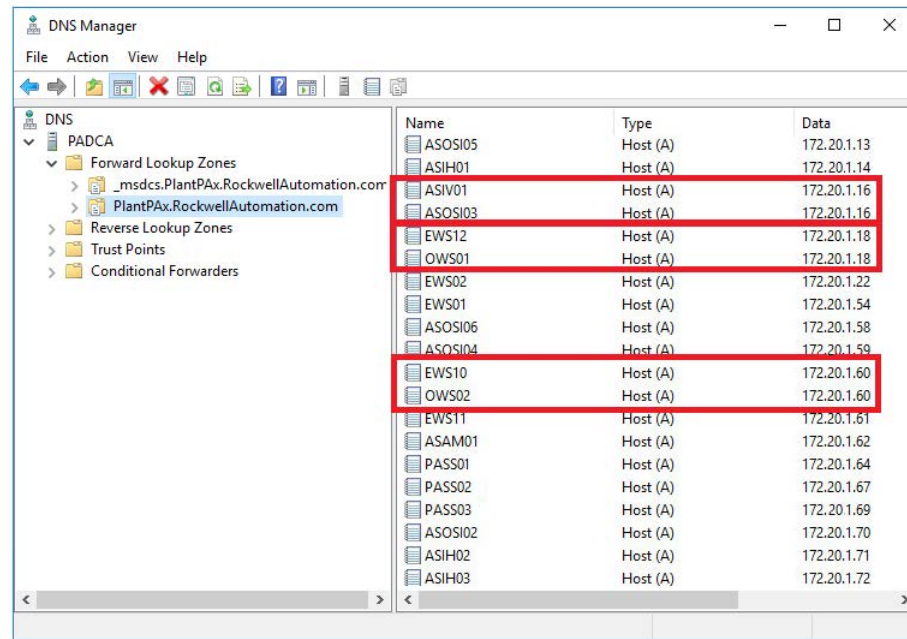
If the NSLookup ping does not provide a server name and IP address, then proceed with the following instructions on [page 294](#).

To verify that components do not have duplicate IP addresses, complete these steps.

1. From a DNS server, click Tools on the main menu and choose DNS.



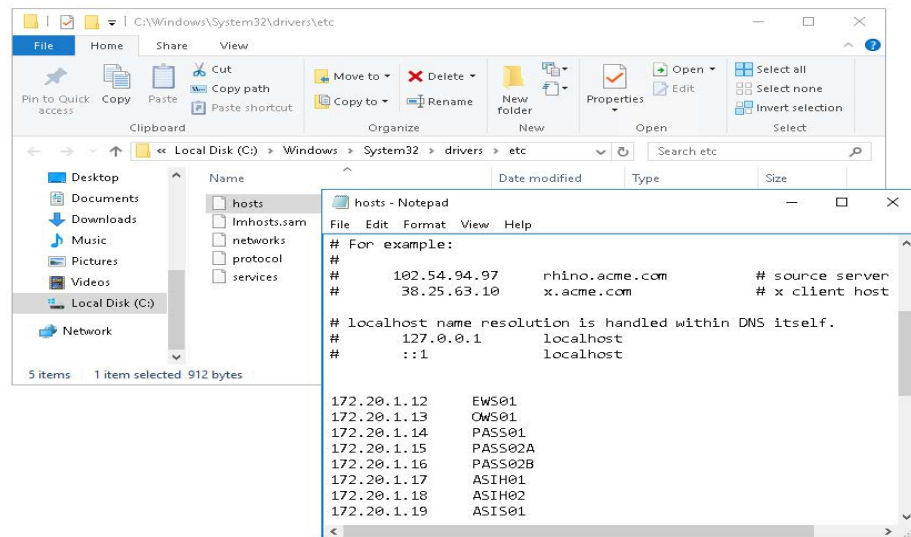
The DNS Manager display appears.



2. Verify that each name has its own IP address to make sure that you're ping the correct server via the client.

The example DNS Manager display shows several 'bad' computer names with the same IP address.

3. If you're using a workgroup, open the hosts folder in your Windows local hard disk drive.
4. Using Notepad, open the hosts file.



5. Verify that each name has its own IP address to make sure that you're ping the correct server via the client.

### *Was Modification Made?*

If you found an issue and made a correction, go back and ping the client computer again.

### *Review Application Code Formatting*

If the server and controller are communicating and the problem still exists, we recommend that you check the project application code. See [page 292](#).

*Contact Technical Support*

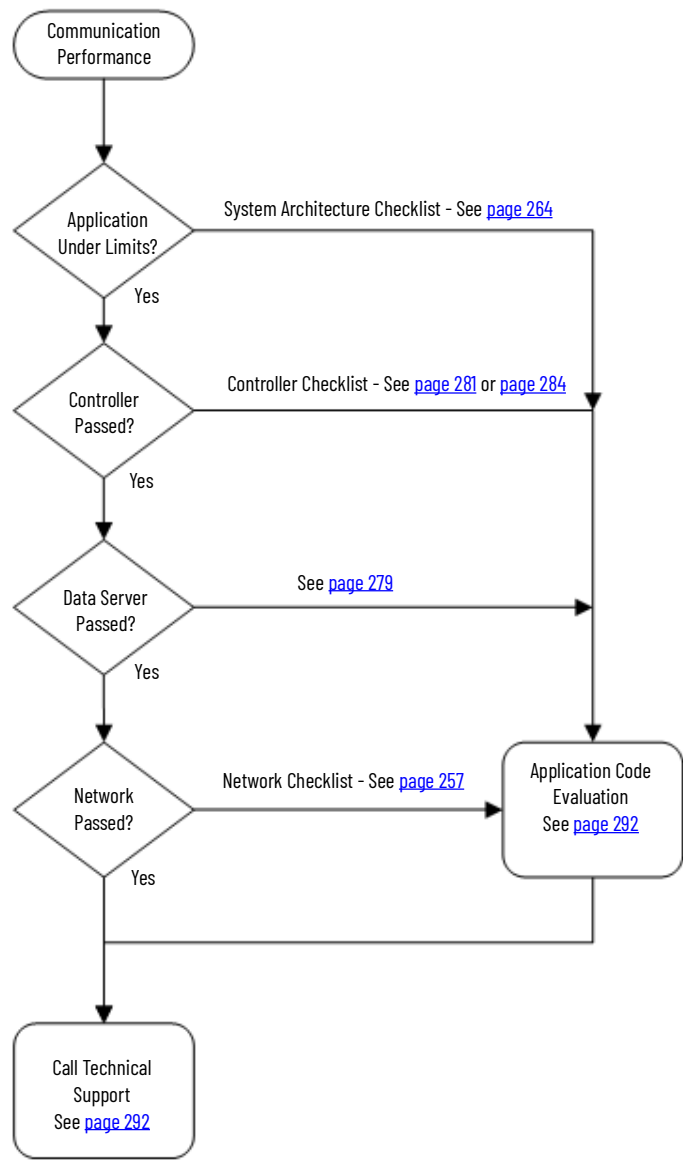
Call a Rockwell Automation technical support representative if the problem still exists. See [page 292](#).

**Troubleshooting Scenario:  
HMI Display Access is Slow**

[Figure 20](#) shows a workflow to resolve sluggish HMI displays. To target the root cause, work through the diagnostic activities until you identify an issue.

If the issue still exists, contact Technical Support with the details that you’ve compiled to help with a resolution.

**Figure 20 - Resolve Slow HMI Display Callup**





Action	Description
Application Under Limits?	A good starting point is to verify that your system design is within the sizing recommendations for a PlantPAx system. Design attributes include the number of servers, number of assets, and so forth. To verify design attributes, see the <a href="#">System Architecture Tab on page 264</a> .
Controller Passed?	The next step is to check whether your controllers have the CPU and memory usage as prescribed by the PlantPAx guidelines. These percentages vary depending on whether your application uses simplex or redundant controllers. For details, see the <a href="#">Controller 5x80 Tab on page 281</a> or <a href="#">Controller 5x70 Tab on page 284</a> .
Data Server Passed?	If the application design and controller setup are properly configured, check the Data server. Verify that the server is communicating data from the controllers to the HMI server and operator workstation. For details, see the FactoryTalk Linx worksheet section on <a href="#">page 279</a> .
Network Passed?	The health of the network is critical whether you're using a virtual or traditional operating system. There's a tool for analyzing network infrastructure. For details, see the <a href="#">System Infrastructure Tab on page 257</a> .
Review Application Code Formatting	For details, see <a href="#">page 292</a> .

**Notes:**

## FactoryTalk Optix Considerations

More information on FactoryTalk® Optix™ can be found online at [FactoryTalk Optix Help](#).

### raP\_5\_20\_Libraries User Guide

The raP\_5\_20\_Libraries is a comprehensive package that is designed to provide users with the latest supported PlantPax® faceplates for use in FactoryTalk Optix. This library ensures that developers or engineers have access to the officially supported faceplates and pre-configured widgets that enable FactoryTalk Optix project setup and upgrade in an easier way.

By centralizing all available PlantPax faceplates into a single, ready-to-use library, raP\_5\_20\_Libraries simplifies project setup, reduces configuration errors, and aligns with Rockwell Automation's latest standards for faceplate deployment in FactoryTalk Optix environments.

### NetLogic Security Warning in FactoryTalk Optix

When you open a FactoryTalk Optix project and attempt to start RunTime for the first time, the system displays a "NetLogic security warning" pop-up. This warning appears because your project's NetLogic C# code references certain .NET assemblies or third-party components that may impact your project's security.

#### *What is shown in the warning?*

- A list of referenced .NET assemblies and third-party assemblies that are considered security-critical.
- Standard .NET assemblies: System.IO, System.Reflection (generally referenced).

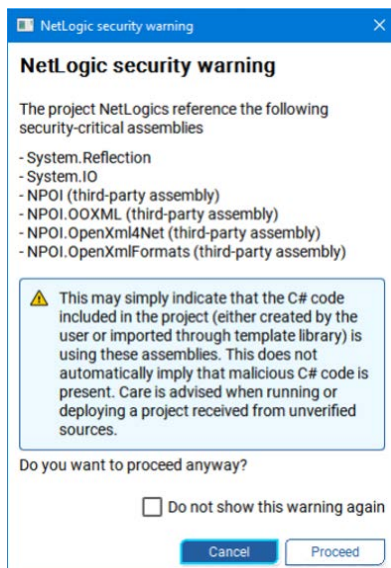
System.IO and System.Reflection are required for basic file operations and reflection functionality, such as the NetLogic raSDK1\_NL\_NavUsingTag.cs provided by PlantPax Process Library for navigation functionality. These standard .NET assemblies are listed in the warning for every project that is using PlantPax Process Library.

- E-Signature related third-party assemblies (if your project contains E-Signature NetLogic).

In addition, the warning may mention four other assemblies (NPOI, NPOI.OOXML, NPOI.OpenXml4Net, NPOI.OpenXmlFormats). These assemblies are used by Audit\_NetLogic related to E-Signature functionalities that are provided by PlantPax Process Library.

(For more information about how to configure E-Signature, See [FactoryTalk Optix E-Signature User Guide on page 331](#))

This warning is designed by FactoryTalk Optix to keep you informed about components that may affect your application's security at runtime or when deploying. You may choose to trust the above-mentioned assemblies and prevent this warning from appearing again.

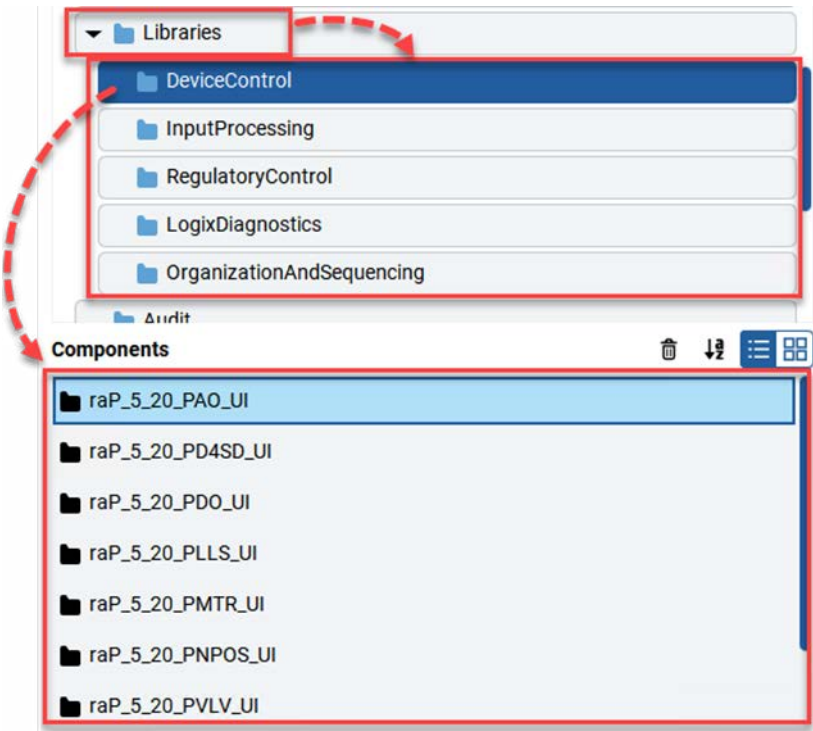


## Library Composition and Structure

The raP\_5\_20\_Libraries directory comprises seven distinct folders: StyleSheets, Security, UISession, Audit, Translation, Structure, and Libraries.



The 'Libraries' folder contains five subfolders, each of which houses several HMI objects associated with various faceplates.



The following table shows the hierarchy of the Library.

#### Hierarchy of raP\_5\_20\_Libraries

Folder	Subfolders	Objects
Structure	RockwellAutomationLibraries	
Libraries	DeviceControl	raP_5_20_PA0_UI
		raP_5_20_PD4SD_UI
		raP_5_20_PD0_UI
		raP_5_20_PLLS_UI
		raP_5_20_PMTR_UI
		raP_5_20_PNPOS_UI
		raP_5_20_PVLV_UI
		raP_5_20_PVLVMP_UI
		raP_5_20_PVSD_UI
	InputProcessing	raP_5_20_PAH_UI
		raP_5_20_PAI_UI
		raP_5_20_PAID_UI
		raP_5_20_PAIM_UI
		raP_5_20_PDI_UI
		raP_5_20_raP_Dvc_EH_Flowmeter_UI
		raP_5_20_raP_Dvc_EH_Heartbeat_UI
		raP_5_20_raP_Dvc_EH_Sensor_UI
	RegulatoryControl	raP_5_20_PDBC_UI
		raP_5_20_PD0SE_UI
		raP_5_20_PFO_UI
		raP_5_20_PHLS_UI
		raP_5_20_PPID_UI
	LogixDiagnostics	raP_5_20_raP_Dvc_LgxChangeDet_UI
		raP_5_20_raP_Dvc_LgxCPU_5x80_UI
		raP_5_20_raP_Dvc_LgxRedun_UI
		raP_5_20_raP_Dvc_LgxModuleSts_UI
		raP_5_20_raP_Dvc_LgxTaskMon_UI
	OrganizationAndSequencing	raP_5_20_raP_Opr_Area_UI
		raP_5_20_raP_Opr_EMGen_UI
		raP_5_20_raP_Opr_EPGen_UI
		raP_5_20_raP_Opr_Prompt_UI
		raP_5_20_raP_Opr_Unit_UI
		raP_5_20_raP_Tec_ParRpt_UI
Security	Groups	
	UserTypes	
StyleSheets	StyleSheets	
Translations	Translation_NetLogic	
	Translations	
UISession	raC_Libraries	
	raP_ProjectSettings	
Audit	Audit	SigningWorkflow HMI objects
		SigningEventLogger
		AuditLogger
	Audit_NetLogic	
	dg_AuditLogging	
	dg_ESigLogging	

## Configuring Your Project with the Library

### Library Location

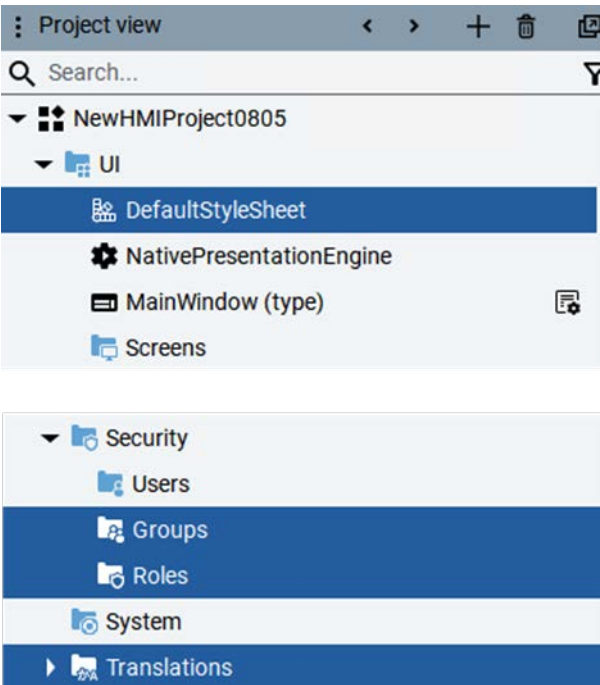
Once downloaded, place the raP\_5\_20\_Libraries folder in your local FactoryTalk Optix project's Libraries directory. This is automated using the included CopytoFTOptixLibrary.cmd.

For example: C:\Users\<User>\Documents\Rockwell Automation\FactoryTalk Optix\Libraries

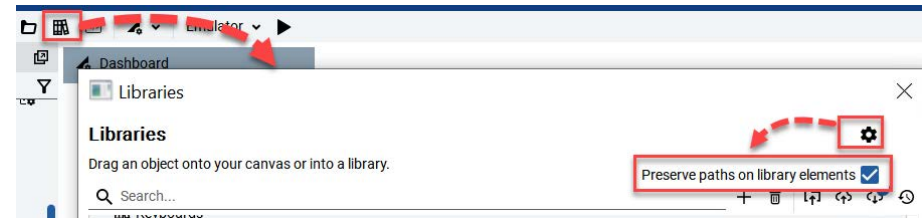
> Local Disk (C:) > Users > UserName > Documents > Rockwell Automation > FactoryTalk Optix > Libraries >			
Name	Date modified	Type	Size
raP_5_20_Libraries	8/5/2025 12:53 PM	File folder	
raSDK0	7/29/2025 10:20 AM	File folder	
raSDK1_Lib	7/29/2025 10:20 AM	File folder	

## Create a New Project

1. Open FactoryTalk Optix Studio and create a default project.
2. Delete below default objects in the new project:
  - 'DefaultStyleSheet' in 'UI' folder,
  - 'Groups' and 'Roles' in 'Security' folder,
  - 'Translations' folder.

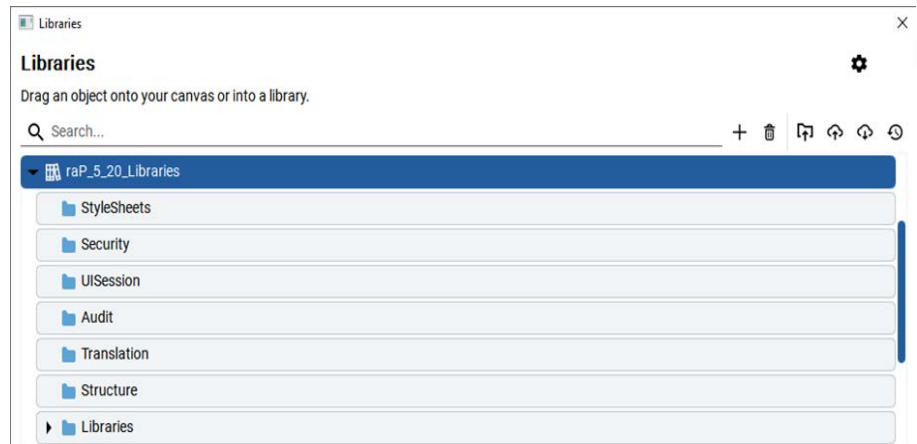


3. Click the Template Libraries button from the top menu and open the configuration of Libraries window. Check 'Preserve paths on library elements' checkbox.

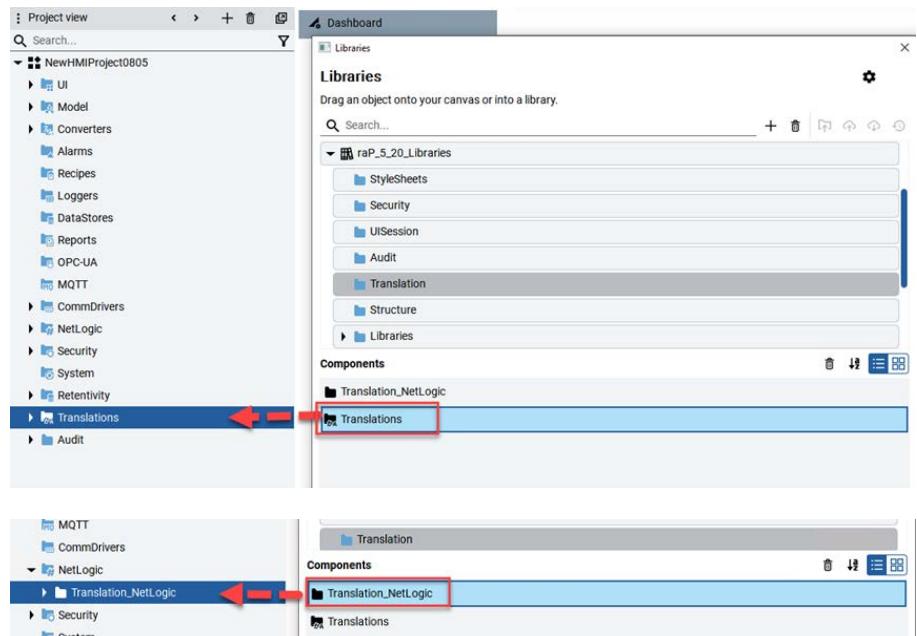


## Organize the Project Structure

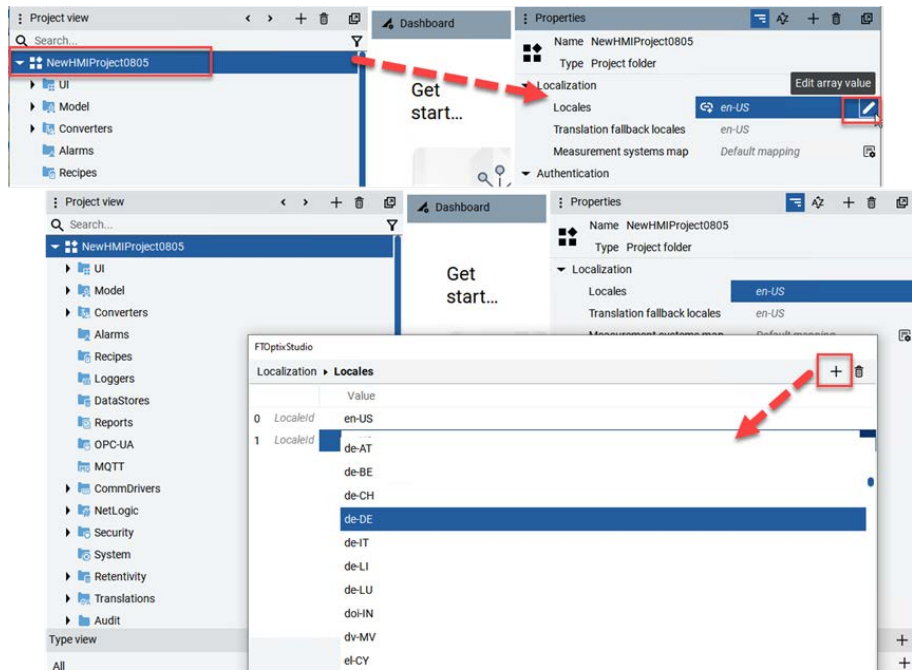
1. Find the raP\_5\_20\_Libraries in the list of the Libraries window.



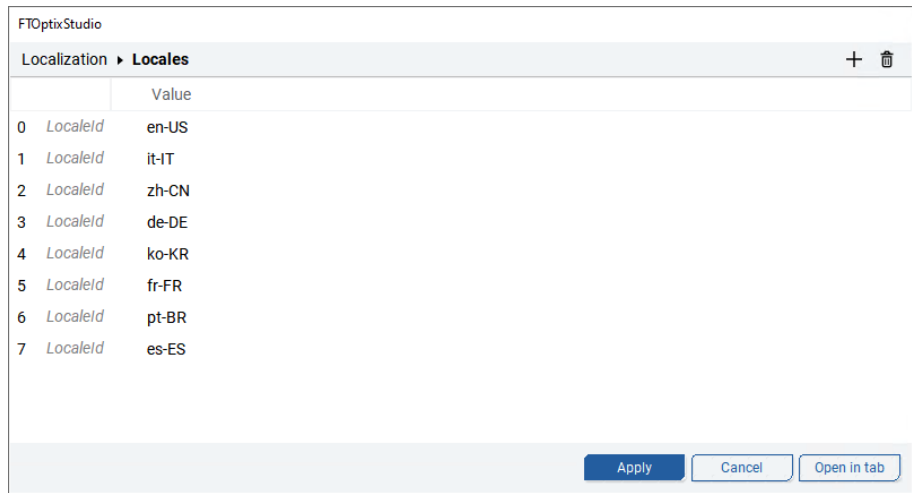
2. From the 'Translation' library folder, drag the 'Translations' object to the project canvas and drag the 'Translation\_NetLogic' object to the 'NetLogic' folder in project view.



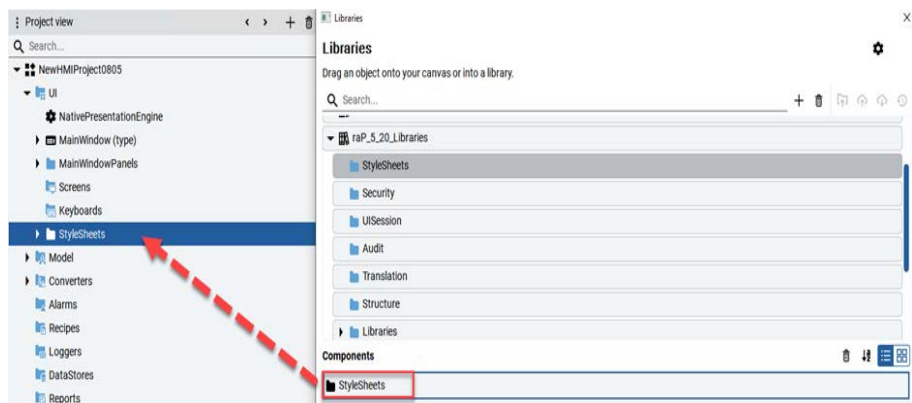
**Note:** To enable multilingual display in FactoryTalk Optix RunTime, you must manually add the desired languages under 'Localization->Locales' within the project canvas Properties. Otherwise, only English is available.



Process Library faceplates support up to eight languages:

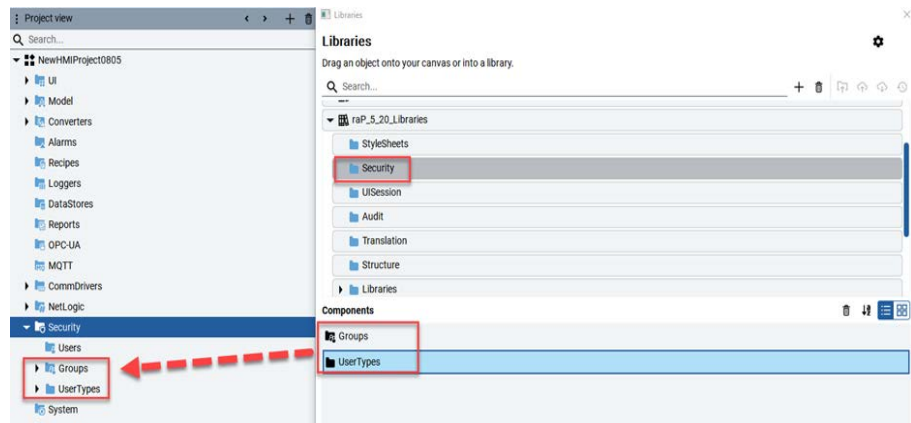


3. From the 'StyleSheets' library folder, drag the 'Stylesheets' object into 'UI' folder in project view.

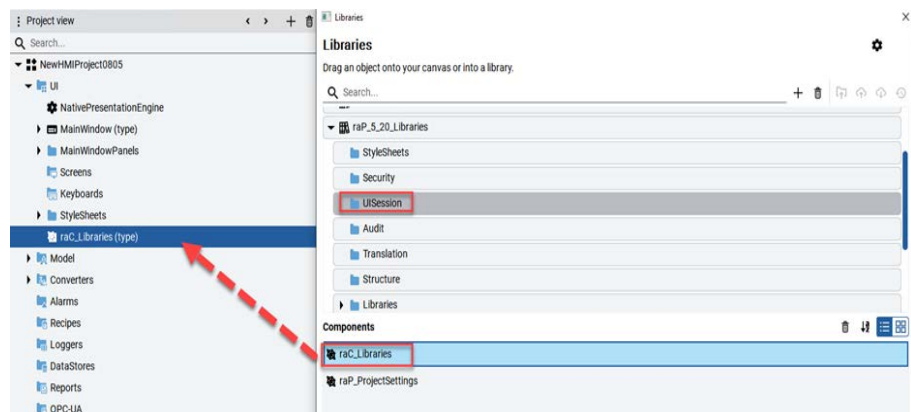




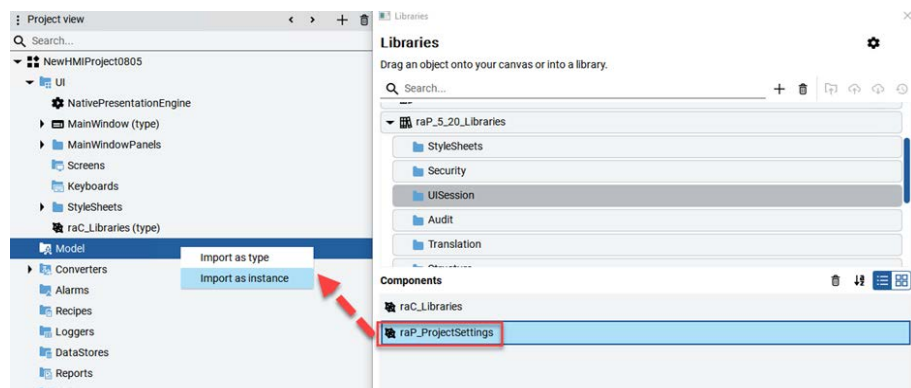
4. From the 'Security' library folder, drag the 'UserTypes' and 'Groups' objects into 'Security' folder in project view.



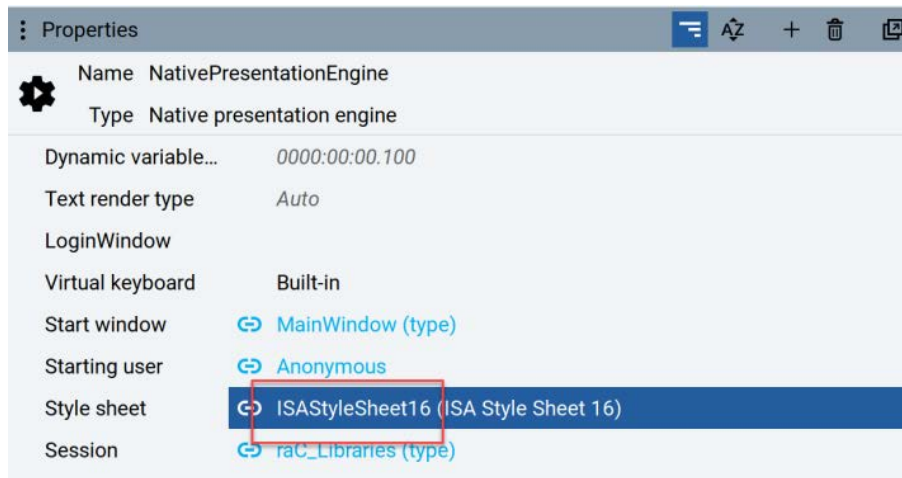
5. From the 'UISession' library folder, drag the 'raC\_Libraries' object into 'UI' folder in project view.



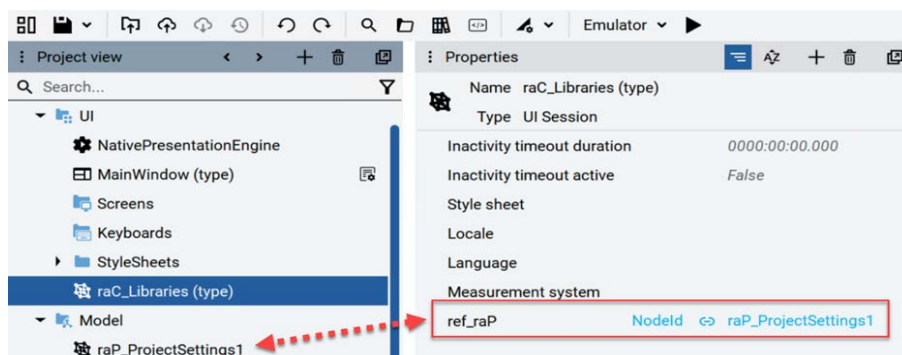
6. From the 'UISession' library folder, drag the 'raP\_ProjectSettings' object into the 'Model' folder in project view and select 'Import as instance'.



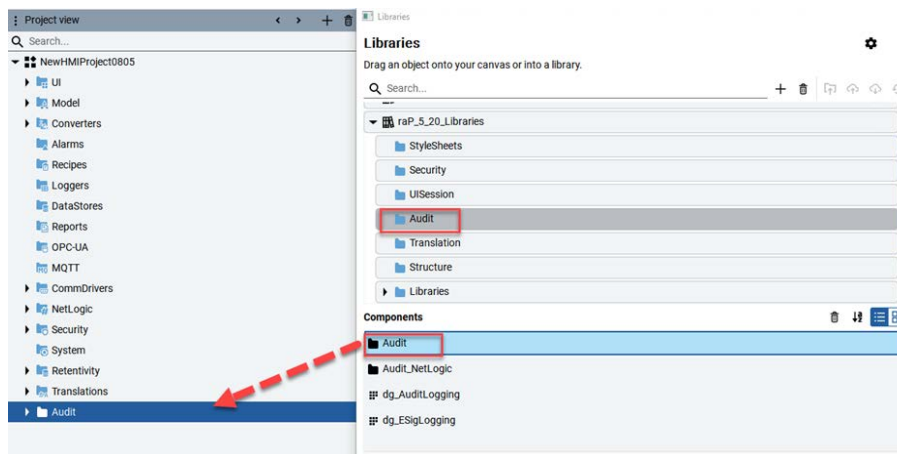
7. Configure the project.
  - a. Open NativePresentationEngine and update the properties as follows:
    - Virtual keyboard: 'Built-in'
    - Style sheet: 'ISASheet16 (ISA Style Sheet 16)'
    - Session: 'raC\_Libraries'



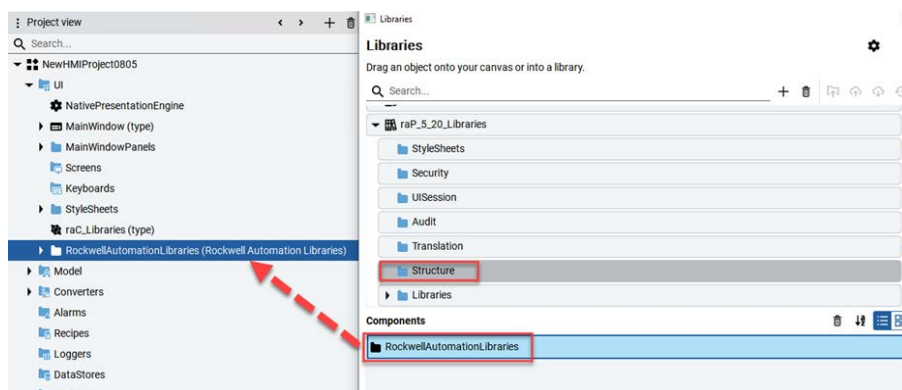
- b. Select 'raC\_Libraries' and modify the 'ref\_raP' option link to 'raP\_ProjectSettings1'.



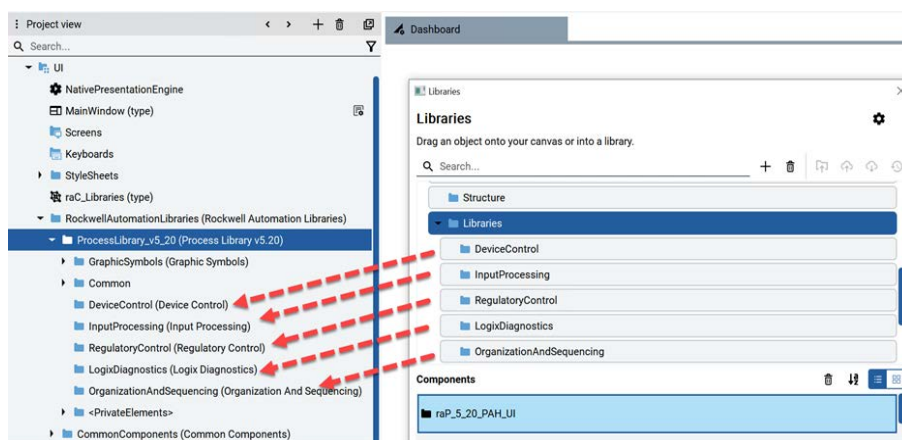
8. From the 'Audit' library folder, drag the 'Audit' object to the project canvas in the project view.



9. From the 'Structure' library folder, drag the 'RockwellAutomationLibraries' object to the 'UI' folder in project view.



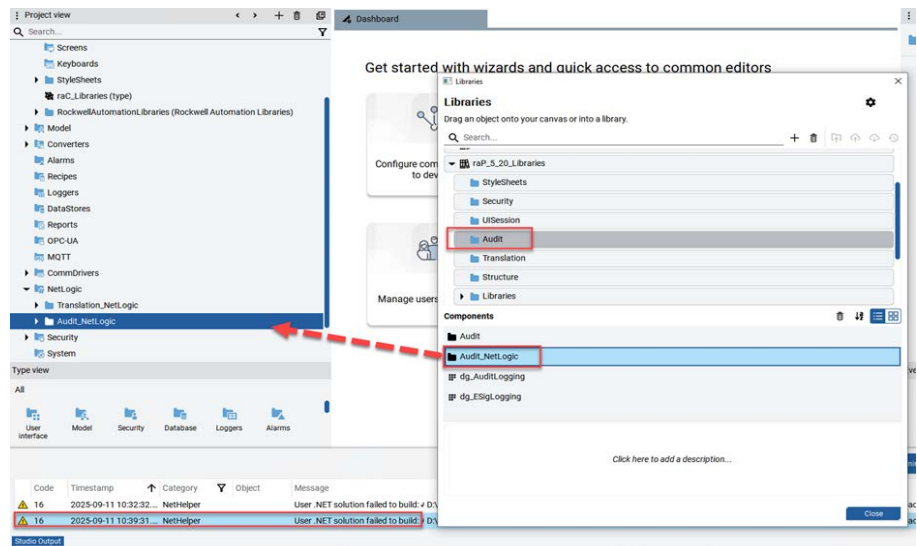
10. From the 'Libraries' library folder, drag each faceplate object from the subfolders to the corresponding subfolders of 'UI\RockwellAutomationLibraries\ProcessLibrary\_v5\_20' in the new project. If 'Conflicting types detected' pop-up appears, select 'Replace all'.



**Note:** There is a specified order for dragging the faceplates for the subfolders that are listed below:

- In 'InputProcessing' library folder, drag 'raP\_5\_20\_raP\_Dvc\_EH\_Heartbeat\_UI' to corresponding folder in the project view before 'raP\_5\_20\_raP\_Dvc\_EH\_Flowmeter\_UI' and 'raP\_5\_20\_raP\_Dvc\_EH\_Sensor\_UI'. (EH\_Heartbeat is used by the other EH objects, so it must be brought into the project before 'raP\_5\_20\_raP\_Dvc\_EH\_Flowmeter\_UI' and 'raP\_5\_20\_raP\_Dvc\_EH\_Sensor\_UI'.)
- In 'OrganizationAndSequencing' library folder, drag 'raP\_5\_20\_raP\_Opr\_Prompt' and 'raP\_5\_20\_raP\_Tec\_ParRpt' to corresponding folder in the project view first. (Prompt and ParRpt are used by the other 'OrganizationAndSequencing' objects, so they must be brought in before Area, Unit, EMGen, and EPGen.)

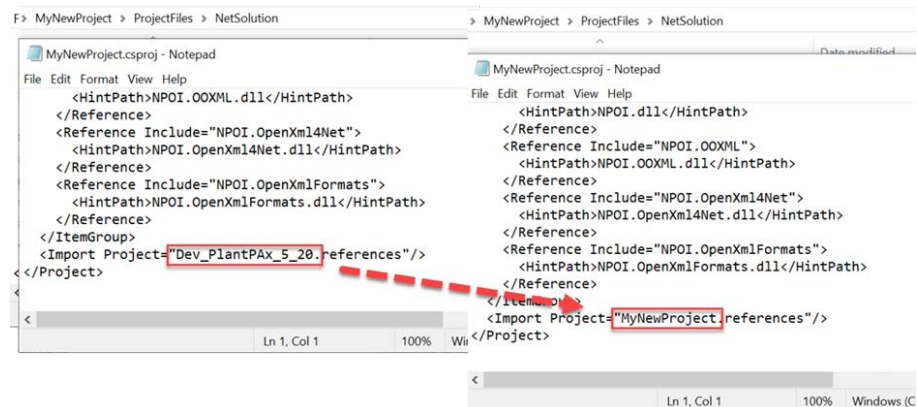
11. From the 'Audit' library folder, drag the 'Audit\_NetLogic' object to 'NetLogic' folder in project view. A warning message (the warning is expected) occurs upon completion in FactoryTalk Optix Studio Output message box, stating 'User .NET solution failed to build'.



12. Save and close the project.
13. Copy the 'ESignature' folder and 'Help' folder from 'C:\Users\<User>\Documents\Rockwell Automation\FactoryTalk Optix\Libraries\raP\_5\_20\_Libraries\ProjectFiles\res' to '<Project path>\ProjectsFiles\res' folder.

## Configure E-Signature

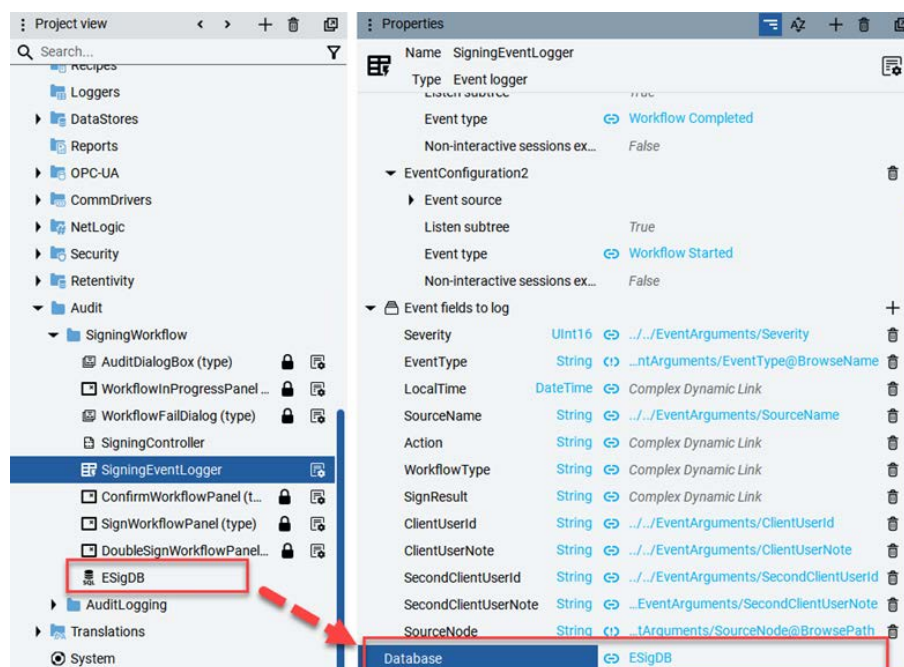
1. Double-click 'CopyESignatureNetLogicConfigToProject.cmd' in '<ProjectPath>\ProjectFiles\res\ESignature' and follow the prompts to complete the operation.
2. In '<ProjectPath>\ProjectsFiles\NetSolution', open the <ProjectName>.csproj file and modify the project name in the last line to match actual <ProjectName>. Once completed, save the changes and close the file.



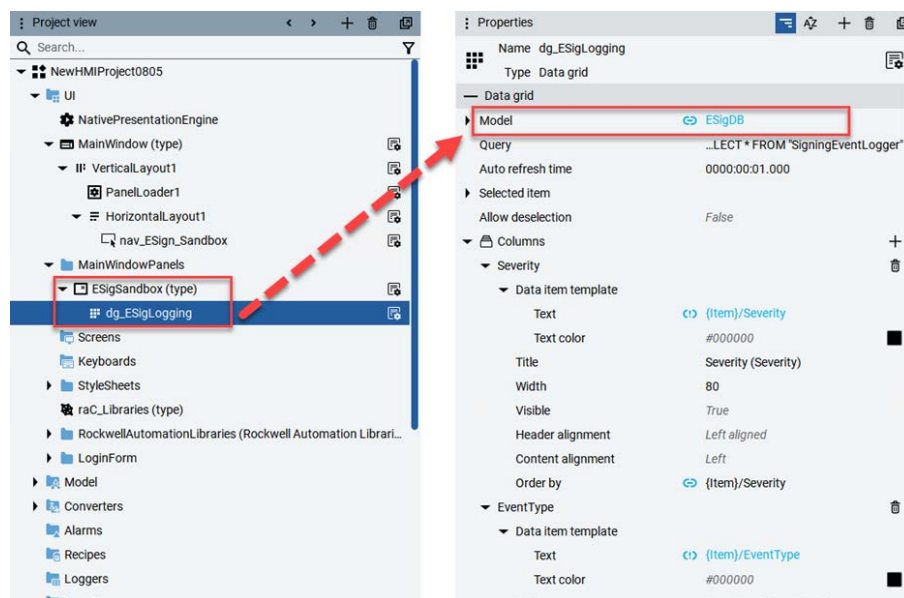
3. Follow [FactoryTalk Optix E-Signature User Guide on page 331](#) to configure E-Signature for each object.

## Configure E-Signature Logging

1. Open the new HMI project in FactoryTalk Optix Studio.
2. Under 'Audit -> SigningWorkflow' folder, create a Database (either an Embedded Database or an ODBC Database) for E-Signature logging. For illustration purposes, we proceed with creating an Embedded Database named ESigDB.
3. In Properties of SigningEventLogger, make sure that Database is set to ESigDB.



4. Under 'UI' folder, create a panel for DataGrid (for example, named 'ESigSandbox').
5. Drag the DataGrid dg\_ESigLogging from the raP\_5\_20\_Libraries to panel 'ESigSandbox'. Ensure that Model is set to ESigDB. The columns on the grid can be customized based on the event fields that are defined in the SigningEventLogger.



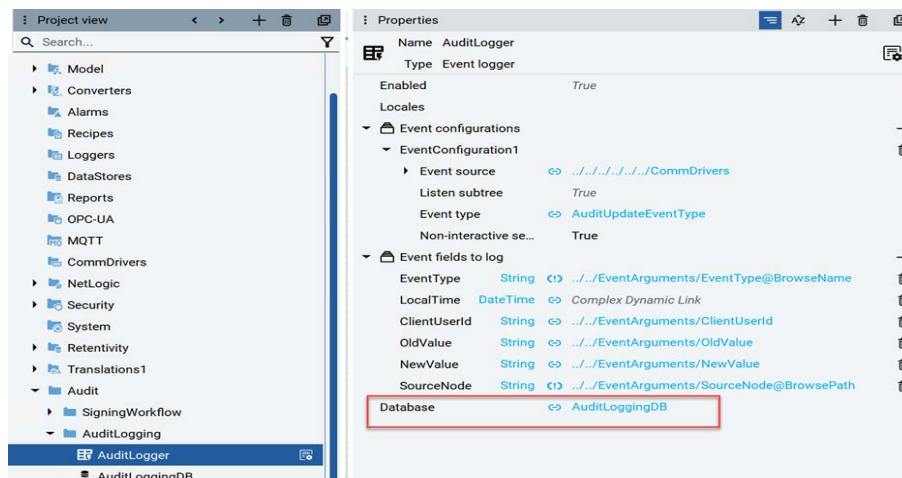
**Note:** For more detailed information about E-Signature configuration, see [FactoryTalk Optix E-Signature User Guide on page 331](#).



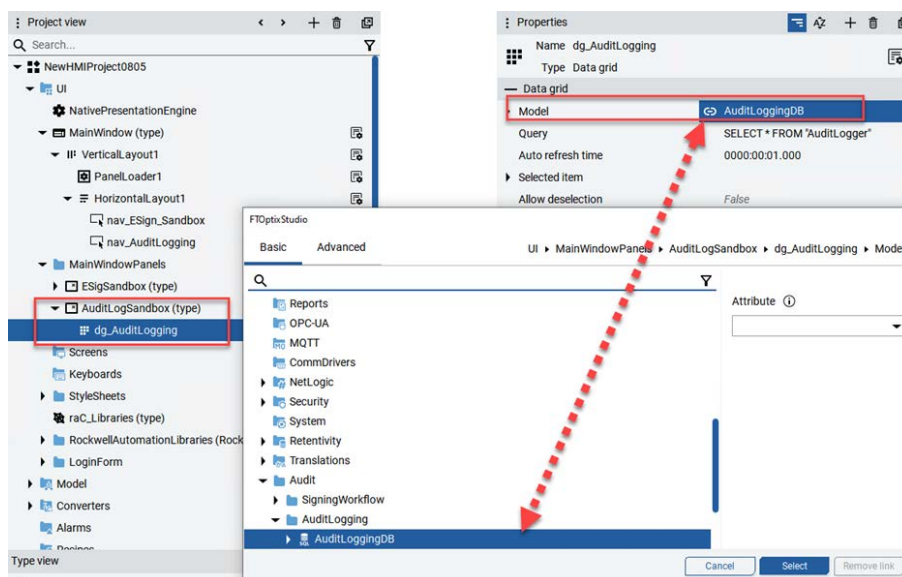
## Configure FactoryTalk Optix Audit Logging

If you need AuditLogging for your project, add an AuditLogging display to your HMI project. The following steps explain how to build the display using the AuditLogging elements in the PlantPax Process Library.

1. Under 'Audit -> AuditLogging' folder in project view, create a Database (either an Embedded Database or an ODBC Database). For example, an Embedded Database that is named 'AuditLoggingDB' may be used.
2. Navigate to 'Audit -> AuditLogging -> AuditLogger' Properties view, configure:
  - Set Database to 'AuditLoggingDB'



3. Under 'UI' folder, create a panel for DataGrid (for example, named 'AuditLogSandbox').
4. From the 'Audit' library folder, drag the 'dg\_AuditLogging' object to panel 'AuditLogSandbox' in project view.
5. Select 'dg\_AuditLogging' in project view, and link Model to 'AuditLoggingDB' in its Properties.



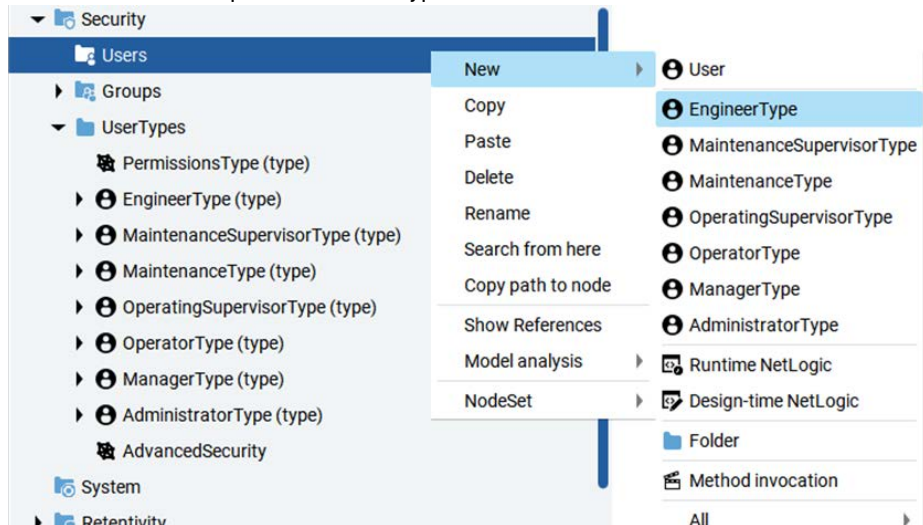
## FactoryTalk Optix Security Groups

Security groups are configured to ensure that users have the proper access to specific HMI functionality.

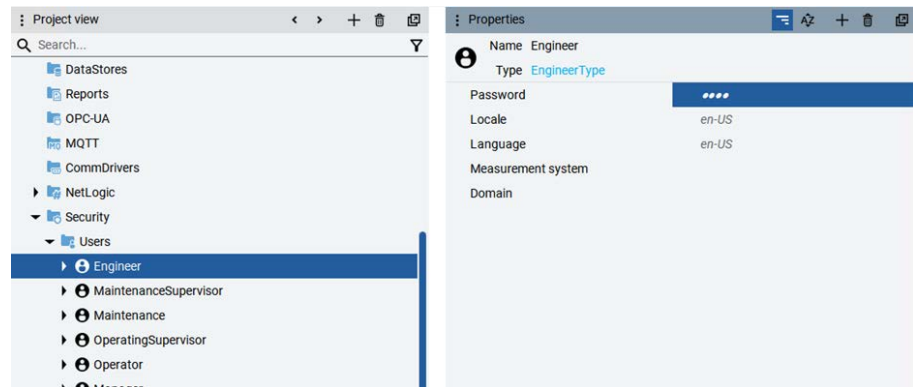
Open your NewHMIPProject, and expand 'Security' folder, PlantPax Process Library provides default settings in Groups and User Types.

The following steps explain how to configure Security Groups using the settings provided by PlantPax Process Library.

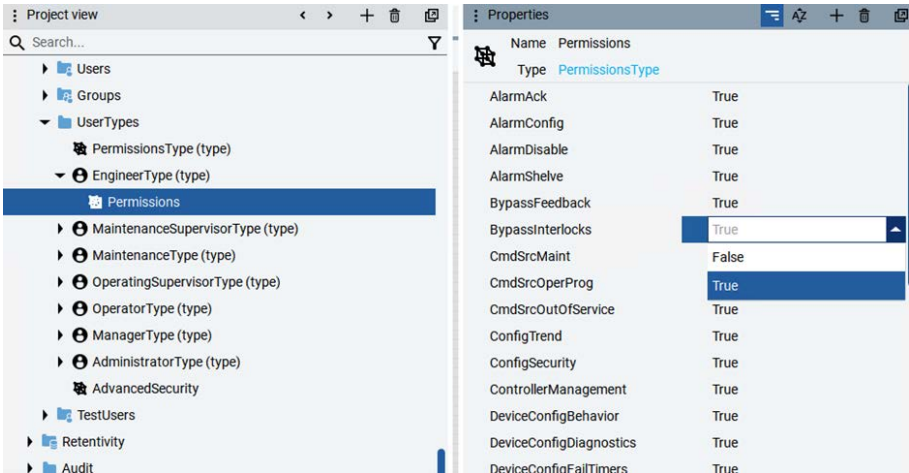
1. Expand the Security folder and right-click the Users folder and select "New". Create users based on pre-defined UserTypes.



2. Set the password for each user.

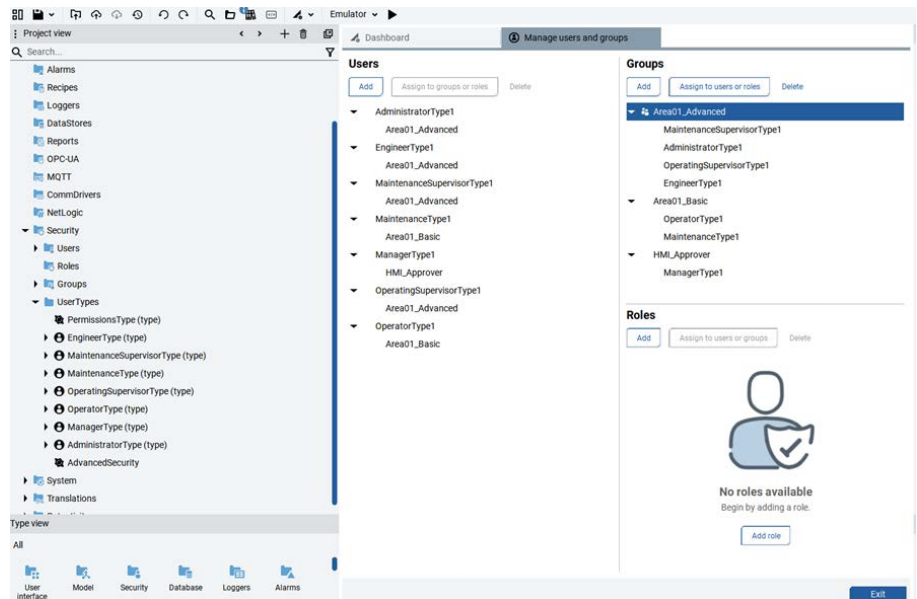


- (Optional) Users with the necessary assigned permissions, such as engineers and administrators, can edit a user's Permissions file to modify the default permission settings.

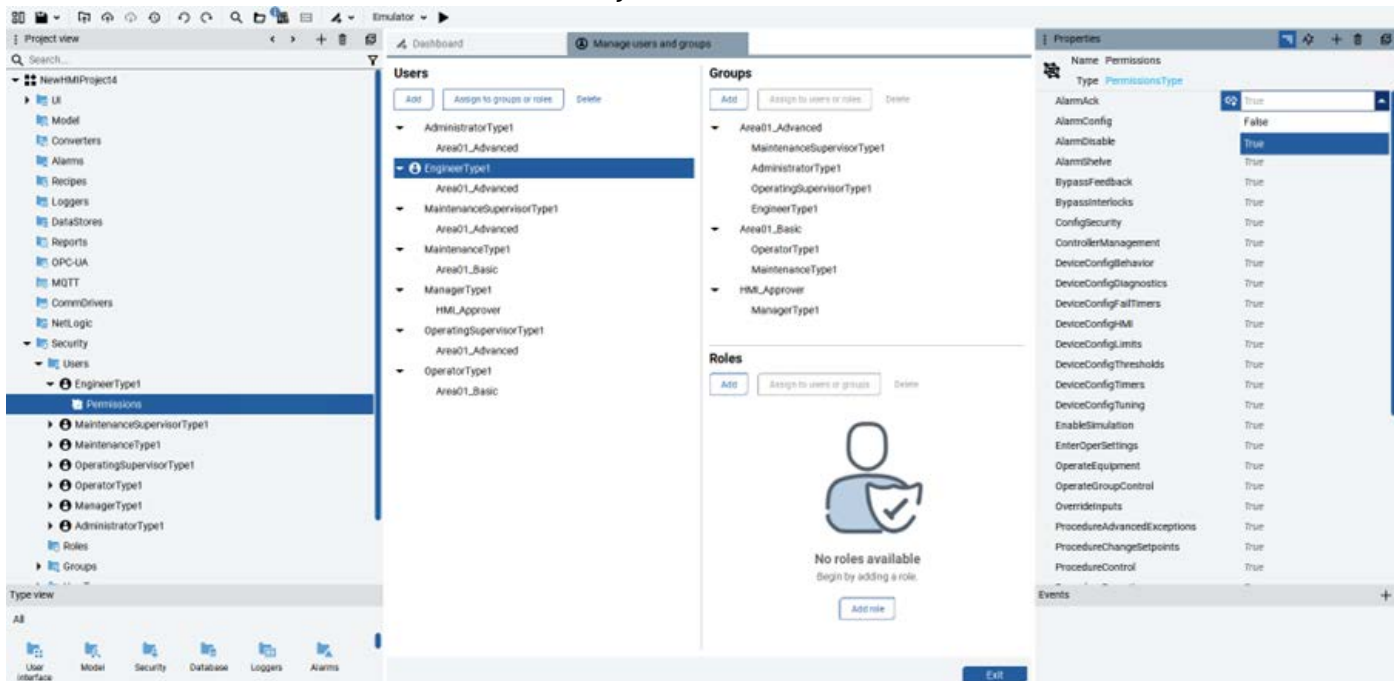




4. Assign the users to groups.
  - a. Select Manage users and groups from the Dashboard.
  - b. Select an item in Groups, and select Assign groups to users or roles. Assign the selected group to corresponding users.



- c. (Optional) Users with the necessary assigned permissions, such as engineers and administrators, can edit a user's Permissions file to modify the default permission settings.



In the pre-configured PlantPax Security group, \_Advanced permission includes the \_Basic permission.

Item	Description
_Basic	Users in this group are allowed basic HMI functionality for this area. This typically includes most Commands Source Control and Manual Operation functions. The AdvancedSecurity permission marked as False.
_Advanced	Users in this group are allowed advanced HMI functionality for this area. This typically includes maintenance and configuration functionality. The AdvancedSecurity permission marked as True.

The object 'AdvancedSecurity' in 'Security\UserTypes' folder determines which permissions are Advanced.

Security

Users

Groups

UserTypes

PermissionsType (type)

EngineerType (type)

MaintenanceSupervisorType (type)

MaintenanceType (type)

OperatingSupervisorType (type)

OperatorType (type)

ManagerType (type)

AdministratorType (type)

AdvancedSecurity

TestUsers

DeviceConfigFailTimers

DeviceConfigHMI

DeviceConfigLimits

DeviceConfigThresholds

DeviceConfigTimers

DeviceConfigTuning

EnableSimulation

EnterOperSettings

OperateEquipment

OperateGroupControl

OverrideInputs

OverrideOutputs

ProcedureAdvancedExce...

ProcedureChangeSetpoints

False

True

False

False

False

True

False

False

False

False

False

False

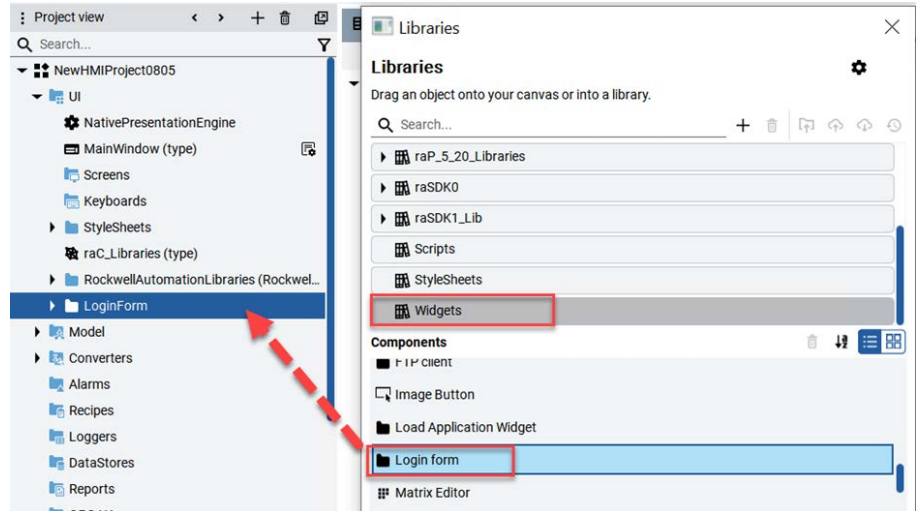
False

False

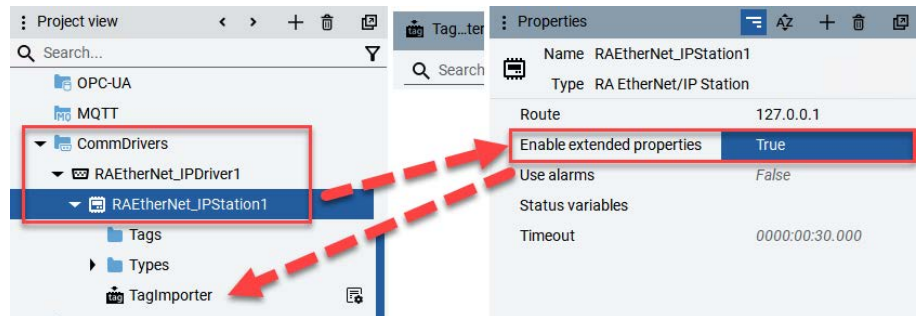
## Add Login Options and Graphic Symbols

Before starting RunTime for your project, add login options and graphic symbols to your HMI project. The following steps explain how to add these objects using the elements in the PlantPax Process Library.

1. Click the Widgets library from the library list, drag the 'Login Form' object to the 'UI' folder in project view.

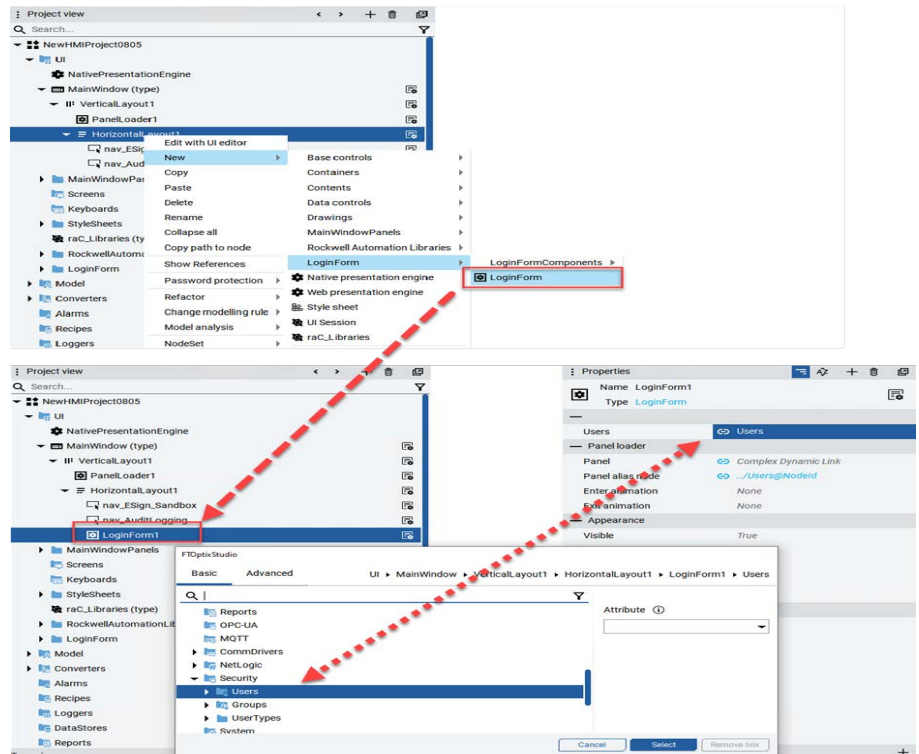


2. Configure the CommDrivers and import tags. Ensure to set 'Enable extended properties' to 'True' in the Properties of selected Station before importing tags into FactoryTalk Optix.

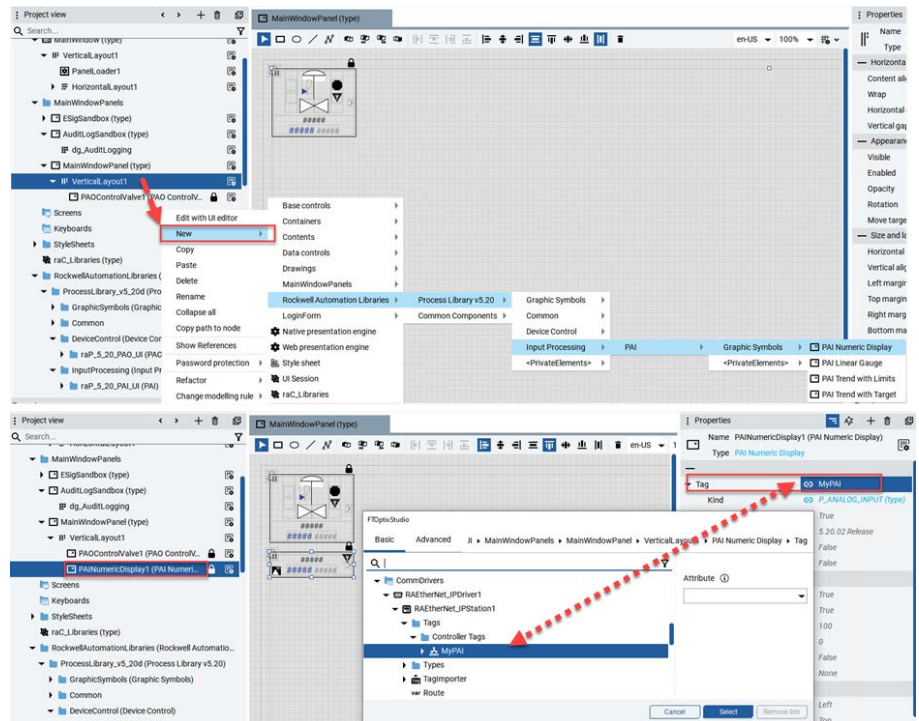


**Note:** For more information about how to configure CommDrivers in FactoryTalk Optix, see the 'Import controller variables' section on the [FactoryTalk Optix Help](#) page.

### 3. Create a LoginForm instance on MainWindow and bind Security/Users to Users variable.

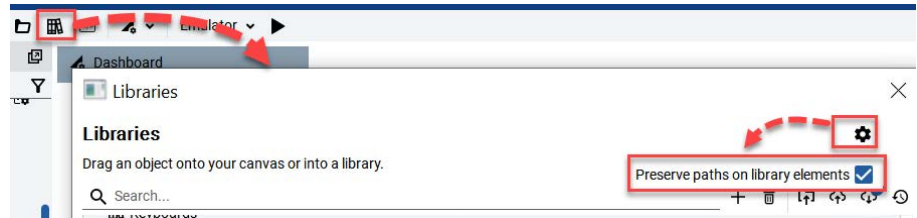


### 4. Create a Graphic Symbol instance on MainWindow and configure its Tag before running Emulator.



## Modify an Existing Project      Update 'NetLogic' folder

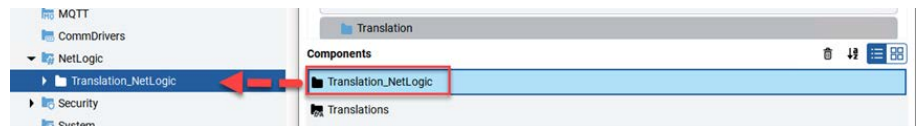
1. Open an existing FactoryTalk Optix project. Click the Template Libraries button from the top menu and open the configuration of Libraries window. Check 'Preserve paths on library elements' checkbox.



2. Find the raP\_5\_20\_Libraries in the list of the Libraries window.



3. From the 'Translation' library folder, drag the 'Translation\_NetLogic' object to 'NetLogic' folder in project view.



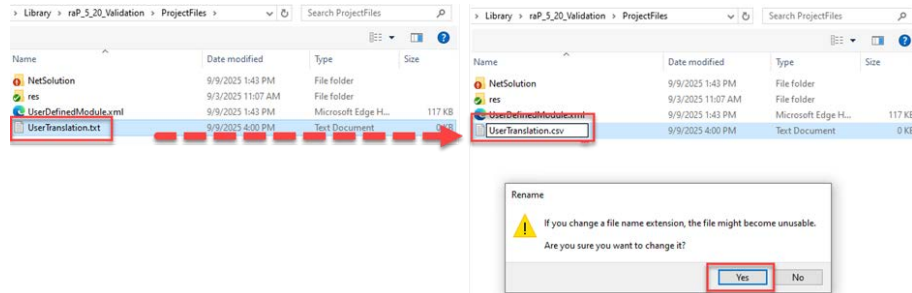
## Update Translations

### Keep Existing Translations

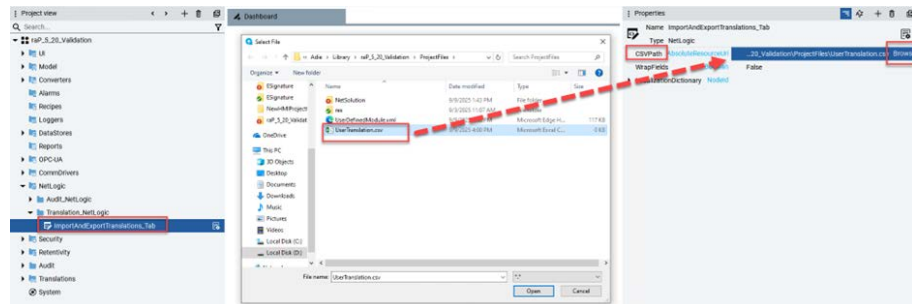
The 'Translation\_NetLogic' enables the export of existing translations from the project and the import of backup translations into the project via tab-delimited files.

For users who have existing custom translations in the project and wish to retain them:

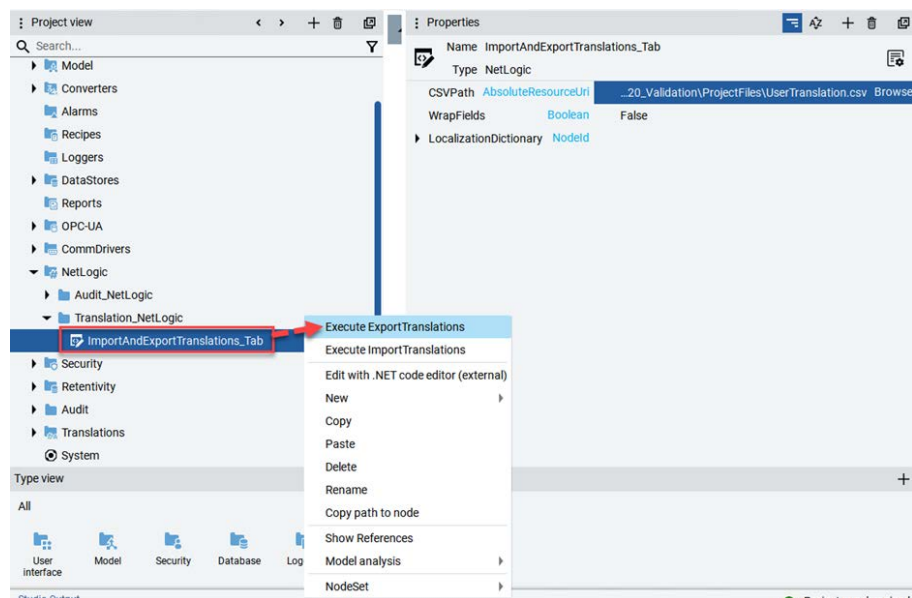
1. Create a text file (named 'UserTranslation.txt' for example). Modify the file name extensions to '.csv' (in this case it should be 'UserTranslation.csv').



2. Navigate to 'NetLogic\Translation\_NetLogic\ImportAndExportTranslations\_Tab' in the existing project.
3. In the Properties, browse the 'CSVPath' to the path of 'UserTranslation.csv'.



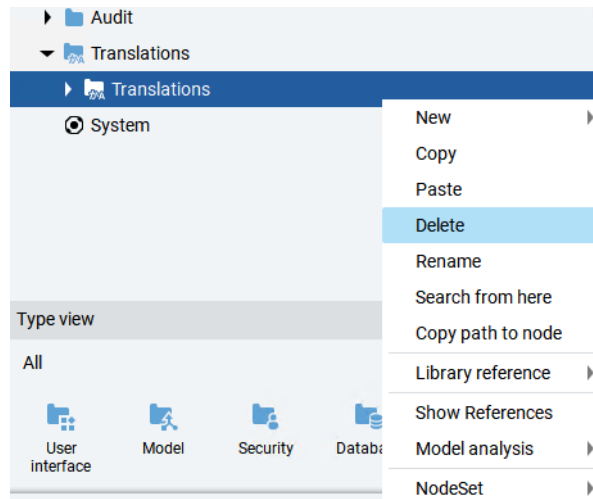
4. Right-click on the 'ImportAndExportTranslations\_Tab' NetLogic and select 'Execute ExportTranslations'.



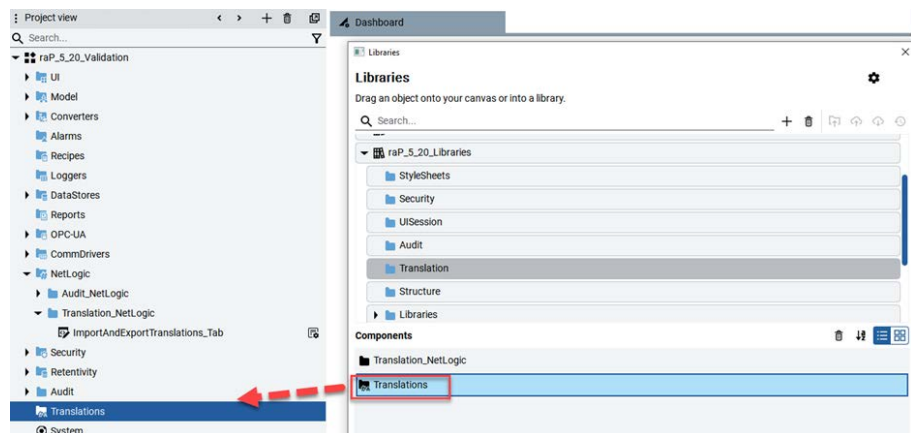
Upon completion, a message appears in Studio Output, stating 'Translations successfully exported to "<your path>UserTranslations.csv"



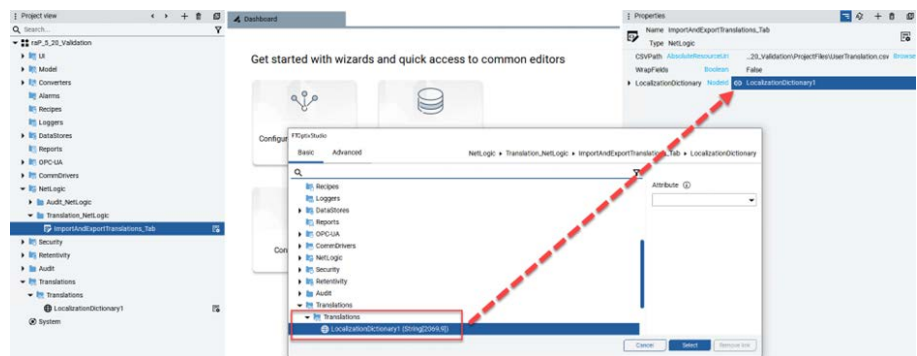
5. Copy and paste the file 'UserTranslations.csv' as a backup to a desired location.
6. Delete 'Translations' folder in existing project.



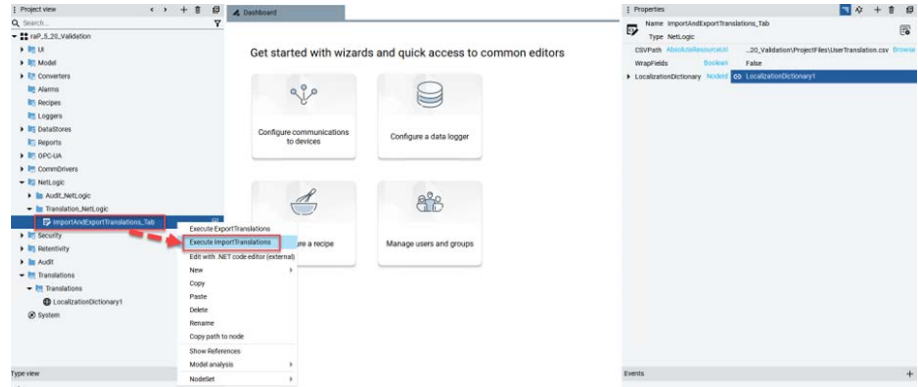
7. Drag the 'Translations' object from raP\_5\_20\_Libraries to project canvas.



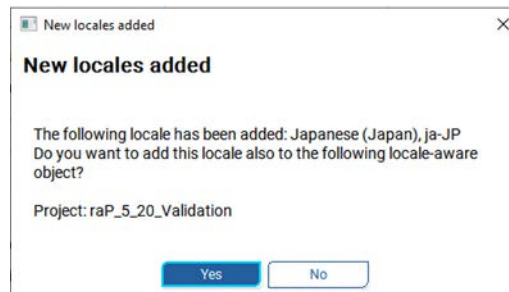
8. Back to the Properties of 'ImportAndExportTranslations\_Tab' NetLogic. Select the new LocalizationDictionary1 as LocalizationDictionary.



9. Browse the 'CSVPath' of 'ImportAndExportTranslations\_Tab' to the path of 'UserTranslations.csv', right-click it and select 'Execute ImportTranslations'.



10. If there are other locales in 'UserTranslations.csv' than 'LocalizationDictionary1', 'New locales added' window pops up. Click 'Yes' to keep them.

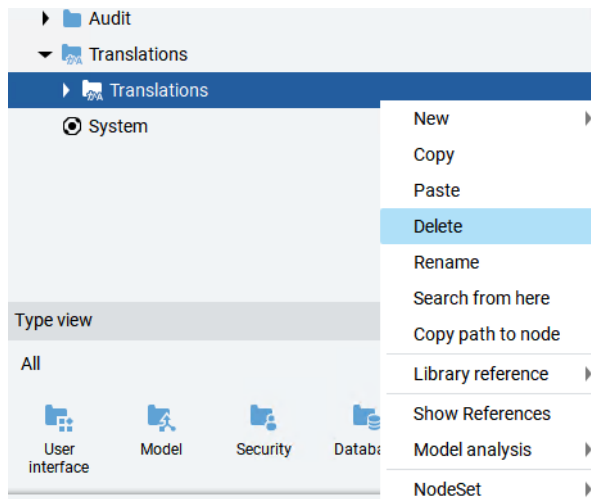


Keys included in the CSV file will replace the corresponding ones in the LocalizationDictionary1 after being imported by the NetLogic, and the keys are not included in the CSV file will remain same as pre-defined in the LocalizationDictionary1.

## No Custom Translations

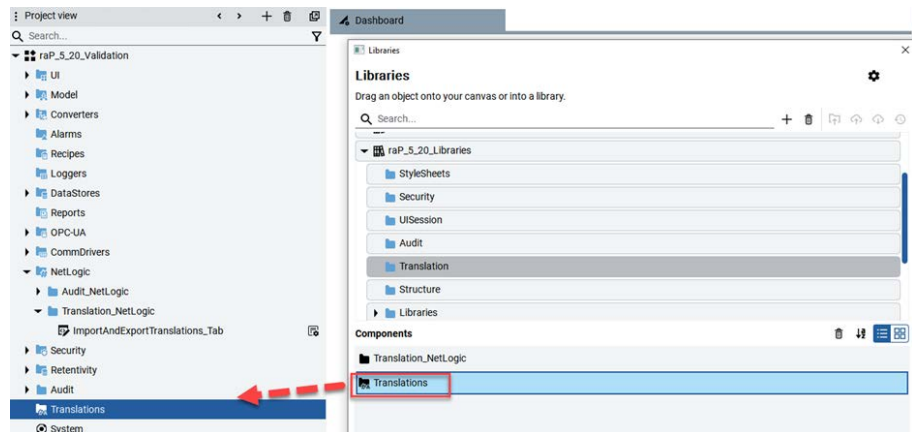
For users who don't have their own translations, use the following steps to update translations.

1. Delete 'Translations' folder in existing project.

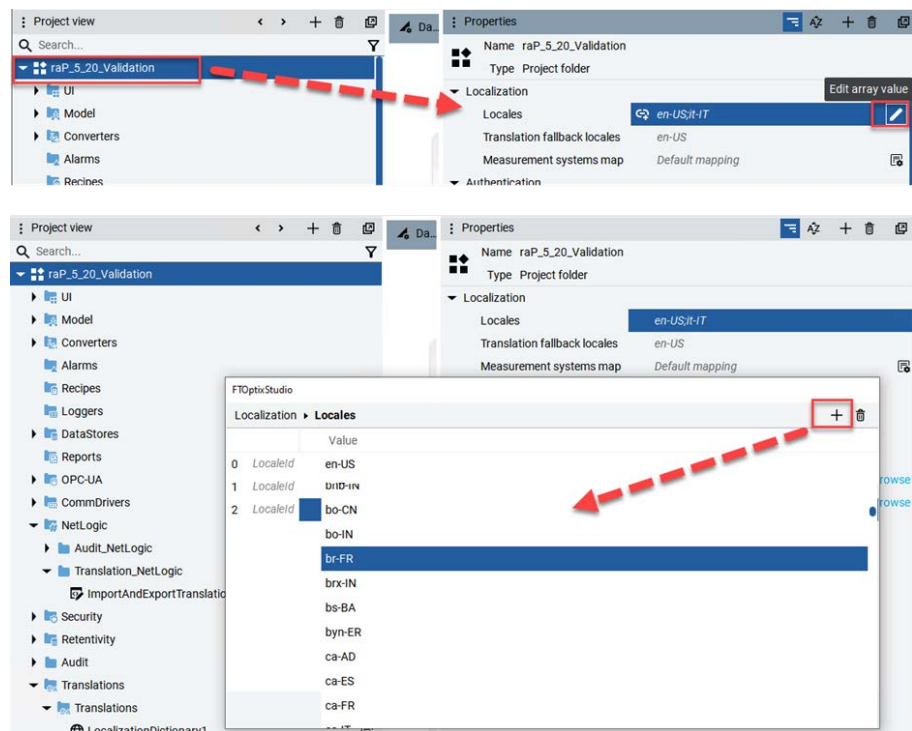




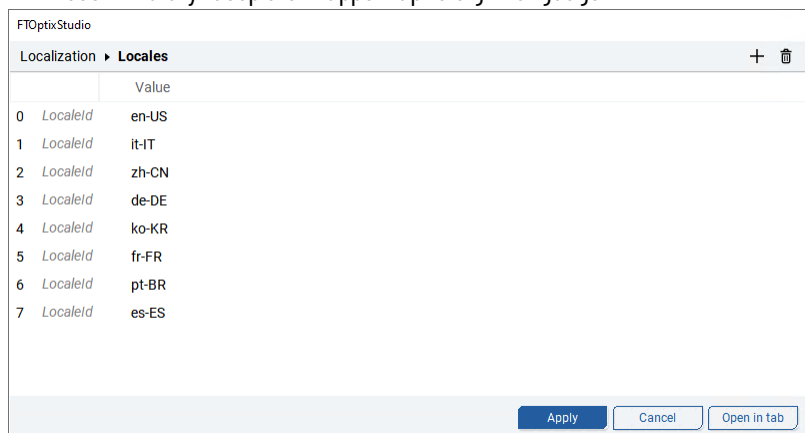
- From the 'Translation' library folder, drag the 'Translations' object to project canvas in existing project.



- Add Locales in the project to enable localizations display for RunTime.

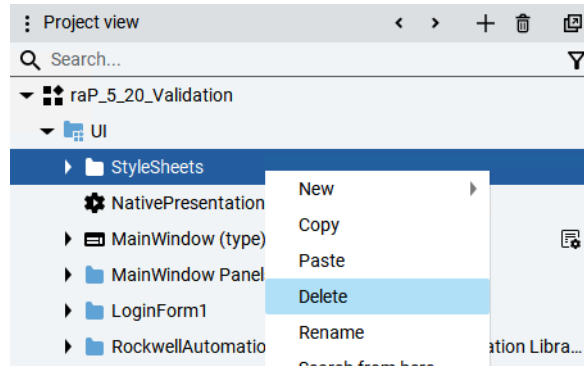


Process Library faceplates support up to eight languages:

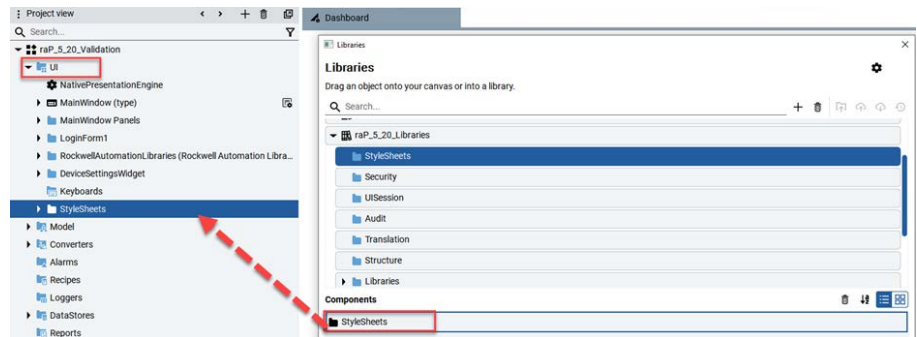


## Update 'Stylesheets' Folder

1. Delete 'StyleSheets' folder under 'UI' folder in the existing project.

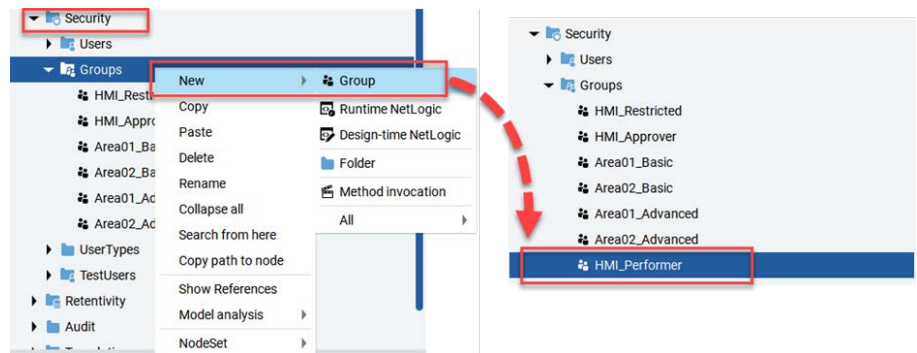


2. From the 'StyleSheets' library folder, drag the 'Stylesheets' object into 'UI' folder in project view.



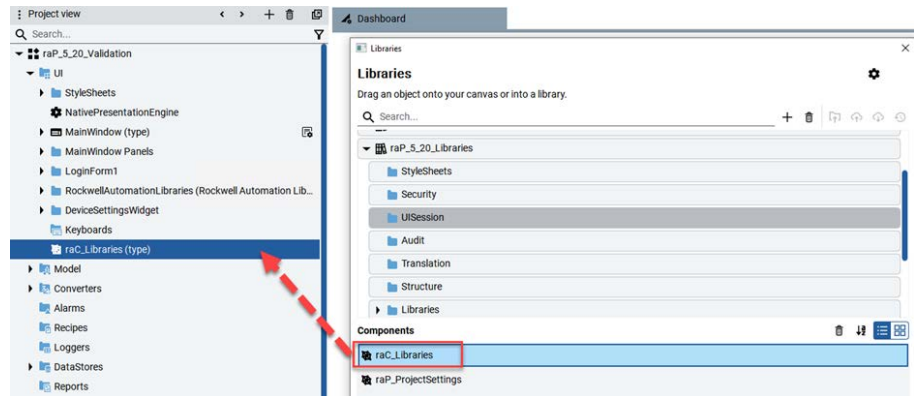
## Update Security Folder

1. In the existing project, right-click on 'Groups' folder under 'Security' folder, select 'New->Group' and rename the new group with 'HMI\_Performer'.

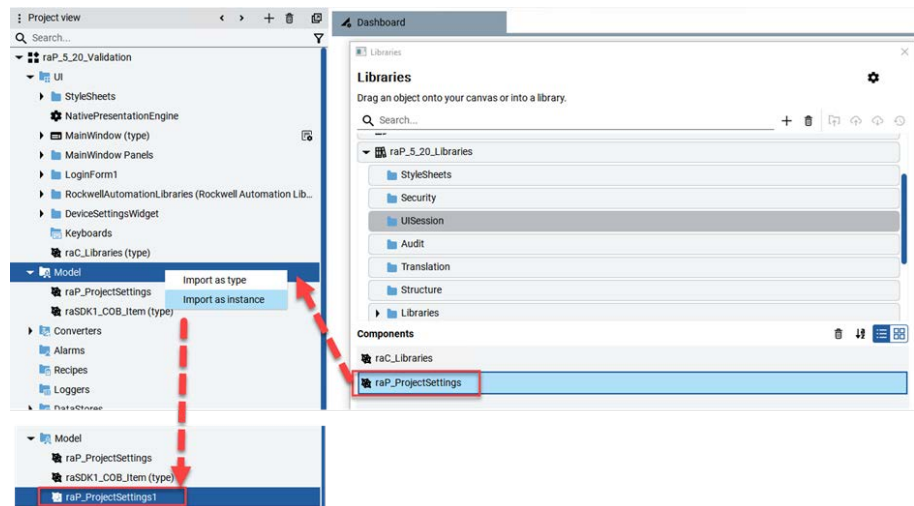


## UI Session Binding

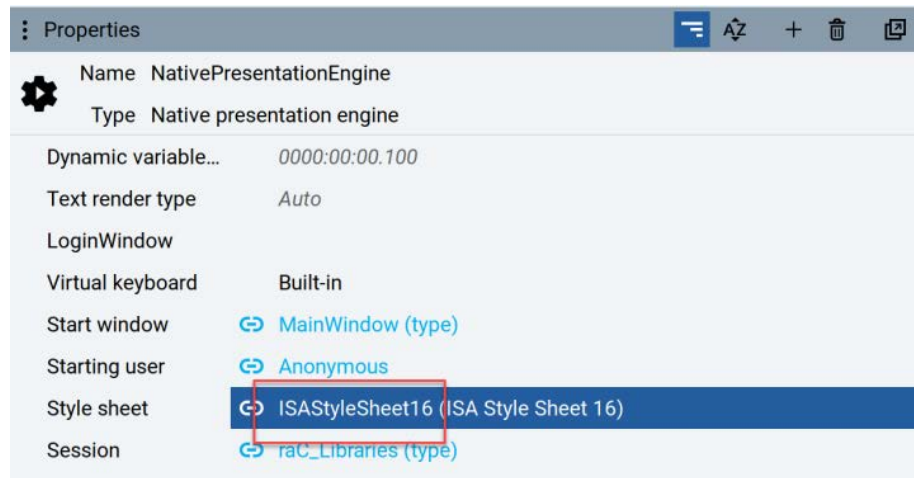
1. From the 'UISession' library folder, drag the 'raC\_Libraries' object into 'UI' folder of the existing project.



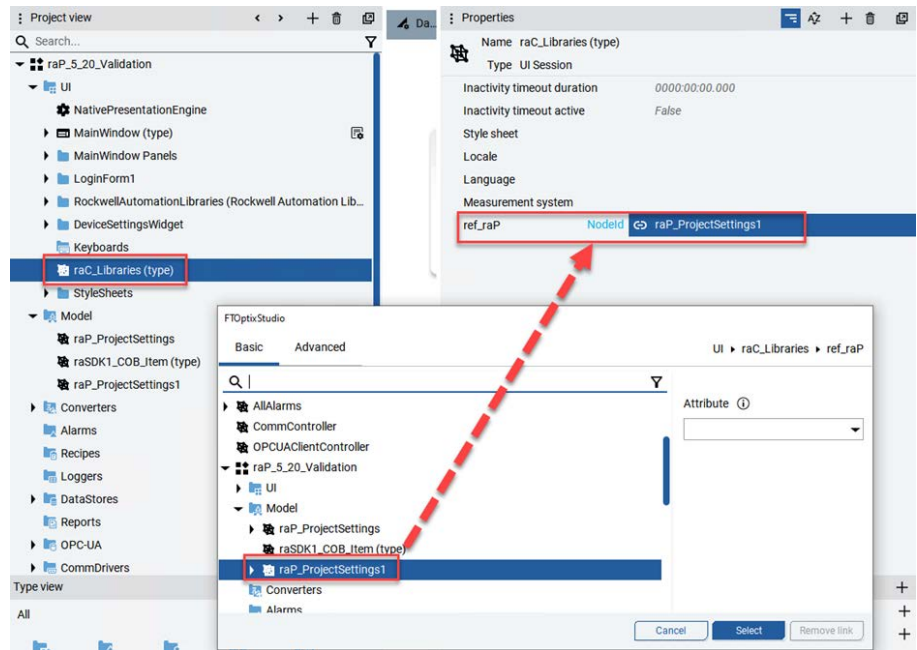
2. From the 'UISession' library folder, drag the 'raP\_ProjectSettings' object into 'Model' folder in project view and select 'Import as instance'. A 'raP\_ProjectSettings' object is created under 'Model' folder.



3. Open NativePresentationEngine and update the properties as follows:
  - Style sheet: 'ISASheet16 (ISA Style Sheet 16)'
  - Session: 'raC\_Libraries'

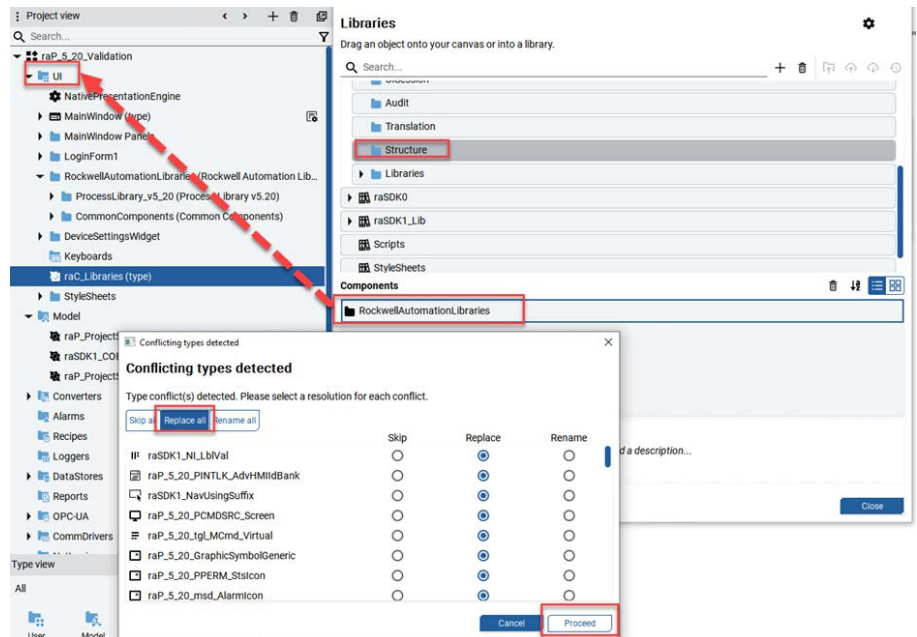


## 4. Select 'raC\_Libraries' and modify the 'ref\_raP' option link to 'raP\_ProjectSettings1'.

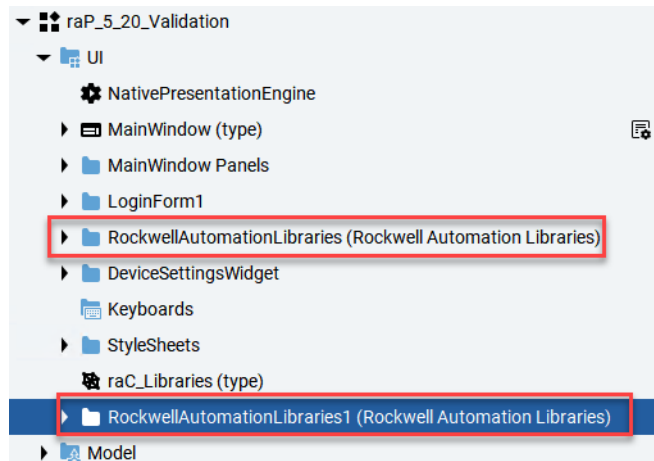


## Update Process Library HMI Objects

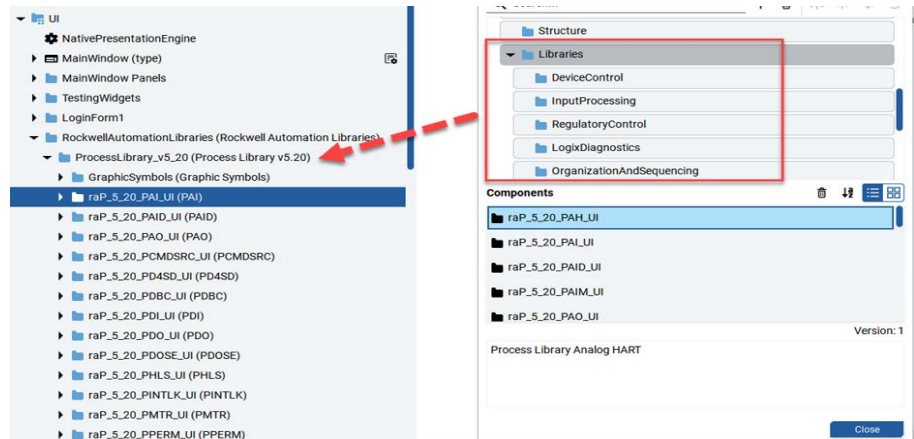
1. From the 'Structure' library folder, drag the 'RockwellAutomationLibraries' object to 'UI' folder in the existing project. If 'Conflicting types detected' window pops up, select 'Replace all' to proceed.



The existing items in 'RockwellAutomationLibraries' in existing project will be updated. And any new objects from the Library will be added in a new created folder 'RockwellAutomationLibraries1'.



- From the 'Libraries' library folder, drag each faceplate object from the subfolders to 'UI\RockwellAutomationLibraries\ProcessLibrary\_v5\_20' in the existing project. If 'Conflicting types detected' pop-up appears, select 'Replace all'.



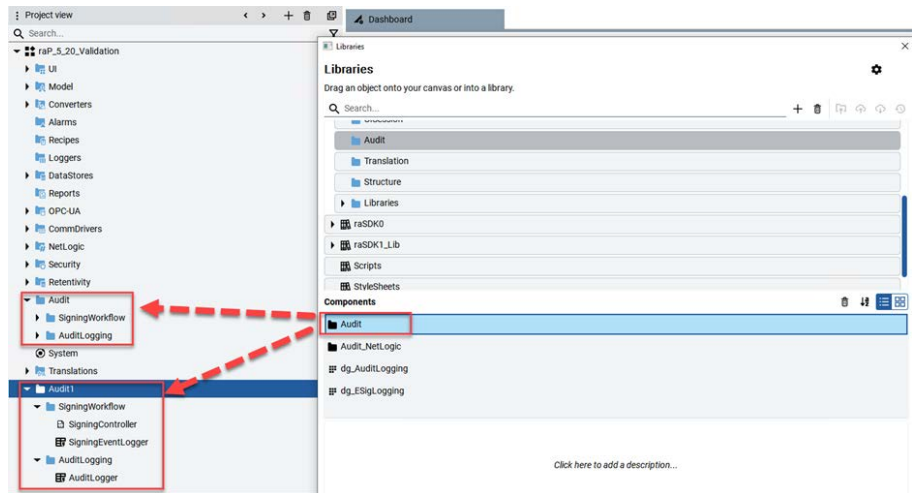
## IMPORTANT

There is a specified order for dragging the faceplates for the subfolders.

- In the 'InputProcessing' library folder, drag 'raP\_5\_20\_raP\_Dvc\_EH\_Heartbeat\_UI' to the corresponding folder in the project view before 'raP\_5\_20\_raP\_Dvc\_EH\_Flowmeter\_UI' and 'raP\_5\_20\_raP\_Dvc\_EH\_Sensor\_UI'. (EH\_Heartbeat is only used by the other EH objects, so it must be brought into the project before 'raP\_5\_20\_raP\_Dvc\_EH\_Flowmeter\_UI' and 'raP\_5\_20\_raP\_Dvc\_EH\_Sensor\_UI'.)
- In 'OrganizationAndSequencing' library folder, drag 'raP\_5\_20\_raP\_Opr\_Prompt' and 'raP\_5\_20\_raP\_Tec\_ParRpt' to the corresponding folder in the project view first. (Prompt and ParRpt are used by the other 'OrganizationAndSequencing' objects, so they must be brought in before Area, Unit, EMGen, and EPGen.)

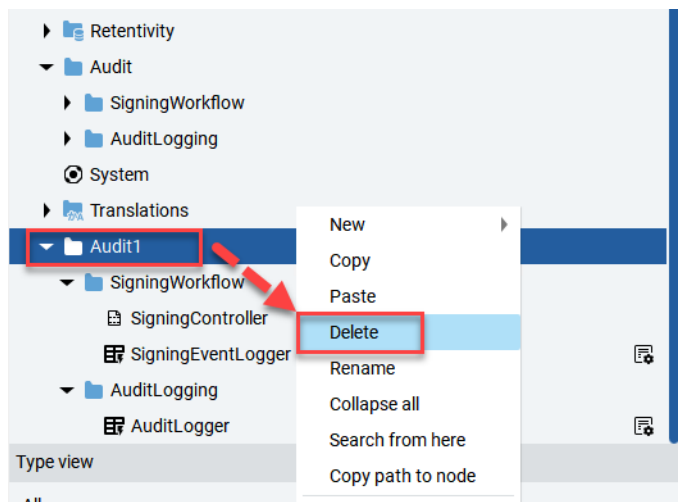
## Update 'Audit' Folder

1. From the 'Audit' library folder, drag the 'Audit' object to project canvas in existing project. If 'Conflicting types detected' pop-up appears, select 'Replace all' to proceed.



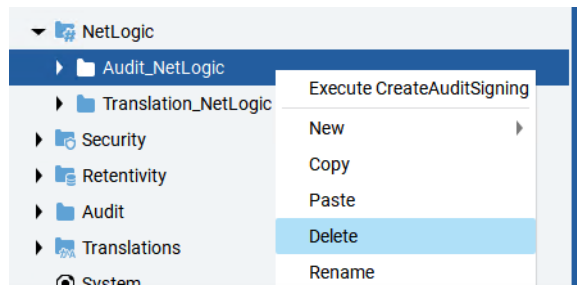
Items in 'Audit' folder of the existing project is updated, and a new folder 'Audit1' is created automatically.

2. Delete 'Audit1' folder.



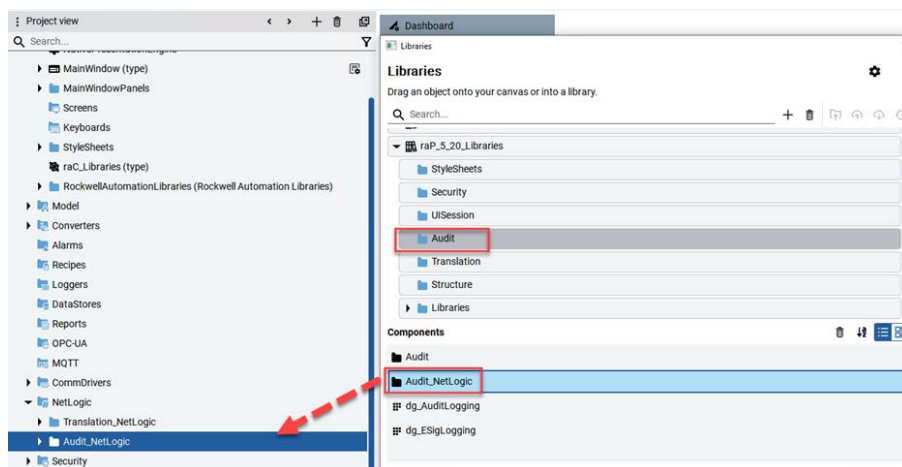
## Configure E-Signature

1. Delete the 'Audit\_NetLogic' folder under 'NetLogic' folder in the existing project.

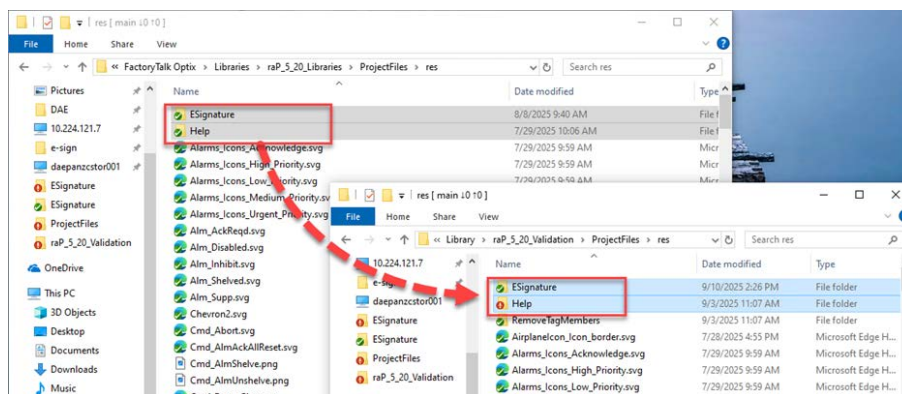




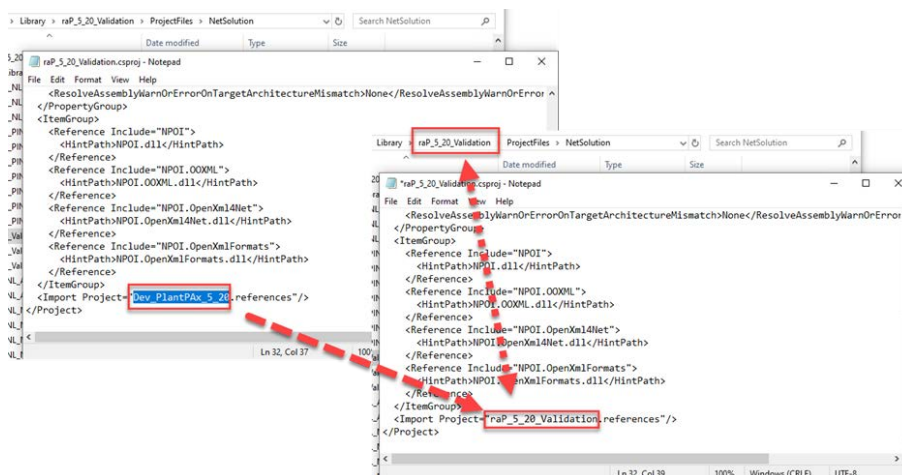
- From the 'Audit' library folder, drag the 'Audit\_NetLogic' object to 'NetLogic' folder in project view.



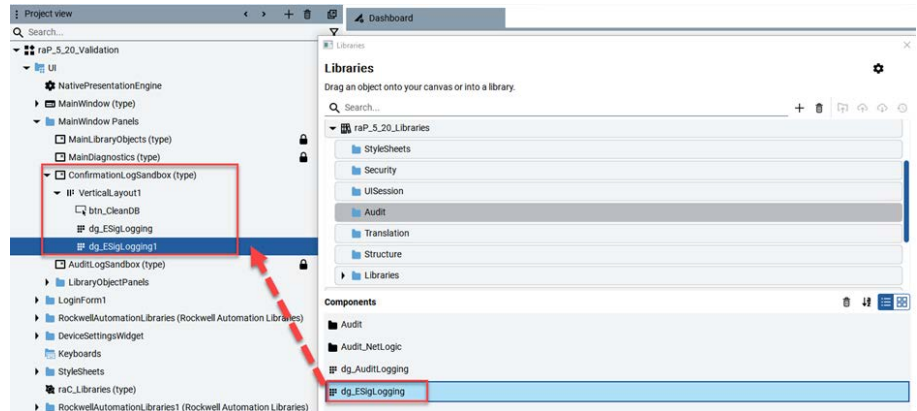
- Save and close the project.
- Copy 'ESignature' folder and 'Help' folder from 'C:\Users\<User>\Documents\Rockwell Automation\FactoryTalk Optix\Libraries\raP\_5\_20\_Libraries\ProjectFiles\res' to '<Project path>\ProjectsFiles\res' folder.



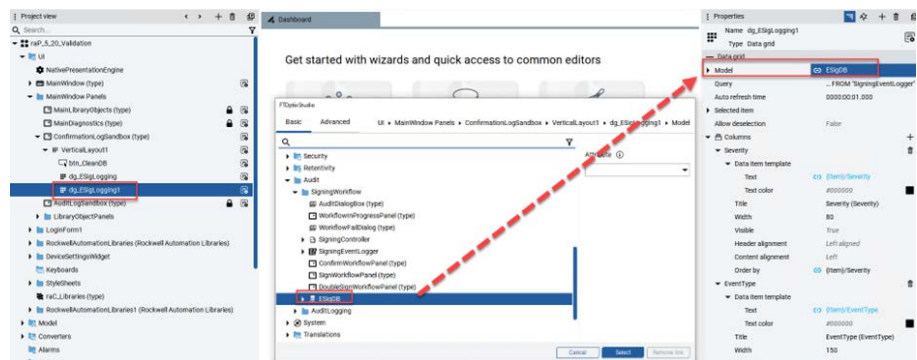
- Select 'Replace the files in the destination' to update all files under these two folders.
- Double-click 'CopyESignatureNetLogicConfigToProject.cmd' in '<ProjectPath>\ProjectsFiles\res\ESignature' and follow the prompts to complete the operation.
- In '<ProjectPath>\ProjectsFiles\NetSolution', open the <ProjectName>.csproj file and modify the project name in the last line to match actual <ProjectName>. Once completed, save the changes and close the file.



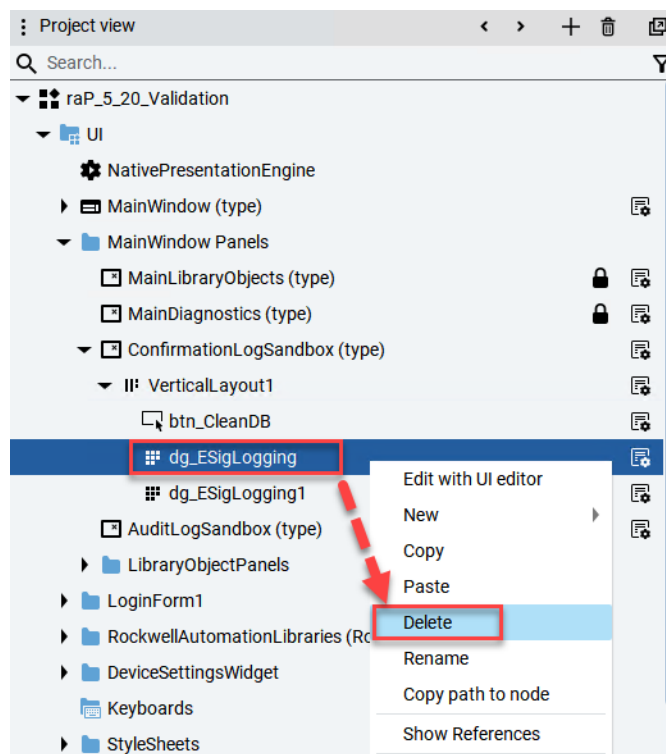
8. Reopen this project in FactoryTalk Optix.
9. Configure E-Signature Logging:
  - a. Drag the Data grid dg\_ESigLogging from the raP\_5\_20\_Libraries to panel 'ConfirmationLogSandbox' in the existing project. A 'dg\_ESigLogging1' object is created.



- b. Link 'Model' in 'dg\_ESigLogging1' Properties to the database of E-Signature 'ESigDB'.



- c. Delete 'dg\_ESigLogging'.

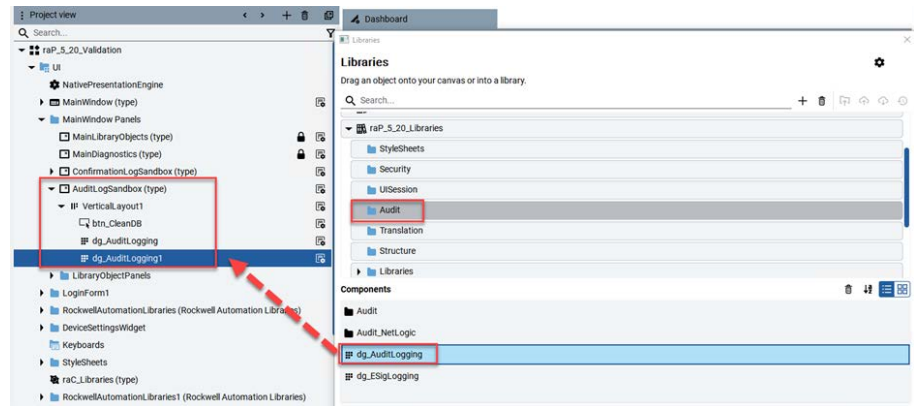




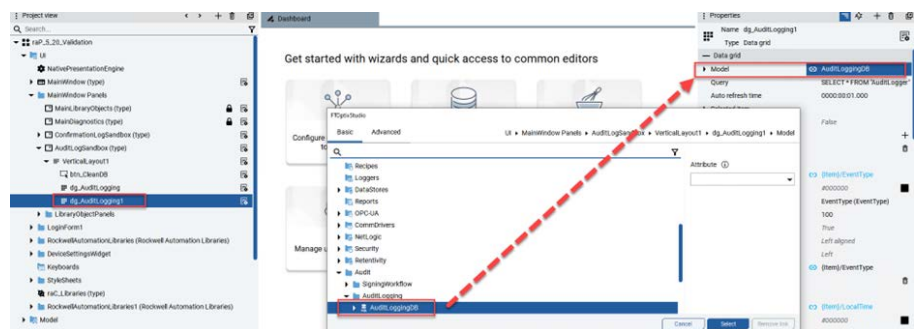
## Configure AuditLogging

If you need AuditLogging for your project, add an AuditLogging display to your HMI project. The following steps explain how to build the display using the AuditLogging elements in the PlantPax Process Library.

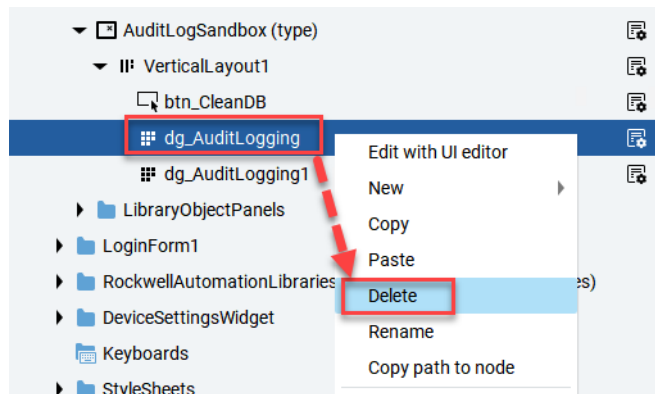
1. From the 'Audit' library folder, drag the 'dg\_AuditLogging' object to panel 'AuditLogSandbox' in project view.



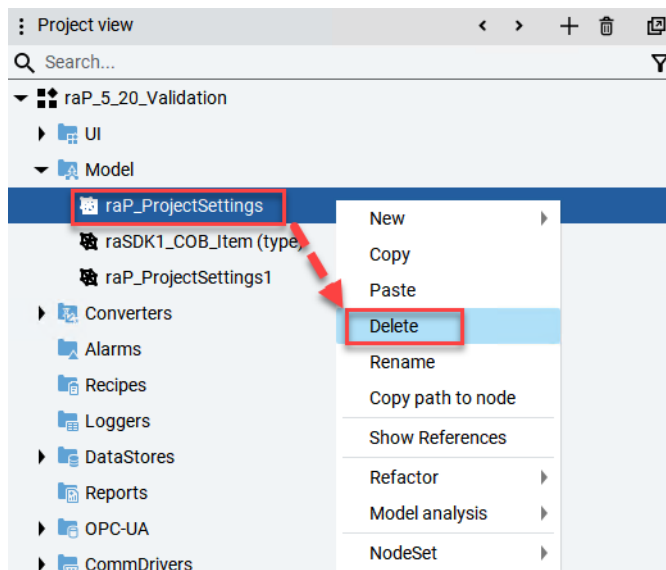
2. Select 'dg\_AuditLogging' in project view, and link Model to 'AuditLoggingDB' in its Properties.



3. Delete 'dg\_AuditLogging'.



4. Delete 'raP\_ProjectSettings' in 'Model' folder.



## FactoryTalk Optix E-Signature

# FactoryTalk Optix E-Signature User Guide

PlantPAX® Process Library offers a suite of components for bulk configuration of FactoryTalk® Optix™ E-Signature, allowing users to efficiently manage E-Signature at the tag level.

## Features

The E-Signature components provide the following features to users:

- Tag DataType based predefined Template.
- Export FactoryTalk Optix tag list to Excel® configuration file based on Template.
- One-step import Tags' Confirmation configurations into FactoryTalk Optix.
- One-step import Tags' AuditSigning Signature properties into FactoryTalk Optix from customized configuration file.
- Pop-up dialogs (including Confirm, Sign, DoubleSign) that can be triggered by named workflow.
- Data grid for recording E-Signature logs.

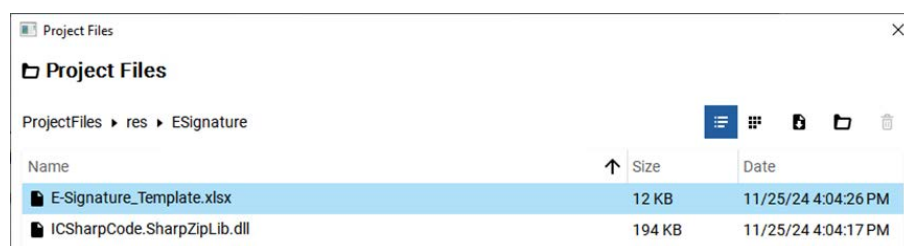
## Components

The components include E-Signature\_Template.xlsx, Audit\_NetLogic, SigningWorkflow HMI objects and E-Signature Event Logging objects.

### *E-Signature\_Template.xlsx*

E-Signature\_Template.xlsx is a predefined configuration file that is provided by the Process Library to define tag-level electronic signature workflows, such as ESigWorkflowType, SignApproverGroup and Caption.

See [E-Signature Template File on page 339](#) for detailed introduction of E-Signature Template.

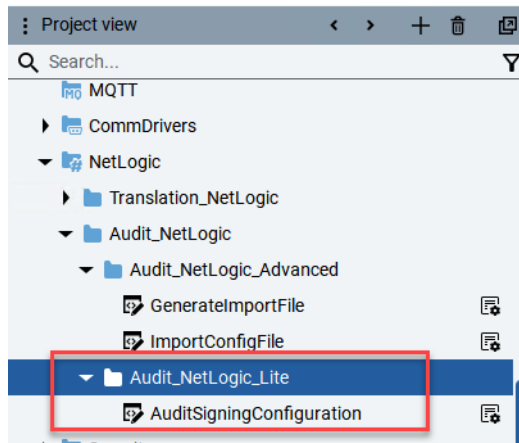


### *Audit\_NetLogic*

Audit\_NetLogic enables users to bulk import E-Signature configurations from the E-Signature Template into FactoryTalk Optix.

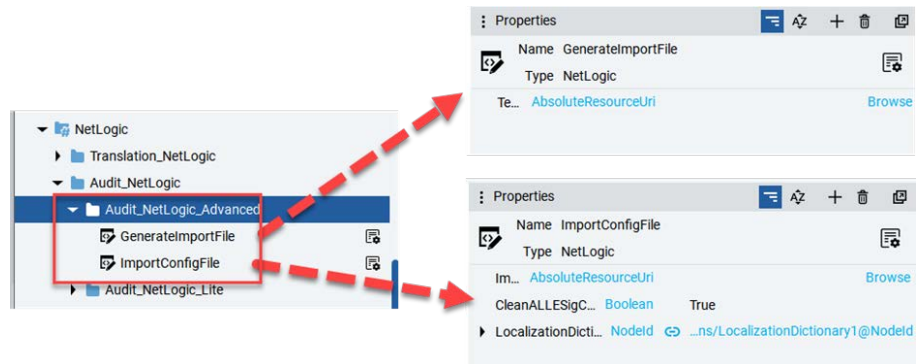
PlantPAx Process Library provides two versions of NetLogic under DesignTime path: '<ProjectName> > NetLogic > Audit\_NetLogic', which includes a Lite Version and an Advanced Version.

- The Lite Version NetLogics (AuditSigningConfiguration) only supports the importation of pre-defined Confirmation configurations. For instructions on how to use it, See [Confirmation Configuration on page 338](#).



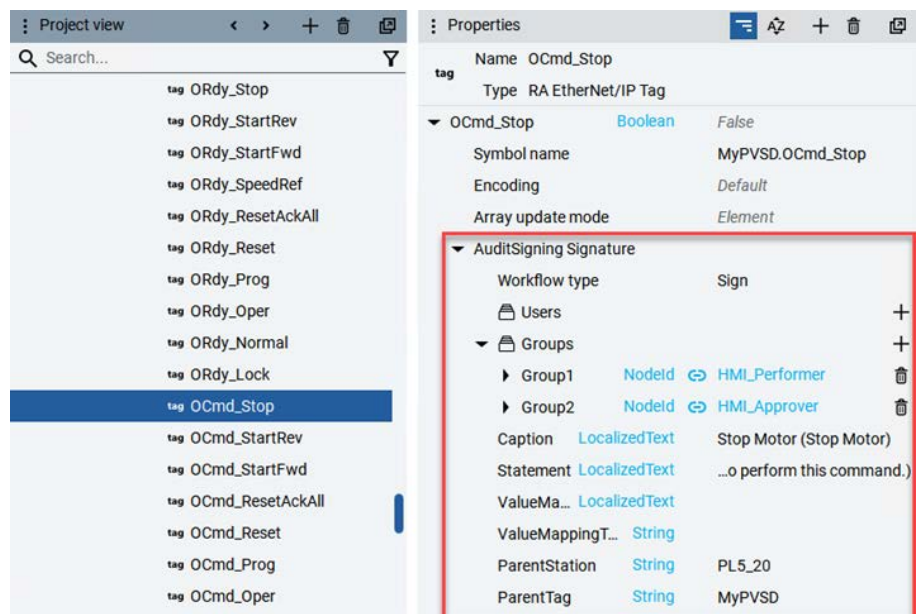
Note: For the pre-defined TagMembers with Confirmation configurations, See [Pre-defined TagMembers with Confirmation Workflow on page 354](#).

- The Advanced Version NetLogics (GenerateImportFile and ImportConfigFile) supports the importation of custom Confirmation, Sign and Double-Sign configurations. Users can redefine the ESigWorkflowType of each TagMember in E-Signature Template before importing. For instructions on how to use them, See [E-Signature Configuration on page 338](#).



Both suites of the NetLogics support configuration for multiple RAEtherNet\_IPDrivers and RAEtherNet\_IPStations.

After being imported by any version of Audit\_NetLogic, the E-Signature configurations appear under an automatically added "AuditSigning Signature" variable in the Properties of the relevant TagMember. The values match those defined by the E-Signature Template.



*SigningWorkflow HMI Objects*

SigningWorkflow HMI objects are interface panels that are provided by the Process Library that can be displayed during FactoryTalk Optix RunTime when a user operates and changes the value of a TagMember with "AuditSigning Signature" properties. Which panel to pop up at RunTime depends on the Workflow Type (Confirm, Sign, or DoubleSign) defined in E-Signature Template.

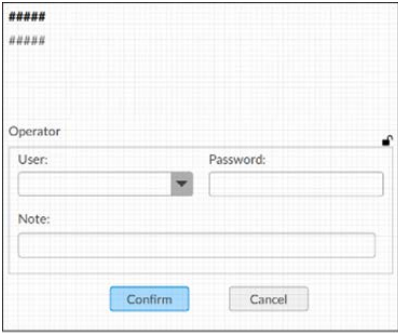
See [E-Signature Workflow Pop-up Dialog on page 344](#) for more information about the relationships among E-Signature Template, tag AuditSigning Signature properties, and SigningWorkflow HMI objects.

These Objects are located under the DesignTime path:  
<ProjectName> > Audit > SigningWorkflow


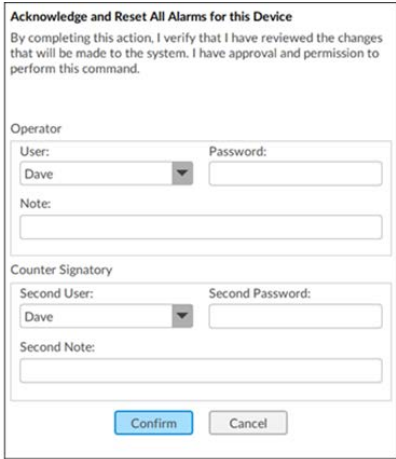
- Confirm workflow panel:

 <p>DesignTime</p>	 <p>RunTime</p>
--	--

- Sign workflow panel:

 <p>DesignTime</p>	 <p>RunTime</p>
--	---

- Double-Sign workflow panel:

 <p>DesignTime</p>	 <p>RunTime</p>
---	--

- Workflow panel when ValueMappingContent is not empty:

Request confirm operation for changing MSet\_Bypass.6 to 1

Note:

Value Mapping	
bit 0:	Changed 'Interlock 00 (Bad Things) bypassed' to new value
bit 1:	Changed 'Interlock 01 (label1) bypassed' to new value
bit 2:	Changed 'Interlock 02 (label2) bypassed' to new value
bit 3:	Changed 'Interlock 03 (label3) bypassed' to new value
bit 4:	Changed 'Interlock 04 (label4) bypassed' to new value
bit 5:	Changed 'Interlock 05 (label5) bypassed' to new value
bit 6:	Changed 'Interlock 06 (label6) bypassed' to new value
bit 7:	Changed 'Interlock 07 (label7) bypassed' to new value
bit 8:	Changed 'Interlock 08 (label8) bypassed' to new value
bit 9:	Changed 'Interlock 09 (label9) bypassed' to new value
bit 10:	Changed 'Interlock 10 (label10) bypassed' to new value
bit 11:	Changed 'Interlock 11 (label11) bypassed' to new value
bit 12:	Changed 'Interlock 12 (label12) bypassed' to new value
bit 13:	Changed 'Interlock 13 (label13) bypassed' to new value
bit 14:	Changed 'Interlock 14 (label14) bypassed' to new value
bit 15:	Changed 'Interlock 15 (label15) bypassed' to new value

### E-Signature Event Logging Objects

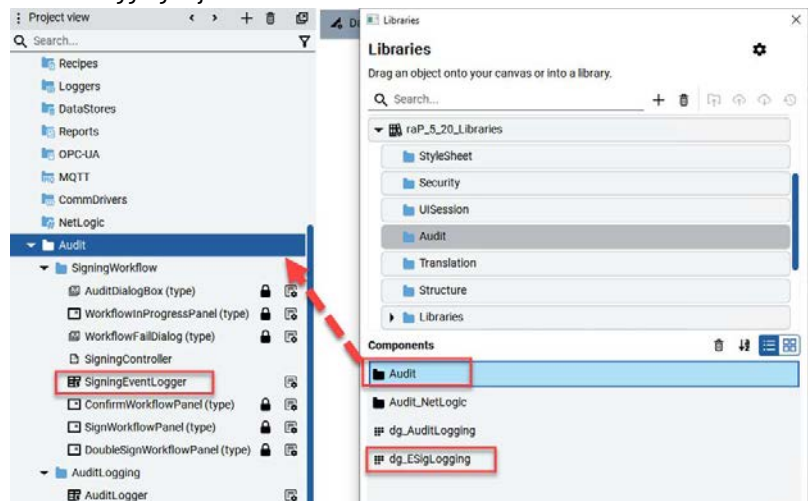
E-Signature event logging objects are used to record and monitor audit signing workflows and E-Signature events.

PlantPax Process Library provides predefined FactoryTalk Optix E-Signature event logging objects, including an event logger (SigningEventLogger) and a logging DataGrid (dg\_ESigLogging), stored in DesignTime path '<ProjectName> -> Audit' folder.

To store these events using the SigningEventLogger, you must manually create a database within FactoryTalk Optix. The SigningEventLogger logs key information of its pre-defined event fields. During RunTime, you can view the logged information in DataGrid (dg\_ESigLogging).

The predefined event fields include Severity, EventType, LocalTime, SourceName, Action, WorkflowType, SignResult, ClientUserId, ClientUserNote, SecondClientId, SecondClientUserNote, SourceNode.

See [E-Signature Event Logging Configuration on page 351](#) for instructions on utilizing the E-Signature event logging objects.



## Environment Setup

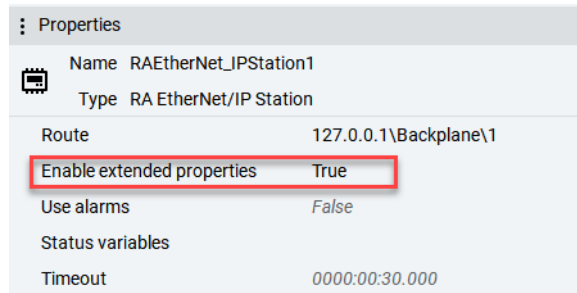
Use the following guidelines to configure the project environment before starting the E-Signature configuration:

### Prerequisites

Follow [raP\\_5\\_20\\_Libraries User Guide on page 299](#) to set up FactoryTalk Optix project and ensure the files that are mentioned in the subsequent sections are prepared in their designated location.

### Import Tags into FactoryTalk Optix

1. Launch the FactoryTalk Optix project.
2. Configure the 'Enable extended properties' setting to 'True' for the RAEtherNet\_IPStation that will be utilized within the project.



3. Import tags into the RAEtherNet\_IPStation as required.

### Copy .csproj and DLL Files to Designated Directory

This step is only required before running the Advanced Version NetLogics in your project.

1. Double-click the Windows® Command Script 'CopyESignatureNetLogicConfigToProject.cmd' that is in the '<ProjectPath>\ProjectFiles\res\ESignature' directory.





## 2. Follow the prompt to complete the process.

```

C:\Windows\system32\cmd.exe
#####
# Automated Project Template Deployment Tool #
#####

This tool automatically detects the project name and deploys project template content.
It copies .dll files and renames .csproj files to match the project name.

Press any key to continue . . .

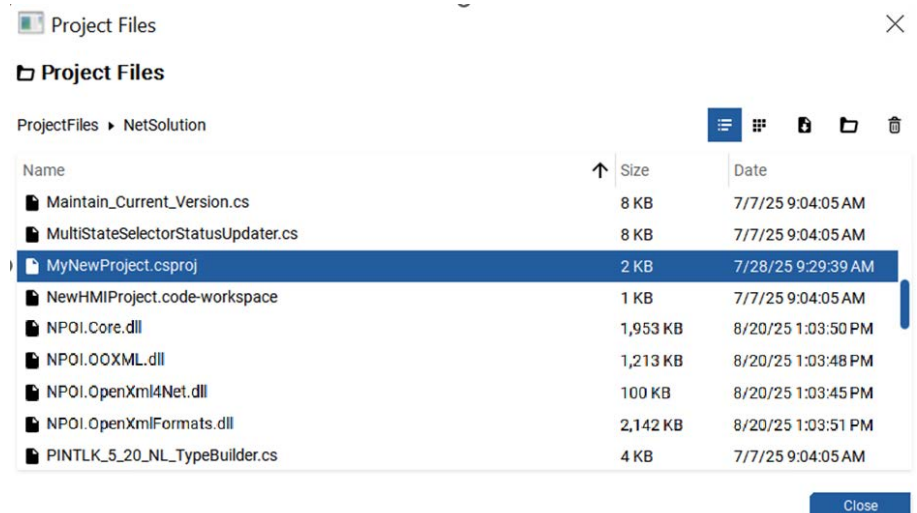
C:\Windows\system32\cmd.exe
#####
# Automated Project Template Deployment Tool #
#####

This tool automatically detects the project name and deploys project template content.
It copies .dll files and renames .csproj files to match the project name.

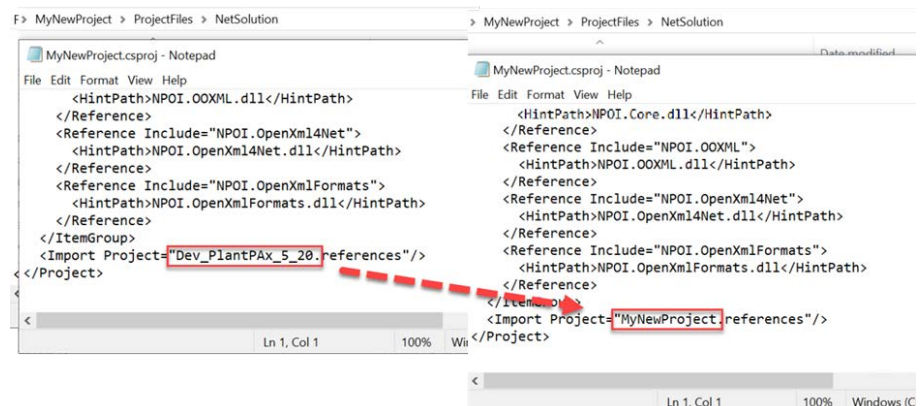
Press any key to continue . . .
Detected project name: **MyNewProject**
Preparing to copy project template content...
Source Path: "D:\ProcessLibrary\MyNewProject\ProjectFiles\res\ESignature\"
Target Path: "D:\ProcessLibrary\MyNewProject\ProjectFiles\NetSolution\"
Excluding script file: "CopyESignatureNetLogicConfigToProject.cmd"
Only copying .dll files and .csproj files (renamed to project name)
Copying file: ICSharpCode.SharpZipLib.dll
Copying file: NPOI.Core.dll
Copying file: NPOI.OOXML.dll
Copying file: NPOI.OpenXml4Net.dll
Copying file: NPOI.OpenXmlFormats.dll
Copying file: ZString.dll
Renaming and copying: ESignatureNetLogicRequiredReference.csproj to MyNewProject.csproj
Press any key to continue . . .
Project 'MyNewProject' template content successfully deployed.
.dll files copied as-is
.csproj file renamed to MyNewProject.csproj
Please check the 'D:\ProcessLibrary\MyNewProject\ProjectFiles\NetSolution\' folder.
Press any key to continue . . .

```

## 3. Navigate to the '&lt;ProjectPath&gt;\ProjectFiles\NetSolution' folder and open the newly copied .csproj file.



## 4. Modify the project name in the last line of the &lt;ProjectName&gt;.csproj file to match actual &lt;ProjectName&gt;. Once completed, save the changes and close the file.



5. Reopen the FactoryTalk Optix project and check the Studio Output messages to confirm that the .Net solution has been built successfully.



Code	Timestamp	Category	Object	Message
①	2025-09-12 13:31:13...	FTOptixStudio		Opening project 'D:\ProcessLibrary\MyNewProject\Dev_PlantPax_S_20_optix'
①	2025-09-12 13:32:09...	FTOptixStudio		Opened project 'D:\ProcessLibrary\MyNewProject\Dev_PlantPax_S_20_optix'
①	2025-09-12 13:32:35...	NetHelper	User	.NET solution built successfully: z:\D:\ProcessLibrary\MyNewProject\ProjectFiles\NetSolution\ImportAndExportTranslations_Tab.cs(19,7): warning CS0105: Th...

E-Signature Configuration

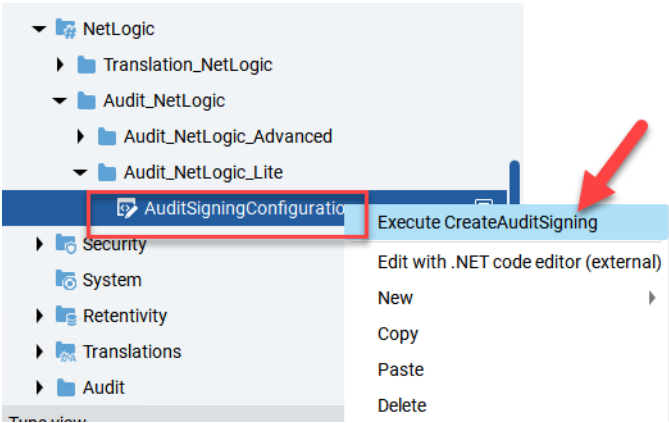
PlantPax Process Library provides two suites of solutions:

- The steps of [Confirmation Configuration](#) apply if you only need Confirmation workflow type.
- The steps of [E-Signature Configuration](#) apply if you would like to customize the E-Signature workflow type (Confirm, Sign, or DoubleSign).

Confirmation Configuration

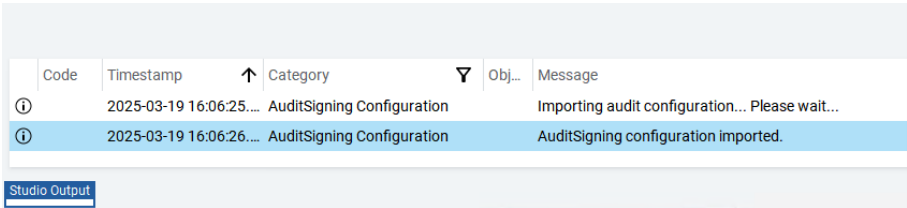
The Lite Version Audit\_NetLogic (AuditSigningConfiguration) is used here, with a built-in, predefined E-Signature Template. For the list of the TagMembers with Confirmation workflow predefined by the template, [Pre-defined TagMembers with Confirmation Workflow on page 354](#).

1. Navigate to the NetLogic in DesignTime path: '<ProjectName> > NetLogic > Audit\_NetLogic > Audit\_NetLogic\_Lite > AuditSigningConfiguration'.
2. Right click NetLogic and select 'Execute CreateAuditSigning' method.



The AuditSigning Configuration is added to all pre-defined tags by NetLogic.

In FactoryTalk Optix Studio Output, the information message shows 'AuditSigning configuration imported.' when completed:



Code	Timestamp	Category	Obj...	Message
①	2025-03-19 16:06:25....	AuditSigning Configuration		Importing audit configuration... Please wait...
①	2025-03-19 16:06:26....	AuditSigning Configuration		AuditSigning configuration imported.

## E-Signature Configuration

The Advanced Version of NetLogics are used in this section. You can customize the EsigWorkflowType in the E-Signature Template and export the existing tag list from FactoryTalk Optix by using GenerateImportFile NetLogic based on the custom E-Signature Template. Then import the generated E-Signature Configuration file to FactoryTalk Optix to complete the E-Signature configuration.

### Export Tag Based on Template

#### E-Signature Template File

The E-Signature Template file is provided by the PlantPax library and is in the '`<ProjectPath>\ProjectFile\res\ESignature`' folder. The format is shown in the following example:

Data Type	Tag Member	EsigWorkflowType	Caption	Statement	SignApproverGroup	ValueMappingType	ValueMappingContent
1	ANALOG_HART	MCmd_Virtual	Sign	Place the device in virtual operation	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
2	ANALOG_HART	MCmd_Physical	Sign	Enable physical	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
3	ANALOG_INPUT	OCmd_ResetAck	Sign	Acknowledge and Reset All Alarms for this	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
4	ANALOG_INPUT	OCmd_Reset	Sign	Device Reset	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
5	ANALOG_INPUT	OCmd_ClearCap	Sign	Clear captured minimum and maximum	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
6	ANALOG_INPUT	MCmd_SubstPV	Sign	Substitute PV	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
7	ANALOG_INPUT	MCmd_Virtual	Sign	Place the device in virtual operation	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
8	ANALOG_INPUT	MCmd_Physical	Sign	Enable physical	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
9	ANALOG_INPUT	MCmd_SubstPV	Sign	Replace the PV with a substitute value for	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
10	ANALOG_INPUT	MCmd_InputPV	Sign	Use input PV	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
11	ANALOG_INPUT	@Alarms/Alarm_***OpenAck	Sign	Acknowledge alarm	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
12	ANALOG_INPUT	@Alarms/Alarm_***OpenReset	Sign	Reset alarm	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
13	ANALOG_INPUT	@Alarms/Alarm_***OpenShelve	Sign	Shelve alarm	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
14	ANALOG_INPUT	@Alarms/Alarm_***OpenUnshelve	Sign	Unshelve alarm	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
15	ANALOG_INPUT	@Alarms/Alarm_***ShelveDuration	Sign	Change Shelve Duration (min)	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
16	ANALOG_INPUT	OCmd_SelectMin	Sign	Select Minimum	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
17	ANALOG_INPUT	OCmd_SelectMax	Sign	Select Maximum	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
18	ANALOG_INPUT	OCmd_SelectB	Sign	Select input B	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
19	ANALOG_INPUT	OCmd_SelectA	Sign	Select Average	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
20	ANALOG_INPUT	OCmd_SelectA	Sign	Select input A	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
21	ANALOG_INPUT	@Alarms/Alarm_***OpenAck	Sign	Acknowledge alarm	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
22	ANALOG_INPUT	@Alarms/Alarm_***OpenReset	Sign	Reset alarm	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
23	ANALOG_INPUT	@Alarms/Alarm_***OpenShelve	Sign	Shelve alarm	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
24	ANALOG_INPUT	@Alarms/Alarm_***OpenUnshelve	Sign	Unshelve alarm	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
25	ANALOG_INPUT	@Alarms/Alarm_***ShelveDuration	Sign	Change Shelve Duration (min)	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		
26	ANALOG_INPUT	OCmd_ResetAck	Sign	Acknowledge and Reset All Alarms for this	By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes HMI_Performer/HMI_Approver		

Modifying the information in the template is not recommended other than the values in the column EsigWorkflowType. The following table provides a detailed explanation of each column in the template.

Column <sup>(1)</sup>	Format	Mandatory	Example
Data Type <sup>(2)</sup>	Match 'Data Type' in Logix Designer	Y	P_VARIABLE_SPEED_DRIVE
TagMember	Match tag 'Name' suffix in Logix Designer	Y	OSet_OutDataLink
EsigWorkflowType	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Confirm</li> <li>Sign</li> <li>DoubleSign</li> </ul>	N • If empty, the line is skipped when imported into FactoryTalk Optix.	Default: Sign
Caption	Predefined strings	N • If empty, a default caption is shown during RunTime.	Default: Request confirm operation for changing {<TagName>} <sup>(3)</sup> from <OldValue> to <NewValue>
Statement	Predefined strings	N	—
SignApproverGroup <sup>(4)</sup>	Match the existing group names under FactoryTalk Optix DesignTime path '<ProjectName>>Security>Groups'.	Y for 'Sign' and 'DoubleSign' Workflow Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Default for 'Sign': HMI_Performer<sup>(5)</sup></li> <li>Default for 'DoubleSign': HMI_Performer<sup>(5)/HMI_Approver<sup>(6)</sup></sup></li> </ul>
ValueMappingContent <sup>(7)</sup>	Predefined strings	N	(Content differs by TagMember) MSet_Bypass: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Value = 1: Enable Bypass</li> <li>Value = 0: Disable Bypass</li> </ul>
ValueMappingType <sup>(7)</sup>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>MultipleValues</li> <li>BitValues</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>N</li> <li>Y if ValueMappingContent is not empty.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>MultipleValues</li> <li>BitValues</li> </ul>

(1) Do NOT modify column names in the template.

- (2) For Template predefined DataType, See [Template Pre-Defined DataType on page 353](#)
- (3) To insert a tag value in the caption content, follow the format '{<Tag>}' or '{<ExtendedProperties>}'. For all supported Extended Properties, See [Extended Properties Dictionary on page 356](#)
- (4) Used to identify groups and members within each group that can sign.
- (5) The HMI\_Performer group must include all authorized users/operators intended to be the first signature for the 'Sign' and 'DoubleSign' workflow.
- (6) The HMI\_Approver group must include all authorized users who are intended to be the second signature/counter signatory for the 'DoubleSign' workflow.
- (7) <ValueMappingContent> and <ValueMppingType> is only displayed during FactoryTalk Optix RunTime when <ValueMappingContent> is not empty, See [Workflow panel when ValueMappingContent is not empty: on page 335](#)

**IMPORTANT**

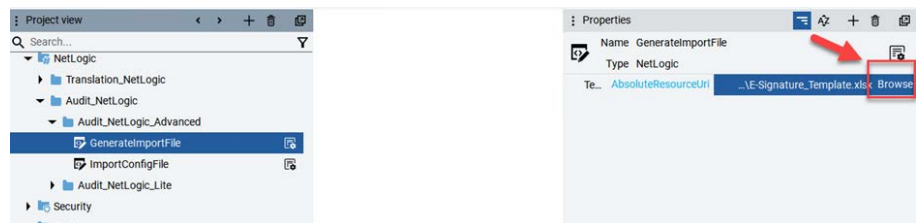
Updating Caption, Statement, or ValueMappingContent in the E-Signature template may cause the existing translation configuration to fail. For instructions on updating these strings See [How to Customize Caption/Statement/ValueMappingContent by Template on page 358](#)

*Export Procedure*

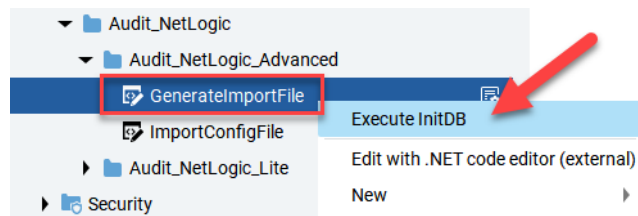
1. Select '<ProjectName> > NetLogic > Audit\_NetLogic > Audit\_NetLogic\_Advanced > GenerateImportFile'.
2. In properties, update parameter 'TemplateFilePath' to E-Signature\_Template.xlsx full path.

For example:

D:\ProcessLibrary\MyNewProject\ProjectFiles\res\ESignature\E-Signature\_Template.xlsx



3. Right click the NetLogic 'GenerateImportFile' and select 'Execute InitDB' method.



4. The E-Signature Configuration file is exported to path: 'ProjectFiles\res\ESignature\E-Signature\_<timestamps>.xlsx' by default.

## Import E-Signature Configuration File

### E-Signature Configuration File

The E-Signature Configuration file is the one generated in [Export Procedure](#), including the following information:

#### Summary Tab

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	DriverName	StationName	FolderName	TagName	DataType	E-Signature Import	Note
2	RAEtherNet_IPDriver1	PL5_20	Controller Tags	My9AI	P_ANALOG_INPUT	Y	
3	RAEtherNet_IPDriver1	PL5_20	Controller Tags	My9AID	P_ANALOG_INPUT_DUAL	Y	
4	RAEtherNet_IPDriver1	PL5_20	Controller Tags	My9AO	P_ANALOG_OUTPUT	Y	
5	RAEtherNet_IPDriver1	PL5_20	Controller Tags	My9BL	P_BOOLEAN_LOGIC	N	The DataType is not in E-Signature Template.
6	RAEtherNet_IPDriver1	PL5_20	Controller Tags	My9D4SD	P_DISCRETE_4STATE	Y	
7	RAEtherNet_IPDriver1	PL5_20	Controller Tags	My9DBC	P_DEADBAND	Y	
8	RAEtherNet_IPDriver1	PL5_20	Controller Tags	My9DI	P_DISCRETE_INPUT	Y	
9	RAEtherNet_IPDriver1	PL5_20	Controller Tags	My9DO	P_DISCRETE_OUTPUT	Y	
10	RAEtherNet_IPDriver1	PL5_20	Controller Tags	My9DOSE_F	P_DOSING	Y	
11	RAEtherNet_IPDriver1	PL5_20	Controller Tags	My9DOSE_W	P_DOSING	Y	
12	RAEtherNet_IPDriver1	PL5_20	Controller Tags	My9VLV_MO	P_VALVE_DISCRETE	Y	
13	RAEtherNet_IPDriver1	PL5_20	Controller Tags	My9VLV_SO	P_VALVE_DISCRETE	Y	
14	RAEtherNet_IPDriver1	PL5_20	Controller Tags	My9VSD	P_VARIABLE_SPEED_DRIVE	Y	
15	RAEtherNet_IPDriver1	PL5_20	Controller Tags	My9VSD_Intlk_0	P_INTERLOCK	Y	
16							
	Summary	All Tag Data Types in FT Optix project exported here.					

#### IMPORTANT

Do not modify any cells except for entries in the 'E-Signature Import' column, where only 'Y' or 'N' values are permitted. Only DataType entries marked as 'Y' and associated with a valid TagMember in the Detail Tab is imported when the ImportConfigFile NetLogic is executed.

#### Detail Tab

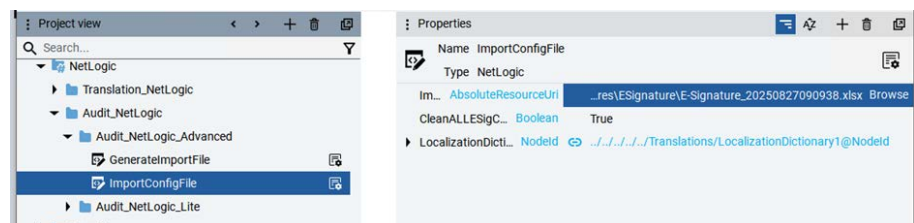
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	DataType	TagMember	EsigWorkflowType	Caption	Statement	SignApproverGroup	ValueMappingType	ValueMappingContent
2	P_ANALOG_HART	MCmd_Virtual	Sign	Place the device in vis	By completing this actHMI_Performer/HMI_Approver			
3	P_ANALOG_HART	MCmd_Physical	Sign	Enable physical	By completing this actHMI_Performer/HMI_Approver			
4	P_ANALOG_INPUT	OCmd_ResetAckAll	Sign	Acknowledge and Reset	By completing this actHMI_Performer/HMI_Approver			
5	P_ANALOG_INPUT	OCmd_Reset	Sign	Device Reset	By completing this actHMI_Performer/HMI_Approver			
6	P_ANALOG_INPUT	OCmd_ClearCapt	Sign	Clear captured minim	By completing this actHMI_Performer/HMI_Approver			
7	P_ANALOG_INPUT	MSet_SubstPV	Sign	Substitute PV	By completing this actHMI_Performer/HMI_Approver			
8	P_ANALOG_INPUT	MCmd_Virtual	Sign	Place the device in vis	By completing this actHMI_Performer/HMI_Approver			
9	P_ANALOG_INPUT	MCmd_Physical	Sign	Enable physical	By completing this actHMI_Performer/HMI_Approver			
10	P_ANALOG_INPUT	MCmd_SubstPV	Sign	Replace the PV with a	By completing this actHMI_Performer/HMI_Approver			
11	P_ANALOG_INPUT	MCmd_InpPV	Sign	Use input PV	By completing this actHMI_Performer/HMI_Approver			
12	P_ANALOG_INPUT	@Alarms/Alm_**/Op Sign		Acknowledge alarm	By completing this actHMI_Performer/HMI_Approver			
13	P_ANALOG_INPUT	@Alarms/Alm_**/Op Sign		Reset alarm	By completing this actHMI_Performer/HMI_Approver			
14	P_ANALOG_INPUT	@Alarms/Alm_**/Op Sign		Shelve alarm	By completing this actHMI_Performer/HMI_Approver			
15	P_ANALOG_INPUT	@Alarms/Alm_**/Op Sign		Unshelve alarm	By completing this actHMI_Performer/HMI_Approver			
16	P_ANALOG_INPUT	@Alarms/Alm_**/Shi Sign		Change Shelve Durati	By completing this actHMI_Performer/HMI_Approver			

#### IMPORTANT

Any cell in the 'EsigWorkflowType' column that is empty is highlighted. Rows with an empty 'EsigWorkflowType' cell will not be imported into the FactoryTalk Optix project.

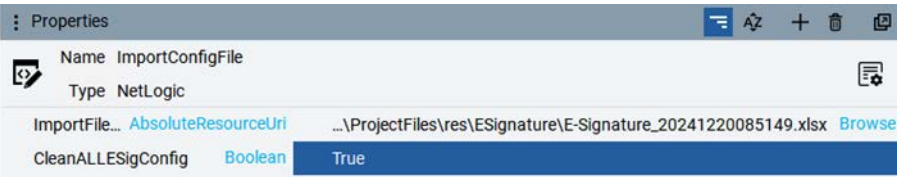
### Import Procedure

1. From FactoryTalk Optix, select '<ProjectName> > NetLogic > Audit\_NetLogic > Audit\_NetLogic\_Advanced > ImportConfigFile'.
2. From properties dialog, input full path of the Configuration file.





3. Select 'True' or 'False' for CleanALLESigConfig:

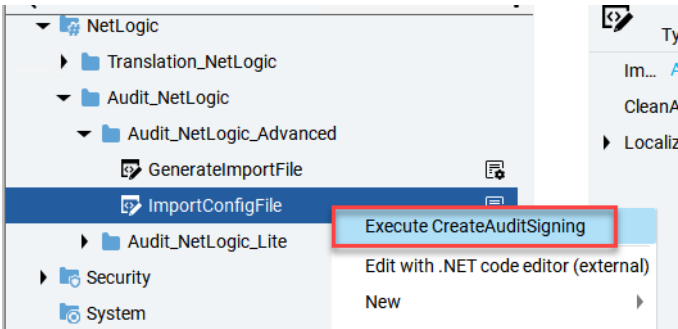


- True: The NetLogic will first clean all existing AuditSigning information in FactoryTalk Optix before importing.
- False: The NetLogic will only import and replace the AuditSigning information in FactoryTalk Optix for the TagMembers selected in the Import File. Existing AuditSigning information where the TagMember is not selected to import in the Import File is not cleaned.



It is recommended that you back up the current FactoryTalk Optix project before next step.

4. Right-Click on NetLogic 'ImportConfigFile' and select 'Execute CreateAuditSigning' method.



5. In the FactoryTalk Optix Studio output, the info message shows 'AuditSigning configuration imported.' when completed.



Trouble Shooting

When any exception occurs while executing NetLogic, there is an output message in the FactoryTalk Optix Studio Output to indicate the error with the Category 'AuditSigning Configuration'. For example:

Code	Timestamp	Category	Object	Message
!	2024-12-02 12:38:54.60	AuditSigning Configuration		Export failed. No tags found.

The following table lists common error messages and the corresponding reasons for the error:

NetLogic	Output Message	Reasons
Export (GenerateImportFile)	Export failed. No tags found.	No tag under CommDrivers in the FactoryTalk Optix project.
	Could not find file "ICSharpCode.SharpZipLib.dll" under '<ProjectPath>/ProjectFiles/NetSolution/bin' folder.	You didn't copy the dll file before executing the NetLogic. See <a href="#">Copy .csproj and DLL Files to Designated Directory on page 336</a>
	File in use: <user-input path>.	The template file is open.
	Template file not found: <user-input path>.	Incorrect template file path selected for GenerateImportFile NetLogic.
	Incorrect template format, only support .xlsx and .xls file type.	Incorrect template file type selected for GenerateImportFile NetLogic. It supports all .xlsx files and .xls from Excel version 97.
	Incorrect template format.	Template includes incorrect content (for example, incorrect column name or missing required column).
Import (ImportConfigFile)	Could not find file "ICSharpCode.SharpZipLib.dll" under '<ProjectPath>/ProjectFiles/NetSolution/bin' folder.	You didn't copy the dll file before executing the NetLogic. See <a href="#">Copy .csproj and DLL Files to Designated Directory on page 336</a>
	File not found: <user-input path>.	Incorrect import file path selected for ImportConfigFile NetLogic.
	File in use: <user-input path>.	The import file is open.
	Incorrect import file format, only support .xlsx and .xls file type.	Incorrect import file type selected for ImportConfigFile NetLogic. It supports all .xlsx files and .xls from Excel version 97.
	Incorrect import file format.	Import file includes incorrect content (for example, incorrect column name or missing required column).
	No AuditSigning created.	Missing mandatory information in import file (for example, StationName, DataType, E-signature Import, TagMember, EsigWorkflowType).
	Import failed. No matching '<user-input Driver>' DriverName found.	Non-existent cell value under DriverName column in Summary Sheet of import file.
	Import failed. No matching '<Tag path>' found.	Invalid cell value under StationName/TagName column in Summary Sheet of import file.
	Import failed. No matching '<ColumnName>' found 'xxx'.	Invalid value 'xxx' under <ColumnName> column in Detail Sheet of Import file.
	<ColumnName> import failed. No matching tags found '<Tag>'.	Invalid '<Tag>' included in the cell value of <ColumnName> column on Detail Sheet of Import file.

# E-Signature Workflow Pop-up Dialog

After importing the E-Signature Configurations into FactoryTalk Optix, the parameters will appear under the “AuditSigning Signature” variable of the configured TagMember. When you start RunTime and interact with the corresponding TagMember, an E-Signature Workflow dialog with the configured content automatically pops up.

The mapping between the content in the E-Signature Template and what appears in FactoryTalk Optix DesignTime and the RunTime pop-up dialogs are as follows.

## Confirm Workflow

### 1. DataType mapping

The screenshot displays the FactoryTalk Optix interface. At the top, a table lists tag members with columns: A (DataType), B (TagMember), C (EsigWorkflowType), and D (Caption). The first row shows 'P\_DISCRETE\_INPUT' mapped to 'MSet\_SubstPV' with the workflow type 'Sign'. Below the table, the 'Project view' pane shows a tree structure of tags. The 'MyPDI' tag is selected and highlighted with a red box. To the right, the 'Properties' pane shows the 'Type' of 'MyPDI' is 'P\_DISCRETE\_INPUT', also highlighted with a red box. Red arrows indicate the mapping from the table to the tag library and then to the properties.

### 2. TagMember mapping

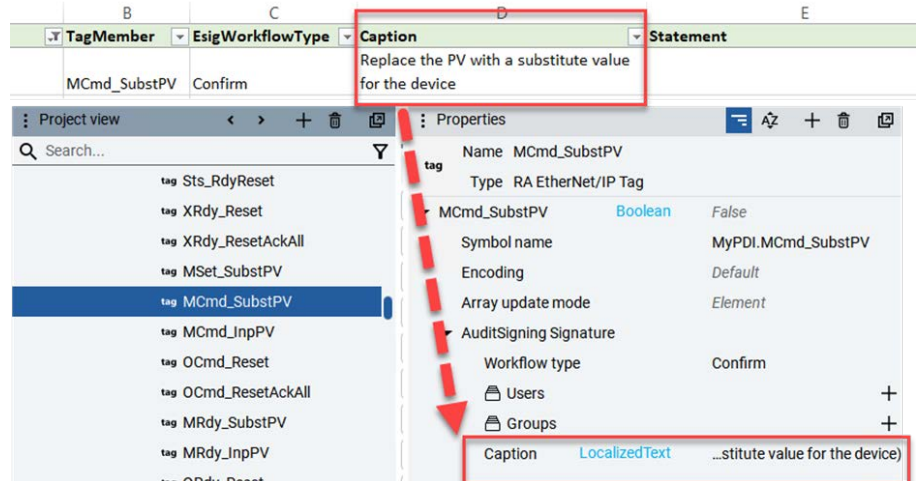
The screenshot displays the FactoryTalk Optix interface. At the top, a table lists tag members with columns: A (DataType), B (TagMember), C (EsigWorkflowType), and D (Caption). The first row shows 'P\_DISCRETE\_INPUT' mapped to 'MSet\_SubstPV' with the workflow type 'Confirm'. Below the table, the 'Project view' pane shows a tree structure of tags. The 'MCmd\_SubstPV' tag is selected and highlighted with a red box. To the right, the 'Properties' pane shows the 'Type' of 'MCmd\_SubstPV' is 'Boolean', and the 'Symbol name' is 'MyPDI.MCmd\_SubstPV', both highlighted with red boxes. Red arrows indicate the mapping from the table to the tag library and then to the properties.

### 3. EsigWorkflowType

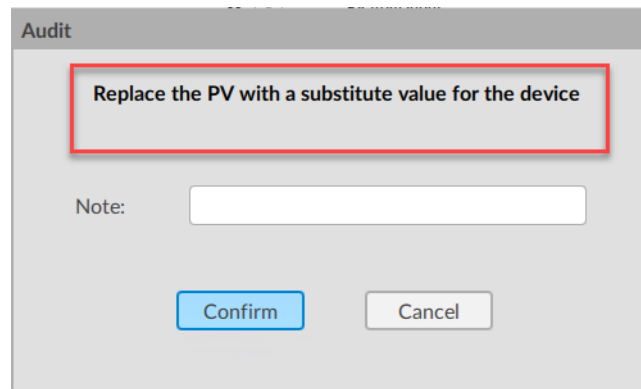
The screenshot displays the FactoryTalk Optix interface. At the top, a table lists tag members with columns: A (DataType), B (TagMember), C (EsigWorkflowType), and D (Caption). The first row shows 'P\_DISCRETE\_INPUT' mapped to 'MCmd\_SubstPV' with the workflow type 'Confirm'. Below the table, the 'Project view' pane shows a tree structure of tags. The 'MCmd\_SubstPV' tag is selected and highlighted with a red box. To the right, the 'Properties' pane shows the 'AuditSigning Signature' section, which is expanded and highlighted with a red box. The 'Workflow type' is set to 'Confirm'. Red arrows indicate the mapping from the table to the tag library and then to the properties.



4. Caption:
  - DesignTime

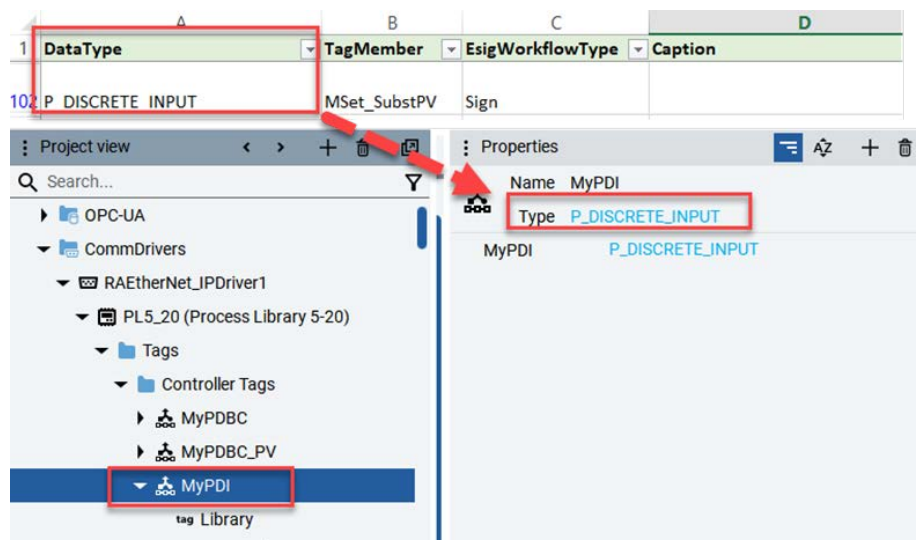


- RunTime

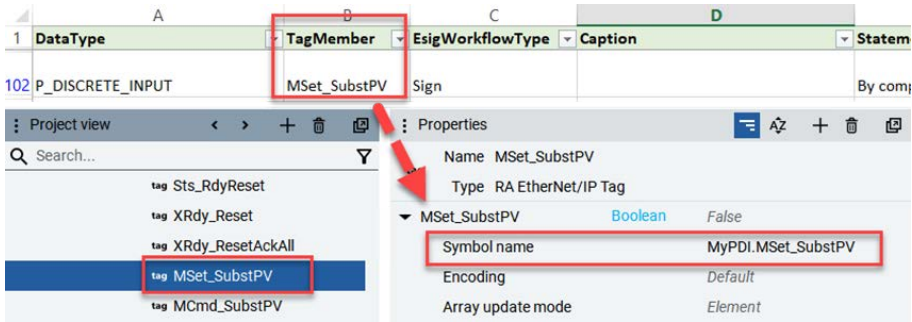


## Sign Workflow

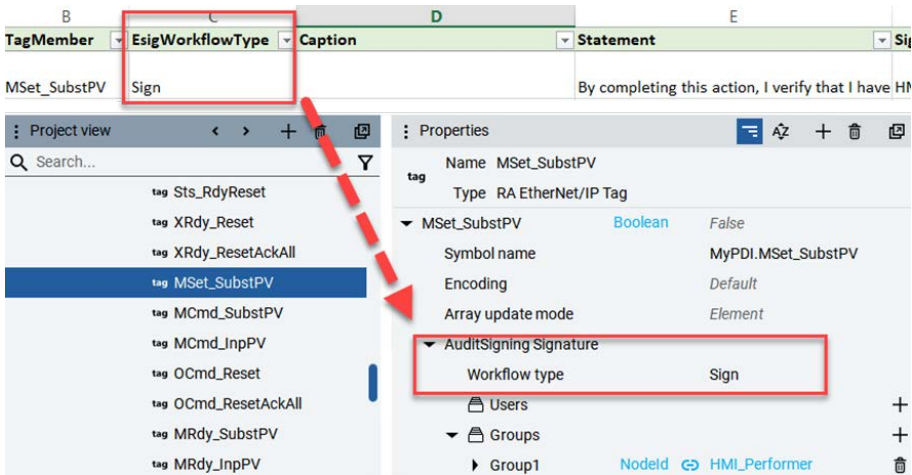
1. DataType mapping



2. TagMember mapping

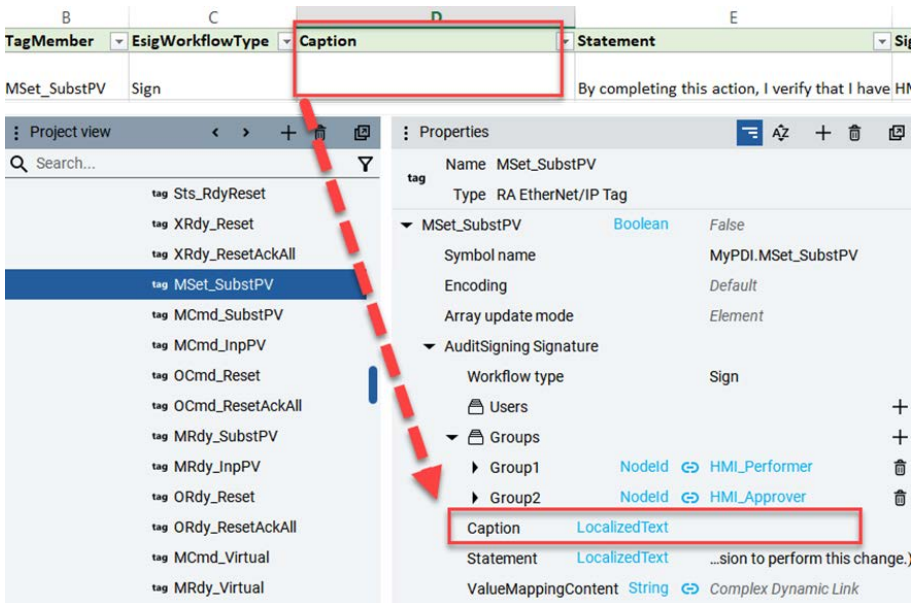


3. EsigWorkflowType



4. Caption

- DesignTime



- RunTime (a default caption shows when it's empty in DesignTime)

Audit	Value Mapping
<p><b>Request sign operation for changing MSet_SubstPV from 1 to 0</b></p> <p>By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes that will be made to the system. I have approval and permission to perform this change.</p>	<p>Value = 1: Veggie; Value = 0: Bacon</p>
<p>Operator</p> <p>User: <input type="text" value="EngineerType1"/> Password: <input type="password"/></p> <p>Note: <input type="text"/></p> <p><input type="button" value="Confirm"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p>	

## 5. Statement:

- DesignTime

The screenshot shows the DesignTime configuration for the MSet\_SubstPV tag. The 'Statement' property is highlighted in the Properties window, and its value is 'By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes that will be made to the system. I have approval and permission to perform this change.' The 'ValueMapping' property is also shown, with a value of 'MultipleValues'.

Property	Value
Name	MSet_SubstPV
Type	RA EtherNet/IP Tag
MSet_SubstPV	Boolean False
Symbol name	MyPDI.MSet_SubstPV
Encoding	Default
Array update mode	Element
AuditSigning Signature	
Workflow type	Sign
Users	
Groups	
Group1	NodeId HMI_Performer
Group2	NodeId HMI_Approver
Caption	LocalizedText
Statement	LocalizedText By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes that will be made to the system. I have approval and permission to perform this change.
ValueMappingContent	String Complex Dynamic Link
ValueMappingType	String MultipleValues
ParentStation	String PL5_20
ParentTag	String MyPDI

- RunTime

Audit	Value Mapping
<p><b>Request sign operation for changing MSet_SubstPV from 1 to 0</b></p> <p>By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes that will be made to the system. I have approval and permission to perform this change.</p>	<p>Value = 1: Veggie; Value = 0: Bacon</p>
<p>Operator</p> <p>User: <input type="text" value="EngineerType1"/> Password: <input type="password"/></p> <p>Note: <input type="text"/></p> <p><input type="button" value="Confirm"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p>	

6. SignApproverGroup

Statement: By completing this action, I verify that I have HMI\_Performer/HMI\_Approver

ValueMappingType: MultipleValues

Properties:

- Name: MSet\_SubstPV
- Type: RA EtherNet/IP Tag
- MSet\_SubstPV: Boolean, False
- Symbol name: MyPDI.MSet\_SubstPV
- Encoding: Default
- Array update mode: Element
- AuditSigning Signature: Workflow type: Sign
- Groups:
  - Group1: Nodelid, HMI\_Performer
  - Group2: Nodelid, HMI\_Approver
- Caption: LocalizedText
- Statement: LocalizedText, ...sion to perform this change.
- ValueMappingContent: String, Complex Dynamic Link
- ValueMappingType: String, MultipleValues

7. ValueMappingType

ValueMappingType: MultipleValues

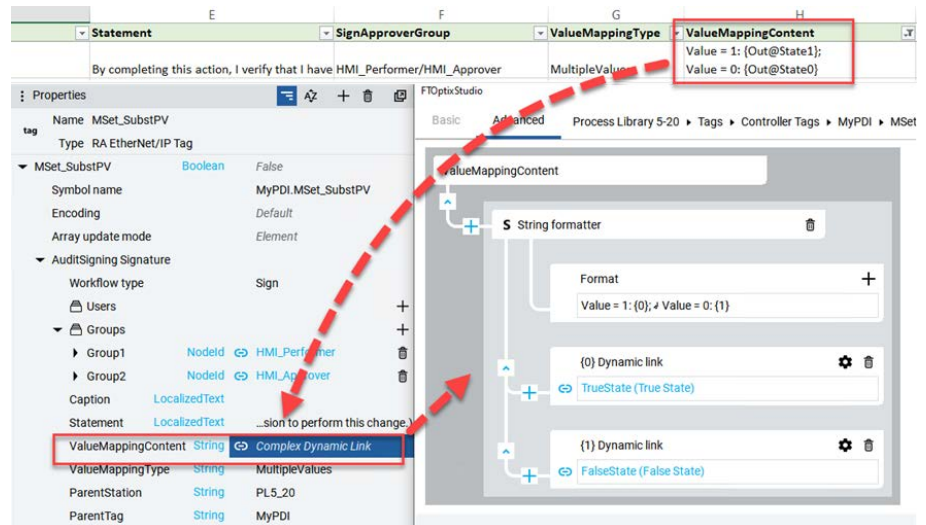
ValueMappingContent: Value = 1: {Out@State1}; Value = 0: {Out@State0}

Properties:

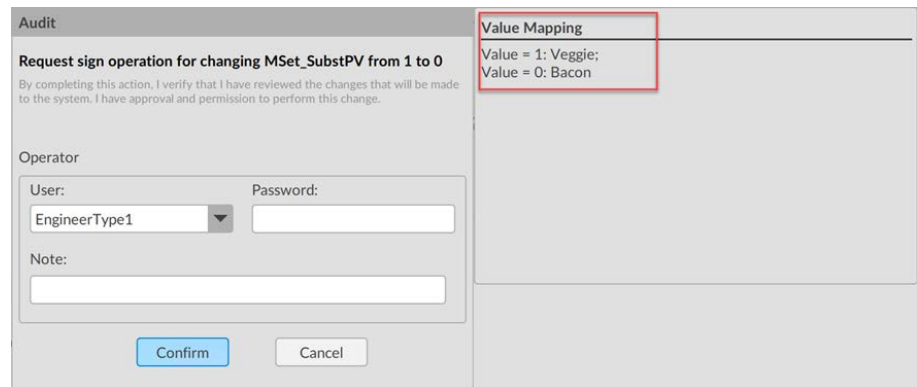
- Name: MSet\_SubstPV
- Type: RA EtherNet/IP Tag
- MSet\_SubstPV: Boolean, False
- Symbol name: MyPDI.MSet\_SubstPV
- Encoding: Default
- Array update mode: Element
- AuditSigning Signature: Workflow type: Sign
- Groups:
  - Group1: Nodelid, HMI\_Performer
  - Group2: Nodelid, HMI\_Approver
- Caption: LocalizedText
- Statement: LocalizedText, ...sion to perform this change.)
- ValueMappingContent: String, Complex Dynamic Link
- ValueMappingType: String, MultipleValues
- ParentStation: String, PL5\_20
- ParentTag: String, MyPDI

8. ValueMappingContent:

- DesignTime



- RunTime (ValueMappingContent panel is only shown when ValueMappingContent is not empty)

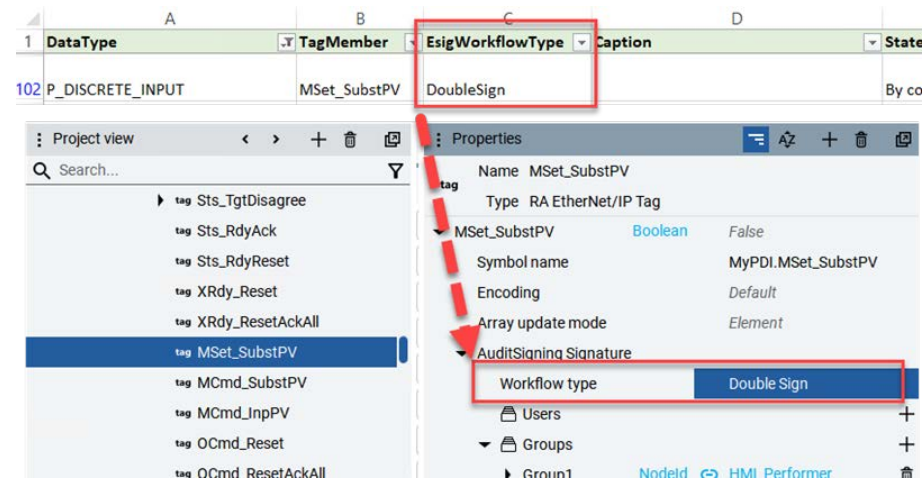


See [Extended Properties Dictionary on page 356](#) for the format of Extended Properties.



## Double-Sign Workflow

1. DataType Mapping - See [Sign Workflow](#).
2. TagMember Mapping - See [Sign Workflow](#).
3. ESigWorkflowType



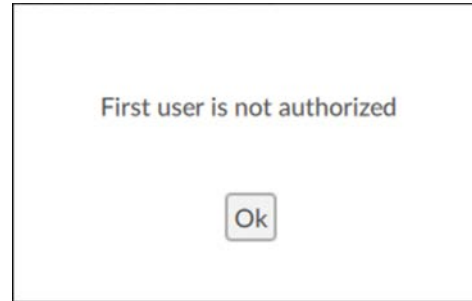
4. Caption:
  - DesignTime - See [Sign Workflow](#).
  - RunTime (a default caption shows when it's empty in DesignTime)

The screenshot shows the 'Audit' dialog box. The title bar says 'Audit'. The main text area contains the message: 'Request double sign operation for changing MSet\_SubstPV from 1 to 0'. Below this is a disclaimer: 'By completing this action, I verify that I have reviewed the changes that will be made to the system. I have approval and permission to perform this change.' The dialog is divided into two sections: 'Operator' and 'Counter Signatory'. The 'Operator' section has fields for 'User:' (set to 'EngineerType1'), 'Password:', and 'Note:'. The 'Counter Signatory' section has fields for 'Second User:' (set to 'EngineerType1'), 'Second Password:', and 'Second Note:'. At the bottom are 'Confirm' and 'Cancel' buttons. To the right of the dialog is a 'Value Mapping' section with the text: 'Value = 1: Veggie; Value = 0: Bacon'.

5. Statement - See [Sign Workflow](#).
6. SignApproverGroup - See [Sign Workflow](#).
7. ValueMappingType - See [Sign Workflow](#).
8. ValueMappingContent - See [Sign Workflow](#).

## Exception Messages

When incorrect signing information is input in the Sign or Double-Sign workflow dialog and the 'Confirm' button is clicked, another pop-up dialog appears indicating an error and the corresponding reason for the error, for example:



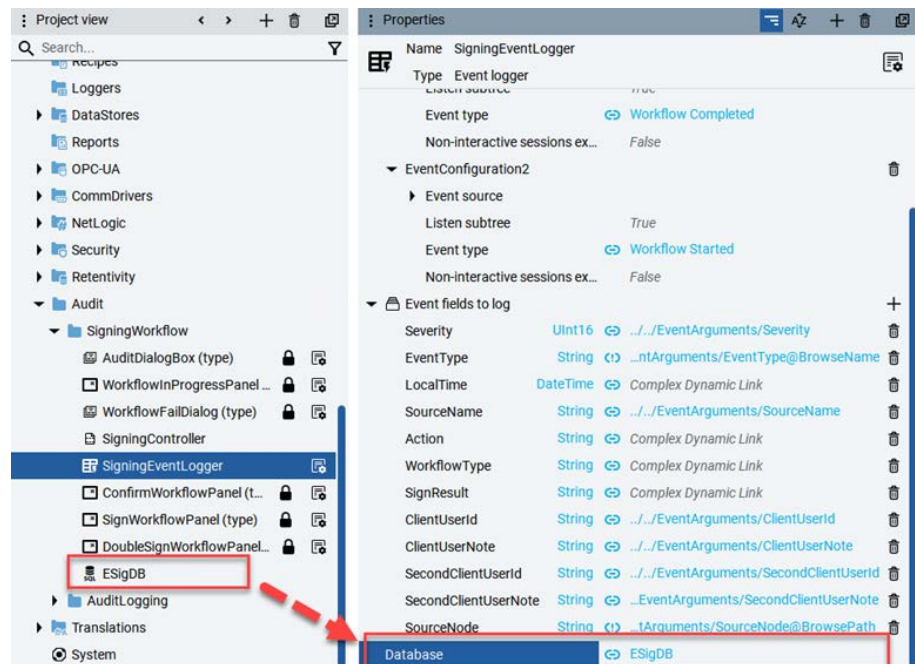
The following table lists common messages and corresponding reasons may occur:

Error Message	Reason
First (Second) user is not authorized	The first (second) user is not in the approver list.
Sign in failed for first (second) user	Password for first (second) user is incorrect.
Second user must be different from first user	The first and second users selected are the same user.

## E-Signature Event Logging Configuration

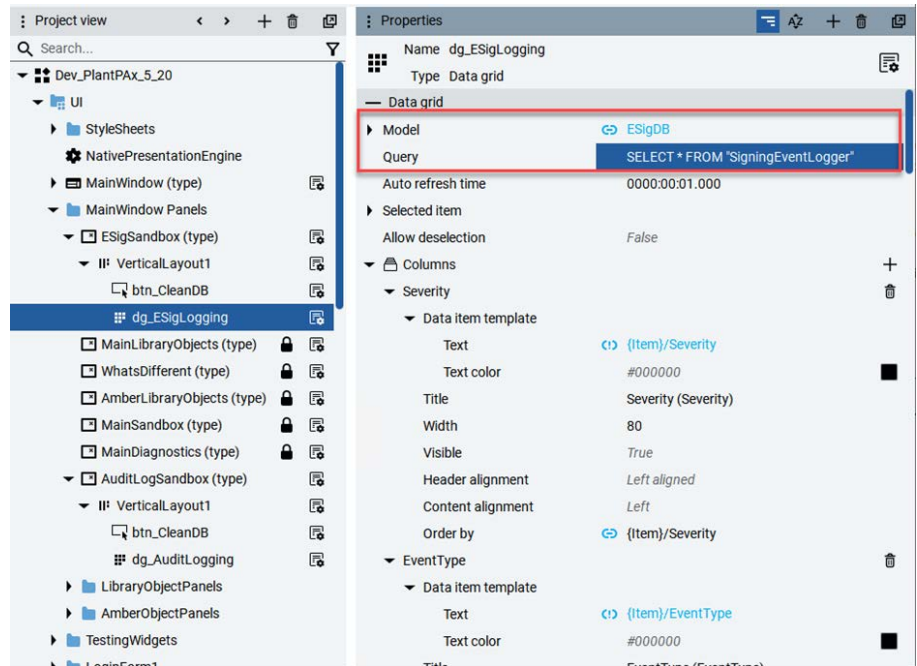
Complete the following steps to configure the E-Signature Logs to be viewed in RunTime using a FactoryTalk Optix DataGrid.

- Under 'Audit > SigningWorkflow' folder, create a Database (either an Embedded Database or an ODBC Database) for E-Signature logging. For example, an Embedded Database that is named 'ESigDB' may be used.
- In the Properties of the SigningEventLogger component, set the Database to the database name created in the previous step ('ESigDB' in the example).



- Under the 'UI' folder, create a panel for DataGrid. (named 'ESigSandbox' in the following example)

4. Drag the DataGrid dg\_ESigLogging from the raP\_5\_20\_Libraries to panel 'ESigSandbox'. Ensure that Model is set to ESigDB. The columns on the grid can be customized based on the event fields that are defined in the SigningEventLogger.



5. After running the project, monitor the E-Signature event logs on the DataGrid.

Severity	EventType	LocalTime	SourceName	Action	WorkflowType	SignResult	ClientUser	ClientU...	Sec...	Sec...	SourceNode
1	AuditSigningWorkflowCompletedEvent	Aug 4, 2025, 3:49:11 PM	MCmd_SubstPV	Value changed from 0 to 1	Operation confirmed	Cancelled	Will				Root/Objects/Dev_PlantPax_5_20/CommDrive
1	AuditSigningWorkflowCompletedEvent	Aug 4, 2025, 3:49:12 PM	MCmd_SubstPV	Value changed from 0 to 1	Operation confirmed	Cancelled	Will				Root/Objects/Dev_PlantPax_5_20/CommDrive
1	AuditSigningWorkflowCompletedEvent	Aug 4, 2025, 3:49:13 PM	MCmd_SubstPV	Value changed from 0 to 1	Operation confirmed	Succeeded	Will				Root/Objects/Dev_PlantPax_5_20/CommDrive
1	AuditSigningWorkflowCompletedEvent	Aug 4, 2025, 3:49:19 PM	MCmd_Virtual	Value changed from 0 to 1	Operation confirmed	Cancelled	Will				Root/Objects/Dev_PlantPax_5_20/CommDrive
1	AuditSigningWorkflowCompletedEvent	Aug 4, 2025, 3:49:20 PM	MCmd_Virtual	Value changed from 0 to 1	Operation confirmed	Cancelled	Will				Root/Objects/Dev_PlantPax_5_20/CommDrive
1	AuditSigningWorkflowCompletedEvent	Aug 4, 2025, 3:49:21 PM	MCmd_Virtual	Value changed from 0 to 1	Operation confirmed	Succeeded	Will				Root/Objects/Dev_PlantPax_5_20/CommDrive
1	AuditSigningWorkflowCompletedEvent	Aug 4, 2025, 3:49:22 PM	MCmd_SubstPV	Value changed from 0 to 1	Operation confirmed	Succeeded	Will				Root/Objects/Dev_PlantPax_5_20/CommDrive
1	AuditSigningWorkflowCompletedEvent	Aug 4, 2025, 3:49:27 PM	MCmd_SubstPV	Value changed from 0 to 1	Operation confirmed	Succeeded	Will				Root/Objects/Dev_PlantPax_5_20/CommDrive
1	AuditSigningWorkflowCompletedEvent	Aug 4, 2025, 3:49:27 PM	MCmd_Virtual	Value changed from 0 to 1	Operation confirmed	Succeeded	Will				Root/Objects/Dev_PlantPax_5_20/CommDrive
1	AuditSigningWorkflowCompletedEvent	Aug 4, 2025, 3:49:28 PM	MCmd_Virtual	Value changed from 0 to 1	Operation confirmed	Succeeded	Will				Root/Objects/Dev_PlantPax_5_20/CommDrive
1	AuditSigningWorkflowCompletedEvent	Aug 4, 2025, 3:49:30 PM	MCmd_SubstPV	Value changed from 0 to 1	Operation confirmed	Cancelled	Will				Root/Objects/Dev_PlantPax_5_20/CommDrive
1	AuditSigningWorkflowCompletedEvent	Aug 4, 2025, 3:49:31 PM	MCmd_SubstPV	Value changed from 0 to 1	Operation confirmed	Cancelled	Will				Root/Objects/Dev_PlantPax_5_20/CommDrive
1	AuditSigningWorkflowCompletedEvent	Aug 4, 2025, 3:49:33 PM	MCmd_Virtual	Value changed from 0 to 1	Operation confirmed	Will					Root/Objects/Dev_PlantPax_5_20/CommDrive

For more information about how to configure Event logger in FactoryTalk Optix, see the Event logger section in the FactoryTalk Optix Help manual, which is installed with FactoryTalk Optix. The help manual is located in the folder:

C:/ProgramFiles/RockwellAutomation/FactoryTalkOptix/Studio1.6.0.626/Help/en/Index.html



## Additional Information

## Template Pre-Defined DataType

NO.	DataType
1	P_ANALOG_HART
2	P_ANALOG_INPUT
3	P_ANALOG_INPUT_DUAL
4	P_ANALOG_INPUT_MULTI
5	P_ANALOG_OUTPUT
6	P_DISCRETE_4STATE
7	P_DEADBAND
8	P_DISCRETE_INPUT
9	P_DISCRETE_OUTPUT
10	P_DOSING
11	P_INTERLOCK
12	P_LEAD_LAG_STANDBY
13	P_LEAD_LAG_STANDBY_MOTOR
14	P_MOTOR_DISCRETE
15	P_DISCRETE_N_POSITION
16	P_PERMISSIVE
17	P_PID
18	P_RUN_TIME
19	P_VALVE_DISCRETE
20	P_DISCRETE_MIX_PROOF
21	P_VALVE_STATISTICS
22	P_VARIABLE_SPEED_DRIVE
23	raP_Dvc_EH_Flowmeter
24	raP_Dvc_EH_Heartbeat
25	raP_Dvc_LgxChangeDet
26	raP_Dvc_LgxCPU_5x80
27	raP_Dvc_LgxModuleSts
28	raP_Dvc_LgxRedun
29	raP_Dvc_LgxTaskMon
30	raP_Opr_Area
31	raP_Opr_EMGen
32	raP_Opr_EPGen
33	raP_Opr_ExtddAlm
34	raP_Opr_Prompt
35	raP_Opr_Prompt_Core
36	raP_Opr_Unit
37	raP_Tec_ParRpt

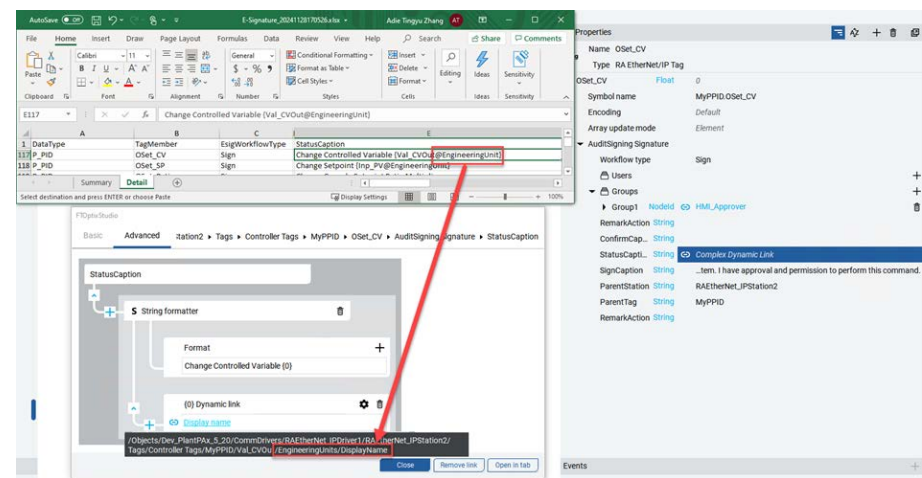
## Pre-defined TagMembers with Confirmation Workflow

Data Type	TagMember	Caption
P_ANALOG_HART	MCmd_Virtual	Place the device in virtual operation
P_ANALOG_INPUT	MCmd_Virtual	Place the device in virtual operation
P_ANALOG_INPUT	MCmd_SubstPV	Replace the PV with a substitute value for the device
P_ANALOG_INPUT	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
P_ANALOG_INPUT_DUAL	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
P_ANALOG_INPUT_MULTI	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
P_ANALOG_OUTPUT	MCmd_Virtual	Place the device in virtual operation
P_ANALOG_OUTPUT	MCmd_OoS	Take the device Out of Service
P_ANALOG_OUTPUT	MCmd_Bypass	Bypass interlocks for the device
P_ANALOG_OUTPUT	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
P_DISCRETE_4STATE	MCmd_Virtual	Place the device in virtual operation
P_DISCRETE_4STATE	MCmd_OoS	Take the device Out of Service
P_DISCRETE_4STATE	MCmd_Bypass	Bypass interlocks and permissives for the device
P_DISCRETE_4STATE	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
P_DEADBAND	MCmd_OoS	Take the device Out of Service
P_DEADBAND	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
P_DISCRETE_INPUT	MCmd_Virtual	Place the device in virtual operation
P_DISCRETE_INPUT	MCmd_SubstPV	Replace the PV with a substitute value for the device
P_DISCRETE_INPUT	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
P_DISCRETE_OUTPUT	MCmd_Virtual	Place the device in virtual operation
P_DISCRETE_OUTPUT	MCmd_OoS	Take the device Out of Service
P_DISCRETE_OUTPUT	MCmd_Bypass	Bypass interlocks and permissives for the device
P_DISCRETE_OUTPUT	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
P_DOSING	MCmd_Virtual	Place the device in virtual operation
P_DOSING	MCmd_OoS	Take the device Out of Service
P_DOSING	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
P_LEAD_LAG_STANDBY	MCmd_OoS	Take the device Out of Service
P_LEAD_LAG_STANDBY	MCmd_Bypass	Bypass interlocks and permissives for the device
P_LEAD_LAG_STANDBY	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
P_MOTOR_DISCRETE	MCmd_Virtual	Place the device in virtual operation
P_MOTOR_DISCRETE	MCmd_OoS	Take the device Out of Service
P_MOTOR_DISCRETE	MCmd_Bypass	Bypass interlocks and permissives for the device
P_MOTOR_DISCRETE	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
P_DISCRETE_N_POSITION	MCmd_Virtual	Place the device in virtual operation
P_DISCRETE_N_POSITION	MCmd_OoS	Take the device Out of Service
P_DISCRETE_N_POSITION	MCmd_Bypass	Bypass interlocks and permissives for the device
P_DISCRETE_N_POSITION	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
P_PID	MCmd_OoS	Take the device Out of Service
P_PID	MCmd_Bypass	Bypass interlocks for the device
P_PID	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
P_VALVE_DISCRETE	MCmd_Virtual	Place the device in virtual operation
P_VALVE_DISCRETE	MCmd_OoS	Take the device Out of Service
P_VALVE_DISCRETE	MCmd_Bypass	Bypass interlocks and permissives for the device
P_VALVE_DISCRETE	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
P_DISCRETE_MIX_PROOF	MCmd_Virtual	Place the device in virtual operation
P_DISCRETE_MIX_PROOF	MCmd_OoS	Take the device Out of Service
P_DISCRETE_MIX_PROOF	MCmd_Bypass	Bypass interlocks for the device
P_DISCRETE_MIX_PROOF	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
P_VARIABLE_SPEED_DRIVE	MCmd_Virtual	Place the device in virtual operation
P_VARIABLE_SPEED_DRIVE	MCmd_OoS	Take the device Out of Service
P_VARIABLE_SPEED_DRIVE	MCmd_Bypass	Bypass interlocks and permissives for the device

Data Type	Tag Member	Caption
P_VARIABLE_SPEED_DRIVE	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
raP_Dvc_LgxChangeDet	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
raP_Dvc_LgxCPU_5x80	MCmd_Enable	Enabling data collection affects communication and processor performance. Be sure to disable data collection when you are finished monitoring the controller.
raP_Dvc_LgxModuleSts	MCmd_Virtual	Place the device in virtual operation
raP_Dvc_LgxModuleSts	MCmd_Bypass	Bypass connection checking for the device
raP_Dvc_LgxModuleSts	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
raP_Dvc_LgxRedun	MCmd_Switchover	Initiate switchover for controller
raP_Dvc_LgxRedun	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
raP_Dvc_LgxTaskMon	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
raP_Opr_Area	MCmd_Virtual	Place the device in virtual operation
raP_Opr_Area	MCmd_OoS	Take the device Out of Service
raP_Opr_Area	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
raP_Opr_EMGen	MCmd_StateForce	Force State
raP_Opr_EMGen	MCmd_OoS	Take the device Out of Service
raP_Opr_EMGen	MCmd_Bypass	Bypass interlocks and permissives for the device
raP_Opr_EMGen	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
raP_Opr_EPGen	OCmd_Abort	Abort Phase
raP_Opr_EPGen	MCmd_StateForce	Force State
raP_Opr_EPGen	MCmd_OoS	Take the device Out of Service
raP_Opr_EPGen	MCmd_Bypass	Bypass interlocks and permissives for the device
raP_Opr_EPGen	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
raP_Opr_ExtdAlm	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
raP_Opr_Prompt	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm
raP_Opr_Unit	MCmd_Virtual	Place the device in virtual operation
raP_Opr_Unit	MCmd_OoS	Take the device Out of Service
raP_Opr_Unit	MCmd_Bypass	Bypass interlocks and permissives for the device
raP_Opr_Unit	@Alarms/Alm_**/OperShelve	Shelve alarm

## Extended Properties Dictionary

The extended properties that are used in the E-Signature Template are from Logix Designer. The format is different with the ones in FactoryTalk Optix dynamic link browser path.



The following table is a mapping of commonly used extended properties:

Extended Properties	FactoryTalk Optix dynamic link browser path
@Description	/Description
@Label	/Label
@Area	/Area
@Navigation	/Navigation
@State0	/FalseState
@State1	/TrueState
@EngineeringUnit	/EngineeringUnits/DisplayName
@Max	/EURange/High
@Min	/EURange/Low
@Library	/Library
@Instruction	/Instruction
@URL	/URL

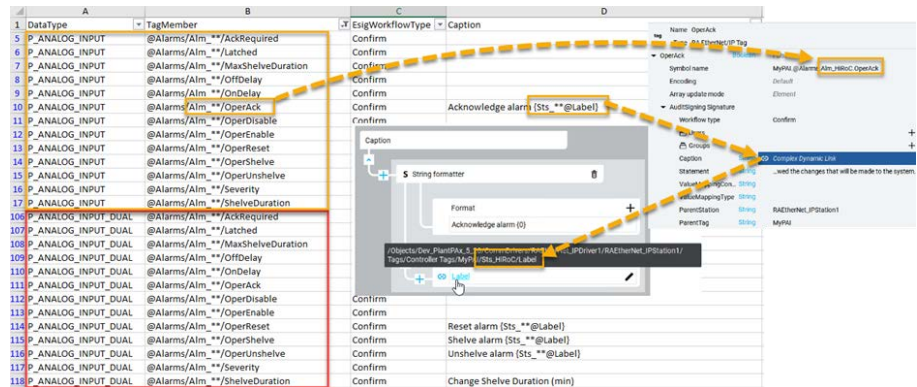
## Tag Format for Alarms

There are 13 default Alarms TagMembers for each DataType in the template. The TagMembers all have same format.

'@Alarms/Alm\_\*\*/<ChildTag>'.

During importing into FactoryTalk Optix, the '\*\*' will be instantiated to all the actual Alarms TagMembers per each DataType.

The following is an example how the TagMember be instantiated:



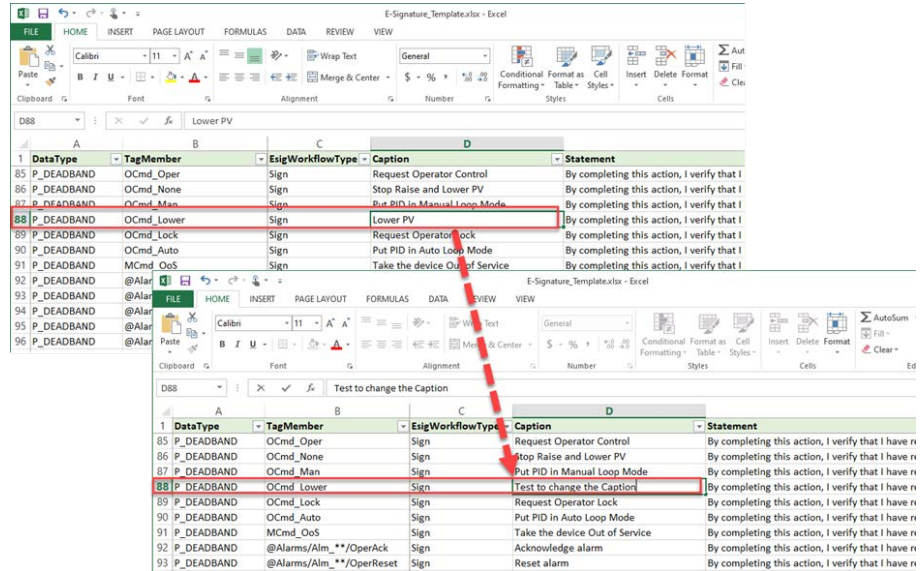
The format '@Alarms/Alm\_\*\*/<ChildTag>' can only import all the Alarm TagMembers for the DataType at one time. If user would like to choose parts of the tags to import, then the '\*\*' must be instantiated manually in the template before importing. See the following example:

1019	P_VARIABLE_SPEED_DRIVE	@Alarms/Alm_DriveFault/OffDelay	Confirm	
1020	P_VARIABLE_SPEED_DRIVE	@Alarms/Alm_DriveFault/OnDelay	Confirm	
1021	P_VARIABLE_SPEED_DRIVE	@Alarms/Alm_DriveFault/OperAck	Confirm	Acknowledge alarm (Sts_DriveFault@Label)
1022	P_VARIABLE_SPEED_DRIVE	@Alarms/Alm_DriveFault/OperDisable	Confirm	
1023	P_VARIABLE_SPEED_DRIVE	@Alarms/Alm_DriveFault/OperEnable	Confirm	
1024	P_VARIABLE_SPEED_DRIVE	@Alarms/Alm_DriveFault/OperReset	Confirm	Reset alarm (Sts_DriveFault@Label)
1025	P_VARIABLE_SPEED_DRIVE	@Alarms/Alm_DriveFault/OperShelve	Confirm	Shelve alarm (Sts_DriveFault@Label)
1026	P_VARIABLE_SPEED_DRIVE	@Alarms/Alm_DriveFault/OperUnshelve	Confirm	Unshelve alarm (Sts_DriveFault@Label)
1027	P_VARIABLE_SPEED_DRIVE	@Alarms/Alm_DriveFault/Severity	Confirm	
1028	P_VARIABLE_SPEED_DRIVE	@Alarms/Alm_DriveFault/ShelveDuration	Confirm	Change Shelve Duration (min)

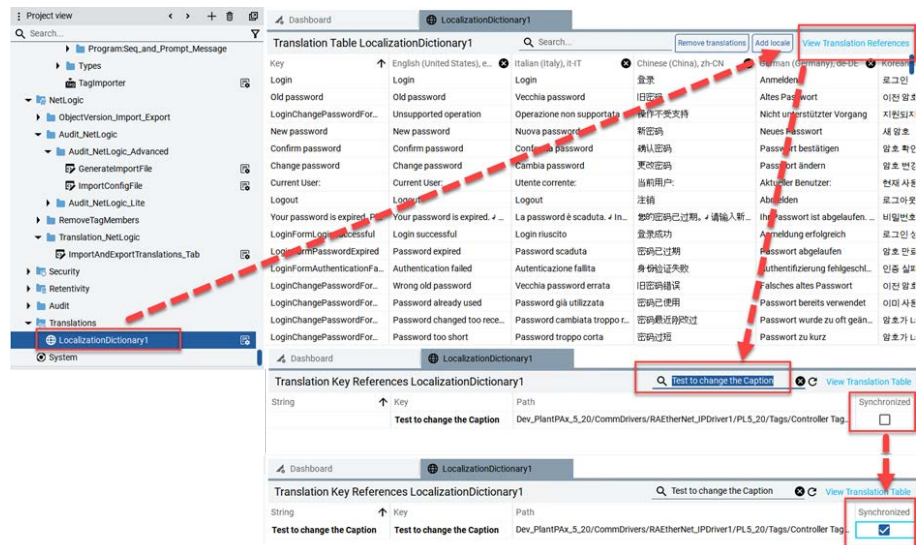
## How to Customize Caption/Statement/ValueMappingContent by Template

To display custom contents correctly during RunTime, you must use the following steps when customizing Caption, Statement, or ValueMapping in the E-Signature template:

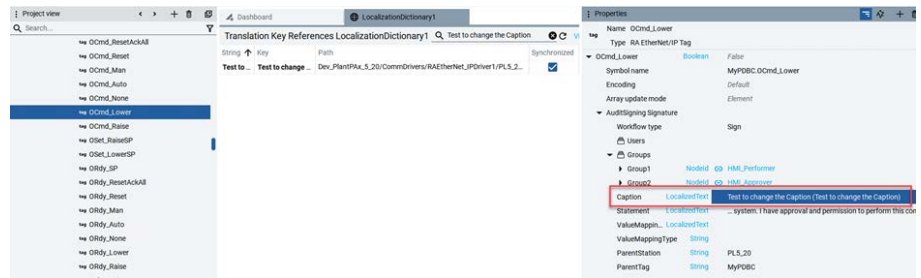
1. Update a predefined Caption/Statement/ValueMappingContent in the template (for example, a caption of P\_DEADBAND), then save and close the file.



2. Follow steps in [E-Signature Configuration](#) to export and import the E-Signature configuration of P\_DEADBAND.
3. In Project View, double-click 'LocalizationDictionary1' under the 'Translation' folder and select 'View Translation References'. Then search for the updated Caption ('Test to change the Caption').
4. Select the 'Synchronized' checkbox for the key.



## Observation of changed tag:

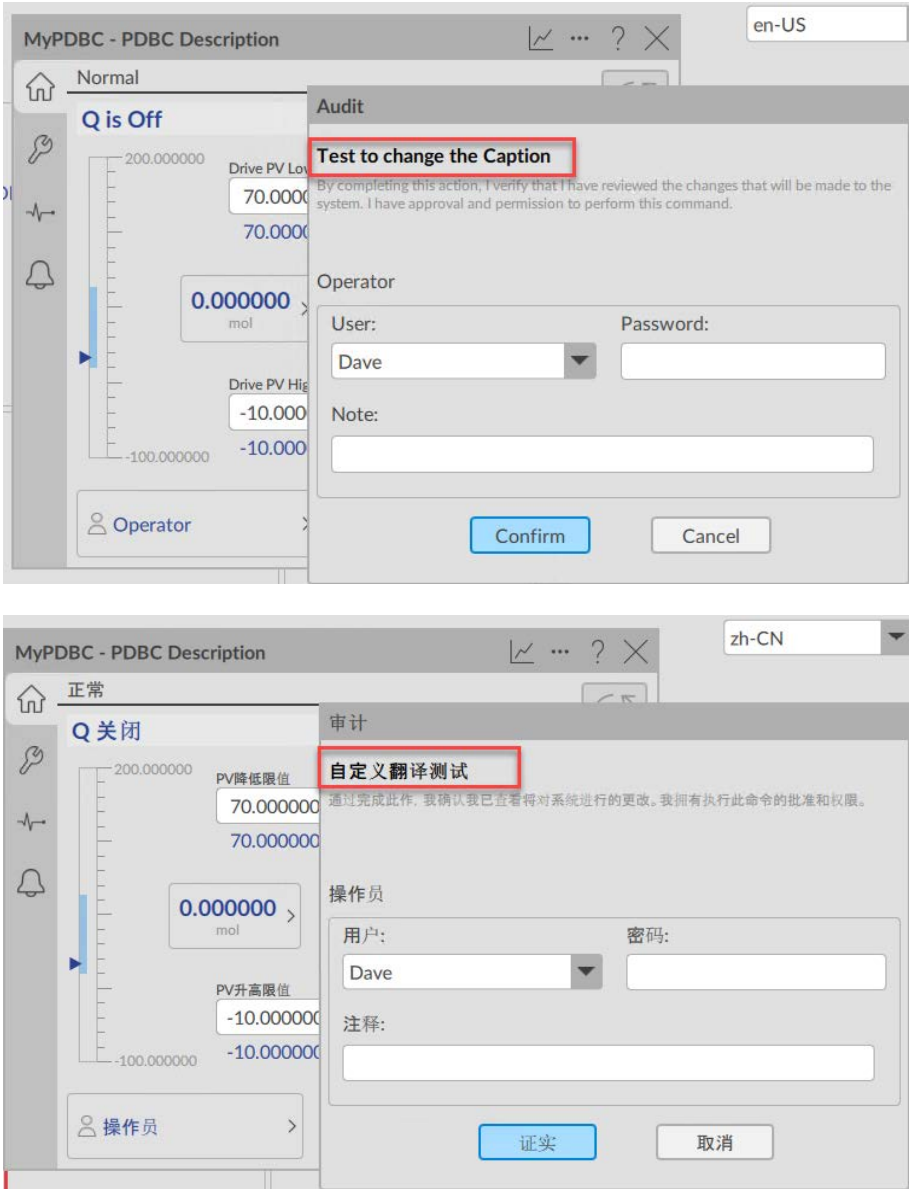


5. You can add translations manually in the Translation Table to enable Multilanguage:





6. Start RunTime. When an operation is made to the tag, the E-Signature pop-up appears. And now the custom caption and translations can be displayed correctly.





## Security Policies

### System Policies

System Policies	Operators	Operator Supervisor	Maintenance	Maintenance Supervisor	Manager	Engineer	Administrator
Common	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Configure Security	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Create Children	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Delete	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Execute	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
List Children	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Read	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Write	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
User Rights Assignment	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
.User Rights Assignment Properties	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
..Backup and Restore	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Backup and restore directory contents	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
..Directory Server Computer	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Change Directory Server	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
..Manage Servers	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Manual server switchover	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
..Security Authority Identifier	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Modify Security Authority Identifier	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow

### Product Policies

Product Policies	Operators	Operator Supervisor	Maintenance	Maintenance Supervisor	Manager	Engineer	Administrator
RSLogix 5000®	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Feature Security	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Project: New	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Print: Modify Options	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Controller: Secure	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Toolbar: Configure	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Firmware: Update	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Workstation: Modify Options	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Studio 5000 Architect®	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Feature Security	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Create	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Open	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Save	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Batch	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
. Batch Campaign	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
. . Commands	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Abort Batch	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Abort Campaign	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Add New Batch	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Add New Campaign	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow

Product Policies	Operators	Operator Supervisor	Maintenance	Maintenance Supervisor	Manager	Engineer	Administrator
All Properties	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Append Batch to Campaign	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
ConfigServers	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Delete Batch	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Delete Campaign	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Disable Triggers	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Enable Triggers	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Hold Batch	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Hold Campaign	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Move Batch	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Move Campaign	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Pause Batch	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Pause Campaign	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Restart Batch	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Restart Campaign	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Start Batch	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Start Campaign	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Stop Batch	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Stop Campaign	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
. BatchView and ActiveX	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
. . View	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Alarm Summary	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Arbitration	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Batch List	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Configuration	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Event Journals	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Exit	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Help	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Phase Control	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Phase Summary	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Procedure as SFC	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Procedure as Table	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Prompts	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Signatures	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
. . Phase Commands	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Abort	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Ack	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Acquire	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Clear Fail	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Disconnect	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Hold	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Pause	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Phase Auto Mode	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Phase Semi-Auto Mode	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Release	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Reset	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Restart	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Resume	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Start	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Stop	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
. . Commands	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Abort	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow

Product Policies	Operators	Operator Supervisor	Maintenance	Maintenance Supervisor	Manager	Engineer	Administrator
Ack	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Acquire	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Add Batch	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Auto	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Bind	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Bind Ack	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Clear Fail	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Comment	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Disconnect	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Force Transition	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Hold	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Manual	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
MatSvrControl	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Override	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Override Clear	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
ParamChange	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
ReactivateStep	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Release	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Remove	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Reorder	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Restart	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Resume	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Semi-Auto	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Start	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Step	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Stop	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Timer-Compete	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Timer-Reset	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
. Equipment Editor	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
. . Feature Security	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Configure Runtime Area Model Deployment	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
. Recipe Editor	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
. . Access Modes	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Full Edit	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
View Only	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Asset Centre	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Address Book Policies	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
View Address Book	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Edit Address Book	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Archive Policies	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Override Archive Check In	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Configure Database Limitations	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Configure Asset Inventory Settings	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Configure Archive Options Settings	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Override Archive Undo Check Out	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Override Removal Local Copies	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Configure Personal Archive File Associations	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Configure System Archive File Associations	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Configure Personal Archive Working Folders	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow

Product Policies	Operators	Operator Supervisor	Maintenance	Maintenance Supervisor	Manager	Engineer	Administrator
Configure System Archive Working Folders	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Run Archive Database Cleanup Wizard	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Allow Empty Comment at Check In	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Clear the Get Writable Copy check box by default	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Store Latest Version Only	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Set Maximum Versions	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Assets Lifecycle Policies	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Configure Assets Lifecycle Sync	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Calibration Management Policies	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Display Calibration Management Data	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Perform Calibration Management	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Administer Calibration Users	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Database Maintenance Policies	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Configure Database Maintenance Policies	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
General Policies	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Switch to Design mode	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Log Policies	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
View Event Log	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
View Audit Log	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
View Diagnostics and Health Log	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Change Diagnostics and Health Log Message	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
View Diagnostics and Health Log Status	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Run Log Database Cleanup Wizard	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Process Device Configuration Policies	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Enable or Disable DTMs	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Edit DTM Network	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Run PDC Field Edition	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Schedule Policies	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Create a new schedule	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Edit a schedule	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Delete a schedule	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
View a schedule	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Command a schedule	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Searching	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Create a Search	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
ControlFLASH™	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Feature Security	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Firmware: Update	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Firmware: Delete	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
PCDC: Connect	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
FactoryTalk View SE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Feature Security	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Configure FTView SE Website	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
RSLinx Classic	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Feature Security	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Clear DDE/OPC Event Log	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Configure CIP™ Options	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Configure Client Applications	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Configure ControlLogix® Gateway	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow

Product Policies	Operators	Operator Supervisor	Maintenance	Maintenance Supervisor	Manager	Engineer	Administrator
Configure DDE/OPC Topic	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Configure Drivers and Shortcuts	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Configure Gateway	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Configure Network Properties	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Edit DDE/OPC Project	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Edit Options	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Reset Station Diagnostic Counters	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Shutdown	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
View NT Event Log	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Access Data Monitor	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
RSNetWorx™	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Feature Security	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Access Configurations	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Modify Configurations	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Go Online	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow

## Computers and Groups

Computers and Groups	Operators	Operator Supervisor	Maintenance	Maintenance Supervisor	Manager	Engineer	Administrator
Common	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Configure Security	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Create Children	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Delete	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Execute	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
List Children	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Read	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Write	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
FactoryTalk Linx	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Network Browse	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
FactoryTalk Transaction Manager	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Start, Stop, and Assemble Configurations	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow

## Network and Devices

Network and Devices	Operators	Operator Supervisor	Maintenance	Maintenance Supervisor	Manager	Engineer	Administrator
Common	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Configure Security	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Create Children	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Delete	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Execute	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
List Children	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Read	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Write	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
RSLogix5000	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Add-On Instruction: Create	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Add-On Instruction: Delete	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Add-On Instruction: Export	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Add-On Instruction: Export Unencoded	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Add-On Instruction: Modify	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Add-On Instruction: View Logic	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Alarm Definition: Create	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow

Network and Devices	Operators	Operator Supervisor	Maintenance	Maintenance Supervisor	Manager	Engineer	Administrator
Alarm Definition: Delete	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Alarm Definition: Modify Properties	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Alarm Definition: Modify Required Use	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Alarm: Clear Alarm Log	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Alarm: Configure Direct Commands	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Alarm: Create	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Alarm: Delete	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Alarm: Modify Properties	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Alarm: Modify Use	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Component: Modify Permission Set	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Controller: Clear Fault	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Controller: Lock/Unlock	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Controller: Modify Mode	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Controller: Modify Properties	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Controller: Modify Revision	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Controller: Modify Type	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Controller: Unsecure	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Data Log: Clear Log Data Value	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Data Log: Create	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Data Log: Delete	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Data Log: Enable/Disable	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Data Log: Modify	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Data Log: Read Log Data Value	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Firmware: Update	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Language: Modify Properties	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Language: Switch Language	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Module: Create	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Module: Delete	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Module: Maintenance High	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Module: Maintenance Low	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Module: Modify Properties	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Module: View Properties	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Motion: Command Axis	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Motion: Modify Configuration	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Nonvolatile Memory: Load	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Nonvolatile Memory: Store	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Phase: Create	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Phase: Delete	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Phase: Manual Control	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Phase: Modify Properties	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
PLC/SLC: Modify Tag Mappings	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Plug-In: Display	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Print: Report	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Program: Create	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Program: Delete	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Program: Modify Properties	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Project: Compact	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Project: Download	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Project: Export	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Project: Go Online	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Project: Modify Path	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Project: Open	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow

Network and Devices	Operators	Operator Supervisor	Maintenance	Maintenance Supervisor	Manager	Engineer	Administrator
Project: Save	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Project: Save As	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Project: Upload	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Routine: Create	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Routine: Delete	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Routine: Export	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Routine: Manual Control	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Routine: Modify Logic	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Routine: Modify Properties	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Routine: View Logic	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Safety: Generate/Delete Signature	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Safety: Lock/Unlock	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Safety: Modify Component	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Safety: Modify Properties	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Safety: Modify Tag Mappings	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Sequence: Create	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Sequence: Delete	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Sequence: Manual Control	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Sequence: Modify Properties	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Tag: Create	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Tag: Delete	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Tag: Force	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Tag: Modify Constant Property	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Tag: Modify Constant Tag Value	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Tag: Modify Properties	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Tag: Modify Values	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Task: Create	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Task: Delete	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Task: Modify Properties	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Trend: Create	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Trend: Delete	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Trend:Modify Properties	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Trend: Run	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
User Defined Type: Create	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
User Defined Type: Delete	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
User Defined Type: Modify	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Sequence Manager	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Event Server: Archiving Service Commands	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Event Server: Client Service Commands	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Event Server: Configure Archiving Service Settings	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Event Server: Configure Client Service Settings	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Parameter: Change Parameter	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Parameter: Enable or Disable Expression	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Parameter: Force Parameter Evaluation	Deny	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Sequence: Abort	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Sequence: Change Active Steps	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Sequence: Change Mode	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Sequence: Change Ownership	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Sequence: Clear Failures	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Sequence: Hold	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow

Network and Devices	Operators	Operator Supervisor	Maintenance	Maintenance Supervisor	Manager	Engineer	Administrator
Sequence: Initialize Parameters	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Sequence: Pause and Resume	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Sequence: Reset	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Sequence: Restart	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Sequence: Set ID	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Sequence: Start	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Sequence: Stop	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Step: Abort	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Step: Clear Failures	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Step: Hold	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Step: Pause and Resume	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Step: Reset	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Step: Restart	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Step: Start	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Step: Stop	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow
Transition: Force Expression to Evaluate True	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow	Allow

## Users and Groups

Users and Groups	Operators	Operator Supervisor	Maintenance	Maintenance Supervisor	Manager	Engineer	Administrator
Common	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Configure Security	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Create Children	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Delete	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Execute	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
List Children	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Read	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Write	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow

## Connections

Connections	Operators	Operator Supervisor	Maintenance	Maintenance Supervisor	Manager	Engineer	Administrator
Common	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Configure Security	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Create Children	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Delete	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Execute	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
List Children	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Read	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow
Write	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Deny	Allow	Allow





# Rockwell Automation Support

Use these resources to access support information.

<b>Technical Support Center</b>	Find help with how-to videos, FAQs, chat, user forums, Knowledgebase, and product notification updates.	<a href="http://rok.auto/support">rok.auto/support</a>
<b>Local Technical Support Phone Numbers</b>	Locate the telephone number for your country.	<a href="http://rok.auto/phonesupport">rok.auto/phonesupport</a>
<b>Technical Documentation Center</b>	Quickly access and download technical specifications, installation instructions, and user manuals.	<a href="http://rok.auto/techdocs">rok.auto/techdocs</a>
<b>Literature Library</b>	Find installation instructions, manuals, brochures, and technical data publications.	<a href="http://rok.auto/literature">rok.auto/literature</a>
<b>Product Compatibility and Download Center (PCDC)</b>	Download firmware, associated files (such as AOP, EDS, and DTM), and access product release notes.	<a href="http://rok.auto/pcdc">rok.auto/pcdc</a>

## Documentation Feedback

Your comments help us serve your documentation needs better. If you have any suggestions on how to improve our content, complete the form at [rok.auto/docfeedback](http://rok.auto/docfeedback).

## Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE)



At the end of life, this equipment should be collected separately from any unsorted municipal waste.

Rockwell Automation maintains current product environmental compliance information on its website at [rok.auto/pec](http://rok.auto/pec).

Allen-Bradley, expanding human possibility, AADvance, ArmorStart, CompactLogix, ControlLogix, FactoryTalk, FactoryTalk eProcedure, FLEX 5000, FLEXHA 5000, GuardLogix, Integrated Architecture, iTRAK, Kinetix, Logix 5000, MagneMotion, Optix, Pavilion8, PhaseManager, PlantPAx, PanelView, PowerFlex, PowerMonitor, Rockwell Automation, Rockwell Software, RSBizWare, RSLinx, RSMACC, SequenceManager, SMC, Stratix, Studio 5000, Studio 5000 Logix Designer, TechConnect, ThinManager, and Trusted are trademarks of Rockwell Automation, Inc.

Cisco, Cisco IOS, and Catalyst are trademarks of Cisco Systems, Inc.

CIP, CIP Security, CIP Sync, ControlNet, DeviceNet, and EtherNet/IP are trademarks of the ODVA.

Microsoft, Excel, and Windows are trademarks of the Microsoft Corporation.

Trademarks not belonging to Rockwell Automation are property of their respective companies.

Rockwell Otomasyon Ticaret A.Ş. Kar Plaza İş Merkezi E Blok Kat:6 34752, İçerenköy, İstanbul, Tel: +90 (216) 5698400 EEE Yönetmeliğine Uygundur

Connect with us.    

**rockwellautomation.com** — expanding **human possibility**®

AMERICAS: Rockwell Automation, 1201 South Second Street, Milwaukee, WI 53204-2496 USA, Tel: (1) 414.382.2000

EUROPE/MIDDLE EAST/AFRICA: Rockwell Automation NV, Pegasus Park, De Kleetlaan 12a, 1831 Diegem, Belgium, Tel: (32) 2663 0600

ASIA PACIFIC: Rockwell Automation SEA Pte Ltd, 2 Corporation Road, #04-05, Main Lobby, Corporation Place, Singapore 618494, Tel: (65) 6510 6608

UNITED KINGDOM: Rockwell Automation Ltd., Pitfield, Kiln Farm, Milton Keynes, MK11 3DR, United Kingdom, Tel: (44)(1908) 838-800

Publication PROCES-UM100H-EN-P - November 2025

PROCES-UM100G-EN-P - July 2025

Copyright © 2025 Rockwell Automation, Inc. All rights reserved. Printed in the U.S.A.